

**Expounding The Exegetical Reality And Hidden  
Meaning Of Biblical Scripture As Seen In Both  
The Old And New Testament**

by

**Pieter Willem Malan**

*Master of Theology in Ministry*

Submitted in Accordance with the requirements for the degree of

**PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR DIVINITATES**

at the

**ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY**

PROMOTOR

**Prof Dr Connie M. J. Brand (DLitt PhD MTh)**

**June 2013**



## DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY

I, the undersigned, Pieter Willem Malan, declare that this thesis is my original work, compiled and utilized especially to fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study, and has not been previously submit to any other University for a higher degree. I certify that all information contained herein and in all my application materials submitted by me are true, correct and accurate to the best of my knowledge and believe.

---

Signature

OCTOBER 2013

Date

---





## DEDICATION

*Firstly, I Dedicate This To Our Loving Lord Jesus Christ  
From Whom I Initially Received It.*

Secondly, I dedicated this dissertation to my beloved friend and wife, Maryann – who, always offering a different viewpoint of just about everything, have challenged and stretched me in wonderful ways. As a result of our thirty – plus year’s journey together, we received the most precious Godly gift - two wonderful children - Leandri and Ruan and added to that a most appreciated, son-in-law, Ian, to our family. Your perpetual debates have stimulated, sharpened and refined my thinking on a number of points – thank you all for just plain loving me after all.

-----o0o-----



## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to express my thanks to:

- God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit that gave me the passion, strength, insight and opportunity to complete the Dissertation.
- Prof Dr Connie, M.J. Brand, my supervisor and mentor, for ongoing patience and endurance in guiding me as a student.

-----o0o-----



# SUMMARY

## EXPOUNDING THE EXEGETICAL REALITY AND HIDDEN MEANING OF BIBLICAL SCRIPTURE AS SEEN IN BOTH THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENT

By

**Pieter Willem Malan**

**SUPERVISOR:** Prof Dr Connie M.J. Brand (DLitt, PhD, MTh)  
**DEGREE:** Philosophiae Doctor Divinitates  
**INSTITUTION:** ST CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

***The secret things belong to the LORD our God, but the revealed things  
belong to us and to our sons forever, so that we may do all the words of  
this law.***

**Deuteronomy 29:29**

*The function of most modern religion has been to escape terror by transforming  
God into something manageable through simple rituals of piety; and the  
function of most modern atheism has been to avoid the problem by pretending  
that it is not there.*

*Jeffrey Burton Russell*

This Thesis will look at evidence suggesting design in evolution; at discoveries indicating the existence of very ancient technology; of remnants suggesting that human beings existed millions of years before the present human culture emerging in lands no longer available for archaeological study. Moving into the mystical side of life and world, this thesis will look at evidence, both ancient and modern, concerning the timeless mystery of death and rebirth. The question arises whether mankind truly have lived before? Increasingly, data is emerging to lead us to answer 'yes'.

However, the apostle Paul specifically declares that Christ, who is Himself God, is the Creator of all things. The eternal Son of God was the cause of every creature: All

creation found their origin in Him and depended upon Him for their continuance and welfare. He is their sovereign God.

The archaeological evidence from the New Testament period is limited compared to that of the Old Testament era. The time span was much shorter (only a century) and the principal characters left no physical monuments behind.

Jesus and the apostles were not kings or builders of cities but men who lived simple lives and devoted themselves to preaching the new gospel and organizing the early Christian communities.

Almost all the synagogues in which Jesus and his disciples preached were destroyed in the course of the Jewish war with the Romans from A.D. 66 to A.D. 70.

This hypothesis aims to expound the significance of the feasts through food and drink celebrations between a deity and its worshippers originally scheduled regularly to coincide with nature's harvests and seasons. Many were held at the times and seasons of the planetary activity and others were observed in commemoration of the same great event or act of their gods.

This hypothesis aims to expound the importance of SABBATH The day of rest, considered holy to God by His rest on the seventh day after creation and viewed as a sign of the covenant relation between God and His people and of the eternal rest He has promised them.

This thesis will also reveal that the world has a rendezvous with a super world dictator. He will be the last great dictator of history; he will be a man of fantastic brilliance and charisma - light years ahead of any man who ever lived – the Antichrist.

God has given us, in the book of Daniel, a candid snapshot of this coming world ruler who is destined to appear on the world scene just prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ.

The thesis will show that the Antichrist has been called the "*man of sin*," the "*son of perdition*," and "*the lawless one*." In the Book of Revelation, he is also called "*the beast*." The apocalyptic imagery shows the outrageous reality of one who uses the body of a man, but who is far more than a man.

This thesis will reveal clearly enough who Jesus is not. He is not the cosmic guide and guru of the New Age He is not the illegitimate black magician of the Talmud; He is not the failed (and uncrucified) prophet of the Koran; He is not the rustic Palestinian preacher of the Jesus Seminar.

But after man reject all the false teachings about him, one still face the question that the false teachers tried to answer in the first place namely, "*Who is this man?*" The answer to that question is both simpler and deeper than most people care to imagine. It is easy to state but hard to grasp, because Christ's sacrifice embodies the ultimate paradox of the Christian faith, i.e., that in Christ, God conquers evil by allowing it to triumph on its own terms. In Christ, God makes evil serve His purposes in its very rejection of Him. In Christ, God lets evil do its worst against Him, then makes the worst itself a part of His salvation.

The exegetical reality thus implies amongst others that the Spiritual rain that pore down from heaven in the last days will fall on the on the Christians and will bear fruit that man will be able to use in the likeness and fulfillment of Gods plan for humankind.

-----oOo-----



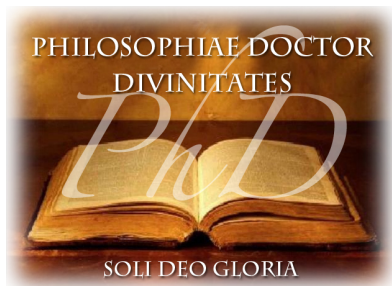


## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated)

TITLEPAGE.....	i
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY.....	iii
DEDICATION.....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT.....	vii
SUMMARY.....	ix
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated).....	xiii
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xv
<b>PROLEGOMENA</b> .....	1
<b>CHAPTER 1:</b> EXEGETICAL REALITY AND DEMARCATION OF PLACES SPIRITUAL AND PHYSICAL.....	17
<b>CHAPTER 2:</b> EXPOUNDING THE FEASTS, THE SABBATH AND SACRAMENTS ACCORDING TO THE WORD.....	151
<b>CHAPTER 3:</b> DECEPTION AS SEEN IN MISTRANSLATION AND INTERPRETATION OUT OF GOD'S WORD.....	265
<b>CHAPTER 4:</b> REVELATION OF THE MYSTERIES AND HIDDEN MEANING OF BIBLICAL SCRIPTURE.....	339
<b>CHAPTER 5:</b> THE ULTIMATE EVIL AND DESTRUCTION AS REVEALED IN THE MYSTERY OF THE END TIME ANTICHRIST.....	439
<b>CHAPTER 6:</b> THE EXTRAORDINARILY AND POWERFUL QUESTION AS TO WHOM THE REAL JESUS CHRIST IS.....	527
<b>CONCLUSION</b> .....	621
BIBLIOGRAPY.....	629
ABBREVIATIONS.....	645
TERMS AND DEFINITIONS.....	647
LIST OF FIGURES.....	653
ADDENDUM.....	655
A CERTIFICATE OF EDITING.....	667

-----oOo-----





## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Prolegomena</i> .....	1
 <i>CHAPTER 1: EXEGETICAL REALITY AND DEMARCATION OF PLACES SPIRITUAL AND PHYSICAL</i>	
1 INTRODUCTION.....	17
2 THE REALITY OF THE ANGELS OF GOD.....	30
2.1 The Reality And Existence Of God's Angels.....	30
2.1.1 Old Testament Witnessing By The Book Of Law.....	30
2.1.2 Biblical History Books.....	31
2.1.3 Biblical Prophets.....	32
2.1.4 The Books Of Poetry.....	33
2.1.5 Witnessing Of The New Testament Writers.....	33
2.1.6 The Gospels.....	33
2.1.7 The Book Of Acts.....	34
2.1.8 The Epistle.....	34
2.1.9 The Book Of Revelation.....	35
2.1.10 The Witness Of The Son Of God.....	35
2.1.11 In Jesus' Testing.....	36
2.1.12 In Jesus' Teaching.....	36
2.1.13 In Jesus' Ministry.....	37
2.2 The Nature Of Angels.....	38

2.2.1	Definition Of Personality.....	38
2.2.1.1	Description Of Angels' Personality.....	39
2.2.2	Properties Of Spirit Beings.....	42
2.3	The Position Of Angels Relative To The Son Of God And To Man.....	45
2.3.1	Into Relation To The Son Of God.....	45
2.3.2	Into Relation To Man.....	46
2.4	Major Ranking Of Angels.....	48
2.4.1	Etymology.....	48
2.4.2	Christianity.....	49
2.4.3	Christian Angelic Hierarchy.....	51
2.4.4	First Sphere Angels.....	52
2.4.5	Seraphim The Caretaker.....	52
2.4.6	Cherubim The Guard To The Tree Of Life.....	53
2.4.7	Second Sphere Angels.....	54
2.4.8	Dominions, The Hierarchy Of Celestial Beings.....	54
2.4.9	Virtues Of Strongholds.....	55
2.4.10	Power Or Authorities.....	55
2.4.11	Third Sphere Angels.....	56
2.4.12	Principalities Or Rulers.....	56
2.4.13	Archangels Gabriel And Michael.....	57
2.4.14	Lowest Rank Angels.....	58
2.4.15	Angelic Agencies To Govern.....	60
2.4.16	Angelic Delegation.....	60
2.4.17	Angelic Guard To Protect.....	61
2.4.18	Angels Of The Seven Churches.....	62
2.4.19	Protocratic Forces Of Management.....	64
2.4.20	Protocratic Agents To Administrate.....	65
2.4.21	Protocratic Guardians From Eternity.....	65
2.5	Protocratics The Enduring Government Of The Creator.....	65
3	PHYSICAL DEMARCATION.....	67

3.1	The Triangle Of Abomination.....	67
3.2	The Koranic View Of Jesus Christ.....	69
3.3	Christianity In Moslem Lands Today.....	71
3.4	Jesus And Judaism.....	72
3.5	Jesus The Magician.....	74
3.6	The Talmud And The Jewish State.....	78
3.7	The Dual System In Israel.....	81
3.8	Popular Persecution.....	83
3.9	Persecution And Indifference.....	86
4	ISRAEL – A MODERN PERSPECTIVE.....	89
4.1	Promises By God.....	89
4.2	Condemnation And Sentencing Of Jesus Christ.....	90
4.3	The Siege Of Jerusalem And The Diaspora.....	90
4.4	Persecution Of The Jews.....	91
4.5	Establishment Of The State Of Israel And Return Of The Jews.....	92
4.6	Proposals For The Jewish State.....	92
4.7	Arab-Israeli Wars.....	93
4.8	Political Survival Of The Jewish State Of Israel.....	94
4.9	The Prophetic Future.....	95
4.9.1	The King Of The North: Russia (Daniel 2:31-35).....	95
4.9.2	The End Time.....	96
4.10	Visiting Israel.....	96
4.11	The Nations Of The World Grafted Into The Jews (Israel) (Romans 10:19-21) And (Romans 11:1-36).....	97
5	JEWISH RELIGION.....	99
6	ANCIENT ARCHAEOLOGY.....	102
6.1	Archaeology Of The New Testament.....	102
6.2	Archaeology Of Jericho In The Old Testament.....	105
7	THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD.....	107
7.1	THE SEVEN STARS IN THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD.....	111

7.2	THE FINGER OF GOD.....	113
8	TYPES AND ANTI-TYPES.....	114
9	WAR IN HEAVEN.....	127
9.1	The God Of This World.....	142
10	CONCLUSION.....	148

*CHAPTER 2: EXPOUNDING THE FEASTS, THE SABBATH AND  
SACRAMENTS ACCORDING TO THE WORD*

1	INTRODUCTION.....	151
2	THE FEASTS OF THE LORD.....	158
2.1	Feasts Through God's Perspective.....	158
2.2	The Feast Festivals.....	158
2.3	Everything In Scripture Is Connected.....	160
2.4	The Passover Feast.....	163
2.5	The Feast Of Of Unleavened Bread.....	165
2.6	The Feast Of The First Fruits.....	167
2.7	The Feast Of Pentecost (Savuot).....	169
2.8	The Feast Of The Trumpet.....	172
2.9	The Day Of Atonement (Yom Kippur).....	177
2.10	The Feast Of Tabernacles (Sukkot).....	179
3	THE SABBATH AS AN UNIQUE OCCASION.....	183
4	THE MYSTERY OF THE BLOOD AS SEEN IN COMMUNION.....	192
4.1	The Blood In The Spiritual World.....	192
4.1.1	The Contents Of The Blood.....	196
4.2	The Power Of The Blood Of Jesus.....	204
4.3	The Blood Has The Power To Open That, Which Is Impossible.....	206
4.4	The Finished Work Is Revealed In Each Way The Blood Was Shed.....	208
4.5	The Blood In The Sweat Of His Forehead.....	209

4.6	The Blood That Flowed From The Slaps And Blows That Disfigured His Face.....	209
4.7	The Blood Shed When Pieces Of His Beard Were Pulled Out.....	210
4.8	The Blood Shed During The Whipping That Tore His Back.....	211
4.9	The Blood Produced By The Crown Of Thorns.....	212
4.10	The Spirit And The Blood.....	213
4.11	The Authority In The Blood.....	213
4.11.1	Definition Of Authority.....	217
4.11.2	Etymology Of The Term “Authority”.....	219
4.11.3	God’s Authority Challenged.....	221
4.11.4	Basis For The Believer’s Authority.....	223
4.11.5	Authority In The Blood Of Jesus.....	228
4.12	Communion.....	229
4.12.1	Inheritance Trough Communion.....	229
4.12.2	Jesus Told Man To Eat My Flesh And Drink My Blood.....	230
4.12.3	What Is Communion Then?.....	231
4.12.4	Communion As A Spiritual Act.....	233
4.12.5	Blood In The Spiritual World.....	236
4.13	The Body Of Christ.....	239
4.14	How To Take Communion.....	243
5	REVEALING THE REFORMATION OF BAPTISM.....	245
5.1	John The Baptist.....	246
5.2	Baptism Of Jesus.....	248
5.3	Jesus Baptized Into Christ.....	250
5.4	Single Immersion.....	252
5.5	Submerged Twice.....	253
5.6	Immersed Into The Full Godhead.....	255
5.7	Baptism Through Water Cleansing.....	258
6	CONCLUSION.....	258

*CHAPTER 3: DECEPTION AS SEEN IN MISTRANSLATION AND  
INTERPRETATION OUT OF GOD'S WORD*

1	INTRODUCTION.....	265
2	BACKGROUND TO THE CONCEPT OF BIBLICAL HERMENEUTICS.....	270
2.1	Crossing The Meaning "Gap".....	271
2.2	Basic Assumptions Relating To The Truth Of The Gospel.....	273
2.2.1	The Supracultural Validity Of The Truth Of The Gospel.....	273
2.2.2	The Cross-Cultural Communicability Of The Gospel.....	267
2.3	Hermeneutical Patterns In Context.....	277
2.3.1	Public Meaning Pertaining To The Accepted Use Of Speech.....	277
2.3.2	The User's Meaning Within Latitude Of Correctness.....	278
2.3.3	Principles Involving Changes Of Meaning.....	278
3	REVEALING ESCHATOLOGICAL POSSIBILITIES.....	278
3.1	Trans Humanism As Fulfillment Of Matthew 24:37.....	279
3.1.1	An Alternative Reason Why The Watchers Blended DNA.....	285
3.1.2	Comparisons Between Nephilim And Trans Humanism.....	290
3.1.3	Trans Humanism As Fulfillment Of Revelation 13:16-17.....	292
3.1.4	Trans Humanism As Fulfillment Of Timothy 4:1-2 And Timothy 4:3.....	298
4	THE REVELATION OF THE SIGNS OF THE TIMES.....	304
4.1	Post Millennial Scoffers.....	305
4.2	Apostasy As Seen As The Act Of Rebellion.....	306
4.3	False Teachers Increasing In The "Last Days".....	306
4.4	Spiritualism Forsaking Christian Belief.....	307
4.5	Perilous Times As Grievous Times.....	307
4.6	Heaped Up Treasures In The "Last Days".....	308
4.7	A Laodicean Church.....	308
4.8	The Fig Tree Sign As The Sign Of The Second Coming.....	309
4.9	The Perplexity Of The Distress Of Nations.....	311



4.10	Noah Days.....	312
5	THE NEED FOR SPECIAL REVELATION.....	313
5.1	What Is Special Revelation?.....	313
5.2	The Forms Of Special Revelation.....	316
5.2.1	Theophany Through Revealing Himself.....	317
5.2.2	Dreams And Visions.....	318
5.2.3	Direct Communication.....	319
5.2.4	Negotiation Through Angels.....	321
5.2.5	Miracles Through Communication.....	322
5.2.6	The Person Of Christ.....	324
5.2.7	The Scriptures.....	326
6	AN OVERVIEW OF DECEPTION IN THE LAST DAYS.....	329
6.1	Revealing The Same Old Lie.....	329
6.2	Increasing Of Knowledge.....	330
6.3	As In The Days Of Lot.....	332
7	THE FINAL CONFLICT.....	332
7.1	The Interpretation Of Dreams.....	333
7.2	The Sequel Relationship.....	333
8	CONCLUSION.....	335

*CHAPTER 4: REVELATION OF THE MYSTERIES AND HIDDEN  
MEANING OF BIBLICAL SCRIPTURE*

1	INTRODUCTION.....	339
2	THE MYSTERIES.....	343
3	BIBLICAL HISTORY PERTAINING TO BABYLON, THE GREAT HARLOT.....	351
3.1	Mystery Babylon The Great (Revelation 17:1-18).....	351
3.2	Commercial Babylon The Great (Revelation 18: 1-24).....	359
3.3	The Judgment Of Babylon.....	369

3.4	Who Is This Religious Babylon.....	370
3.5	Victory Over Babylon Through Revelation Of The Seven Churches.....	371
3.5.1	The Message To The Church At EPHESUS (Revelation 2:1-7).....	372
3.5.2	The Message To The Church At SMYRNA (Revelation 2:8-11).....	373
3.5.3	The Message To The Church At PERGAMOS (Revelation 2:12-17).....	374
3.5.4	The Message To The Church At THYATIRA (Revelation 2:18-29).....	376
3.5.5	The Message To The Church At SARDIS (Revelation 3:1-6).....	379
3.5.6	The Message To The Church At PHILADELPHIA (Revelation 3:7-13).....	380
3.5.7	The Message To The Church At LAODICEA (Revelation 3:14-22).....	382
3.6	Biblical History Pertaining To Babylon.....	383
3.7	Basic Prayers Pertaining To The Previous Information.....	384
3.8	The Destruction Of Mystery Babylon.....	406
3.9	Mystery Babylon Identified As The Roman Catholic Church.....	415
3.10	The Tower Of Babel Revealed The Terrible Spiritual Warfare.....	418
3.11	Another Tower.....	425
3.11.1	Ancient Advanced Science And Did God Mean What He Said?.....	426
3.11.2	Daniel Fought The Gate Keeper.....	429
3.11.3	Forerunner Of The Nephilim Giants.....	430
3.11.4	The Father Of Nephilim And The Son Of Perdition.....	431
4	CONCLUSION.....	434

*CHAPTER 5: THE ULTIMATE EVIL AND DESTRUCTION AS REVEALED  
IN THE MYSTERY OF THE END TIME ANTICHRIST*

	SECTION A: THE ANTICHRIST.....	439
1	INTRODUCTION.....	439
2	THE ANTICHRIST OR THE "BEAST".....	440
3	THE EARTH PRIOR TO THE CREATION OF ADAM AND EVE.....	448
3.1	The Flood Of Lucifer Mentioned In The Old Testament.....	451

3.2	The Duration Of Lucifer Kingdom.....	457
3.3	Lucifer's Dominion Beyond The Earth And After Adam And Eve.....	460
3.4	Who Hinders The Antichrist?.....	464
3.5	What Signs Point To The Nearness Of The Rapture Of The Church?.....	466
4	THE RISE OF THE ANTICHRIST.....	470
4.1	Big Changes Around The Mediterranean Sea.....	471
4.1.1	The Formation Of The Roman Empire.....	475
4.2	The First Conquest Of The Antichrist.....	478
4.3	The Second Conquest Of The Antichrist.....	484
4.4	Where Will The United States Stand In Relation To The Antichrist?.....	486
4.5	The Antichrist's Frustration With Israel.....	491
4.6	The Technology Of The Antichrist Kingdom.....	495
4.7	Could The Antichrist Be A Modern-Day Nephilim?.....	498
4.8	The Final Conquest Of The Antichrist, And Second Advent Of Christ.....	502
4.9	The Momentous Second Coming Of The Antichrist.....	507
4.9.1	The Personality Of The Antichrist.....	508
5	CONCLUSION.....	512

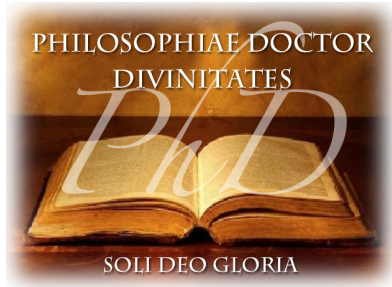
*CHAPTER 6: THE EXTRAORDINARILY AND POWERFUL QUESTION AS  
TO WHOM THE REAL JESUS CHRIST IS*

	SECTION A: RESEARCH PERTAINING TO THE IDENTITY OF JESUS CHRIST.....	527
1	INTRODUCTION.....	527
2	THE SHORT ANSWER.....	528
3	THE LONG ANSWER.....	529
4	WHAT IS THE PROBLEM?.....	532
5	GOD'S GOODBYE.....	534
6	MERCIFUL JUDGEMENT AND THE PARADOX OF LOVE.....	537
7	AMAZING GRACE.....	539

8	THE DIFFERENCE IT MAKES.....	541
9	BEYOND MERIT: HEALING OUR DIVISIONS.....	543
10	BIBLICAL WARFARE SEEING THE CROSS AS THE EPITOMBE.....	547
10.1	Some Keys To Understanding Occult Spirituality Regarding The Sin War Will Throw Light Onto The Darkness.....	567
11	SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND THE MINISTRY OF JESUS CHRIST.....	571
11.1	Exorcism In Jesus' Ministry.....	572
11.1.1	Casting Out Legion.....	573
11.1.2	Delivering A Demonized Child.....	580
	SECTION B: JESUS CHRIST OUR VICTOR.....	593
12	CHRISTUS VICTOR.....	593
12.1	The Victory Of The Cross.....	594
12.1.1	The Cosmic Significance Of The Cross.....	595
12.1.2	Subjugating The Enemy.....	598
12.1.3	Seating At The Right Hand Of God.....	603
12.1.4	From Glory To Glory.....	606
12.2	Deliverance From The Devil.....	611
12.2.1	Christ's Victory Applied To Us.....	612
13	CONCLUSION.....	617

-----o0o-----





## PROLEGOMENA

***Proverbs 25:4: Take away the dross from the silver, and there shall come forth a vessel for the refiner.***

***Proverbs 25:4(MKJV)***

In this thesis the central theme is the task of Biblical exegesis in both the Old and New Testament. An unholy trinity of revolutions has widened its sphere of influence over mankind in the twenty first century deepening its grip and ensuring that the future of mankind follows a predicted path.

One could be mistaken for assuming that these three revolutions are all random events, but with a little discernment one will begin to observe, that across all three revolutions is the same end goal. The deification of mankind or in other words, mankind attaining immortality and godhood status.

These three revolutions are genetic engineering, spiritual enlightenment and technology acceleration. All three may seem like independent strands yet beneath the mist that hides their footprint is a control center operating out of a spiritual plane (realm).

The Bible states that Satan is the god of this world and until he is overthrown at the Second Coming of Christ he will continue to use all manner of deception, rebellions, revolutions and ideologies to effect change within the world, which apparently will:

- Ultimately undermine any religion which holds to a system of monotheism;
- Attract mankind to the idea of being “gods” and;
- Ultimately lead to the rise of the future Antichrist.

The phrase “god of this world” (or “god of this age” [NKJV]) indicates that Satan is the major influence on the mind-set expressed by the ideals, opinions, goals, hopes and views of the majority of people. His areas of influence also encompass the world’s philosophies, education, and commerce - the goals of corporations. The thoughts, ideas, speculations and false religions of the world are under his control and have sprung from his lies and deceptions.

Satan's agenda includes pushing a false philosophy onto the unbelieving world - a false philosophy that blinds the unbeliever from the truth of the Gospel. Satan’s philosophies are the fortresses in which people are imprisoned, needing to be set free and brought captive to Christ in obedience to the Truth. There are various philosophies that originate from the pit of hell but ultimately they all lead back to the same lie.<sup>1</sup>

***And the serpent said to the woman, You shall not surely die,  
for God knows that in the day you eat of it, then your eyes shall be opened, and  
you shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.***

***Genesis 3:4-5(MKJV)***

God Himself is the Source of man’s knowledge of Him. To be sure, all truth is God’s truth. But that cliché should be more carefully stated and used than it generally is. Only true Truth comes from God, for since sin entered the stream of history man has created that which he calls truth but which is not. Furthermore, he has perverted, blunted, diluted, and corrupted that which was originally true Truth that did come from God. For humans today the only infallible canon for determining true Truth is the written Word of God. Nature, though it does reveal some things about God, is limited

---

<sup>1</sup> Global Watch Weekly Report (2013) Ye Shall Be As Gods. London: Published By Rema Marketing, p. 3.

and can be misread by mankind. The human mind, though often brilliant in what it can achieve, suffers limitations and darkening. Human experiences, even religious ones, lack reliability as sources of the true knowledge of God unless they conform to the Word of God.<sup>2</sup>

***If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also. And from now on you know Him and have seen Him.***

***John 14:7(KJV)***

*Historically*, the two avenues through which God has taken the initiative to reveal Himself have been labeled **general** and **special** revelation.

**General** revelation includes all that God has revealed in the world around us, including man, while **special** revelation includes various means He used to communicate His message in what was codified in the Bible.

**General** revelation is sometimes called **natural theology**, and **special** revelation is called **revealed theology**. But, of course, what is revealed in nature is also revealed in Theology. Some writers use the labels prelapsarian for general revelation and postlapsarian or soteric for special revelation. However, both **general** and **special** revelation is (a) from God and (b) about God.<sup>3</sup>

This proposed thesis will reveal that the Biblical view of God is that man should not try to determine good from evil by taking in knowledge (Gnosticism) because that is eating of the Tree of Good and Evil. For man to determine for himself right from wrong is called situational Ethics.

---

<sup>2</sup> Ryrie, C. Charles (1999) Basic Theology: A Popular Systematic Guide To Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago: Moody Publishers, p. 24.

<sup>3</sup> Ryrie, C. Charles (1999) Basic Theology: A Popular Systematic Guide To Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago: Moody Publishers, p. 28.



Rather than man pretending to be a god by declaring what is wrong by his own wisdom of Situational Ethics, man was to allow God to decide. The Creator had laid down physical, spiritual, and moral laws. However, the gift of choice was given to man. That was God's will. God allows for bad choices on man's part, including the option by man to reject his loving Creator and make up his own rules in contradiction to the Truth.

Therefore one might ask the question why does Satan encourage man to seek divinity? This proposed thesis deems to answer that Satan and the demons really hate the Creator and would like to destroy His Creation, further to show that seeking one's divinity aid in mankind's destruction.

In the last days chaos that originated from the tower of Babel will spread like a ravaging cancer over the face of the earth. Because of man's deception, and that he does not know the Truth through the **Word** of God, man because he wants to be like God, decided to follow the lineage of Satan with all its deceptions.

***And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He will bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel.***  
***Genesis 3:15(KJV)***

This deceptive Satanic World Power will come onto the stage vowing to set things right, to establish order out of chaos. Reality must be differentiated at all costs if one wants to be part of the future. The **truth/Truth** must prevail in all instances. Deception have been paving this way for many centuries bringing mankind into deception, lies, misguided mind-sets and setting the stage for self-worship, as Ephesians 5 declares:

***Let no man deceive you with vain words, for because of these things the wrath of God comes upon the children of disobedience.***  
***Ephesians 5:6(KJV)***

This proposed thesis would argue that the agenda of this misleading Adversary is designed to encourage wars (as one can see in Genesis 3: 15), racial issues, two-sided politics, money woes and a host of other types of deception. These depressing issues are intended to keep the average person from having time to investigate the evil plots and plans that are being devised daily to control mankind.

This thesis will look into the origin of words leading to deceptive ways regarding the Word of God showing the relevancy of the Adversary order in Post modern times. It will illuminate the satanic workings to keep mankind from stumbling into the dark and to light the Way for those who are lost.

This proposed thesis deems to illustrate that the ultimate goal of Darkness is to overthrow the incomparable and majestic One who sits on the throne of the Universe: Jesus Christ, Lord of lords and King of kings. This misleading Adversary is doomed to failure, to defeat the very powers of Heaven. Lucifer was apparently the name of the great Apostate and infamous Fallen star.

How extraordinary, how strange it is to even imagine the depths of blackness, which haunt the scarred souls of these men. What possible inducement and enchantment could make them do such a thing to rebel against the very God who created them and who loves them so much He gave His Son on the Cross for their sins.<sup>4</sup>

The purpose of this research thesis is to:

- Provide an overview of the deeper meaning and knowledge through a systematic review of the literature (past and present), thereby facilitating a better understanding of the scope and the implication of the Old and New Testament;

---

<sup>4</sup> Marrs, Texe (1996) Circle of Intrigue: The Hidden Inner Circle of the Global Illuminati Conspiracy. Living Truth Publishers. p. 37.

---

- Analyse the Old and New Testament from a Ethnographical, Phenomenological, Biblical, Historical and Ethical perspective;
- Educate Christians<sup>5</sup> and non-Christians as to the dangers and ramifications of participation in the Deception of Exegetical Deeper Meaning and Knowledge of Scripture;
- Document and expose the strategies used by the Adversary to lure and entrap people in this snare of lies and deception through misinterpretation of words.
- To analyse and study the Scripture-based worldview, based on the Old and New Testament Biblical scripture meanings.

The results of the proposed research thesis should benefit all Christians and non-Christian believers in several significant ways by:

- Shedding **LIGHT** on the **dark** and **sinister** identity of the Beast of this World and as revealed through the **Light** of the Gospel of Jesus Christ.

*in whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving ones, so that the light of the glorious gospel of Christ (who is the image of God) should not dawn on them.*

*II Corinthians 4:4*

- Exposing the teachings of the Occult as deceptive, thereby preventing others from stumbling into the **dark** and to **light** the way for those who are lost and cannot see the way out.
- Assisting people in identifying and implementing defence strategies against Satan and his Hierarchy.
- To educate, warn, rebuke, correct and encourage Christians and non-Christians of Jesus Christ to the urgent message of radical repentance and preparation in order to be found blameless at the coming of the Lord, in spirit, soul and body. (Philippians 2:15; Colossians 2:2; 4:8; 1 Thessalonians 4:17; 5:23).

---

<sup>5</sup> See Terms And Definitions.

- Unveiling the hidden secrets and mystery of God, which is Christ in us and walking and living in the Spirit; and to recognize this as the divine secret which unlocks all the divine depths of divine things, to unveil this mystery of godliness hidden through the ages and generations (Colossians 1:26-28).
- Become active partakers of and participants in the fulfilment of God's Kingdom victory on earth by transforming into the power and life of the Son of God.

Among all the peoples of antiquity, war was linked with religion. It was begun at the command of the gods, or at least with their approval, manifested by omens; it was accompanied by sacrifices and conducted with the help of the gods who ensured victory, for which they were thanked by an offering of part of the booty.

In antiquity, then, every war was a holy war, in the broad sense. More strictly, the Greeks gave the name of 'holy wars' (ιερούς πολέμους) to those, which the amphictyony of Delphi conducted against any of its members who had violated the sacred rights of Apollo. More strictly still, the holy war of Islam, the jihad, is the duty incumbent upon every Moslem to spread his faith by force of arms<sup>6</sup>.

The objectives of this research is to answer the following questions:

- What role does the exegetical deeper meaning and knowledge through the Old and New Testament play in the lives of Christian and Non – Christian?
- What is the role and power of symbolism in the Biblical context of the two trees pertaining to the Advisory Deception in Post Modern day and age?
- What part would self-worship play in the deeper meaning and knowledge of deception?
- Is there any Authority, which stands against the god of this World and power?

---

<sup>6</sup> De Vaux, Roland (1961) *Ancient Israel: Its Life And Institutions*. London: Published By Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co, p. 258.

---

- Since this proposed dissertation concerns Truth, the question arises: From which authority does this Truth arise?
- Why does Satan encourage man to seek divinity?
- How does seeking one's divinity aid in mankind's destruction?
- What is the Biblical truth concerning Situational Ethics?
- What are the criteria for entering the New Jerusalem?

This proposed thesis would examine several interlocking hypotheses. **The first hypothesis** that this proposed thesis will prove is that the New Age movement in recent years has been touted by many as the spiritual rebirth of modern man. However this popular movement is just one phase of a broad agenda, which is only now coming fully into view. It will show that the pieces have been shifting into place for a quantum leap more radical than the one that replaced the Dark Ages with the Age of Reason. Some scholars agree that a momentous global event is upon us.

**The second hypothesis** will reveal the struggle between God's value system and man's. Since this proposed dissertation concerns Truth the following question will be answered: From which Authority is this Truth derived? It deems to attest that there is Only One authority, which stands against Biblical scripture meanings in postmodern day and age. Christ told us that Satan's Kingdom is not divided against itself or it could not continue functioning.

This proposed thesis will show in **the third hypothesis** that intensive research and knowledge pertaining to overt as well as covert sources in the Exegetical deeper meaning and knowledge Systems will reveal that Satan's Kingdom is indeed one monolithic, coordinated power structure.

This proposed thesis states the following: **Expounding The Exegetical Reality And Hidden Meaning Of Biblical Scripture As Seen In Both The Old And New Testament**

---

This proposed thesis endeavours to defend and prove that it is of great essence for Christians called to this specific assignment of revealing the spiritual and physical entities belonging to the Kingdom of Darkness to have a deep personal relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ – and to be led by unction of His Holy Spirit.

The proposed research thesis does not aim to be an exhaustive treatment and critique of the Deeper Meaning and knowledge, much less have the larger and more diffuse Occultism.

Rather than elaborate in great detail upon the many rites, rituals, myths, practices, names, or paraphernalia employed in ancient and contemporary Deeper Meaning and knowledge, this research aims to provide only the minimal amount of information needed to establish the facts.

The primary purpose is to expound, as necessary, the basic practices, beliefs and worldviews of contemporary Deeper Meaning and Knowledge Order and then analyze the findings in an apologetic analysis. The proposed research will be done from an exegetical point of view.

This proposed thesis is not an attack on individual religious or philosophical beliefs, accept where necessary to turn people from the false Authority to THE ONE AND ONLY GOD.

The primary purpose of this thesis is to confirm the fact that God is in control of every life form, be it spiritual, soul and physical body and that God leaves humankind to make certain choices by themselves. Further, the thesis shall confirm Christ's Grace and forgiveness to all those who repent from their sin's and turn back the God. Commentary on the relevance of a Hebraic mind-set to understand the symbols and cycle of events in the New Testament.

In constructing this research project, executing the research and analysing the data, a broad and deep body of literature was considered. This literature crosses disciplines, including Archaeology, Numerology, Pre-History and History, Religious studies, Sociology, Symbology and Theology.<sup>7</sup>

While an exhaustive account of all the relevant literature in these disciplines would be a dissertation-size undertaking in and of itself, it is instructive to examine only some of the key texts, theories and concepts, which inform and underpin this proposed research. Such an examination also helps put this project in a larger scholarly and ethnographic context.

Research methodology is the general approach the researcher takes in carrying out the research project; to some extent, this approach dictated the particular tools the researcher selects. A combination of diverse qualitative designed methodology types is intended to be used such as Ethnography, Hermeneutics, Historical analysis, Phenomenology, Sociology, Symbology and Theology. However quantitative design types will be used to examine some social work.

Ethnography is a well-known form of qualitative research and comes largely from the field of Anthropology. The goal of ethnographic research is to tell the whole story of the group's daily life, to identify the cultural meanings, beliefs and patterns of that group.

Biblical hermeneutics is part of the broader hermeneutical question, relating to the problem of how one is to understand Holy Scripture. By definition, this is a theological act, i.e., part of the discourse of a faith community.

---

<sup>7</sup> See Terms And Definitions.

Theological hermeneutics as traditional Christian Biblical exegesis, considers hermeneutics in the tradition of explication of the text, or exegesis, to deal with various principles that can be applied to the study of Scripture.

Important reasons for conducting historical analysis include:

- To uncover the unknown and to answer questions.
- To identify the relationship that the past has to the present.
- To assist in understanding the culture in which people live.

Phenomenology is sometimes considered a philosophical perspective as well as an approach to qualitative methodology. It has a long history in several research disciplines including Psychology, Sociology and Social work.

Phenomenology is a school of thought that emphasised a focus on people's subjective and interpretations of the world.

Basically, phenomenology studies the structures of various types of experience ranging from perception, thought, memory, imagination, emotion, desire and volition to bodily awareness, embodied action and social activity.

The academic report is audience oriented:

- It will demonstrate in-depth understanding of the topic.
- Answers reader's important questions about the topic.
- Defines the terms and concepts the readers need to know.
- Uses language the reader will understand.
- Uses persuasion, not undocumented assertions, to argue the topic.
- The reports will use peer reviewed publications or other reliable, credible, sources to support ideas.



The approaches will be as follows:

Scientific knowledge will be gained through observation and studies of various fields. Qualitative research can be defined as research conducted, using a range of methods, which uses qualifying words and descriptions to recorded and investigate aspects of social reality. In general, qualitative research is used to “answer questions about complex nature of phenomena, often with the purpose of describing and understanding the phenomena from the participants’ point of view”<sup>8</sup>. The qualitative approach is also referred to as the interpretive, constructivist, or anti-positivist approach.

Interpretivism, or the qualitative approach, is a way to gain insights through discovering meanings by improving our comprehensions of the whole. Qualitative research explores the richness, depth and complexity of phenomena.<sup>9</sup>

### **Assumptions of Interpretivism as Research Paradigm**

The underlying assumptions of interpretivism, or the qualitative research paradigm are based on a “world view” characterized by:<sup>10</sup>

- There is not a single reality but multiple realities.
- These realities are based on perceptions that are different for each person and differ over time and place.
- What we know has meaning only with a given situation or context.
- The whole needs to be examined in order to understand social phenomena.
- Each type of qualitative research is guided by particular stances that are taken in relation by the research to each phenomenon.

---

<sup>8</sup> Leedy And Ormrod (2005:94) In [Upetd.up.ac.za/thesis/available/etd – 05162010-003943/.../02\\_Chapters3-4.pdf](http://upetd.up.ac.za/thesis/available/etd-05162010-003943/.../02_Chapters3-4.pdf).

<sup>9</sup> Straus & Corbin (1990) in <http://wilderdom.com/OEcourses/Proflit/Class6Qualitative1.htm>.

<sup>10</sup> Burns & Grove (1993) in <http://www.frprtunecity.com/greenfield/grizzly/432/tra3.htm>; O’Brien in <http://wilderdom.com/OEcourses/Proflit/Class6Qualitative1.htm>.

Qualitative research is concerned with developing explanations of social phenomena. It aims to help us understand the world in which we live and why things are the way they are. It is concerned with the social aspects of our world and seeks to answer questions about: why do people behave the way they do; how opinions and attitudes are formed; how and why cultures have developed in the way they have, and what changes can be implemented to change human mind patterns, and attitudes and behaviour.

Historical research is the process of systematically examination past events to give an account of what has happened in the past. It is important to mention here that a historical analysis is not merely an accumulation of facts, but rather a congruent, dynamic account of past events. A comprehensive historical analysis involves an interpretation of these events in an attempt to recapture the nuances, social and cultural tendencies and thought patterns that influenced these events and people's behaviour during these historical periods.

Important reasons for conducting historical research include:

- To uncover the unknown and to answer key questions.
- To identify the relationship that the past has to the present events, though patterns and behaviour – individually and on a collective basis (i.e. knowing about the past can frequently give a more insightful and comprehensive perspective of current events, ideas and behaviour).
- To record and evaluate previous accomplishments of individuals, agencies or institutions (such as the church).
- To assist in current understanding of spiritual, cultural and social realities in which we live.

Biblical Hermeneutics (or interpretations of exegetical truth) is part of the broader Hermeneutical question, relating to the problem of how one is to understand Holy

Scripture. By definition, this is a theological act, i.e. part of the discourse of a faith-community. This does not mean that it is of no relevance to those who do not consider themselves to be part of that community, but rather that it is an issue that arises out of the particular needs of a community.

Of vital importance for the purpose of this research thesis study is to clearly distinguish between Hebrew Hermeneutics and Babylonian-Roman-Greek Hermeneutics (generally called Greek Hermeneutics). It should be noted here that the Bible (both Old and New Testament) is, in its entirety, highly Hebraic.

In spite of the fact that portions of the New Testament were communicated in Greek, the background is thoroughly Hebrew.

The writers are Hebrew, the traditions are Hebrew, and the concepts are Hebrew. The assumption that the entire New Testament was originally communicated in Greek has led to a considerable amount of misunderstanding. This resulted in the dilemma that most scholars of the Scripture innocently and unknowingly approach the Scriptures from the Greek perspective.

To this present day there has been in New Testament studies a disproportionate stress placed on the study of Greek and Hellenism. If any additional advances are to be made, especially in better understanding the words of Jesus, the concentration must shift to the study of Hebrew History and culture and above all, the Hebrew language.<sup>11</sup>

In this thesis the purpose of this study and the proper translation and understanding of Scripture, Hebrew hermeneutics will be used. This, however, requires a willingness to go back to the original Hebrew text and research of key words and phrases. An understanding of the ancient Hebrew culture is necessary, as content

---

<sup>11</sup> Klein, John & Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation Series (Volume 1): Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, Bend, Oregon, USA: Zondervan Publishing House.

without context is simply not enough. This hermeneutic approach will thus underpin the research process of this thesis.

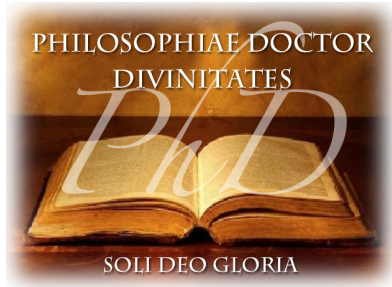
This thesis will reveal that the Knowledge of Truth will set you free from your fleshly desires. Satan's power will be broken on the firm grip that he's holding against the human race that dated back from the very beginning. Will his despicable plot succeed in today's Post-modern day and age?

***And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.***

***John 8:32(KJV)***

-----oOo-----





## CHAPTER ONE

### EXEGETICAL REALITY AND DEMARCATION OF PLACES SPIRITUAL AND PHYSICAL

***The faith of Moses was an expectant faith, a faith that looked to the reward. Moses believed in the promises which God had given to Abraham and his people, the promised seed and the promised land.***

***By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called to go out into a place which he was afterward going to receive for an inheritance. And he went out, not knowing where he went.***

***By faith he lived in the land of promise as in a strange country, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs of the same promise with him.***

***For he looked for a city which has foundations, whose builder and maker is God.***

***Hebrews 11:8-10(MKJV)***

## 1 INTRODUCTION

This Hypothesis will be looking at much of that information which directly challenges orthodoxy: information, which upsets the comfortable, but confining, boundaries of the postmodern world. One will look at evidence suggesting design in evolution; at discoveries indicating the existence of very ancient technology; of remnants suggesting that human beings existed millions<sup>1</sup> of years before the present human culture emerging in lands no longer available for archaeological study, the later according to Baigent<sup>2</sup>. Moving into the mystical side of life and world, this thesis will look at evidence, both ancient and modern, concerning the timeless mystery of death

---

<sup>1</sup> This author dare to differ on the above mentioned presumption.

<sup>2</sup> Baigent, Michael (1999) Ancient Traces Mysteries In Ancient And Early History. Australia: Published In Penquin Books p. xv.

and rebirth. The question arises whether mankind truly have lived before? Increasingly, data is emerging to lead us to answer 'yes'.

All too often man fall into the trap of thinking that people know everything about this world. This thesis has gathered together information, which reminds of covert and unexpected circumstances that is unknown to the majority of humankind.

Fred Dickason stated<sup>3</sup> That: Genesis 1 states that God created all things on earth, even the crown of creation, man. Since man was not present to behold the creative act, the fact of man's creation is a matter of revelation. The creation of angels is also a matter of God's disclosure. (Psalm 148) indicates that the angels with all their hosts (armies), along with the sun, moon, stars, and all heavenly expanses, are God's creative products.

***Praise Him, all His angels; praise Him, all His hosts.***

***Praise Him, sun and moon; praise Him, all stars of light.***

***Praise Him, heavens of heavens, and waters that are above the heavens.***

***Let them praise the name of the LORD; for He commanded, and they were created.***

***Psalms 148:2-5(MKJV)***

(John 1:1-3) teaches that the Lord Jesus Christ, the eternal Word, created all things. He acted as God's creative agent, for "*all things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being*" (John 1:3). Logically this would include angels.

***In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.***

***He was in the beginning with God.***

---

<sup>3</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 27-31.

**All things came into being through Him, and without Him not even one thing came into being that has come into being.**

**John 1:1-3(MKJV)**

However, the apostle Paul specifically declares that Christ, who is Himself God, is the Creator of all things, including angels. The eternal Son of God was the cause of every creature: **"For by Him all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or Authorities all things have been created by Him and for Him"** (Colossians 1:16). The similar terminology applied to angelic creatures in (Ephesians 6:12) and (Romans 8:38) allows man to interpret Paul as declaring that Christ created all angels. They find their origin in Him and depend upon Him for their continuance and welfare. He is their sovereign.

Scripture implies that the angels were all created at or near the same time. The Greek tense (aorist) of the word translated *"created"* (Colossians 1:16) may indicate an act or a culmination of a series of acts completed in time past. Angels are not eternal as is God alone. They certainly did not evolve, nor were they formerly men, for they were created as *angels*. Each angel is a direct creation from God, for they do not procreate as humans do (Matthew 22:28-30).

Perhaps this is why they are sometimes called *"the sons of God"* (Job 1:6; 2:1). The word *sons* seems to indicate a direct creation of God, as Adam is the son of God (Luke 3:38), and believers are recreated in Christ individually as *"sons of God"* (cf. Galatians 3:26; Ephesians 2:8-10; 4:24). The exact time of their creation is not certain, but we know that *"all the sons of God shouted for joy"* at the creation of the earth (Job 38:7, cf. vv. 4-7), and that Satan, an angelic creature, appears in the Genesis 3 scene. From this we deduce that God created all angels before He created the earth.

The method of their creation seems to be by direct command or fiat of God. In Psalm



148:2 angels are commanded to praise God, and they are included with other creations in verse 5: "Let them praise the name of the Lord, for He commanded and they were created." The language is similar to the direct creations of Genesis 1, marked by "And God said."

The primary purpose for the creation of angels was that they might glorify God and His Christ, for they were created *"for Him"* (Colossians 1:16). The creatures of (Revelation 4:6-11), probably angels of highest nature and rank, confess that they, with all things, were created for God's pleasure and to ascribe to Him glory and honor and power.

***And a sea of glass was in front of the throne, like crystal. And in the midst of the throne, and around the throne, were four living creatures, full of eyes in front and behind.***

***And the first living creature was like a lion, and the second living creature like a calf, and the third living creature had the face of a man, and the fourth living creature like a flying eagle.***

***And each one of the four living creatures had six wings about him, and within being full of eyes. And they had no rest day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God, the Almighty, who was and is and is to come.***

***And whenever the living creatures gave glory and honor and thanks to Him who sat on the throne, who lives forever and ever,***

***the twenty-four elders fell down before the One sitting on the throne. And they worshiped Him who lives for ever and ever, and threw their crowns before the throne, saying,***

***O Lord, You are worthy to receive glory and honor and power, because You created all things, and for Your will they are and were created.***

***Revelation 4:6-11(MKJV)***

In their intricate natures, angels reflect the creative wisdom and power of God (cf. Ezekiel 28:12-15 Many regard this as referring to Satan, the highest of angels. See pp. 127-29). In their activities they worship and serve God in the administration of His will (Hebrews 1:7). They execute His commands with swift obedience and delight.

All angels were created good and holy, just as God made and pronounced all His

creation good (Genesis 1:31; 2:3). It is inconsistent with God's character that He could directly create anything wicked. It may be that all the angels ("*all the sons of God*," Job 38:7), even those who later rebelled with Satan, were yet holy and rejoiced in God's creation of the material world. God's angels are specifically termed "holy" (Mark 8:38).

Not only were they holy in nature, but they were surrounded by every good thing and influenced by every holy thing. They were not holy creatures in an evil or even amoral atmosphere, but holy ones in a positively holy atmosphere. They enjoyed God's presence (Matthew 18:10) and heaven's environment (Mark 13:32). This made the rebellion of some the more sinful. There are now two moral classes of angels: the elect, who remained loyal to God (1 Timothy 5:21), and the evil, who followed Satan in his rebellion against God (Matthew 25:41). But originally, all were created good and holy.

All creatures, including angels and men, were made to serve God. All are privileged, limited, and responsible in all things to Him.

*Angels had great privileges.* Originally all angels had the joy of knowing God in a holy relationship. They were His sons by direct creation, and He was their Creator-Father. Each one bore the creative marks of an individual, with probably no two being alike. They had the pleasure of knowing God and worshiping Him in the joy of their relationship and in the beauty of holiness (Psalm 148:1-2). At His bidding, they would congregate before Him (Job 1:6; 2:1). They beheld in wonder His creative works (Job 38:7) and were granted the inestimable privilege of serving the God all creation as quickly as wind and as fervently as fire (Hel 1:7). They undoubtedly were given some insight concerning God's purpose and program of the ages.

*Angels have certain limitations.* One limitation is that of space. Since an angel is a creature, he cannot, as does God alone, possess omnipresence. Angels are primarily

spirit in nature, yet they cannot be all places, or even many places, at once. An angel move spatially from one location to another (Daniel 9:21-23), and this involves the lapse of time and, on occasions, (Daniel 10:10-14). Angels, then, are localized.

Another limitation is that of power. Of course, only God is omnipotent. God can by unlimited power speak and have His will done. But angels, though greater in power than man (2 Peter 2:11) and by God's power controlling even some elements of nature (Revelation 7:1; 16:8-9), are limited in authority (Job 1:12; 2:6). They are sometimes taxed in the accomplishment their duties, as in the struggle of elect with evil angels (Revelation 12:7), and they stand in need of assistance (Daniel 10:13).

Angels are also limited in intellect. Mighty as they are wisdom, inherent and acquired, they do not compare with God and are in need of His revelation, as concerns the hour of Christ's return (Matthew 24:36). They are amazed and seek to through investigation something of the marvels of salvation (1 Peter 1:11-12).

They are limited in holiness. Theirs was not absolute and unshakable as is God's, for some fell into sin and bondage through defection from God's will (Isaiah 14:12; Revelation 12:3-4).

*Angels are responsible to God.* As creatures, they must answer the Creator. Moral laws govern God's society of intelligent creatures. Failure and rebellion require judgment. If Satan highest of all creatures, has been and shall be judged, then lesser angels are answerable to God (cf. Ezekiel 28; Matthew 25:41; John 16:11).

In Judeo-Christian History Angels is a medium of Gods Power and they exist to execute Gods will in judgments. The technology used by Angels is far superior to that of mankind. To us we would call it supernatural phenomena but it is **advanced** nevertheless. Because 1/3 of angels became fallen this triggered **a cosmic war** to capture human souls. X-Phenomena is a "*no hold back*" approach to revealing full

details of this conflict.

Throughout the history of Christianity, angels have played a major role. The roots of this tradition go back to early Judaism, where angels performed a variety of functions, as is clear from the following texts from Scripture. After Adam and Eve were banished from paradise, “at the east of the garden of Eden He placed the cherubim and a sword flaming and turning to guard the way to the tree of life as seen in (Genesis 3):

***And He drove out the man. And He placed cherubs at the east of the garden of Eden, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to guard the way to the tree of life.***

***Genesis 3:24(MKJV)***

In the time of the patriarchs, when God directed Abraham to sacrifice his son:

***And they came to the place which God had told him of. And Abraham built an altar there and laid the wood in order. And he bound his son Isaac and laid him on the altar, on the wood.***

***And Abraham stretched out his hand and took the knife to slay his son.***

***And the Angel of Jehovah called to him from the heavens and said, Abraham! Abraham! And he said, Here am I.***

***And He said, Do not lay your hand on the lad, nor do anything to him. For now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only one, from Me.***

***Genesis 22:9-12(MKJV)***

## **ANGELS MENTIONED IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**

Each of the various types of literature in the Old Testament has its own concerns, and angels appear in the texts in ways appropriate to each. Those books that narrate the great acts of God (Genesis, Exodus, Numbers, Judges, 1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings) contain numerous references to angels. In these books, especially at key points, God reveals Himself and acts on behalf of His people. Sometimes He does this directly, sometimes in the person of an angel. Often the distinction between

God's action and the angel's is blurred to the point that they seem synonymous (Genesis 19:13, 24; Exodus 3:2, 4).

***For we will destroy this place because great is the cry of them before the face of the LORD. And the LORD has sent us to destroy it.***

***Genesis 19:13(MKJV)***

***Then the LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire, from the LORD out of the heavens.***

***Genesis 19:24(MKJV)***

The angel's function as messenger or agent of God is acted out in terms of proclamation: revealing the will of God and/or announcing key events (Genesis 19:1-22; Exodus 3:2-6; Judges 2:1-5; 13:2-23); protection: ensuring the well-being or survival of God's people (Exodus 14:19, 20; 1 Kings 19:1-8); and punishment: enforcing the wrath of God on the wicked among the Jews and the Gentiles (Genesis 19:12-13; 2 Samuel 24:17; 2 Kings 19:35). In addition, some passages reflect popular ideas about angels (2 Samuel 14:17, 20), which the text records but does not necessarily, affirm.

In the books of the prophets, angels rarely are mentioned. The most prominent exceptions are the heavenly visions of Isaiah and Zechariah. The reason for the absence is most likely that God is conceived as acting directly in relation to His people, and the messengers of God in these books are the prophets themselves.

The books of poetry and wisdom are expressions directed from humanity toward God or from a person(s) to other persons. Thus it is not surprising that angels (who figure in God to humanity communication) play a very small role in these books.

## **ANGELS MENTIONED IN THE NEW TESTAMENT**

Much of the pattern observed in the Old Testament is repeated in the New. The majority of references to angelic activity are in the narrative books (the Gospels and Acts). The epistles include only some brief references to angels; several books do

not mention them specifically at all. Hebrews with its lengthy contrast between Jesus and the angels is exceptional (Hebrews 1:3; 2:16). The Apocalypse of John in its visionary nature, apocalyptic style, and reference to angels is comparable to parts of Daniel, Zechariah, and Isaiah.

The basic tasks of proclamation, protection, and punishment are again the focus (Matthew 1:20-24; 4:11; Acts 12:7-11) while references to the nature of angels are very brief. What is perhaps most remarkable is what the New Testament texts do not say about angels. The interbiblical period, under Persian and Greek influences, had seen an explosion of speculation about angels. Angels (or comparable spiritual beings) in detailed hierarchies came to be understood by many as necessary mediators between God and humanity. Knowing the names, ranks, and how to manipulate these lesser spiritual beings enabled one to gain blessings in this life and attain the level of the divine in the next.

The New Testament texts contain no developed angelic hierarchy and do not present angels as semi-independent lesser gods. Angels are not used to explain the existence of evil, nor are they needed as intermediaries or as agents of revelation.

## **HAND OF GOD**

James Newell stated<sup>4</sup> that: HAND Part of the human body, namely the terminal part of the arm, which enables a person to make and use tools, and perform functions. The Greek and Hebrew words that are translated by the English word "*hand*" appear approximately 1800 times in the Bible. Of these occurrences to which "*hand*" is referred, the literal sense is intended some 500 times, and the figurative sense some 1300 times.

The references to "*hand*" in the Bible often encompassed the idea of parts of a hand. Thus, in (Genesis 41:42), when Pharaoh took his signet ring "*from his hand*" and

---

<sup>4</sup> Newell, James [Article: Hand] - Holman Bible Dictionary.

placed it *“upon Joseph's hand”* *“hand”* was used in the place of *“finger”* Likewise, in (Ezekiel 23:42), hand was used to mean wrists: *“... which put bracelets upon their hands”* The context in which the word appears determines the meaning and usage of the word.

The largest number of figurative uses of *“hand”* relate to God. The *“hand of God”* or *“in thine hand”* is an idiom referring to the supreme and almighty power and authority of God (1 Chronicles. 29:12). In (Isaiah 59:1), God's hand was described as mighty. (Exodus 13:3-16) described God's deliverance of Israel from Egypt by His *“strong hand.”* The creative work of God involved the use of His hands to make the heavens and the earth (Psalms 8:6; 95:5). God uses His hand to uphold and guide the righteous (Psalms 37:24; 139:10). Punishment and affliction come from the hand of God (Exodus 9:3; Deuteronomy 2:15; Judges 2:15; 1 Samuel 7:13; 12:15; Ruth 1:13).

The hand of God can be upon someone in either a good or bad sense. In a good sense, it meant to bring aid, while the negative connotation meant to hinder or distress (Amos 1:8). The phrase *“into someone's hand”* was used figuratively to convey the idea of authority involving responsibility, care, or dominion over someone or something (Genesis 9:2). Examples of this concept include: Sarah's authority over Hagar (Genesis 16:6,9), Joseph's administration of Potiphar's house (Genesis 39:3-8), and the role of Moses and Aaron as leaders of Israel (Numbers 33:1). Victory and deliverance were portrayed also by the use of this phrase. *“Victory over someone”* was conveyed by the phrase *“delivered into hand of”* (Genesis 49:8; Joshua 6:2), while deliverance was understood as *“out of the hand of”* (Exodus 3:8).

Biblical writers to identify certain uses of the word often used functions of the hand. Since a person takes possession of objects with the hand, the Biblical writers adapted *“hand”* to mean possession. A literal translation of Genesis 39:1 would include the statement that Potiphar brought Joseph *“from the hand of the*

*Ishmaelite's*" In (1 Kings 11:31), Jeroboam was told that the Lord was about to tear the kingdom "from the hand" of Solomon. "To give the hand" meant that one had pledged or submitted to another, as in (2 Kings 10:15) and (Ezra 10:19).

Submission to the Lord is implied in (2 Chronicles 30:8), where "yield to" is literally, "give hand to" "To stretch the hand" was used to convey two thoughts: attacking the enemy in battle (Joshua 8:19,26) and an intense desire for communion with God (Psalms 143:6).

Work or the action in which one is involved is expressed by the words "works of thy hand" (Deuteronomy 2:7; 30:9). In (1 Samuel 23:16) Jonathan's helping David is literally, "he strengthened his hand in God," that is increased his faith and hope in God's help.

The Hebrew phrase "high hand" indicated willful rebellion against God (Numbers 15:30; see Deuteronomy 32:27) but also military power (Exodus 14:8; Micah 5:9). A similar image is projected by the phrase "shaking the hand" (Isaiah 10:32; 11:15).

The movement of the hand was interpreted as a sign of contempt and displeasure, or lack of respect. When used in reference to God, it symbolized God's warning and punishment.

Hebrew "to fill the hand" expressed the consecration of a priest (Judges 17:5) or a congregation's dedication (2 Chronicles 29:31). The word "hand" was used in a number of specialized ways. It came to mean "side," perhaps because of the location of the hands and arms on the body.

A peculiar use was that of hand for "monument" (1 Samuel 15:12). The spreading of the hands denoted a large "space" (Genesis 34:21). The numerous passages in the



Bible in which “hand” appears are evidence of the significance of the term. “Hand” is most often associated with power, the power of God as well as of man.

### **MYSTERY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT<sup>5</sup>**

The New Testament uses the word mystery about twenty-five times, once in the Gospels (Mark 4; compare Matthew 13; Luke 8), twenty-one times in Paul's writings, and a few times in Revelation.

*And He said to them, To you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God. But to those outside, all these things are given in parables*

*Mark 4:11(MKJV)*

*He answered and said to them, Because it is given to you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of Heaven, but it is not given to them.*

*Matthew 13:11(MKJV)*

*And He said, To you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God. But to others I speak in parables, so that seeing they might not see and hearing they might not understand.*

*Luke 8:10(MKJV)*

The term has several facets all of which cannot be discussed here, but it is clear that the New Testament usage differs from that of the mystery religions. The mystery of the New Testament has been described as an “open secret”; matters previously kept secret in God's eternal purposes have now been or are being revealed (Ephesians 3; 1 Corinthians 2:).

*that by revelation He made known to me the mystery (as I wrote before in few words,*

*by which, when you read, you may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)*

*which in other ages was not made known to the sons of men, as it is now revealed to His holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit,*

*Ephesians 3:3-5(MKJV)*

---

<sup>5</sup> Holman Bible Dictionary – [Article: Mystery Religions].

***But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, which God has hidden, predetermining it before the world for our glory;***

***which none of the rulers of this world knew (for if they had known, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory).***

***1 Corinthians 2:7-8(MKJV)***

In contrast to the mystery religions, the mystery of the New Testament appears in the historical activity of the person of Jesus Christ (Colossians 2; Ephesians 1); the indwelling Christ is the hope of glory (Colossians 1).

***that their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and to all riches of the full assurance of the understanding, to the full knowledge of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;***

***Colossians 2:2(MKJV)***

***having made known to us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He purposed in Himself,***

***Ephesians 1:9(MKJV)***

***the mystery which has been hidden from ages and from generations, but now has been revealed to His saints.***

***For to them God would make known what are the riches of the glory of this mystery among the nations, which is Christ in you, the hope of glory,***

***Colossians 1:26-27(MKJV)***

The mystery is received spiritually (Ephesians 3) and manifested in the proclamation of the gospel (Ephesians 6). Part of the mystery involves the disclosure that Gentiles share in the blessings of the gospel (Ephesians 2).

***by which, when you read, you may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)***

***Ephesians 3:5: which in other ages was not made known to the sons of men, as it is now revealed to His holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit,***

***Ephesians 3:4-5(MKJV)***

***And pray for me, that utterance may be given to me, that I may open my mouth boldly to make known the mystery of the gospel,***

***Ephesians 6:19(MKJV)***

***Therefore remember that you, the nations, in time past were in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands;***

***and that at that time you were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world.***

***But now in Christ Jesus you who were once afar off are made near by the blood of Christ.***

***Ephesians 2:11-13(MKJV)***

## **2 THE REALITY OF THE ANGELS OF GOD**

According to Baxter<sup>6</sup> this is a true account of an experience that happened. Once again, the angel of the Lord came to him and said, "Behold, the glory of your God.

### **2.1 The Reality And Existence Of God's Angels**

The fact that angels exist is as certain as the fact that God exists. The Bible reveals the certainty of each. Though angelology is not a cardinal doctrine, its acceptance opens the mind to a better understanding of the Bible, God's plan of the ages, the Christian life and ministry, as well as world conditions and course of affairs.

#### **2.1.1 Old Testament Witnessing By The Books Of Law**

Fred Dickason stated<sup>7</sup> that: The word *angel* appears thirty-two times in the writings of Moses. Hagar was comforted by the Angel of Jehovah (Genesis 16-21). Abraham conversed and ate with angels, and two angels delivered Lot and his family from Sodom before the fire fell (Genesis 18-19).

---

<sup>6</sup> Baxter, Mary K. (1984) A Divine Revelation Of Heaven. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 133.

<sup>7</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 19.

Jacob dreamed of angels ascending and descending upon a ladder to heaven (Genesis 28), a dream recognized by the Lord Jesus (John 1:51).

***And he dreamed. And behold! A ladder was set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to Heaven! And behold! The angels of God were ascending and descending on it!***

***Genesis 28:12(MKJV)***

***And He said to him, Truly, truly, I say to you, Hereafter you shall see Heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.***

***John 1:51(MKJV)***

Jacob also wrestled with an angel and was crippled, yet he held on until he received God's blessing and a new name, Israel (Genesis 32:24-28; Hosea 12:2-4).

In Exodus, Moses was called by the Angel of Jehovah to deliver Israel from Egypt (3:2, 10), and an angel led Moses and the Israelites through the wilderness journeys (14:19; 23:20).

## **2.1.2 Biblical History Books**

Fred Dickason stated<sup>8</sup> that: The word *angel* appears about thirty-seven times in the books of Joshua, Judges, 1 and 2 Samuel, 2 Kings, and 1 and 2 Chronicles. Most occurrences are in Judges where the Angel of Jehovah, who is more than an angel, conversed with Gideon and Manoah.

In (2 Samuel 14:20; 19:27), King David is compared in comfort, wisdom, and power to an angel of God. An angel smote David's people in judgment when David in pride took a census of his army (2 Samuel 24).

---

<sup>8</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) *Angels, Elect & Evil*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 20.

From the account here and from the parallel in (1 Chronicles 21), we note that it was Satan who tempted David to sin, and it seems it was the Angel of the Lord who executed the judgment and then directed David to build an altar on the future site of the temple.

### **2.1.3 Biblical Prophets**

In the major prophets, Isaiah makes two references to the Angel of Jehovah as defending Israel and defeating her enemies (Isaiah 37:36; 63:9).

***Then the angel of the LORD went out and struck a hundred and eighty-five thousand in the camp of Assyria. And they rose early in the morning, and behold! They were all dead corpses.***

***Isaiah 37:36(MKJV)***

Again, this is not an ordinary angel. He also refers to seraphim (6:2), but does not use the term *angel* of them.

***Above it stood the seraphs; each one had six wings; with two he covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew.***

***Isaiah 6:2MKJV)***

Jeremiah and Ezekiel do not use the word *angel*, but Ezekiel does mention the cherubim (10:1-3, 6-8, etc.). Angels intervened in the record of Daniel to deliver the Hebrew children from the fiery furnace and Daniel from the mouths of lions (Daniel 3, 6). Gabriel, who later appears in Luke 1, appears first to Daniel with a revelation of the future of Israel (Daniel 9:20-27).

Michael the archangel (Jude 9) is identified as "*one of the chief princes*" (Daniel 10:13), and he stands as Israel's principal defender

### **2.1.4 The Books Of Poetry**

Fred Dickason stated<sup>9</sup> that: Job and Psalms contribute to our knowledge of good and evil angels. Though (Psalm 78:49) may be a reference to human messengers instead of evil spirit beings, there is no doubt that Satan is represented as one of the spirits called "*the sons of God*" in (Job 1:6 and 2:1). His evil design against God and Job, the man of God, is obvious. The Psalms picture angels as protecting and delivering God's people from harm (Psalm 34:7; 35:5-6; 91:11). They are God's energetic and fervent servants (Psalm 104:4) and His devoted worshipers (103:20; 148:2).

The only reference in Ecclesiastes warns man not to equivocate in the presence of an angel concerning his vow, for the angel is a representative of God (5:6).

***The Angel of the LORD camps round about those who fear Him, and delivers them.***

***Psalms 34:7(MKJV)***

### **2.1.5 Witnessing Of The New Testament Writers**

Fred Dickason stated<sup>10</sup> that: Though mankind will yet consider the witness of Christ, they will here look briefly at the reality and role of angels as seen by the writers of the New Testament.

### **2.1.6 The Gospels**

All four-gospel writers report the existence and activity of angels. Matthew and Luke tell of the significant ministry of angels connected with the birth of Christ, its prediction, and its announcement (Matthew 1:20-23; 2:13; Luke 1:26-38; 2:8-15).

---

<sup>9</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 21.

<sup>10</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 21-22.

The first three gospels (the synoptics) are full of references to angels and demons. All four record the appearance of angels at the empty tomb of the resurrected Savior.

### **2.1.7 The Book Of Acts**

This New Testament history by Luke has many references to the ministry of angels. At the ascension of Christ, two angels announced His second coming (Acts 1:10-11). When the apostles were cast into prison, an angel opened the doors and freed them (Acts 5:19).

An angel directed Philip to a new place of ministry (Acts 8:26). Appearing to Cornelius, an angel directed him to send for Peter to learn of salvation in Christ (Acts 10:1-7). Later, Peter was again delivered from prison by God's angel (Acts 12:5-11). Paul, in a turbulent storm at sea, received encouragement and announcement of deliverance from God through an angel (Acts 27:23-25).

### **2.1.8 The Epistles**

According to Dickason<sup>11</sup> the epistles abound with teaching about angels. In them, angels are classified as either elect (1 Timothy 5:21) or fallen (2 Peter 2:4). They are contrasted as living realities with the living Christ (Hebrews 1:4-5).

Paul declares that the Cross of Christ defeated evil angels, and he warns against the worship of angels as promoted by false religionists (Colossians 2:15, 18). Peter speaks of Christ having declared victory over angels and then having ascended above them in authority (1 Peter 3:18-22), as also does Paul (Ephesians 1:20-21). Paul, James, and Peter regard Satan as the believer's angelic opponent who can be overcome only through Christ (Ephesians 6:10-12; James 4:7; 1 Peter 5:8-9).

---

<sup>11</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) *Angels, Elect & Evil*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p.22.

### **2.1.9 The Book Of Revelation**

There are sixty-five clear usages of the word *angel* in reference to spirit beings in John's Apocalypse. Eight additional usages may also refer to such or to human messengers as representing the seven churches of Asia Minor.

In this book, which contains more references to angels than any other Bible book, they are portrayed as worshiping the Lamb of God (Revelation 5:11-12), preserving the servants of God (Revelation 7:1-3), and administering the wrath of God (Revelation 8-9; 15-16). Angels are basic to the structure and significance of this great capstone of God's revelation.

### **2.1.10 The Witness Of The Son Of God**

Fred Dickason stated<sup>12</sup> that: Speaking with the authority of the Father who sent Him and with His wisdom and integrity as the Son of God, our Lord Jesus Christ gave in His speech and action more than sufficient testimony to the reality of angels. Some doubters say that Christ was accommodating His words to the popular belief of that time that angels were real and they exerted power in the realms of the natural and supernatural.

But to those who regard Christ as a teacher of truth, and especially to those who know Him as the Truth, who always spoke the truth, such a thought is next to blasphemous (John 8:31-32, 45-46; 14:6). To say that Christ spoke of angels and demons just because the people believed there were such, while He Himself knew that there were none, is to make Him guilty of perpetuating error and falsehood. However, He who is God's truth would not gain in perpetuating a lie. Neither does the

---

<sup>12</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p.23.



extent and nature of His testimony concerning angel's support any idea of accommodation. He believed in and taught the reality of angels.

#### **2.1.11 In Jesus' Testing's**

When Christ was tempted by Satan in the wilderness and afterward was helped by angels (Matthew 4:11), who were with Him? He was alone, away from His disciples. This is *His* record. Was He bordering on the insane when He spoke to Satan as a real person, or was He the only fully sane and sinless man, the God-man, battling with the greatest of all evil angels, Satan, who had personally enticed the first man into sin and darkness which was his originally by reason of his own brand of insanity?

#### **2.1.12 In Jesus' Teaching**

Several instances demonstrate that Christ positively taught the existence of angels as personal creatures of God. When the Sadducees who denied the reality of angels and of the resurrection sought to discredit Christ in regard to the teaching of the resurrection,

He not only affirmed the resurrection but also compared man's state in the resurrection to that of angels who do not procreate (Matthew 22:29-30). In doing so, He placed the doctrines of the resurrection and of angels on the same plane of truth.

If mankind believes in a resurrected Savior who will raise them from the dead, one must also believe in the existence of angels.

When our Lord prophesied concerning His second coming in power and great glory, He predicted that angels would gather the elect (Matthew 24:31). The holy angels will

be associated with Him in His glory, and the evil angels along with Satan will be cast into the lake of fire (Matthew 25:31-32, 41).

Could Christ have been accommodating when He rebuked Peter's use of the sword and said that He could, if desired, have the help of twelve legions of angels (Matthew 26:53)?

Or did Jesus Christ continue a notion of ignorance when, speaking to His disciples privately, He told them that they failed to cast out a demon because of lack of faith and prayer (Matthew 17:18-21)?

***And Jesus rebuked the demon, and he departed out of him. And the child was cured from that very hour.***

***Matthew 17:19: Then the disciples came to Jesus apart, and said, Why could we not cast him out?***

***Matthew 17:20: And Jesus said to them, Because of your unbelief. For truly I say to you, If you have faith like a grain of mustard seed, you shall say to this mountain, Move from here to there. And it shall move. And nothing shall be impossible to you.***

***Matthew 17:21: However, this kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting.***  
***Matthew 17:18-21(MKJV)***

### **2.1.13 In Jesus' Ministry**

Fred Dickason stated<sup>13</sup> that: An outstanding feature of Christ's ministry was the casting out of demons. The synoptics make much of this, recognizing that such miraculous actions testified to Christ's authority in the realm of the supernatural (Mark 1:27).

If one assume, as the facts forcefully indicate, that demons or evil spirits (sometimes called devils) are wicked, fallen angels, we have strong evidence for their existence

---

<sup>13</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 25.

in the ministry of Christ. He spoke to them in intelligent conversation, rebuked them, and cast them out of men's bodies which they had entered (Matthew 8:28-33; Mark 1:32-34; Luke 4:33-36, 41).

## **2.2 The Nature Of Angels**

The question arises: what sort of beings are angels? May one think of them as persons? What are their attributes and abilities? A survey of biblical information allows us to reach some definite conclusions and some tentative ones.

Theological categories and philosophical considerations may help us, but the determining source and limiting judge is the Bible.

### **2.2.1 Definition Of Personality**

Fred Dickason argued<sup>14</sup> that: Whether man may properly consider angels as persons depends upon their definition of personality. Here men are not speaking of personality as that which manifests itself to people for description and reaction ("*a nice personality*" or "*a rotten personality*"), but as the essence of being a person. Do angels fit the category commonly conceived as persons?

*Archetype of personality.* The definition of personality does not find its roots in what man is, but in what God is. God is basically a person. Scripture reveals God as having one essence and manifesting His existence in three persons. This is the doctrine of the Trinity in which we recognize God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. As a person, God has the ability to create persons other than the persons of the Godhead. It is conceivable that these persons may be human

---

<sup>14</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) *Angels, Elect & Evil*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 33.

(generally recognized) or angelic. In each case, then, a genuine person should genuinely correspond to what God is or has in the line of personality, for He is the archetype of all persons.

*Attributes of personality.* It can be demonstrated from the Scriptures that God's personality is basically manifest in the possession and manifestation of three faculties: intellect, sensibility (emotion), and will. God alone is self-existent, and no creature can exist apart from God.

Yet all persons are, as the result of God's creation, self-conscious, self-determining, moral individuals. These qualities distinguish persons from things or animals. So then, if we demonstrate that something has intellect, sensibility, and will in the context of morality, that something we may call a person.

### **2.2.1.1 Description Of Angels' Personality**

This thesis conquers that this Scriptures witness that angels have all three attributes or elements of personality. They have *intelligence*, as evidenced by their desire to learn of our great salvation in Christ (1 Peter 1:12) and by their ability to communicate intelligently in speech (Matthew 28:5). Though there is evidently difference in the capacities of various angels, it is obvious that most of them possess great intelligence, and their knowledge exceeds that of man. The wisdom of God is reflected in their created abilities. Before his fall it was said of Satan, probably the greatest of all angels, "*Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom*" (Ezekiel 28:12). After his fall, God said of him, "*You corrupted your wisdom*" (Ezekiel 28:17). Other angels, informed by God, are aware of such things as men's prayers and future events among men (Luke 1:13-16). They know by revelation God's plan for the world (Revelation 10:5-6; 17:1-18). Even the demons know Jesus to be the Son of God (Mark 1:24, 34) and know of His great power (Mark 5:7). Demons also know the

place of their confinement (Luke 8:31) and their inevitable torment (Matthew 8:28-29). God's angels are intelligent enough to carry out His wise and great tasks (Mark 13:27; Hebrews 1:7, 14). They may perceive the purposes of men on occasion (Matthew 28:5).

However great their intelligence, it is limited. They are creatures; they are not as God, omniscient. Furthermore, they are some things they do not understand fully, such as mankind's redemption and the wondrous humbling work of Christ in His incarnation and death (I Peter 1:11-12). From this fact, one also notes that their understanding may be improved through observation and investigation. One fact that angels do not know is the exact time of the Lord's second coming. Though they will participate in the events of that day, they do not know the day or hour (Matthew 24:36).

Angels have *emotions*. Highly blessed as they are in intelligence, angels, we might well suppose, have deep and sensitive emotions. Scripture bears this out. Struck with God's power and wisdom, they respond to His wondrous creation with joy (Job 58:7). Angelic seraphim worship God with a deep sense of awe and humble reverence, crying "Holy, Holy, Holy" (Isaiah 6:3, cf. vv. 1-4). Angels, recognizing the deity of Christ and His redemptive work, worship the Lamb, ascribing to Him, with God the Father, blessing, honor, glory, and dominion forever (Revelation 5:13, cf. vv. 11-14). Angels either rejoice themselves or view with understanding the rejoicing that takes place upon the salvation of a repentant sinner (Luke 15:10).

Angels also have *wills*. Angels have self-determination; that is, they can choose from various courses of action and seek to carry one through. They were created to do the will of God intelligently and faithfully. God appeals to their wills by commanding them to worship Christ, His Son (Hebrews 1:6). Originally they all chose to do those things that were within the will of God for them. But in the case of some, their wills opposed the will of God. The leader of this willful rebellion, Lucifer, also called Satan, declared

his rebellion against God with five assertions of "*I will*" (Isaiah 14:12-15). It is obvious from the Bible that many angels joined him in his defection, and they are now called his angels (Matthew 25:41). In following Satan, these angels exercised their own wills against the will of God. It is implied that those angels who remained loyal to God exercised their power of choice (an aspect of will) in resisting the test of Satan and in continuing in subjection to God.

An awesome and terrible exercise of angelic will is seen in Satan's influence upon the unsaved. Either through the spirit of the age engendered by his world system or through direct intervention by Satan or his angels, Satan works his will in unbelievers (Ephesians 2:1-2). Demonic spirits seek to seduce men away from faith in Christ and biblical teachings (1 Timothy 4:1). Evil spirits (demons) may also indwell and control men, exercising their wills over men. The demons in the possessed man of Gadara exercised their will over him and appealed to the will of Christ, asking for mercy (Luke 8:28-31). But note the power of the will of Christ over the will of a legion of demons. He commanded them to enter a herd of two thousand swine; they obeyed, and the swine dashed into the sea under the power of the demons and perished.

*Essence.* It seems scriptural to say that angels were created in the image and likeness of God just as was man (Genesis 1:27). It is rather doubtful that the image of God in man consists in the so-called three-part nature of man body, soul, and spirit as if to correspond with God's essence existing in three persons. Is there a true correspondence, as "*image*" implies, between the three parts and the three persons? What shall we do with man's heart and mind, which are vital parts of man and are mentioned as much or more often than the famous three above? Are man five parts? Or is he simply two: material and immaterial, or matter and spirit?

The image of God seems to consist rather of personality and holiness. Personality gives the basic capacity to have fellowship with the person of God (for only persons may have fellowship), and holiness is the character required to enjoy that fellowship

(for two cannot enjoy fellowship unless they are morally in agreement). As sons of God by creation (Job 1:6; 2:1), angels possess the image of their Creator-Father. It is in this same sense that Adam is termed the son of God (Luke 3:38). This image of God in angels, as in men, was marred in those who participated in the fall; still they are essentially persons though their holiness was lost. Essentially, then, and originally, angels were made in the image of God.

### **2.2.2 Properties Of Spirit Beings**

The following questions arise: How may we describe angels? What attributes or characteristics properly belong to them?

Angels belong to the class of spirit beings, that is, they are generally understood as immaterial and incorporeal beings. They certainly do not have a material, fleshy body such as humans have. This follows from the fact that (1) angels are described by Hebrews 1:14 as "*all ministering spirits*," and (2) demons, if assumed to be fallen angels, are called "*evil spirits*" (Luke 8:2) and "*unclean spirits*" (Luke 11:24, 26).

Angels have spatial limitations. The concept of spirit is not irreconcilable with location. When Jesus said, "*God is spirit*" (John 4:24), He was emphasizing that God is not limited to a particular location as Mount Gerizim or Jerusalem (John 20-24), but is essentially spirit. God is an infinite spirit Being, uncreated; however, angels are finite spirit beings, created. Therefore they are limited with regard to space. This is evident because they must move from one place to another. In (Daniel 9:21-23), an angel moved swiftly from someplace probably in heaven to Daniel's side. In (Daniel 10:10-14), an angel was delayed on his errand by another spirit being. Here a time limitation corresponds with spatial limitation. If a time lapse is involved in their changing locations, this means they are localized.

We may conclude from these facts that angels are creatures and that they have spatial and temporal limitations; that they are not omnipresent (present all places at once); nor ubiquitous (present in many places at once), but defined and with one location at a time and always somewhere, like points in space.

*Type of bodies.* The Scriptures do not attribute directly to angels any kind of bodies. But some have supposed that they have bodies of refined matter or material different from humans. This issue has always been disputed.<sup>15</sup> Those who support the idea that they have bodies appeal to two grounds: (1) the idea of a purely spiritual and incorporeal nature as metaphysically inconceivable and incompatible with the concept of a creature, and (2) the fact that angels are subject to spatial limitations, move from place to place, and are sometimes seen by men.

It may be that angels have some sort of body structure not known to man as of now. A body that operates by principles other than ours is not inconceivable. There are various kinds of bodies, and our resurrection body is called a "*spiritual body*" (1 Corinthians 15:44).

However, our human resurrected bodies will be material but run by spiritual power, as was Christ's. Any such body as angels may have is not usually or necessarily visible. They can be present in great numbers in a very limited space, just as many demons had entered into one man's body (Luke 8:30).

*Sex.* Angels are apparently without sex. One may say "*apparently*" because we are limited to human concepts of sex and its powers. It is obvious from Matthew 22:28-30 that angels do not procreate and are not a race. So they are without sex in the normal sense of the word. Genetic procreation belongs to the material realm. Perhaps due to the limitations of human language (though neuter expressions were available), angels are generally referred to as masculine. They are sometimes

---

<sup>15</sup> The Council of Nice, A.D. 784, decided that angels had bodies of ether or light. The Council of Lateran, A.D. 1215, held that they were incorporeal (see Charles Hodge, Systematic Theology, 1:637-38).



described as men, and the masculine pronoun is used of them (cf. Mark 16:5-6; Luke 24:4). When they appear, they generally take on the form of a man (cf. Genesis 18:2, 22; 19:1, 5; Daniel 10:18).

*Life span.* Angels are immortal. Once created, they never cease to exist. They are not subject to death (Luke 20:36), so that any body they may possess is immortal and incorruptible.

*Freedom to appear.* While angels are normally invisible (Colossians 1:16), they do have the ability to appear on occasion. This freedom to appear is, of course, subject to the will of God but evidently operative at the will of the angel (cf. Luke 1:11-13, 26-29). Appearance is presented but not inherent.

Angels have appeared in dreams, as to Joseph (Matthew 1:20). In visions, God has disclosed something of their appearance to man. Isaiah's vision centered upon Jehovah, but it also included an astonishing sight of winged seraphim worshiping and serving Jehovah (Isaiah 6:1-8).

On one occasion, God granted to the young man with Elisha the gift of supernatural vision to see the normally invisible angelic army surrounding and protecting them (2 Kings 6:17).

However, beyond dreams and visions and apart from supernatural vision granted to man, angels have actually appeared to natural sight. Sometimes they were recognized as angels (Daniel 8:19 17; Matthew 28:1-7), and sometimes their identity was temporarily or completely withheld (Numbers 22:23, 31; Judges 6:11-12, 21-22; Hebrews 13:2).

## 2.3 The Position Of Angels Relative To The Son Of God And To Man

The question is asked: What is the position of angels relative to the Son of God and to man? Clarification of this question will give us further insight into the proper respect and estimation of angels.

### 2.3.1 Into Relation To The Son Of God

According to Dickason,<sup>16</sup> there are some who suppose, by prejudice of mind or by ignorance of the Scriptures, that Christ, the Son of God, is the first and highest of all God's angelic creatures. This tragic error is degrading to the Son and deceptive to the saints. The Scriptures set forth an obvious and extensive contrast between Christ and angels.

#### CONTRAST IN ESSENCE

The Bible clearly contrasts the nature of Christ and of angels.

*Statements of Christ's nature.* He is the eternal God, and He creates them. (John 1:1-3) declares clearly and forcibly that Christ is equally God with the Father and that He is the Creator of all things. Note five compact statements that declare to us the identity and essential nature of the Son of God: (1) *"In the beginning was the Word* Christ's continued existence before creation of the world; (2) *"and the Word was with God* His existence in God's presence as a distinct person; (3) *"and the Word was God* His essential equality with God the Father; (4) *"He was in the beginning with God* His eternal fellowship with the Father; and (5) *"All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being* His all-inclusive creatorship. To no angel are any of these great statements attributed.

---

<sup>16</sup> Dickason, Fred C. (1995) Angels, Elect & Evil. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 33.

*Significance of Christ's names.* Christ is titled God's "*only begotten Son*" (John 1:14, 18; 3:16; 1 John 4:9), whereas the angels are called "*the sons of God*" as of a large class (Job 1:6; 2:1). Christ is unique, eternally begotten of the Father, without beginning (Micah 5:2; Revelation 1:8-18).

An angel is one of many of the same class. Christ *is* the image of God in that He is the exact likeness and counterpart of God, corresponding in every point to what God is (Colossians 1:15; Hebrews 1:3); whereas angels were created in the image of God, reflecting Him only in that they were created persons with holiness. Christ is titled "*the first-born of all creation*" (Colossians 1:15). This means that Christ is prior to and sovereign over all creation, including His created angels (Colossians 1:15-16). Angels and men are to worship Him who is the fullness of the Godhead in bodily form (Colossians 2:9; Hebrews 1:6).

We are called upon to confess Jesus as Jehovah (Isaiah 42:8; 45:23; Romans 10:9, 13), not to confuse Him with angels (Hebrews 1:4). No angel has the right to be worshiped.

### 2.3.2 Into Relation To Man

Though the words *angelos* (Greek.) and *malak* (Hebrew) may be used of human messengers as well as angelic, it is obvious that there are two separate kinds of beings.

#### **DISTINCTION BETWEEN MEN AND ANGELS**

*Distinct station.* We have previously spoken of the nature of angels as distinct from human nature, but the distinct stations accorded to men and angels by creation may also support distinction. (Psalm 8:4-6) is quoted in (Hebrews 2:5-7) and describes

mankind as "*a little lower than the angels*" and so distinguishes men from angels. This is the main point we seek to make here.

However, there are several questions that bear on the matter of the relation of men and angels to be considered. First, what is the meaning of "*a little lower*"? The New American Standard has "*a little while lower*," indicating that man and/or Christ is ultimately above angels in the plan of God. This certainly is not without support in the context of (Hebrews 2), with the reference to the future age (Hebrew 2:5) and the note of expectation in "*not yet*" (Hebrew 2:8). Furthermore, there is the reference to the temporary state of humiliation of Christ (Hebrew 2:9) and the design of bringing men to glory (Hebrew 2:10). The "*little while*" could refer to man's temporary condition of being lower than angels in the rule of this world, looking forward to the day when he will rule angels (1 Corinthians 6:2-3). Or it could refer to the time of Christ's humiliation in contrast to His exaltation. Or it could refer to a combination of man and Christ, as man in Christ rules with Christ in the future.

### **SIMILARITY OF MEN AND ANGELS**

Distinct as they are, angels and men are alike in some respects. Both are creatures limited by time and space. Both are dependent upon God for existence and wellbeing. Both of them have responsibilities to God and are accountable to God (John 16:11; 1 Corinthians 6:3; Hebrews 9:27). It may be that both are "*sons of God*" by creation (Job 1:6; 2:1; also Luke 3:38, where Adam is called "*son of God*"). Both are persons created in the image of God (Genesis 1:27; cf. study above on personality of angels). Just as no two men are alike in personal characteristics, so we may suppose the same to be true of angels. If we consider God's wisdom and originality in lifeless snowflakes, why not in angels?

Man differs from angels in many particulars, not just in class of being. Angels are essentially spirit (Hebrews 1:14), while men are both spirit and material body (James 2:26). While angels may have a body or something other than earthy material, their

normal state is invisible, even though they may manifest themselves in a visible manner. Angels are not a race; they are not related as are men, because they do not procreate (Matthew 22:28-30). God individually created them. Angels are greater in intelligence, strength, and swiftness (2 Peter 2:11), whereas man is "*a little lower than angels*." Man is subject to death, whereas angels are not (Luke 20:36). However, glorified man will judge angels (1 Corinthians 6:3).

Obviously, angels do not become human; nor do humans become angels. Though there are likenesses, there is a definite distinction in nature and many differences in particulars.

## 2.4 Major Ranking Of Angels

### 2.4.1 Etymology

- A heavenly/spiritual being, divine messenger, sent as an agent, ambassador, or emissary to conduct business on behalf of God in the affairs of men.
- May be stationed as a territorial ruler or despot in countries and nations as their spiritual power and authority.
- The Hebrew word for angel is *malak*. In the Greek word for angel it is *aggelos*. They comprise the Creator's "protocratic forces" of creation.

Price deems since people die, they exist to reassign and uphold those ordained to replace them in the standing institutions of the world. God did not suffer them to be eliminated every time their founders or leaders died.<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) *The Prophet's Dictionary*. USA: Paula Price Ministries, p. 47.

## **2.4.2 Christianity**

Early Christians inherited Jewish understandings of angels, which in turn may have been partly inherited from the Egyptians. In the early stage, the Christian concept of an angel characterized the angel as a messenger of God. Angels are creatures of good, spirits of love, and messengers of the savior Jesus Christ.

Later came identification of individual angelic messengers: Gabriel, Michael, Raphael, Uriel, and Lucifer. Then, in the space of little more than two centuries (from the third to the fifth) the image of angels took on definite characteristics both in theology and in art.

By the late fourth century, the Church Fathers agreed that there were different categories of angels, with appropriate missions and activities assigned to them. There was, however, some disagreement regarding the nature of angels. Some argued that Angels had physical bodies, while some maintained that they were entirely spiritual.

Some theologians had proposed that angels were not divine but on the level of immaterial beings subordinate to the Trinity. The resolution of this Trinitarian dispute included the development of doctrine about angels.

The angels are represented throughout the Christian Bible as a body of spiritual beings intermediate between God and men: "You have made him (man) a little less than the angels..." (Psalms 8:4-5). Some Christians believe that angels are created beings, and use the following passage as evidence: "praise ye Him, all His angels: praise ye Him, all His hosts... for He spoke and they were made.

He commanded and they were created..." (Psalms 148:2-5; Colossians 1:16). The Fourth Lateran Council (1215) declared that the angels were created beings. The

Council's decree *Firmiter credimus* (issued against the Albigenses) declared both that angels were created and that men were created after them.

The First Vatican Council (1869) repeated this declaration in *Dei Filius*, the "Dogmatic constitution on the Catholic faith". Of note is that the Bible describes the function of angels as "messengers" and does not indicate when the creation of angels occurred.

Thomas Aquinas (13th century) relates angels to Aristotle's metaphysics in his *Summa contra Gentiles*, *Summa Theologica*, and in *De substantiis separatis*, a treatise on angelology.

Many Christians regard angels as asexual and not belonging to either gender as they interpret Matthew 22:30 in this way.

Angels are on the other hand usually depicted in painting and sculpture as looking like male human beings. Their names are also masculine.

And although angels have greater knowledge than men, they are not omniscient, as Matthew 24:36 points out. Christian art perhaps reflects the descriptions in Revelation 4:6–8 of the Four Living Creatures (Greek: τὰ τέσσαρα ζῶα) and the descriptions in the Hebrew Bible of cherubim and seraphim (the chayot in Ezekiel's Merkabah vision and the Seraphim of Isaiah).

However, while cherubim and seraphim have wings in the Bible, no angel is mentioned as having wings.

### 2.4.3 Christian Angelic Hierarchy

The most influential Christian angelic hierarchy was that put forward by Pseudo-Dionysius the Areopagite in the 4th or 5th century in his book *De Coelesti Hierarchia* (*The Celestial Hierarchy*).

During the Middle Ages, many schemes were proposed, some drawing on and expanding on Pseudo-Dionysius, others suggesting completely different classifications. According to medieval Christian theologians, the angels are organized into several orders, or "Angelic Choirs".<sup>18</sup>

Pseudo-Dionysius (*The Celestial Hierarchy*) and Thomas Aquinas (*Summa Theologica*) drew on passages from the New Testament, specifically (Ephesians 1) and (Colossians 1), in an attempt to develop a scheme of three Hierarchies, Spheres or Triads of angels, with each Hierarchy containing three Orders or Choirs.

***far above all principality and authority and power and dominion, and every name being named, not only in this world, but also in the coming age.***

***Ephesians 1:21(MKJV)***

***For all things were created by Him, the things in the heavens, and the things on the earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers, all things were created through Him and for Him.***

***Colossians 1:16(MKJV)***

***Likewise I say to you, there is joy before the angels of God over one sinner who repents.***

***Luke 15:10(MKJV)***

***Bless the LORD, O angels of His, who excel in strength, who do His command, listening to the voice of His word.***

***Psalms 103:20(MKJV)***

---

<sup>18</sup> Chase, Steven (2002) Angelic Spirituality. USA: Publishing, p. 264.





Figure 1: The Assumption of the Virgin by Francesco Botticini at the National Gallery London, shows three hierarchies and nine orders of angels, each with different characteristics.

#### 2.4.4 First Sphere Angels

The first sphere angels serve as the heavenly counselors.

#### 2.4.5 Seraphim The Caretaker

Seraphim (singular "Seraph"), mentioned in (Isaiah 6:1-7), are the *highest angelic class* and serve as the caretakers of God's throne and continuously shout praises: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of hosts. All the earth is filled with His Glory." The name Seraphim means "the burning ones." The Seraphim have six wings. Two wings cover their face, two cover their body, and two cover their feet.



Figure 2: A cherub, as described by Ezekiel and according to traditional Christian iconography.

***Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.***  
***Isaiah 6:2(MKJV)***

#### 2.4.6 Cherubim The Guard To The Tree Of Life

Cherubim have four faces: one of each a *man*, an *ox*, a *lion*, and an *eagle*. They have four conjoined wings covered with eyes, a lion's body figure, and they have ox's feet. Cherubim guard the way to the tree of life in the Garden of Eden (Genesis 3) and the throne of God (Ezekiel 28).

***So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life.***

***Genesis 3:24(MKJV)***

***You were the anointed cherub that covers, and I had put you in the holy height of God where you were; you have walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire.***

***You were perfect in your ways from the day that you were created, until iniquity was found in you.***

***By the multitude of your goods they have filled your midst with violence, and you have sinned. So I cast you profaned from the height of God, and I destroy you, O covering cherub, from among the stones of fire.***

**Ezekiel 28:14-16(MKJV)**



Figure 3: A cherub, as described by Ezekiel and according to traditional Christian iconography.

### 2.4.7 Second Sphere Angels

Angels of the Second Sphere work as heavenly governors.

### 2.4.8 Dominions, The Hierarchy Of Celestial Beings

The "Dominions" (lat. *dominatio*, plural *dominationes*, also translated from the Greek term *kyriotites* as "Lordships") or "Dominations" are presented as the hierarchy of celestial beings "Lordships" in the *De Coelesti Hierarchia*. The Dominions, also known as the *Hashmallim*, regulate the duties of lower angels. It is only with extreme rarity that the angelic lords make themselves physically known to humans. They are also the angels who preside over nations.

The Dominions are believed to look like divinely beautiful humans with a pair of feathered wings, much like the common representation of angels, but they may be distinguished from other groups by wielding orbs of light fastened to the heads of their scepters or on the pommel of their swords.

#### 2.4.9 Virtues Or Strongholds

The "Virtues" or "Strongholds" lie beyond the *ophanim* (Thrones/Wheels). Their primary duty is to supervise the movements of the heavenly bodies in order to ensure that the cosmos remains in order.

The term appears to be linked to the attribute "might", from the Greek root "*δύναμις*" in (Ephesians 1), which is also translated as "Virtue". They are presented as the celestial Choir "Virtues", in the *Summa Theologica*. Traditional theological conceptions of the Virtues might appear to describe the same Order called the Thrones (Gr. *thronos*), (in which case the Ophanim may not be the same thing as "Thrones").

*In their going, these went; and in their standing still, these stood still. And in their lifting up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up along with them. For the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.*

*Ezekiel 1:21(MKJV)*

#### 2.4.10 Power Or Authorities

The "Powers" (lat. *potestas* (f), pl. *potestates*), or "Authorities", from the Greek *exousies*, (see Greek root in Ephesians 3:10) appear to collaborate, in power and authority, with the Principalities (Rulers). The Powers are the bearers of conscience and the keepers of history. They are also the warrior angels created to be completely loyal to God. Some believe that no Power has ever fallen from grace, but another theory states that Satan was the Chief of the Powers before he fell. (See also

Ephesians 6).

***For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the world's rulers, of the darkness of this age, against spiritual wickedness in high places.***

***Ephesians 6:12(MKJV)***

Their duty is to oversee the distribution of power among humankind, hence their name. Paul used the term *rule* and *authority* in (Ephesians 1), and *rulers* and *authorities* in (Ephesians 3). He may have been referring to the rulers and authorities of humanity, instead of referring to angels.<sup>19</sup>

***far above all principality and authority and power and dominion, and every name being named, not only in this world, but also in the coming age.***

***Ephesians 1:21(MKJV)***

***so that now to the rulers and powers in the heavenlies might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God,***

***Ephesians 3:10:***

#### **2.4.11 Third Sphere Angels**

Angels who function as heavenly messengers and soldiers.

#### **2.4.12 Principalities Or Rulers**

The "Principalities" (lat. *principatus*, pl. *principatūs*) also translated as "Princedom" and "Rulers", from the Greek *arche* (see Greek root in (Ephesians 3:10), appear to collaborate, in power and authority with the Powers (Authorities).

The Principalities are shown wearing a crown and carrying a scepter. Their duty also is said to be to carry out the orders given to them by the Dominions and bequeath

---

<sup>19</sup> Power Or Authorities. ([www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org)).

blessings to the material world. Their task is to oversee groups of people. They are the educators and guardians of the realm of earth.

Like beings related to the world of the *germinal ideas*, they are said to inspire living things to many things such as art or science. Paul used the term *rule* and *authority* in (Ephesians 1:21) and *rulers* and *authorities* in (Ephesians 3:10).

### **2.4.13 Archangels Gabriel And Michael**

The word "archangel" comes from the Greek αρχάγγελος (*archaggēlōs*), meaning *chief angel*, a translation of the Hebrew רב-מלאך (*rav-mal'akh*). It derives from the Greek *archō*, meaning to be first in rank or power; and *aggēlōs* which means messenger.

The word is only used twice in the New Testament: (1 Thessalonians 4) and (Jude 1). Only Archangels Gabriel and Michael are mentioned by name in the New Testament.

***For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:  
1 Thessalonians 4:16(MKJV)***

***Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.***

***Jude 1:9(MKJV)***





Figure 4: Guido Reni's archangel Michael (in the Capuchin church of Santa Maria della Concezione, Rome, 1636) tramples Satan.

#### 2.4.14 Lowest Rank Angels

The "angels", (*malakhim* Greek *aggēlōs*) messengers, are the lowest order of the angels, and the most recognized. They are the ones most concerned with the affairs of living things. Within the category of the angels, there are many different kinds, with different functions. The angels are sent as messengers to mankind.



Figure 5: An angel comforting Jesus, by Carl Heinrich Bloch, 1865-1879.

In the New Testament, angels are prominent in the major events of the life of Jesus Christ: His birth, passion and resurrection. These angels not only announce the good news, they also reassure and give strength. The angel Gabriel announced the coming of the Christ child to Mary: see The Book of (Luke 1).

***And the angel came in to her and said, Hail, one receiving grace, the Lord is with you. Blessed are you among women.***

***And when she saw him, she was troubled at his saying, and considered what kind of greeting this might be.***

***And the angel said to her, Do not fear, Mary, for you have found favor with God.***

***And behold! You shall conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall call His name JESUS.***

***He shall be great and shall be called the Son of the Highest. And the Lord God shall give Him the throne of His father David.***

***Luke 1:28-32(MKJV)***



### 2.4.15 Angelic Agencies To Govern

Areas of creation over which angels or spirit beings have authority to govern, manage, adjudicate and administrate. These include fire, water and other elements; people and their lives; nations and countries; rulers; spiritual or spherical territories.<sup>20</sup>

***For My Angel shall go before you and bring you in to the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites. And I will cut them off.***

***Exodus 23:23(MKJV)***

***And now go, lead the people to the place of which I have spoken to you. Behold, My Angel shall go before you. And in the day of My visitation I will visit their sin upon them.***

***Exodus 32:34(MKJV)***

***I, Jesus, have sent My angel to testify these things to you over the churches. I am the Root and the Offspring of David, the bright and Morning Star.***

***Revelation 22:16(MKJV)***

### 2.4.16 Angelic Delegation

The supernatural guard or contingent of spiritual beings dispatched by God to undergird and support a prophet's (or any minister's) ministry. The delegation constituted the supernatural forces that provoke the spiritual world to manifest themselves in their designated and ordained earthly modes. Their power and license as citizens of the invisible worlds of God's creation is the evidence the material form or formats of God's provision on the earth. The entire entourage consists of spiritual watchers, people's guardian angels, the heavenly Sanhedrin – the twenty-four elders of creation, terrestrial and celestial angelic force.<sup>21</sup>

***And he dreamed. And behold! A ladder was set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to Heaven! And behold! The angels of God were ascending and descending on it!***

***Genesis 28:12(MKJV)***

---

<sup>20</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries, p. 47.

<sup>21</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries, p. 47.

***And He said to him, Truly, truly, I say to you, Hereafter you shall see Heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.  
John 1:51(MKJV)***

#### **2.4.17      Angelic Guard To Protect**

A force of angels sent by God to a specific individual or organization to protect, prosper and execute their assigned work. These are holy angels who are to see that the demonic forces assigned by Satan do not destroy their assigned work, and that the material needs and provisions for its success are released from the spiritual treasuries of Creator God. See the Book of (Acts 12).<sup>22</sup>

***And when Herod was about to bring him out, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains. Also guards were keeping the prison before the door.***

***And behold! An angel of the Lord stood by, and a light shone in the building. And striking Peter's side, he raised him up, saying, Rise up quickly! And his chains fell off his hands.***

***And the angel said to him, Gird yourself and put on your sandals. And he did so. And he says to him, Throw your robe around you and follow me.***

***And he went out and followed him. And he did not know that this happening through the angel was true, but thought he saw a vision.***

***When they were past the first and second guard, they came to the iron gate that leads to the city, which opened to them of its own accord. And they went out and passed on through one street. And immediately the angel departed from him.***

***And having come to himself, Peter said, Now I know surely that the Lord has sent His angel and has delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from all the expectation of the people of the Jews.***

***And thinking about it, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, whose last name was Mark; where many had gathered together to pray. And as Peter knocked at the door of the porch, a girl named Rhoda came to listen.***

***And when she knew Peter's voice, she did not open the porch because of gladness, but running in she reported Peter was standing before the porch.***

---

<sup>22</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries, p. 48.

***And they said to her, You are mad. But she kept on saying that it was so. And they said, It is his angel.***

***But Peter continued knocking, and when they had opened and saw him, they were amazed.***

***But, waving to them with his hand to be quiet, he declared to them how the Lord had brought him out of the prison. And he said, Go tell these things to James and to the brothers. And he departed and went into another place.***

***And day coming, there was not a little stir among the soldiers, saying, What, then, became of Peter.***

***And searching for him, and not finding him, examining the guards, Herod commanded them to be led away to death. And he went down from Judea to Caesarea and stayed.***

***Acts 12:6-19(MKJV)***

Note also the angel's assignment in (Ezekiel 9).

#### **2.4.18      Angels Of The Seven Churches**

The seven angels to whom the Apocalypse, received by the apostle John, was addressed. Angels were addressed because of the church's supernatural status and consequent need for supernatural power and redress in the earth. The angels' not unlike Michael's assignment over the nation of Israel are assigned by the Lord Jesus to cover, minister to and mediate on His behalf as literal partners with the church's earthly leadership in its establishment and growth in the earth. This is what (Hebrews 1) means.

***Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation?***

***Hebrews 1:14(MKJV)***

In all major entities in the earth, the ancients knew and were often introduced to (as Joshua to the commander of the armies of the Lord of Hosts – (Joshua 5) the spiritual power behind them.

***Joshua 5:14: And He said, No, but I have come as the Commander of the army of the LORD. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth. And he worshiped and said to Him, What does my Lord say to His servant?***

***Joshua 5:15: And the Commander of the LORD's army said to Joshua, Take your shoe off your foot, for the place on which you stand is holy. And Joshua did so.***

***Joshua 5:14-15(MKJV)***

When the Lord brought Israel out of Egypt, He told them that He was sending His angel ahead of them to keep and govern them as His very presence. Based on this eternal protocol, the Lord Jesus informs man that regardless of the longevity of any of its earthly leaders, the church was perpetually staffed, governed, and administrated by **seven angels**.

(Exodus 23); (Exodus 32) and (Revelation 22) all establish this eternal principle by letting one know the invisible protocratic forces carry out the Lord's will and work on earth.

***For My Angel shall go before you and bring you in to the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites. And I will cut them off.***

***Exodus 23:23(MKJV)***

***And now go, lead the people to the place of which I have spoken to you. Behold, My Angel shall go before you. And in the day of My visitation I will visit their sin upon them.***

***Exodus 32:34(MKJV)***

***I, Jesus, have sent My angel to testify these things to you over the churches. I am the Root and the Offspring of David, the bright and Morning Star.***

***Revelation 22:16(MKJV)***

What is significant about the angels of the seven churches is how the seven angels track with the seven continents of the earth that the New Creation church was to populate. Moreover, they precisely coincide with the seven spirits before God's throne that were sent out into all the earth.

Prophets clearly see this as but another dimension of the Almighty's plan to reconcile all things to Him-self that is in heaven and on the earth as (Colossians 1) explains about the work of the Lord Jesus Christ.

***And through Him having made peace through the blood of His cross, it pleased the Father to reconcile all things to Himself through Him, whether the things on earth or the things in Heaven.***

***Colossians 1:20(MKJV)***

Beyond this is the interesting note that in the end it is seven angels that see to the end time judgment of the earth and they utter statements as witnesses as well as mere messengers of God's wrath as can be seen in (Revelation 8).

***And I saw the seven angels who stood before God, and seven trumpets were given to them.***

***Revelation 8:2(MKJV)***

***And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound.***

***Revelation 8:6(MKJV)***

The seven angels' last-days activity only commences after the church they have kept for millennia is raptured from the earth as can be seen in (Revelation 7).<sup>23</sup>

***After these things I looked, and lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, out of all nations and kindreds and people and tongues, stood before the throne and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, with palms in their hands.***

***Revelation 7:9(MKJV)***

## **2.4.19 Protocratic Forces Of Management**

The founding and originating forces of creation that constitutes the government and management of the planet and the administration of God in the earth.

---

<sup>23</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) *The Prophet's Dictionary*. USA: Paula Price Ministries, pp. 48-49.

#### **2.4.20 Protocratic Agents To Administrate**

The creatures specially created by God to govern, administrate, tend to and keep His earth. God has creatures assigned to specific areas over which they rule. Others are employed by the Lord to carry out certain tasks, as God deems necessary in the earth.

According to Price: Still, others are stationed in various territories in the earth to patrol and manage it. These agents consist of angels, ministering spirits, watchers, holy ones, cherubim and seraphim as revealed in Scriptures.<sup>24</sup>

#### **2.4.21 Protocratic Guardians From Eternity**

A term that applies to the supernatural beings that govern and administrate God's natural world from eternity. These include His angels, ministering spirits, watchers, archangels, and the holy ones (or saints as referred to in Daniel's apocalypse in chapters 3 – 8). Zechariah called them the four horsemen that patrol the earth, and they also are assigned to people, nations, genealogies, and countries. The guardians oversee the routine events of the world and its various powers, elements, and forces. The watchers who judged and punished (as well as restored) Nebuchadnezzar for his pride exemplified this.<sup>25</sup>

### **2.5 Protocratics The Enduring Government Of the Creator**

A term coined to explain the enduring government of the Creator and the basis for His being properly identified as the Almighty God. The word is comprised of two terms, **proto** (for founding, originating, beginning) and **cratics** (for rule, government, dominance and sovereignty). The two stems put together define clearly the role of

---

<sup>24</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) *The Prophet's Dictionary*. USA: Paula Price Ministries, pp. 451-452.

<sup>25</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) *The Prophet's Dictionary*. USA: Paula Price Ministries, p. 452.

God in His creation and the basis for His preeminence in all things. That the word helps describe the Lord's superiority is understood by the fact that they establish the ground for His sovereignty. He is and was, before all things and in Him (the Christ) all things consist.

***And they truly were many priests, because they were not allowed to continue because of death;***

***but He, because He continues forever, has an unchangeable priesthood.***  
***Hebrews 7:23-24(MKJV)***

In (Exodus 32:34), God introduced Israel to the angel that would see to their successful entrance into the Promised Land. God describes the powers and the authority the angel has over Israel. Throughout Scripture these powerful beings are discussed by God as the means by which He accomplishes all that He does in the earth as a matter of course. (Isaiah 63:9) comments on the "*Angel of His Presence.*"

***In all their affliction He was afflicted, and the Angel of His presence saved them; in His love and in His pity He redeemed them; and He bore them, and carried them all the days of old.***

***Isaiah 63:9(MKJV)***

When the Bible talks about God's overrule, it is including the medium through which He rules. The statement refers to the angels over the various forces and elements of nature, such as the angel in (Revelation):

***And another angel followed, saying, The great city, Babylon, has fallen, has fallen; because of the wine of the anger of her fornication; she has made all nations to drink.***

***Revelation 14:8(MKJV)***

In addition, there are those assigned to people kingdoms, like the ones that brought Daniel God's answer in (Daniel 10) and the angels of the seven churches in the apocalypse. (Genesis 28), confirming by the Lord Jesus in (John 1), says that an innumerable company of angels tend to the Creator's affairs on earth; not leaving to them human instruments alone.

***And he dreamed. And behold! A ladder was set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to Heaven! And behold! The angels of God were ascending and descending on it!***

***Genesis 28:12(MKJV)***

***And He said to him, Truly, truly, I say to you, Hereafter you shall see Heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.***

***John 1:51(MKJV)***

### **3                    PHYSICAL DEMARCATION**

In the harsh reality of religious persecution of Christians in Israel and Islamic lands Westerners in the main are completely unaware that Christians can face enormous social consequences for their faith.

Judaism and Islam have altered the message and identity of Christ over the centuries, garbling Jesus (and His gospel) in different ways. This resulted in both having created a pervasive anti-Christian prejudice among their followers, in a sense immunizing them against the gospel of Christ.

The bill of the Israeli parliament stated that all Christian activity needs to be banned. The circumstances in the Middle East are very difficult. Christians essentially have two options to choose from, (1) leave their ancestral homeland; (2) suffer in silence and anonymity. This situation also explains the difficulty and rarity of Christian conversions in the Middle East. To know how Christ would be treated, we only have to look at the way Christians are being treated in the land where their faith began.

#### **3.1                    The Triangle Of Abomination**

The Middle East today is always difficult, often dangerous, and sometimes desperate considering the interests between Arab/Moslem/Palestinian and



Zionist/Jewish/Israeli. How Christ would be treated one could only look at how Christians end up being in the crossfire in the Middle East, which is a disturbing picture to the Child of God today.

Both the Moslem nations and the Jewish State pursue policies that bring pressure to bear on Christians in the territories under their control. And both the Moslem and Jewish cultures foster a popular hostility toward Christianity that routinely produces social discrimination and sporadically erupts into violence against believers. The worst news is that this kind of dual pressure is having its intended effect. The overt and covert purpose of all such discrimination is to either ghettoize other religions or drive them out completely. This serves to "*religiously cleanse*" the society so it can become a purer expression of either the "*Jewish State*" or the "*Islamic State*," depending on who is doing the cleansing. The double pincer of Moslem and Jewish pressure against Christianity is driving Christians out of the Holy Land at a rate that can only be described as "*mass flight*."

According to a survey conducted by Dr. Bernard Sabella of Bethlehem University, the great majority of Christian Palestinians have already left. Sydney have more "*Jerusalem-born*" Christians than Jerusalem. Most observers agree that if emigration continues as at present it is only a matter of time before Christianity becomes extinct in the land of its birth. Judaism and Islam, for whom the gospel is equally an affront to their religious claims and an impediment to their political aims is clear when Christians are forced out of their home land. Those who bear the name of Christ are caught in the middle of a struggle between those who lay claim to "Isaac's legacy" and those who point to "Ishmael as their ancestor". Christians in the Holy Land stand where those overlapping bigotries converge.

Christians subject to double discrimination, the Muslims have their countries and the Jews have their State, but Christians have no local nation of their own. Hence the reason that Christians are leaving the Holy Land in droves, as their presence in the

land of their heritage dwindles to the vanishing point. This persecution of Christians in Moslem countries is well known because of the media's role and attention to the threat of Islamic fundamentalism. The legal, social, and cultural bias against Christianity in both the Jewish State and the Moslem nations clearly reflects a deep religious conflict. Judaism, Christianity, and Islam all make absolute claims for them, each of which invalidates the claims of the other two.

Mingled together in the same geography, they create a unique *"triangle of abomination."* When one take in consideration all three profess to speak truly in the name of the same God, and to be true heirs of the same religious tradition, you have a recipe for a conflict more intense than most people can imagine.

### **3.2 The Koranic View Of Jesus Christ**

The encounter between Christianity and Islam has been marked by struggle and conflict. Christianity and Islam have been refining their antagonistic relationship for 1,400 years. The interesting thing about the conflict, however, is that it has been largely political and military in its historical expression. It is not Scripturally based in the same way the Jewish/Christian conflict is. There is no deep-seated aversion to Christ and Christians woven into the (Moslem) Koran the way it is woven into the (Jewish) Talmud. The Koran treats Christians as sincere believers in the one God who will be rewarded for their faith at the last judgment, though they lack the full knowledge of Allah through his prophet, Mohammed. Mohammed finds fault with Christian believers for their tendency to disagree among themselves and to form warring sects around their points of contention, an ironic judgment in view of Islam's later sectarian blood baths. The Koran also criticizes the emerging Christian institution of monasticism. Mohammed found this idea strange and viewed the practice with distaste and its practitioners with suspicion.

By the standards of religious rhetoric, the Koran's attitude toward both Christians and Jews is remarkably generous. Mohammed's fiercest religious fight was with the grossly idolatrous Arab culture that surrounded him, and especially with the militant paganism of its leaders. In that context, he looked at the other two biblical religions as allies (or at least cobelligerents) in his struggle against idol-worshipping superstition. Thus, the Koran exhibits a high regard for the Jewish and Christian Scriptures.

The Koran's bottom-line view, however, was that Jesus failed in His prophetic mission. After the Jews finally rejected Him, Jesus simply disappeared from view and someone else was crucified in His place. In the wake of that spiritual debacle, Mohammed was sent from God to fulfill the mission Jesus couldn't accomplish. The Koran never states how Jesus ended His days. A common assumption of Islamic scholars is that God supernaturally took Him out of the world. God "*recalled*" Him, once it was obvious that His mission had failed and His message had been rejected.

The Koran makes it clear that Jesus did not die as the Gospels describe, and was never resurrected since the sacrificial death and resurrection of Christ are the heart of Christianity, the Koran's denial of them rendered the rest of its "*respect*" for Christianity irrelevant. Christians rightly saw Mohammed's message as a direct contradiction of their own beliefs and a radical attack on the foundation of their faith.

Islam's claim that Jesus Himself had prophesied Mohammed's coming has been rejected by Christianity and would not accept such a derogation of Christ's role and identity. Islam on the other hand would also not accept the Christian rejoinder that the Prophet was simply wrong. Whatever viewpoint is insisted upon, the other is equally stirred to resist by definition.

The legacy of the conflict between Christians and Muslims still burdens both of its heirs today. In the "*apostate*" Christian West, guilt about Christianity's part in the

religious wars of the past creates vacillation and compromise in the face of Islam's modern missionary offensive, a bewilderment reinforced by the trendy politically correct ideologies of "*pluralism*" and "*diversity*." Islam's inheritance from conflict with Christians is less diluted with confusion.

Whatever its other deficiencies may be, Islam understands its own identity enough to know that Christianity is not only a competitor, but a standing denial of the Prophet's claims. Because of this A strong rejection of Christianity and a deep hostility toward Christians remains an integral part of popular culture throughout the Moslem world.

### **3.3 Christianity In Moslem Lands Today**

Tal Brooke stated<sup>26</sup> that: Official policies toward Christianity vary to some degree among Moslem nations, depending on their official commitment to Islam. But popular attitudes toward Christianity vary very little. Several illustrations can be given. Among the North African nations, Tunisia is the most secular in its approach to religion. This is in contrast to Libya, which under Kaddafi has tried to wrestle itself into conformity with eighth-century Koranic law. Despite those official differences, on the popular level all hold to the unalterable attitude that to be a North African is to be a Muslim. To become "*Christian*" is understood to mean a traitorous abandonment of one's heritage, family and nation. Almost nothing could bring greater disapproval. Official attitudes toward Islam also vary among the Arab nations and elsewhere in the Middle East from Syria's secular socialism to Iran's reactionary fundamentalism. Regardless, the traditional Islamic bias against Christianity remains entrenched among the general population. Visible Christians in Islamic cultures face social and economic isolation. Muslims who convert to Christianity face ostracism at best and murderous revenge (martyrdom) at worst.

---

<sup>26</sup> Brooke Tal (1998) Cited Brooks Alexander: *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 140-153.

Moslem prejudice against Christians is not confined to the countries of Islam's birth and early expansion. Islam is a universal religion, and it has carried its allergy to Christianity with it wherever it has traveled and taken root, including Asia. Anti-Christian discrimination tends to exist wherever Muslims predominate socially, and especially where they rule politically. Islam's spite against Christianity readily turns to irrational fury and even mob action, including (sometimes lethal) physical abuse. In Malaysia's Pahang State legislators have legalized mandatory whippings and imprisonment for Muslims who apostatize or preach other religions. In China's Sinkiang Province, eyewitnesses report that apostates where Christians converted from Islam are tied to the ground while soapy water is poured down their throats over a period of three days to wash out evil spirits. They are then forced to endure a weeklong crash-course in the Qur'an after which they must recant their faith in Christ or face possible exile or death.

Statistics confirm a worldwide pattern of anti-Christian discrimination in Islamic countries. In 1996, Open Doors (a Christian ministry) examined and compared over 100 nations; assessing the level of religious freedom they afforded Christianity. They published their findings as The World Watch List, an authoritative index of religious persecution. Of the ten countries most active in persecuting Christians, all but two are Moslem-dominated. The top ten list (from the most oppressive to the less so) reads as follows: Somalia, Saudi Arabia, Southern Sudan, Comoro Islands, Iran, Northern Sudan, China, Morocco, North Korea, and Egypt.

### **3.4 Jesus And Judaism**

Islamic persecution isn't the only thing driving Christians out of the Holy Land. There is also pressure against Christianity within Israel itself a pressure that is severe enough to make local Christians abandon their ancestral homes in alarming numbers. Christianity and Judaism have had a vexed relationship from the beginning.

The tortured history of that relationship has been well publicized in recent years, and it doesn't need to be repeated here. What does need to be emphasized is that the vexation has been bipolar from the outset. The Judeo-Christian conflict, throughout its history, has been mutual, conscious, and deliberate on both sides.

In Europe Christians have held the upper hand socially and politically, and they have acted out their vexation with the Jews accordingly. In the early days of the church, however, the situation was reversed. Jews held the upper hand of power, and they expressed their vexation with Christianity in direct and often brutal ways. One of the most shocking instances of anti-Christian persecution by religious Jews was the stoning of Deacon Stephen (Acts 6:8-15). Almost two millennia later (1948), the State of Israel was born in blood and controversy. Now an explicitly Jewish power dominates the Holy Land again. What does that mean for Christians living there today? The earliest believers found themselves a despised and beleaguered community, living under the hostile attention of Jewish authorities. What has changed in the intervening 2000 years? More to the point, what has remained the same? Most commentators on the Middle East avoid dealing with that question directly.

Interestingly, it has taken Jewish activists to break the surface of public discussion on the issue. Some Israeli Jews are attuned to the difficult plight of non-Jews in Israel today. The so-called "secular left" has often complained about Israel's treatment of its Moslem and Christian citizens as have some religious Jews. But few of those voices have added the weight of scholarly knowledge to their complaints. Dr. Israel Shahak is an exception. He is a Holocaust survivor (Belsen camp), an emeritus professor of organic chemistry at Hebrew University, a resident of Israel since 1945, and a longtime human rights activist. Dr Shahak believes that the State of Israel's prevailing ethnic and religious discrimination is a threat to its own moral legitimacy, and ultimately to its very existence.

He believes that Israel will inevitably entangle itself in problems that are literally impossible to solve unless it can confront the religious sources of its own problem-making behavior. His challenge of conscience to Israel in terms of two historical questions: (1) *"How do Jewish scripture and Jewish tradition shape current Jewish extremism?"* and (2) *"How does Jewish extremism shape current Israeli policy?"* His answers are likely to unsettle the views many conservative Christians hold about Judaism in general and the State of Israel in particular. He concludes from his studies that Judaism is imbued with a very deep hatred toward Christianity, combined with ignorance about it.

This attitude was clearly aggravated by the Christian persecutions of Jews, but is largely independent of them. In fact, it dates from the time when Christianity was still weak and was persecuted (not least by Jews), and Jews who had never been persecuted by Christians, or who were even helped by them shared it. Today those same attitudes continue in force. Their expressions have changed to reflect the ways of the modern world, but the religious distaste and cultural resentment Judaism harbors toward Christianity has not abated. Jewish extremists merely extend and apply Jewish tradition in a particular way. We cannot understand Jewish extremism, much less the influence it exerts in modern Israel, unless we understand the pervasive anti-Christian attitude that runs throughout Jewish religion and Jewish cultural lore. A visceral loathing for Christianity is woven into Jewish scripture and is plainly displayed in Jewish history.

### **3.5 Jesus The Magician**

Tal Brooke stated<sup>27</sup> that: The long-standing Jewish sense of revulsion toward Christianity described by Shahak has its origins in a conflict that has existed between them

---

<sup>27</sup> Brooke Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 140-153.

from the beginning. The main dispute between the first Jewish Christians and the Jewish leadership of the day was about the role of Jesus Himself. Was He God's promised Messiah, as He had plainly claimed, or was He an impious impostor?

The choices were clear and so were the consequences. If you thought Jesus was an impostor, you aligned yourself with the ruling powers of the day, including the Jewish religious establishment. If you thought Jesus was God's Messiah, you aligned yourself against them, and you could expect to be harassed, jailed, chased out of town or maybe just killed on the spot the clash between Jew and Christian was as inevitable as the clash between Jew and Muslim, but it happened faster and was more fundamental. The Judeo-Christian conflict was more immediate and more intense on both sides because Christianity emerged, not outside of Jewish religion, but within it. Thus the tension between them was instantaneous. Christianity's claim that Jesus is God's promised Messiah challenged the legitimacy of rabbinic Judaism far more directly than anything Mohammed said or did. Islam was an external threat; Christianity was an internal danger. For that reason, Christ and Christianity have been singled out for special rejection in Jewish scripture and special revulsion in Jewish tradition.

Rabbinic nullification of the gospel was quickly institutionalized. Jewish religious authorities reacted swiftly to *"the Jesus affair,"* and began to teach about Christ in ways designed to harden the Jewish people against Christianity. The rabbis circulated demeaning tales about Jesus Himself, and described Christians as creatures so low on the scale of existence that no Jew would ever think of becoming one. Their anti-Christian teachings were eventually written down in the Jewish scripture known as the Talmud the sprawling compendium of rules, interpretations of rules, and general commentary on life that has guided the belief and behavior of religious Jews for thousands of years. Dr Shahak has studied the Talmud critically, and regards it as a defining document of the Judeo-Christian conflict.



He finds within the Talmud two major strands of bigotry against Christians and Christianity. The first strand consists of *"hatred and malicious slanders against Jesus"* Himself; the second indicts Christianity as a form of idolatry and accuses Christians of being idolaters. To say that the Talmud reviles and despises Jesus would be an understatement. It depicts Jesus as a bastard, a black magician, and a blasphemer. The Talmudic judgment on Jesus can be summed up in a litany of scandalous accusations: He was the illegitimate son of a Jewish whore (Mary) by a Roman soldier named Pandira. Jesus learned sorcery and black magic, and by their means deceived many. He falsely claimed to be the Messiah promised by God, and thereby led His followers to spiritual destruction. *"According to the Talmud, Jesus was executed by a proper rabbinical court for idolatry, inciting other Jews to idolatry and contempt of rabbinical authority."* In punishment for His blasphemy, His eternal fate is to be immersed in boiling excrement forever. The very name *"Jesus"* was for Jews a symbol of all that is abominable, and this popular tradition still persists. The Gospels are equally detested, and they are not allowed to be quoted (let alone taught) even in modern Israeli schools.

The Talmud reinforces its negative view of Christ with an equally negative view of Christians. The charge of idolatry the rabbis brought against the early Christians is more serious than it sounds to us today. Idolatry is the ultimate spiritual crime in Talmudic terms, and the accusation meant that Christians were relegated to a special class of spiritual outlaws renegades who had forfeited their basic rights as human beings before both God and man. The Talmud's attitude toward Christians effectively assigned them the judgment God meted out to Cain (who was made an outcast and alien because of his high crime of murder), while denying them the protective *"mark of Cain"* (that whoever took vengeance on Cain would suffer God's punishment sevenfold according to Genesis 4:11-15).

Just as Christians were viewed with disgust and treated with derision, their Scriptures were viewed with a burning hatred. Pious Jews were forbidden to handle, read from,

or listen to the Christian Scriptures, and the New Testament was to be publicly burned whenever it was possible to do so.

The Talmud's appraisal of other religions in general isn't exactly "*friendly*," but its assessment of Jesus and His followers is uniquely hostile. When we look at Judaism's history of treating Muslims and Christians respectively, it becomes obvious that a special category of malice has been reserved for Christianity. Comparatively speaking, Judaism's attitude towards Islam is relatively mild. Although the stock epithet given to Mohammed is "*madman*" (*rmshugga*), this was not nearly as offensive as it may sound now, and in any case it pales before the abusive terms applied to Jesus. Similarly, the Koran, unlike the New Testament, is not condemned to burning. It is not honored in the same way as Islamic law honors the Jewish sacred scrolls, but it is treated as an ordinary book. Therefore the Halakha (the legal system of classical Judaism) decrees that Muslims should not be treated by Jews any worse than "*ordinary*" Gentiles.

Christians, on the other hand, definitely were to be "*treated worse by Jews than 'ordinary' Gentiles.*" As officially designated idolaters, the followers of Christ were put beyond even the minimal regard that the Talmud extends to non-Jews who accept the "Noahide precepts" the seven biblical laws considered by the Talmud to be addressed to Gentiles. Since the Noahide laws feature a ban on idolatry, Christians were deemed to be in violation of its standards by definition. In the Talmudic scheme of things, then, Christians were ranked even lower than Gentiles in general, and Jews were taught to revile them accordingly.

The Talmud's command to burn copies of the Christian Scriptures that come to hand is still observed in Israel, both in principle and in practice. Public burnings of the New Testament are carried out today with the direct blessing of Jewish religious authorities and the indirect blessing of the Jewish State. Thus on 23 March 1980 hundreds of copies of the New Testament were publicly and ceremonially burnt in

Jerusalem under the auspices of Yad Le'akhim, a Jewish religious organization subsidized by the Israeli Ministry of Religions

### **3.6 The Talmud And The Jewish State**

According to Alexander:<sup>28</sup> the Talmud's view of Christ as a spiritual criminal and Christians as spiritual outlaws has shaped the view of classical Judaism toward Christianity for the last 2000 years. And, as we can see in the case of Scripture-burning, it continues to do so today. In Israel, Jewish religious attitudes have secular implications. The outside world needs to know in what other ways Talmudic teachings affect the policies of the Jewish State. In particular, as Christians, we need to know how Talmudic attitudes affect the treatment of Christians and other non-Jews who live under Israel's rule today.

Those are straightforward questions, but their answers won't be found by polling Jews on what they think about the Talmud. Most modern Jews don't think about the Talmud at all. Today, only Orthodox (and "*Ultra-Orthodox*") Jews study the Talmud directly and attempt to follow it. Conservative Jews know it mostly by reputation, and Reform Jews ignore it almost completely. Secular Jews, for the most part, are ignorant of the Talmud; those who do know something about it are often critical of it.

Modern Judaism is anything but monolithic, and modern Jewry as a whole is even less so. There are religious Jews who strictly follow the Old Testament rules of living; there are secular Jews who ignore their religion altogether; and there are atheistic Jews who attack their religion outright. Yet all are considered to be Jews by the State of Israel. Ironically, the very breadth and diversity of modern Jewry illustrates how basic the Talmud is to the identity of Israel as a Jewish State. Israel's inclusive view

---

<sup>28</sup> Alexander Brooks As Cited By Brooke Tal (1998) Cited Brooks Alexander: *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 140-153.

of Jewishness embodies a Talmudic view that is rigidly exclusive of one particular kind of Jew.

The Talmud absolutely excludes Christian Jews from its definition of who is Jewish, and so does the State of Israel Israel's 1950 "*Law of Return*" guarantees to all Jews worldwide automatic entry into the country as immigrants, plus "national" (that is, first-class) citizenship on arrival. Also guaranteed are all manner of material support from free school kits and Hebrew language lessons all the way up to housing and financial subsidies as a matter of right, because they are Jews. All stripes of Jewish belief and unbelief are accepted for entry and enrolled for benefits based on those guarantees. Jews who profess Jesus as their Messiah, however, have no such rights. Israeli Law and Israeli courts automatically classify them as non-Jews. Messianic Jews ask, "*Why is it that a Jew may embrace atheism, agnosticism, or even practice an eastern religion and still be regarded as Jewish, while only those who believe in Jesus are seen as having abandoned their heritage?*"

The simple answer to their query is that Christian Jews alone are singled out as Jewish traitors because of the indirect effect of Talmudic thinking conveyed through Zionism on the official conduct of the State of Israel. It is probably safe to say that the majority of Jews in Israel, including those involved in politics, know little or nothing of the Talmud per se. But the weight of Jewish cultural history means that the Talmud's view of gentiles and especially its view of Christians, still guides Israel's uneven-handed treatment of the people under its rule today.

The persistent attitudes of classical Judaism toward non-Jews strongly influence its followers, Orthodox Jews and those who can be regarded as its continuators, Zionists. Through the latter it also influences the policies of the state of Israel. Since 1967, as Israel become more and more "*Jewish*," so its policies are influenced more by Jewish ideological considerations... Foreign experts, who tend to ignore or

downplay the influence of the Jewish religion on Israeli policies, do not usually perceive this ideological influence.

Talmudism shapes Zionism, and Zionism in turn sets the agenda for Israel as a "*Jewish State*." By official self-definition, the State of Israel "*belongs*" to the Jewish people (that is, to all Jews, whether they have ever set foot in Israel or not) and to them alone. By direct implication, then, Israel does not and cannot in any sense "*belong*" to a non-Jew, though his family may have lived there for a thousand years.

Defining Israel as a Jewish State defines the non-Jew as a literal "foreign body an alien who may be accepted temporarily for reasons of necessity, but who is inherency under pressure to remove his non-Jewish presence and go away. Thus the normal concept of who is a "native" and who is an "alien" gets turned upside down.

By decree, all Jews are made natives of a land to which many of them are strangers, while non-Jewish natives are declared to be strangers in their own land. The same Talmudic-Zionist attitude shapes many Israeli policies, domestic as well as foreign.

Non-Jews within Israel face a labyrinth of official discrimination and bureaucratic harassment that works to oppress them and ultimately to vex them into leaving or if they can't leave, simply to vex and oppress them. Gentiles (and especially Christians) who live in Israel awaken every day to the fact that they are unwelcome among their Jewish neighbors. They arise every morning with the certain knowledge that their un-welcomeness will be made clear to them in numerous personal and official acts committed during the course of the day.

The State Department's report described the actual conditions in the occupied territories: "Sentences given to Israelis for killing Palestinians are generally much lighter than sentences handed down to Palestinians convicted of killing either Israelis or Palestinians."

Israeli settlers are immune from many other forms of punishments and restrictions to which the Palestinians are subject, including restriction on movement and travel, detention without charge or trial, closure of schools and universities, and many others. In brief, as the State Department's report puts it, there is a "dual system of governance applied to Palestinians and Israelis" in the occupied territories.

### **3.7 The Dual System In Israel**

America's dual system between blacks and whites was called "Jim Crow" and America underwent a social revolution to get rid of it. The South African system of dual ethnic classification was known as "apartheid" and the world condemned South Africa because of it. South Africa accepted the world's chastisement, and now struggles with a social revolution of its own. For whatever reason, Israel's dual system has escaped widespread condemnation. Israel openly enforces a two-tiered system of justice that is openly based upon ethnic standards, but only its victims stand up to complain.

Israel's enemies have always found it easy to make unjust comparisons with the "old South Africa". But it gets easier when you read that the government is preparing plans to corral Israeli Arabs in Galilee into blocks of flats to prevent them from having a majority of the land and when one witnesses the casual contempt with which Orthodox Jews in Jerusalem deal with Palestinians.

The "enemies of Israel," however, are not the only ones to make such comparisons. Some of the strongest criticisms come from within Israel itself, and are uttered by Israelis who are plainly committed to Israel's validity and existence. Dr. Shahak speaks eloquently for many of them. He describes Israel's regime in terms that few Western journalists would dare to use. He calls the Israeli treatment of Palestinians in

the occupied territories "in some respects worse than that of South Africa's apartheid regime at its worst."

When it is realized that Israel's dual system of government is not confined to the occupied territories, with their special "security problems" even within Israel itself, there is a two-tiered system of administering the law that makes it easy for Jews to move through the bureaucratic maze, and difficult for everyone else. The double bureaucratic standard in Israel extends from matters of land ownership and use, through the selective allocation of public resources, up to selective restrictions on personal mobility.

Non-Jews in Israel (essentially meaning Christian and Moslem Arabs) are issued color-coded ID cards that determine where they are authorized to travel within the country. Non-Jews find it next to impossible to acquire land or transfer it to their descendants. Arabs in Jerusalem who wish to make repairs or improvements to their existing property face a daunting gauntlet of forms, fees, and permits that can drag the process out virtually at the whim of Israeli bureaucrats.

It is clear that Israeli Interior Ministry actions are aimed at reducing the number of Palestinians entitled to live in Jerusalem and to have access to such services as public schooling and national health insurance. By entangling Palestinians in a bureaucratic web, and by denying their right to live in their place of origin or with their families, the Israeli occupation authority is conducting a campaign of "ethnic cleansing" to erase East Jerusalem's Palestinian character and create an Israeli rather than an Arab majority.

Israel's discriminatory policies also take the form of "malign neglect." Sheldon Richman, senior editor for the Cato Institute in Washington, DC, points out that the very concept of a Jewish State affects the way that people are treated day to day in Israel. Since the government dominates the economic life of Israel, the distribution of

many goods and services is directly affected by the basic discrimination against non-Jews.

Perhaps the clearest example of malign neglect is the way that basic life-sustaining civic services like water, power, and sanitation are withheld from Christian and Moslem towns and villages, while the taxes that are supposed to support those nonexistent services continue to be rigorously collected, sometimes at bayonet-point.

In 1989 the Christian town of Beit Sahour felt the sharp point of the Israeli bayonet. Beit Sahour claims to be built on the site where the angels first appeared to shepherds Arab villages in Israel whose residents have been left for decades without electricity or sewage, often to the present day."

### **3.8 Popular Persecution**

The "Dual System" within Israel is the selective way the state enforces its own laws against racism and racist incitement. Israeli laws proscribe public expressions of racism and utterances hurtful to human dignity but are almost always applied against the Arabs and hardly ever against the Jews. Racist and insightful pronouncements of Jews against non-Jews specially against Arabs, abound in the State of Israel. Yet I do not recall a single instance of a Jew being convicted for such an offense, although many Arabs have been convicted for incitement against the Jews. The public burning of New Testaments also plainly violates those laws.

Yet such acts are subsidized by the Israeli government. In Israel, Jewish extremists know they can light the fires of religious spite with impunity and so does everyone else. In Israel, everyone understands that fact of life because everyone sees it happen on a daily basis. Christians, as always, are special objects of that spite. They are the targets of a comprehensive cultural hostility against which the Jewish State of



Israel provides no real protection and no effective recourse. A double standard is the most dangerous one of all, because it endorses the second-class status of non-Jews and validates the traditional Jewish (Talmudic) prejudice against them. Extremist Jews are thus encouraged to ventilate their exaggerated scorn against gentiles (especially Christians) in public ways while the objects of their scorn are constrained from responding in word or deed. It doesn't take a social scientist to figure out what the results of that imbalance will be.

Inflammatory words kindle inflamed behavior. When the popular bias against gentiles and Christians is affirmed by the structure of law and reinforced by a pattern of bureaucratic discrimination, Jewish extremists feel free to act out fantasies of anathema drawn from the most regressive elements of Talmudic tradition. The standard expression of anathema is profaning and desecrating the holy things of your religious opposition. The Talmud clearly identifies its religious enemies, and declares it the religious duty of pious Jews to profane the enemy's holy things.

The pattern of profaning Christian sites began early in the history of Israel, and has continued to the present day. Outrageous incidents of anti-Christian desecration have led to official protests, in some cases by the UN, in some cases by other countries, and sometimes by interdenominational Christian bodies. The Christian Union of Palestine (CUP) led the way in 1948 by issuing a statement denouncing the destruction and desecration of Christian holy places that took place as a part of the war to establish the State of Israel. In the preamble to their statement, the CUP said: "Because of this dreadful situation, we, the representatives of the Christian Communities, deem it our solemn duty to raise our voice of protest against the violation of the sanctity of our Churches, convents and institutions."

As it turned out, that was only the beginning. Since then, incidents of anti-Christian vandalism have increased rather than diminished. Many reports and objections have been filed by various churches and church groups over the years, but they don't

appear to have had any lasting effect. The UN has passed a number of resolutions deploring Israel's treatment of its minorities, but has never effectively enforced them.

The problem of aggressive religious spite in Israel (or anywhere else) is intractable through bureaucratic fiat and moralistic resolutions because its momentum comes from the weight of fallen human nature. Until the connection between the Talmud's anti-gentile prejudice, Israel's anti-gentile discrimination, and the extremists' anti-gentile violence is addressed, on some level within Israel itself, the situation will not change. Jewish extremism that compulsively desecrates another faith perpetuates the most regressive elements of Talmudic tradition. Dr Shahak puts the matter with characteristic brutal candor:

*"Dishonoring Christian religious symbols is an old religious duty in Judaism. Spitting on the cross, and especially on the Crucifix, and spitting when a Jew passes a church, have been obligatory from around AD 200 for pious Jews.... This barbarous attitude of contempt and hate for Christian symbols has increased in Israel."*

Interreligious hatred continues to exist in the modern world. No one who understands fallen human nature will be baffled by the persistence of pogroms and persecutions. The fallen human tendency to divide ourselves from and despise one another is an ancient problem that will never be overcome entirely until the Lord returns. It can be constrained and corrected to some degree provided it is acknowledged and identified as a problem.

This is why Christians in Palestine regard their future with such a sense of grim despair. Their difficult status is not acknowledged or identified. It is little noted in Israel itself, even less so in the Western press, and hardly at all in America. One example of this is that after the Christian cemetery on Mount- Zion had been desecrated for the eighth time in a row during the span of a few years, one Western reporter finally visited the scene. He was shocked at what he found. In his description

the tombstones had almost all been shattered, metal crosses lay twisted in their sockets, and the sepulchers had been broken open; the one standing mausoleum was riddled with bullet-holes. "Had we been Jews and our churches been synagogues, desecration like this would have caused an international outcry," said the monk at the Martyrion. "But because of Christians, no one seems to care."

### **3.9 Persecution And Indifference**

According to Tal Brooke:<sup>29</sup> it is difficult for most of us to imagine what it is like to live under such conditions in which pervasive discrimination, continual hostility, and an ever-looming sense of danger dominate one's moment-by-moment attention. Among Christians in Palestine, however, the real temptation to despair (and exodus) is the fact that almost everyone agrees that the problem will get worse instead of better.

There are things that could be done to help but they won't be. Experience has shown that political and economic pressure from other nations would help relieve the kind of persecution that Christians are undergoing in the Middle East, whether in Israel or in Moslem countries. But no such pressure is forthcoming.

The clash of Arab and Israeli agendas sends tremors throughout the international community. But the persecution of Christians doesn't register to anyone as a matter affecting their national interests.

Christians are caught in the collision between two massive power blocs. Since the contending forces that swirl around them overshadow them, the condition of Christians in Palestine has been and continues to be a nonissue for most of the world. Therefore no serious action will soon be taken on their behalf. Israel and the

---

<sup>29</sup> Brooke Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 140-153.

Moslem countries are occasionally "reminded" by the U.S. State Department or the UN that their policies are not entirely approved of. But rarely is anything actually done. The Christians of Palestine already know that the most they can hope for from the "world community" (including the United States) is empty rhetoric and occasional empty gestures.

In the absence of any significant protest from the rest of the world, the double pincer of Moslem and Jewish hostility continues to tighten, and the Christians who actually live under it know what that means for their future. The Jewish side of the pincer pinches the most at the moment because it is the less recognized of the two. Ironically, though discrimination against Christians is (almost) publicly unknown outside of Israel, it is publicly flaunted within Israel itself.

The prejudice against Christians in the Holy Land suggests an unpleasant answer to the question of how Christ would be received if He returned for a visit today. The short answer is that He would get the same treatment He got on His first visitation. My confidence in saying that comes from the fact that Christians are already getting the treatment He got, and Christ Himself made it clear that rejecting His followers is the same as rejecting Him.

In the week before His crucifixion, Jesus delivered the last major sermon of His ministry the so-called "Olivet Discourse." Knowing that His death was near, He spoke of cosmic themes and final things. He described the last judgment, at which time the Son of Man will separate people from one another "as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats" (Matthew 25:32). To the "sheep," He promised His Father's blessing, saying, "For I was hungry and you gave me food, I was thirsty and you gave me drink, I was a stranger and you welcomed me, I was naked and you clothed me, I was sick and you visited me. I was in prison and you came to me" (Matthew 25:35-36).

***And all nations shall be gathered before Him. And He shall separate them from one another, as a shepherd divides the sheep from the goats.***

***Matthew 25:32(MKJV)***

To the "goats," however, He promised judgment, exile, and "the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels," saying that they had turned away from Him when He was hungry, thirsty, naked, and so forth.

Both groups protested that all of this was news to them. Both asked when they had ever behaved in such a way. The "goats" were almost indignant in their query—but to no avail:

"Lord, when did we see You hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not take care of you?"

Then He will answer them, saying, "Truly I say to you, to the extent that you did not do it to one of the least of these, you did not do it to Me." (Matthew 25:44-46).

In His time on earth, Christ was beset and plotted against by His enemies and abandoned in His hour of need by His friends and disciples. Today on earth, the Body of Christ is replaying that same role in the same part of the world.

Not only are the Christians in Palestine beset by religious extremists from both sides, their suffering is largely ignored by their brothers and sisters around the world "Because of Christians, no one seems to care." It is an all too familiar cry.

Those Christians who are able to leave are doing so, because they can only see worsening conditions ahead. Experts estimate that at the present rate of emigration, Christianity will have essentially vanished from its birthplace by sometime in the early twenty-first century if the world lasts that long.

Things have changed since Jesus first came among us. For Christ there was no room at the inn (Luke 2:7). For His followers today, it seems, there is not even room in the manger.

## **4 ISRAEL – A MODERN PERSPECTIVE**

Excerpts from an article/Lecture by Chris Brand<sup>30</sup> will be used to give a critical view of Israel seen from an objective modern perspective.

HATIKVAH ("The HOPE"): Israel's national Anthem:

From a poem by Naphtali Imber in 1878 (in the Ukraine):

REFRAIN

Our hope is not yet lost, the hope of two thousand years, to be a free people in our land, the land of Zion and Jerusalem.

### **4.1 Promises By God**

The land (now Israel) was promised by God to:

Abraham: (Genesis 13:14-15)

Isaac: (Genesis 26:3),

---

<sup>30</sup> Brand, Chris (2013) Article/Lecture. RSA: Râdâh Academy.

Jacob: (Genesis 28:13).

After 400 years in Egypt, the Jews remembered their God and called unto Him day and night. After a powerful intervention by God, the whole nation left Egypt to go and settle the land, which was promised to their forefathers, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. This deliverance was symbolized by the slaughtering of the lamb, and the lamb's blood on the doorposts.

## **4.2 Condemnation And Sentencing Of Jesus Christ**

When Pontius Pilate washed his hands in front of the crowd and said "I am innocent of the blood of this JUST person - see ye to it."

Then all the people answered and said "His blood be on us and on our children" (Mathew 27:24,25). This blood is the blood of the creator of Heaven and Earth, the Almighty King of King's and Lord of Lords.

This was a terrible curse which the Jews brought onto themselves.

## **4.3 The Siege Of Jerusalem And The Diaspora**

The siege of Jerusalem by the Roman army (Titus) began in April, the year 70 after Christ, during the Passover.

Jesus prophesied in (Matthew 24:1-2) in Jerusalem and said "*Verily I say unto you, there shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.*"

In the year 66 AD Cestius Gallus the Roman governor of Syria, surrounded Jerusalem, but decided not to attack. As he left, the Jews attacked his men and slayed 5300 of his men. This caused emperor Nero of Rome to order his general Vespasianus (the father of Titus) to subject and demolish the land of Israel. They

attacked and slayed thousands of people in Galilee and Judea. Many Jews escaped to Jerusalem, but the Christians left Jerusalem, as they knew that the great attack on Jerusalem was now coming.

In Jerusalem there were two factions who then fought against one another. The one faction burnt the granaries to avoid the opposition to get to the grain.

During the siege of Jerusalem 1,1 million people died of which most (one report says 600 000 people) died of hunger in the year 70 AD. 9 700 of the survivors were taken away as prisoners of war and others sold as slaves. This is where the DIASPORA of the Jews started.

In the year 132 to 135 AD the Jews again went into rebellion against the Romans in the BAR-KOCHBA rebellion in which 580 000 Jews were slain.

The scattering (diaspora] of the Jews in the world is illustrated by the population of Jews in the different countries of the world as shown in Table 1. The Jews in Israel comprise about 45% of the Jews in the world. The USA has by far the most Jews outside of Israel, and the City of New York has R2 million Jews, the largest concentration of Jews excluding the Tel Aviv metropolitan area.

#### **4.4 Persecution Of The Jews**

The Jews were persecuted for 500 years from the year 1096 in Europe where thousands were burnt at the stake in countries like Germany and Spain. In 1492 all Jews were given 4 months to leave Spain. All this culminated in the HOLOCAUST in Germany and Poland during the Second World War.



## **4.5 Establishment Of The State Of Israel And Return Of The Jews**

In (Ezekiel. 36:24-26) the prophet Ezekiel prophesied that the Jews will be physically brought back to their own land, but also prophesied a spiritual revival of the Jews.

From 1917 - 1948 the area known as Palestine was under British rule.

Due to Arab objections the British limited the number of Jewish immigrants to 5000 per year. Many Jews were deported by the British as they were considered "illegal immigrants" which caused an underground military revolt by the Jews.

The Jews of Palestine declared the establishment of the State of Israel at 4.32 pm on May 14, 1948 in a ceremony at the Tel Aviv Museum, while 7 Arab states were planning to attack the Jews of Palestine.

The national anthem, "**HATIKVAH**" was then sang.

## **4.6 Proposals For The Jewish State**

There were several proposals for a Jewish state before the establishment of the State of Israel. Different names were proposed, such as Judea and Zion, but the name Israel was chosen.

Several alternatives to Palestine were proposed dating back to the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Examples are:

- ◆ Parts of Argentina (The Audinia Plan)
- ◆ The British Uganda Program - the Mau Plateau which is now part of Kenya
- ◆ The Oblast in Russia

- ◆ The Madagascar Plan.

## **4.7 Arab-Israeli Wars**

Since its establishment in 1948, the State of Israel has fought seven recognized wars, two Palestinian intifadas and a series of armed conflicts in the broader Arab-Israeli conflict.

The most well known wars are:

- ◆ 1948 Arab-Israeli War. This war started after the declaration of independence of Israel. This war caused a large scale Palestinian refugee movement to neighboring Arab countries like Jordan and Libanon. The border which was established is known as the "Green Line."
- ◆ The Six-Day War (June 1967) between Israel and Arab neighbors Egypt, Jordan and Syria. The territory held by Israel expanded significantly to what is known as the "Purple Line".  
In this war the Arab armies had 40 Arab soldiers to 1 Israeli soldier. Unconfirmed reports are that the Lord saved Israel by sending swarms of bees to attack the Arab tanks, as well as balls of fire from Heaven. The Arabs abandoned their tanks and fled, leaving the tanks to be collected by the Israelis.
- ◆ Yom Kippur War (Oct. 1973) - Fought by a coalition of Arab states led by Egypt and Syria against Israel to try and recapture part of the territories lost to the Israelis in the Six Day War.

The war began with a surprise joint attack by Egypt and Syria on the Jewish holiday of Yom Kippur. Arab forces were defeated by Israel.

## **4.8 Political Survival Of The Jewish State Of Israel**

During the last number of years there has been much debate inside and outside of Israel regarding two basic models for trying to create a lasting peace between Jews (Israelis) and Arabs (Palestinians).

The one model is an independent state for Palestinians - the Two State Model.

The other model is for Jews and Palestinians to live together in a single state with full voting rights for Palestinians - the One State Model.

What makes the Two State Model difficult is the very large number of Jewish settlements or towns created inside the Palestinian (future independent state) area which is now known as the "West Bank", referring to the west bank of the Jordan River. The Palestinian areas comprise the "West Bank" area and the Gaza area bordering on Egypt in the south and next to the Mediterranean Sea.

Should a two state idea be implemented, the Jews in the West Bank area would either have to move to the Jewish area or stay under Palestinian rule.

The problem with a one state model is that the Jewish population at present is about 6 million, whereas the Palestinian population totals about 5,9 million, with 1,6 million living inside Jewish Israel, 2,6 million in the West Bank and 1,7 million in the Gaza area.

Due to a larger population growth by the Palestinians, it is estimated that in a one state model, Palestinians would be in the majority in 10 to 15 years. This would most probably cause Israel as a Jewish state to disappear.

## **4.9 The Prophetic Future**

### **4.9.1 The King Of The North: Russia (Daniel 2:31-35)**

***And the word of the LORD came to me, saying,***

***Ezekiel 38:2: Son of man, set your face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief ruler of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal, and prophesy against him.***

***Ezekiel 38:3: And say, So says the Lord Jehovah: Behold, I am against you, O Gog, the chief ruler of Rosh, Meshech and Tubal.***

***Ezekiel 38:13(MKJV)***

Gog is a word for "ruler" which means "the man on top"

In (Genesis 10:1-2) it says that Magog was a grandson of Noah. According to Josephus, the descendants of Magog lived north of the Caucasian mountains in the present Russia and are the most important nation from which the modern Russians developed (Reference 1 and 2).

Meshech and Tubal were younger brothers of Magog and also settled in the present Russia. Moskou is situated directly north of Jerusalem.

Russia is known as an atheistic nation.

According to (Ezekiel 38:19-22), God will destroy Russia and its Arab allies with three weapons of war that He has used before in Scripture, namely:

- ◆ A mighty earthquake.
- ◆ Every man's sword against his brother.
- ◆ Hailstones, fire and brimstone raining from Heaven.

The first weapon was used by God in (Numbers 16) when the earth opened up and a number of people (Korah) and their goods were swallowed up.

According to (Ezekiel 39:12) it will take Israel 7 months to bury all the dead.

#### **4.9.2 The End Time**

Israel will be very much involved in the end time happenings.

The Antichrist will be making a peace treaty with Israel and then turn on the Jewish People.

The War of Armageddon ("Har-Magedon" - "the Mount of Megiddo") which is situated at the Jezreel Valley. This valley is called "the Valley of Jehoshaphat" in the Old Testament (Joel 3:2). See also (Revelation 14:20).

#### **4.10 Visiting Israel**

It is an amazing and enlightening experience for every Christian to visit Israel. At Jerusalem there are many experiences, like the Via de la Rosa, the Mount of Olives, etc.

The involvement of Elijah with the 450 prophets of Baal on Mount Carmel which is just next to Haifa as Table Mountain is next to Cape Town.

The experience of the old Jericho near the Jordan River as a Tell or a mount, which is left of the old city, is amazing.

Nazareth and the Sea (or lake) of Galilee and the place of the Blessings or beatitudes is really something to remember. In (Genesis 12:3) God said "I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that cursed thee."

***And I will bless those that bless you and curse the one who curses you. And in you shall all families of the earth be blessed.***

***Genesis 12:3(MKJV)***

(Psalm 122:6) says ***"Pray for the peace of Jerusalem: they shall prosper that love thee."***

#### **4.11            The Nations Of The World Grafted Into The Jews (Israel) (Romans 10:19-21) And (Romans 11:1-36)**

(Romans 11:2): "God hath not cast away His people which He foreknew."

(Romans 11:8): "God hath given them the spirit of slumber - eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear." - referring to the nation of Israel.

(Romans 11:11): "Have they stumbled that they should fall? God forbid. But rather through their fall, salvation is come unto the Gentiles."

(Romans 11:12): "Now if the fall of them be the riches ("spiritual") of the world, and the diminishing of them the riches of the Gentiles; how much more their fullness."

(Romans 11:24): "For if thou wert cut out of the olive tree which is wild by nature ("The Gentiles") and wert grafted contrary to nature into a good olive tree ("The Jews"), how much more shall these, which be the natural branches ("The Jews"), be grafted into their own olive tree?"

(Romans 11:25,26): "That the blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in." "And so all Israel shall be saved, as it is written."

(Romans 11:33): "O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God!! How unsearchable are His judgments, and His ways past finding out. AMEN"

### **JEWISH POPULATION IN THE WORLD TODAY**

Precise figures are difficult to calculate because the definition of "Who is a Jew" is a source of controversy. Worldwide, there are about 13.5 million Jews. Below is a list of significant Jewish populations in the world by country:

TABLE 1		
JEWISH POPULATION IN THE WORLD BY COUNTRY		
NO	COUNTRY	CORE JEWISH POPULATION
1	Israel	6 015 000
2	United States	5 275 000
3	France	483 500
4	Canada	315 120
5	United Kingdom	263 346
6	Russia	205 000
7	Argentina	182 300
8	Germany	119 000
9	Brazil	107 329
10	Australia	97 000
11	Ukraine	71000
12	South Africa	70 800
13	Hungary	48 600
14	Mexico	39 400

15	Belgium	30 300
16	Netherlands	30 000
17	Italy	28 400
18	Chile	20 500
19	Switzerland	17 600
20	Turkey	17 600
21	Uruguay	17 500
22	Belarus	16 500
23	Sweden	15 000
24	Spain	12 000
25	Venezuela	12 000
26	Latvia	9 700
27	Romania	9 700
28	Austria	9 000
29	Iran	8 756

## **5 JEWISH RELIGION**

Professor Israel Shahak argued<sup>31</sup> that: When the Roman historian Tacitus pointed out 19 centuries ago that the Jews are unique among the peoples of the world in their intense hatred and contempt for all peoples but their own, he was only repeating what many other scholars had discovered before him.

For the next 1,900 years other investigators came to similar conclusions, either from a study of the Jews' religious writings or from a study of the Jews' behavior toward non-Jews.

---

<sup>31</sup> Jewish Religion, Shahak, Prof, Dr. Israel [<http://www.biblebelievers.org.au/jewish.htm>].



Notable among these was the reformer, Martin Luther, who in 1543 wrote in "Von den Juden und Ihren Lugen":

***"Does not their Talmud say, and do not their rabbis write, that it is no sin to kill if a Jew kills a heathen, but it is a sin if he kills a brother in Israel? It is no sin if he does not keep his oath to a heathen. Therefore, to steal and rob, as they do with their usury, from a heathen is a divine service. For they hold that they cannot be too hard on us nor sin against us, because they are of the noble blood and circumcised saints; we, however, are cursed goyim. And they are the masters of the world, and we are their servants, yea, their cattle..."***

***"Should someone think that I am saying too much, I am not saying too much, but much too little. For I see in their writings how they curse us goyim and wish us all evil in their schools and their prayers."***

The Jews responded to Luther like they responded to all the others. They put him down as just another "hater," blinded by religious bigotry. And today that's still the Jews' standard answer to everyone who says or writes anything about them except the most fawning praise.

Unlike his fellow Israelis, however, Professor Shahak is deeply troubled by this peculiar atmosphere. Whereas the Jews around him take it for granted that the goyim on whom they depend for economic, military, and diplomatic support are too stupid ever to figure out what the Jews think about them and say about them behind their backs and plan to do to them when they can, and too sheep like ever to take effective action if they do figure it out, he worries. He remembers that the Romans figured it out, and they consequently sacked Jerusalem and ended their cult in Palestine.

One remembers that the Germans figured it out, and that's why they became an involuntary tenant in a concentration camp. He's worried that if his fellow Jews continues behaving as they always have, they will get themselves into some really serious trouble again.

In particular, Professor Shahak is concerned about the behavior of those of his people who adhere to "Judaism". He is not one of these himself, and so he is able to

look with some degree of objectivity at the mixture of superstition, Jewish chauvinism, and hatred of non-Jews, which makes up the Jewish religion and its sacred writings.

He deplores traditional Jewish teachings, not only because of the danger that some new Martin Luther will come along and spill the beans to the Gentiles, but because of the spiritually debilitating effect these teachings have had on the Jews themselves.

Of the world of medieval Jewry in Europe, the world of the ghetto which modern Jewish writers refer to in euphoric tones as a world of quaint tradition and piety, Shahak says: ***"It was a world sunk in the most abject superstition, fanaticism, and ignorance..."***

He then cites the teaching of this code regarding homicide:

***"According to the Jewish religion, the murder of a Jew is a capital offense and one of the three most heinous sins (the other two being idolatry and adultery). Jewish religious courts and secular authorities are commanded to punish, even beyond the limits of the ordinary administration of justice, anyone guilty of murdering a Jew ... When the victim is a Gentile, the position is quite different. A Jew who murders a Gentile is guilty only of a sin against the laws of Heaven, not punishable by a court. To cause indirectly the death of a Gentile is no sin at all.***

***"Thus, one of the two most important commentators on the Shulhan 'Arukh explains that when it comes to a Gentile, "one must not lift one's hand to harm him, but one may harm him indirectly, for instance by removing a ladder after he had fallen into a crevice ... there is no prohibition here, because it was not done directly."...***

***"A Gentile murderer who happens to be under Jewish jurisdiction must be executed whether the victim was Jewish or not. However, if the victim was Gentile and the murderer converts to Judaism, he is not punished."***

Then Shahak gives us a rabbi's answer to an Israeli soldier who has asked whether or not it is proper to kill Arab women and children. In his answer the rabbi quotes from the Talmud: **"The best of the Gentiles ~ kill him; the best of snakes - dash out its brains."**

Perhaps even more offensive are the Jewish beliefs on sexual matters. Shahak writes:

***"Sexual intercourse between a married Jewish woman and any man other than her husband is a capital offense for both parties, and one of the three most heinous sins. The status of Gentile women is very different. The Halakhah presumes all Gentiles to be utterly promiscuous and the verse "whose flesh is as the flesh of asses, and whose issue [of semen] is like the issue of horses" is applied to them... Therefore, the concept of adultery does not apply to intercourse between a Jewish man and a Gentile woman; rather the Talmud equates such intercourse to the sin of bestiality..."***

***"According to the Talmudic Encyclopedia: "He who has carnal knowledge of the wife of a Gentile is not liable to the death penalty, for it is written: 'thy fellow's wife' rather than the alien's wife ... and although a married Gentile woman is forbidden to the Gentiles, in any case a Jew is exempted."***

***"This does not imply that sexual intercourse between a Jewish man and a Gentile woman is permitted - quite the contrary. But the main punishment is inflicted on the Gentile woman; she must be executed, even if she was raped by the Jew: "If a Jew has coitus with a Gentile woman, whether she be a child of three or an adult, whether married or unmarried, and even if he is a minor aged only nine years and one day ~ because he had willful coitus with her she must be killed, as is the case with a beast, because through her a Jew got into trouble..."***

## 6 ANCIENT ARCHAEOLOGY

### 6.1 Archaeology Of The New Testament

The archaeological evidence from the New Testament period is limited compared to that of the Old Testament era. The time span was much shorter (only a century) and the principal characters left no physical monuments behind. Jesus and the apostles were not kings or builders of cities but men who lived simple lives and devoted themselves to preaching the new gospel and organizing the early Christian communities.

Almost all the synagogues in which Jesus and his disciples preached were destroyed in the course of the Jewish war with the Romans from A.D. 66 to A.D. 70. The ruins of the synagogue at Capernaum (where Jesus began his ministry) date from the end of the third or fourth century A.D., though ruins of an earlier one have recently been found below it.

The Romans destroyed the city of Jerusalem. The grandiose buildings, which the Herods had built for the ages barely, outlived their creators. In the Gospel of Mark, Jesus Himself predicts the destruction of the temple: "Do you see these great buildings? There will not be left here one stone upon another, that will not be thrown down" (Mark 13.2).

***And answering Jesus said to him, Do you see these great buildings? There shall not be one stone left on another that shall not be thrown down.***

***Mark 13:2(MKJV)***

Most of ancient Jerusalem lies beneath modern religious structures and few areas can be excavated. For this reason, archaeologists have uncovered very little from Jesus' day.<sup>32</sup>

The main archaeological remnant of Jesus' time is the retaining wall of the temple area. The famous "Wailing Wall" is part of the western portion of that wall. Only a few years ago, the south wall (where the main gate and stairway were) was uncovered. Houses and other buildings of Jesus' time are also being found under the destruction debris of the wall. Another site of the New Testament period uncovered in Jerusalem is the floor of the Antonia fortress where Jesus may have stood before Pontius Pilate. The paving stones still bear the marks carved by Roman soldiers to make a game board for their garrison. Today the floor of the Antonia lies beneath a convent. The main source of knowledge of the New Testament period outside the Bible itself is not

---

<sup>32</sup> The Readers Digest, (1974) Great People Of The Bible And How They Lived. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 302-303.

archaeological but literary. Such documents as the Dead Sea Scrolls, the writings of Josephus—a Jewish officer in the war with the Romans (A.D. 66-70), and the works of the Roman historian Tacitus offer valuable information and insights into Jesus' time. Tacitus, who wrote some 40 years after Jesus' death, described the attitude of typical Roman toward the early Christians. In his description of the mad Emperor Nero's persecution, Tacitus wrote: "... Nero fastened the guilt and inflicted the most exquisite tortures on a class hated for their abominations, called Christians by the populace. Christus, from whom the name had its origin, suffered the extreme penalty during the reign of Tiberius at the hands of one of our procurators, Pontius Pilatus, and a most mischievous superstition, thus checked for the moment, again broke out not only in Judea, the first source of the evil, but even in Rome, where all things hideous and shameful from every part of the world find their center and become popular".

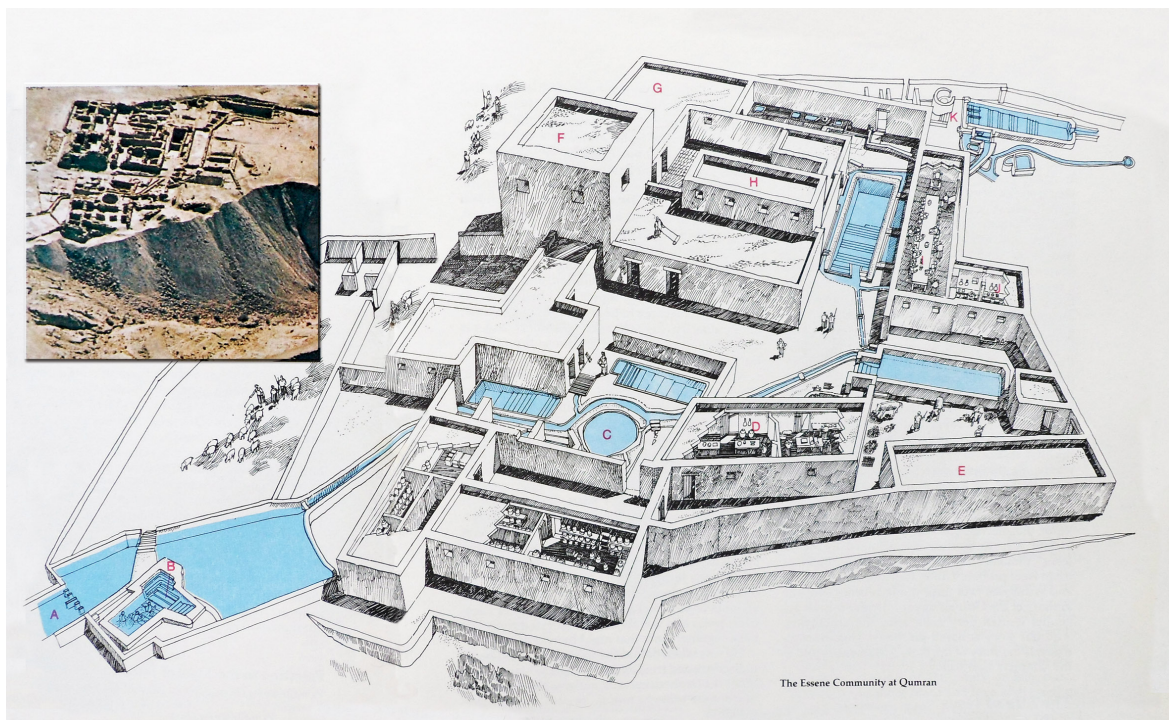


Figure 6: The Essene Community At Qumran.

## **6.2 Archaeology Of Jericho In The Old Testament**

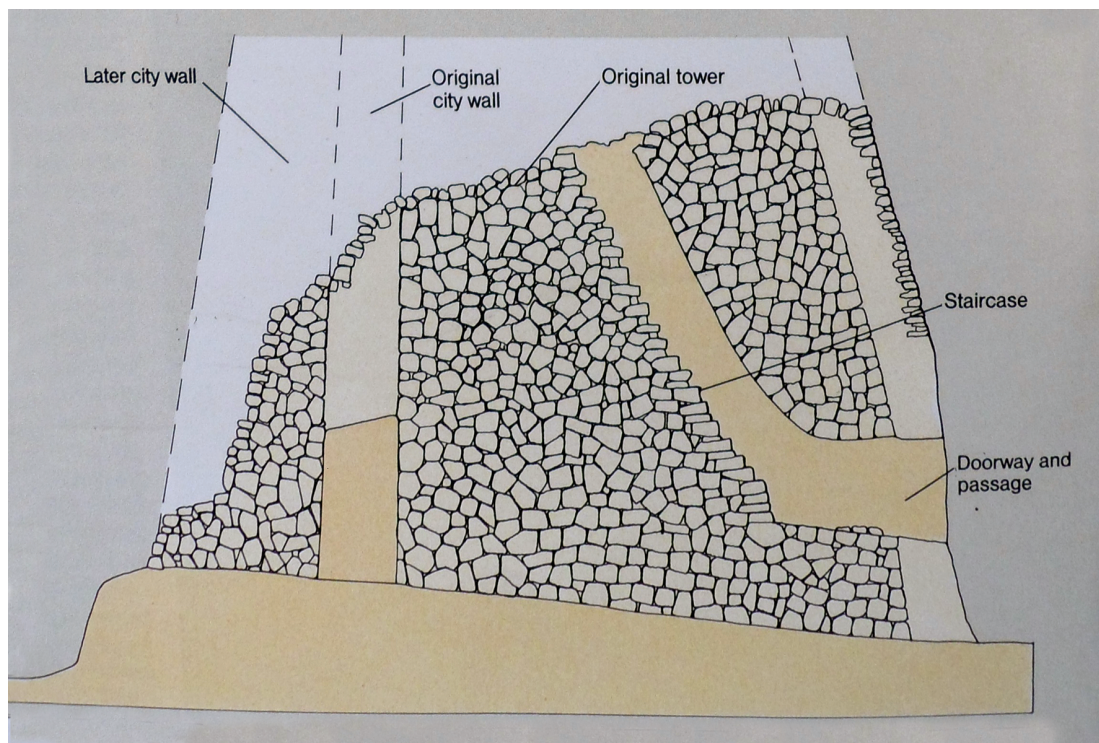
The site of ancient Jericho (Tell al-Sultan) lies in the Jordan valley some 200 meters below sea level. Jericho is now remembered as the city where Joshua blew his trumpet and the walls came tumbling down, but it was an important city long before and long after the Israelite invasions in the late second millennium BC. The prosperity of Jericho depended on the abundant spring on the east side of the site. The earliest occupation lies deeply buried beneath later remains and has been investigated in a few areas only. These show that after settlement in the Natufian period, it was an important center in the Proto-Neolithic (Pre-Pottery Neolithic A) and Aceramic Neolithic (Pre-Pottery Neolithic B) periods and throughout the Bronze Age.



Figure 7: The Aceramic Neolithic period 3t Jericho the dead were commonly buried beneath the floors of the houses with their skulls removed. The removal of the cranium was probably carried out after the flesh and sinews had decayed, as the lower jaw was normally left with the rest of the skeleton. Some of the skulls found under the floors had had their features modeled in plaster and the eye sockets filled with shells, sometimes bivalves, and in one case cowrie shells.



Figure 8 And 9: *Right and below* One of the more remarkable features of Proto-Neolithic Jericho is the stone tower attached to the inside of the city wall. The tower is 10 m in diameter and still survives to a height of more than 8 m. A doorway 1.7 m high on its eastern side leads inside to a staircase of 22 steps, each made out of a single block of stone. The city wall was repaired and rebuilt several times and a ditch 8 m wide and more than 2 m deep was cut into the rock outside the wall. The purpose that the tower served is still a matter of debate.



## 7 THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD

An instrument of work, service, and spirituality; ministry activities that fulfill the Word and Will of God. See (Hosea 12).

***I have also spoken by the prophets, and I have multiplied visions and have used parables by the hand of the prophets.***

***Hosea 12:10:***

The Hand of the Lord upon the Prophet is mentioned frequently in the Bible. It is a term that the Prophets coined to express the weighty burden of prophecy that exhibited itself as a press upon the shoulders, upper back, or about the neck.

Other prophetic sensations felt in the region of the belly were bitterness, effervescence, or burning in the chest.<sup>33</sup>

The **Right Hand of God** (*dextera Domini* “right hand of the Lord” in Latin) or **God’s right hand** may refer to the hand of God often referred to in the Bible and common speech as a metaphor for the omnipotence of God and as a motif in art. The Archangel Michael is also often referred to as “*the Right Hand of God.*”

It is also a placement next to God in Heaven, in the traditional place of honor, mentioned in the New Testament as the place of Christ at (Mark 16:19), (Luke 22:69), (Matthew 22:44 and 26:64), (Acts 2:34 and 7:55-56), (1 Peter 3:22) and elsewhere.

***Then indeed, after speaking to them, the Lord was taken up into Heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.***

***Mark 16:19(MKJV)***

***From now on the Son of man shall sit at the right hand of the power of God.***

***Luke 22:69(MKJV)***

---

<sup>33</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet’s Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries, pp. 220, 248.



***"the LORD said to my Lord, Sit on My right until I make Your enemies Your footstool for Your feet?"***

***Matthew 22:44(MKJV)***

***Jesus said to him, You said it. I tell you more. From this time you shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming on the clouds of the heavens.***

***Matthew 26:64(MKJV)***

***For David has not ascended into the heavens, but he says himself, "The LORD said to my Lord, Sit at My right hand***

***Acts 2:34(MKJV)***

***But being full of the Holy Spirit, looking up intently into Heaven, he saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing at the right hand of God.***

***Acts 7:56: And he said, Behold, I see Heaven opened and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.***

***Acts 7:55-56(MKJV)***

***who is at the right hand of God, having gone into Heaven, where the angels and authorities and powers are being subjected to Him.***

***I Peter 3:22(MKJV)***

These uses reflect use of the phrase in the Old Testament, for example in (Psalms 63:8 and 110:1).

***My soul follows hard after You; Your right hand upholds me.***

***Psalms 63:8(MKJV)***

***A Psalm of David. The LORD said to my Lord, Sit at My right hand until I place Your enemies as Your footstool.***

***Psalms 110:1(MKJV)***

In the Bible, to be at the right side "is to be identified as being in the special place of honor." In Jesus' The Sheep and the Goats, the sheep and goats are separated with the sheep on the right hand of God and the goats on the left hand.

The implications of this anthropomorphic phrasing have been discussed at length by theologians, including Saint Thomas Aquinas.

The word “sitting” may have a twofold meaning, namely, **“abiding”** as in Luke 24: 49; **“And behold, I send the promise of My father on you. But you sit in the city of Jerusalem until you are clothed with power from on high”**; and royal or judiciary **“power”**, as in Proverbs 20: 8; **“A king who sits in the throne of judgment scatters away all evil with his eyes”**.

Therefor in either sense it belongs to Jesus Christ to sit at the Father’s right hand. First of all inasmuch as He abides eternally unchangeable in the Father’s bliss, which is termed His right hand, according to Psalm 16: 11: **“You will make Me know the way of life; in Your presence is fullness of joys. At Your right hand are pleasures forevermore”**.

The **Hand of God**, or **Manus Dei** in Latin, also known as **Dextera domini/dei**, the “right hand of God”, is a motif in Jewish and Christian art, especially of the Late Antique and Early Medieval periods, when depiction of Jehovah or God the Father as a full human figure was considered unacceptable.

The hand, sometimes including a portion of an arm, or ending about the wrist, is used to indicate the intervention in or approval of affairs on Earth by God, and sometimes as a subject in itself.

It is always an artistic metaphor that is never intended to indicate that a hand was physically present or seen at any subject depicted, and there are no examples of the Hand of God actually being seen in the Bible.

The Hand is seen appearing from above in a fairly restricted number of narrative contexts, often in a blessing gesture, but sometimes performing an action.



Figure 10: The Hand As An Isolated Motif. Fresco from Sant Climent De Taüll In Catalonia.

In later Christian works it tends to be replaced by a fully realized figure of God the Father, whose depiction had become acceptable in Western Christianity, although not in Eastern Orthodox or Jewish art. The largest group of Jewish imagery from the ancient world, the 3rd century synagogue at Dura-Europas, has the hand of God in five different scenes, including the *Sacrifice of Isaac*, and no doubt this was one of the many iconographic features taken over by Christian art from what seems to have been a vigorous tradition of Jewish narrative art.

Here and elsewhere it often represents the *bath Kol* (literally “daughter of a voice”) or voice of God, a use also taken over into Christian art. The hand may also relate to older traditions in various other religions in the Ancient Near East.

Like the hamsa amulet, the hand is sometimes shown alone on buildings, although it does not seem to have existed as a portable amulet-type object in Christian use. It is found from the 4th century on in the Catacombs of Rome, including paintings of *Moses receiving the Law* and the *Sacrifice of Isaac*.

There are numerous references to the hand, or arm, of God in the Hebrew Bible, some clearly metaphorical in the way that remains current in modern English, but others capable of a literal interpretation.

There are three occasions in the gospels when the voice of God is heard, and the hand often represents this in visual art. Gertrud Schiller distinguishes three functions of the hand in Christian art: as symbol of either God's presence or the voice of God, or signifying God's acceptance of a sacrifice.

## **7.1 THE SEVEN STARS IN THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD**

**Revelation 1:16** *“And he had in his right hand seven stars...”* The angels or pastors of the seven churches, as seen in (Revelation 1:20). The ministers of the Gospel are compared to stars, because of their efficient cause, God, who has made them, and fixed them in their proper place, and for His glory; and because of the matter of them, being the same with the heavens, so ministers are of the same nature with the churches; and because of their form, light, which they receive from the sun, so preachers of the Gospel receive their light from Christ; and because of their multitude and variety, so the ministers of the Gospel are many, and their gifts different; and chiefly for their usefulness, to give light to others, to direct to Christ, and point out the way of salvation, and to rule over the churches: nor was it unusual with the Jews to compare good men to stars, and to the seven stars.

***And He had seven stars in His right hand, and out of His mouth went a sharp two-edged sword. And His face was like the sun shining in its strength.***  
***Revelation 1:16(MKJV)***

The Targumist (r) says, the seven lamps in the candlestick answer to the seven stars to which the righteous are like. These are led and held in Christ's right hand; which shows that they are dear unto Him, and highly valued by Him; that they are his, in His possession, at His dispose, whom He uses as His instruments to do His work; and

whom He upholds and sustains, that they shall not sink under their burdens; and whom He preserves from failing, and so holds them that they shall stand fast in the faith, and not be carried away with the error of the wicked:

**Revelation 1:17 “And when I saw him...”** The glorious person here described, who was just behind Him, and of whom He had a full view, being so near Him: **I fell at his feet as dead**; through consternation and fear, the sight was so amazing and terrible; the appearance of a divine person in any degree of majesty and glory, has had some considerable effect upon men, even upon the best of men; but John seems to be more affected with it than any, as the vision was the more grand and illustrious: Manoah was afraid he should die, but did not fall down as dead; Ezekiel fell upon his face, but had his senses; Daniel's comeliness turned into corruption, and he retained no strength, he fainted, and fell into a deep sleep; see (Judges 13); but John fell down at once, as dead.

*And when I saw Him, I fell at His feet as dead. And He laid His right hand upon me, saying to me, Do not fear, I am the First and the Last,*  
*Revelation 1:17(MKJV)*

*And Manoah said to his wife, We shall surely die because we have seen God.*  
*Judges 13:22(MKJV)*

This panic which good men were seized with, at any more than ordinary appearance of God, or apprehension of His presence, arose from a notion that present death ensues a sight of Him; hence Jacob wonders, and is thankful, that he had seen God face to face, and yet his life was preserved, (Genesis 32:30); and such an effect as here, upon the body, any uncommon discovery of the divine Being has, partly through the weakness of human nature, which in its present circumstances is not able to bear the rays and glories of a divine person; hence the resurrection of the body in power, glory, and immortality, incorruption and spirituality, is necessary to the enjoyment of God and Christ in a state of bliss and happiness to all eternity; and partly through a consciousness of sin, which ever since the fall of Adam has

occasioned fear and perturbation of mind, even in the best of saints, when they have had any sense of the divine Majesty being near, in an unusual form of glory: **and He laid His right hand upon me**; even the same in which He had, and held the seven stars; and which showed what an affection He had for him, in what esteem He had him, what care He took of him, and what power He would exert in lifting up, strengthening, and supporting him; for He laid not his hand on him in wrath and angers, but in love; and in order to raise him up and revive his spirits, and remove his fears; hence the Ethiopic version renders it, “and He took hold on me with his right hand, and lifted me up”; as He does all who in a spiritual sense fall at his feet; it is always safe and comfortable falling there: **saying unto me, fear not**; language which John had heard from Him in the days of his flesh, and might therefore be chose now on purpose that he might the sooner know who He was and be comforted;<sup>34</sup> see (Matthew 14).

***But immediately Jesus spoke to them, saying, Be of good cheer, I AM! Do not fear.***

***Matthew 14:27(MKJV)***

## 7.2 THE FINGER OF GOD

A finger is a spiritual outreach and activity. Individual assistance or supports of the hand. Symbolic of all the fivefold ministry and their positions, see (Ephesians 4).

***And truly He gave some to be apostles, and some to be prophets, and some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers,***

***Ephesians 4:11(MKJV)***

- The thumb refers to the Apostle;
- The pointer finger refers to Prophet;
- The middle finger refers to Evangelist;
- The ring finger refers to Pastor;

---

<sup>34</sup> e-Sword – The Sword Of The Lord With An Electronic Edge. John Gill’s Exposition Of The Entire Bible.

- The pinky finger refers to teacher;

Lets see in the following verses: (Psalm8); (Daniel 8); (Deuteronomy 9); and (Luke 11) in the Word of God the Wonderful working of the finger of God.

*When I look at Your heavens, the work of Your fingers, the moon and the stars which You have established;*

*Psalms 8:3(MKJV)*

*At that moment fingers of a man's hand came out and wrote on the plaster of the wall of the king's palace across from the lampstand. And the king saw the part of the hand that wrote.*

*Daniel 5:5(MKJV)*

*And the priests said to Pharaoh, This is the finger of God. And Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not listen to them, as the LORD had said.*

*Exodus 8:19(MKJV)*

*And the LORD delivered to me two tablets of stone written with the finger of God, and on them according to all the words which the LORD spoke with you in the mountain out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly.*

*Deuteronomy 9:10(MKJV)*

*But if I cast out demons with the finger of God, no doubt the kingdom of God has come on you.*

*Luke 11:20(MKJV)*

## 8 TYPES AND ANTI-TYPES

Jesus summed up His Discourse on the “Kingdom of Heaven” Parables of (Matthew 13:1-52), with these words. “**Therefor** (one must note the “There fore’s” of Scripture) every scribe (Bible Teacher) who is instructed unto the ‘Kingdom of Heaven’ is like unto a Householder, who bring forth out of his **Treasure** things **New** and **Old**.

The “**OLD**” things are the “**TYPES**” of the Old Testament, and the **NEW** things what they stand for in the New Testament. The New Testament is “enfolded” in the Old

Testament, and the Old Testament is “unfolded” in the New. Or as St. Augustine puts it:

“The New is in the Old **contained**;  
The Old is by the New **explained**.”

One cannot understand Leviticus without Hebrews, or Daniel without Revelation, or the Passover, or Isaiah 53 without the Gospel account of the Crucifixion.

The value of the study of the “Types” and “Antitypes” is the proof they furnish of the Inspiration of the Scriptures. Their study proves beyond question that the Scriptures had but one Author – the **Holy Spirit**.

The “Typology” of the Old Testament is the “**PICTURE LANGUAGE**” in which the Doctrines of the New Testament, such as the Atonement, are prefigured. For illustration the “Brazen Serpent” and the “Cross.” See (John 3).

*As Moses lifted up the bronze snake on a pole in the desert, in the same way the Son of Man must be lifted up,*

*so that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life.*

*John 3:14-15(GNB)*

Therefore no preacher or Bible Teacher is competent to preach the doctrines of the New Testament who is not acquainted with the “Typology” of the Old Testament. What do one mean by “Types?” The Apostle Paul gives the answer in 1 Corinthians 10:1-11, and in verse 11 he stated:

*And all these things happened to them as examples; and it is written for our warning on whom the ends of the world have come.*

*I Corinthians 10:11(MKJV)*

Of “whom” and of what “things” is the Apostle speaking? Of the children of Israel, and the “things” that happened to them from the time of their “Egyptian Bondage” until



they reached the “Land of Promise.” So we see that while the Old Testament is a recording of the history of the children of Israel, the events of that “History” are more than mere events; they are **“TIPICAL”** of the “Plan of Salvation” as revealed in the New Testament, and are neither “mythical” nor “allegorical,” but really happened to Israel and were recorded for our instruction.

The writer to the Hebrews tells us that the “Types” are but the *“shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the thing.”*

*For the Law which has a shadow of good things to come, not the very image of the things, appearing year by year with the same sacrifices, which they offer continually, they are never able to perfect those drawing near.*

*Hebrews 10:1(MKJV)*

That is, the Old Testament “Types” are but **“Shadows.”** But there cannot be a **“shadow”** without some **“Real Thing”** to make it. And a **“shadow”** is not the **“very image of the thing,”** for a shadow is out of proportion, and is an imperfect representation of the thing it reveals. So the Old Testament Types are **“shadows”** in the sense that they are not the **“Real Thing,”** and are but imperfect revelations of it.

A “Type” then is some “person,” or “event,” or “ceremony” that is recorded to “foreshadow” some future “person,” or “event,” or “ceremony.” For illustration:

- **TYPICAL PERSONS**, like Adam, Cain, Abel, Melchizedek, Abraham, Isaac, Joseph, Moses, Joshua, David, Jonah.
- **TYPICAL EVENTS**, like the “Flood,” the “Plagues of Egypt,” the “Passover,” the “Brazen Serpent,” “Crossing the Jordan,” “Cities of Refuge.”
- **TYPICAL CEREMONIES**, like the “Offerings,” the “Ceremonial Cleansing,” the “Feasts,” “Day of Atonement.” To which might be added:  
**“Typical Structures,”** like the “Ark,” the “Tabernacle,” the “Temple.”

**“Typical Furniture**, like the “Brazen Altar,” the “Laver,” the “Seven Branched Candlestick,” the “Table of Shewbread,” the “Altar of Incense,” and the “Ark of the Covenant” with the “Mercy Seat.”

**“Typical Colors”** like “Blue,” Red,” “White,” “Purple,” “Scarlet,” “Green.”

**“Typical Numbers”** like “one,” “three,” “four,” “seven,” “twelve,” “forty.”

In Studying the “Types” the two comparative words **“AS”** and **“SO”** are forcibly called to our attention. The word **“AS”** is used for the “Type,” and the word **“SO”** for the “Antitype.” The first is **historic**; the second is **prophetic**.

**“AS** in Adam all die, even **SO** in Jesus Christ shall all be made alive.” (1 Corinthians 15:22).

**“AS** the days of Noah were, **SO** shall also the coming of the Son of Man be.” (Matthew 24:37).

**“AS** Moses lifted up the serpent in the Wilderness, even **SO** must the Son of Man be lifted up.” (John 3:14).

**“AS** Jonah was three days and three nights in the Whale’s belly; **SO** shall the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.” (Matthew 12:40).

The above “Types” with their “Antitype” stand out so prominently in Scripture that their meaning is clear to the most superficial reader. But there are “Types” in the Old Testament whose “Dispensational Teaching” does not lie on the surface, and is never seen by the superficial reader. For illustration take the story of:

**ISAAC AND REBEKAH** (Genesis 24:1-67).

In this story:

➤ **ABRAHAM IS A TYPE OF “GOD.”**

➤ **ISAAC A TYPE OF “JESUS CHRIST.”**

Both Isaac (Genesis 15) and Jesus Christ (Isaiah 7) were **CHILDREN OF PROMISE.**

*And, behold, the word of the LORD came unto him, saying, This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir.*

*Genesis 15:4(KJV)*

*So, the Lord Himself shall give you a sign. Behold, the virgin will conceive and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call His name Immanuel.*

*Isaiah 7:14(MKJV)*

The birth of Isaac (Genesis 18) and Jesus Christ (Luke 1) was **PRE-ANNOUNCED.**

*One of them said, "Nine months from now I will come back, and your wife Sarah will have a son." Sarah was behind him, at the door of the tent, listening.*

*Genesis 18:10(GNB)*

*The angel said to her, "Don't be afraid, Mary; God has been gracious to you.*

*You will become pregnant and give birth to a son, and you will name him Jesus.*

*Luke 1:30-31 GNB)*

Both Isaac (Genesis 17) and Jesus Christ (Luke 1) were **NAMED BEFORE THEIR BIRTH.**

*But God said, "No. Your wife Sarah will bear you a son and you will name him Isaac. I will keep my covenant with him and with his descendants forever. It is an everlasting covenant.*

*Genesis 17:19(GNB)*

*You will become pregnant and give birth to a son, and you will name him Jesus.*

*Luke 1:31(GNB)*

The birth of Isaac and Jesus Christ was **CONTRARY TO NATURE.**

Sarah was **barren** (Genesis 11) and Mary was a **virgin** (Matthew 1)

*And Sarai was barren; she had no child.*

*Genesis 11:30(ASV)*

*This was how the birth of Jesus Christ took place. His mother Mary was engaged to Joseph, but before they were married, she found out that she was going to have a baby by the Holy Spirit.*

*Joseph was a man who always did what was right, but he did not want to disgrace Mary publicly; so he made plans to break the engagement privately.*

*While he was thinking about this, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, "Joseph, descendant of David, do not be afraid to take Mary to be your wife. For it is by the Holy Spirit that she has conceived.*

*Matthew 1:18-20(GNB)*

Both Isaac (Genesis 22) (Hebrews 11) and Jesus Christ (John 3) are called an **ONLY SON**.

*"Take your son," God said, "your only son, Isaac, whom you love so much, and go to the land of Moriah. There on a mountain that I will show you, offer him as a sacrifice to me."*

*Genesis 22:2(GNB)*

*It was faith that made Abraham offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice when God put Abraham to the test. Abraham was the one to whom God had made the promise, yet he was ready to offer his only son as a sacrifice.*

*Hebrew 11:17(GNB)*

*For God loved the world so much that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him may not die but have eternal life.*

*John 3:16(GNB)*

Both Isaac (Genesis 21); (Galatians 4) and Jesus Christ (Matthew 27) were mocked and persecuted by **THEIR OWN KINDRED**.

*One day Ishmael, whom Hagar the Egyptian had borne to Abraham, was playing with Sarah's son Isaac.*

**Sarah saw them and said to Abraham, "Send this slave and her son away. The son of this woman must not get any part of your wealth, which my son Isaac should inherit."**

**Genesis 21:9-10(GNB)**

**Now, you, my friends, are God's children as a result of his promise, just as Isaac was.**

**At that time the son who was born in the usual way persecuted the one who was born because of God's Spirit; and it is the same now.**

**Galatians 4:28-29(GNB)**

**Then they made a crown out of thorny branches and placed it on his head, and put a stick in his right hand; then they knelt before him and made fun of him. "Long live the King of the Jews!" they said.**

**Matthew 27:29(GNB)**

Neither Isaac (Genesis 22) nor Jesus Christ (Matthew 27) had **BROKEN THE LAW** that they should be offered up.

**"Take your son," God said, "your only son, Isaac, whom you love so much, and go to the land of Moriah. There on a mountain that I will show you, offer him as a sacrifice to me."**

**(Genesis 22:2 GNB)**

**But when Pilate saw that it gained nothing, but rather that a tumult was made, he took water and washed his hands before the crowd, saying, I am innocent of the blood of this just person. You see to it.**

**Matthew 27:24(MKJV)**

As Isaac (Genesis 22) **carried the wood** on which he was to die, so Jesus Christ (John 19) carried His **"OWN CROSS."**

**And Abraham put the wood for the burned offering on his son's back, and he himself took the fire and the knife in his hand, and the two of them went on together.**

**(Genesis 22:6 BBE)**

**And he bearing his cross went forth into a place called the place of a skull, which is called in the Hebrew Golgotha:**

**(John 19:17 KJV)**

As Isaac (Genesis 22) went **willingly to the “alter,”** so Jesus Christ (John 10) went **willingly to the “CROSS.”**

*And they came to the place which God had told him of. And Abraham built the altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar, upon the wood.*

(Genesis 22:9 ASV)

*Therefore My Father loves Me, because I lay down My life so that I might take it again.*

(John 10:17 MKJV)

Both Isaac (Genesis 22) and Jesus Christ (Matthew 27) apparently given up or **FORSAKEN BY HIS FATHER.**

*And he said, Lay not thy hand upon the lad, neither do thou anything unto him. For now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son, from me.*

(Genesis 22:12 ASV)

*At about three o'clock Jesus cried out with a loud shout, "Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?" which means, "My God, my God, why did you abandon me?"*

(Matthew 27:46 GNB)

Both Isaac (Hebrew 11) and Jesus Christ (Matthew 28) rose from the place of death in **RESURRECTION.**

*It was faith that made Abraham offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice when God put Abraham to the test. Abraham was the one to whom God had made the promise, yet he was ready to offer his only son as a sacrifice.*

*God had said to him, "It is through Isaac that you will have the descendants I promised."*

*Abraham reckoned that God was able to raise Isaac from death---and, so to speak, Abraham did receive Isaac back from death.*

Hebrews 11:17-19(GNB)

*He is not here; he has been raised, just as he said. Come here and see the place where he was lying.*

(Matthew 28:6 GNB)

➤ **ELIEZER A TYPE OF THE “HOLY SPIRIT”**

- As Eliezer was a servant of Abraham, so the Holy Spirit is a **“Servant of God.”**
- As Eliezer’s mission was to go to Haran and get a **bride for Isaac**, so the Holy Spirit has been sent from Heaven to get a **BRIDE FOR JESUS CHRIST**.
- As Eliezer was not sent to get a bride for Isaac until **after he was typically offered up**, so the Holy Spirit was not sent to get a Bride for Jesus Christ until **AFTER HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION**.
- As Eliezer did not talk **about himself, but about his Master’s son**, so the Holy Spirit does not talk about **HIMSELF, BUT ABOUT JESUS CHRIST**.
- As Eliezer was **urgent**, (Genesis 24) so the Holy Spirit is **URGENT**. (2 Corinthians)

*And the servant brought forth jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. He also gave precious things to her brother and to her mother.*

*And they ate and drank, he and the men with him, and stayed all night. And they rose up in the morning, and he said, Send me away to my master.*

*And her brother and her mother said, Let the young woman stay with us perhaps ten days. After that she shall go.*

*And he said to them, Do not hinder me, since the LORD has prospered my way. Send me away, that I may go away to my master.*

*Genesis 24:53-56(MKJV)*

*(For He says, "In an acceptable time I heard you, and in a day of salvation, I helped you;" Behold, now is the accepted time. Behold, now is the day of salvation.)*

*II Corinthians 6:2(MKJV)*

- As Eliezer by the precious gifts he gave Rebekah revealed the wealth of his Master Isaac, so the Holy Spirit by His Gifts gives us a foretaste of what is in store for the Bride of Jesus Christ, the Church.
- When Eliezer got Rebekah’s consent to be the bride of Isaac **he himself took her back**; he did not send her back while he remained with her kinsfolk. So

when the Bride, the Church, is ready the **HOLY SPIRIT WILL GO BACK TO HEAVEN WITH HER.**

➤ **REBEKAH A TYPE OF THE 'BRIDE OF CHRIST.'**

As Rebekah believed and yielded to the pleadings of Eliezer, so the church believes and yields to the pleadings of the **HOLY SPIRIT.**

As Rebekah was willing to separate herself from her kinsfolk for **Isaac's sake**, so the Believer is willing to separate himself from his kinsfolk for **JESUS'S SAKE.**

As Eliezer on the way to Isaac told Rebekah all about his Master Isaac, and what was in the store for her, so the Holy Spirit as we journey on our earthly pilgrimage tells us what is in store for us when we shall meet our Isaac – **JESUS CHRIST.**

As Rebekah was a **Gentile** bride, so the Church of Jesus Christ is a **GENTILE** Bride. While Rebekah was a kinswoman of Isaac, she was a Gentile, for while Abraham was the first Hebrew, his kins-people were Gentiles, and for the Jews are the descendants of Judah, the fourth son of Abraham's grandson Jacob.

As Rebekah did not have to pass through any **tribulation** before she left her home to go to Isaac, so the Church will not have to pass through **THE TRIBULATION** before meeting Jesus Christ.

As Isaac left his home and went **out into the field** to meet Rebekah, so Jesus Christ will **DESCEND FROM HEAVEN TO MEET HIS BRIDE, THE CHURCH, IN THE AIR.**



As it was “**eventide**” when Isaac met Rebekah, so it will be the **EVENTIDE OF THIS DISPENSATION WHEN JESUS CHRIST MEETS HIS CHURCH.**

Some “Types” have a double application. Take the Prophet Jonah. Jesus uses the swallowing of Jonah by a “great fish,” and after 3 days being vomited up alive, as a “Type” of His own Resurrection from the Tomb of Joseph of Arimathea. See (Matthew 12). But Jonah is also a “Type of the Jewish Nation.”

*For as Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the huge fish, so the Son of man shall be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.*  
*Matthew 12:40(MKJV)*

- Jonah was called and sent to preach to a heathen city Nineveh, so the Jews were called and sent to preach to the heathen nations.
- Jonah disobeys and flees to Tarshish, so the Jews fail in their mission to the heathen.
- Jonah for his disobedience was cast overboard, so the Jews have been scattered among the nations.
- Jonah repents in his “grave” in the stomach of the fish, so the Jews will mourn their lost condition in the “graveyard of the nations.”
- Jonah was restored to the land, so the Jews will be restored to their own land.
- Jonah received a “Second Call” and obeyed, so the Jews will have a second opportunity to witness to the nations and will obey.

➤ **JOSEPH A TYPE OF JESUS CHRIST**

- Joseph was “beloved” of his father, and so was Jesus Christ.
- Joseph was sent unto his brethren, and so was Jesus Christ.
- Joseph’s brethren refused to receive him, and so did the brethren of Jesus Christ.
- Joseph was sold by his brethren, and so was Jesus Christ.
- Joseph was unjustly accused and condemned, and so was Jesus Christ.
- Joseph was buried in prison, and so was Jesus Christ in the Tomb of Joseph.
- Joseph was resurrected from prison and exalted to sit with Pharaoh on his throne, so Jesus Christ was resurrected and exalted to sit on His Father’s Throne.
- Joseph on the throne became the dispenser of bread to starving Egypt, so Jesus Christ on His Father’s Throne is the “Bread of Life” for a perishing world.
- After Joseph was exalted he got a Gentile bride, so Jesus Christ will get a Gentile Bride – **THE CHURCH.**
- After Joseph got his bride his brethren suffered famine and came to him for corn, so after Jesus Christ gets His Bride, His brethren, the Jews will turn to Him, during the time of “Jacob’s Trouble,” the “Great Tribulation,” for relief.
- Joseph knew his brethren the first time, but they did not know him, so Jesus Christ knew His brethren when He came the first time but they knew Him not.

- Joseph made himself known to his brethren when they came the “Second time,” so Jesus Christ will be recognized by the Jews when He comes the **SECOND TIME**.
- After Joseph’s revelation of himself to his brethren, they go forth to proclaim that he is alive and the “savior of the world,” so when Jesus Christ reveals Himself to His brethren the Jews they will proclaim Him alive and the **SAVIOUR OF MANKIND**.
- Joseph then establishes his brethren and their families in the “**land of Goshen**,” so Jesus Christ will re-establish the Jews in the **LAND OF PALISTINE**.

If the “Type” and the “Antitype” have both appeared, as the “Brazen Serpent” and the “Uplifted Christ,” then the Type has been fulfilled. Therefore Noah’s Ark is not a type of Jesus Christ, but is a type of the provision God is going to make to transport the saved of the nations of the “Millennial Earth,” over to the “New Earth.” The “Plagues of Egypt” are a type of the Plagues of the Great Tribulation.

The “Cities of Refuge” are a type of the “Refuge” God will provide for the “Jewish Remnant” during the time of “Jacob’s Trouble.” The “Golden Image” that Nebuchadnezzar erected on the Plain of Dura is a type of the “Image of the Antichrist” that the False Prophet shall command to be made. (See Revelation 13).<sup>35</sup>

---

<sup>35</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan And Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published By Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 153-155

---

***And it deceives those dwelling on the earth, because of the miracles which were given to it to do before the beast, saying to those dwelling on the earth that they should make an image to the beast who had the wound by a sword and lived.***

***And there was given to it to give a spirit to the image of the beast, so that the image of the beast might both speak, and might cause as many as would not worship the image of the beast to be killed.***

***Revelation 13:14-15(MKJV)***

## **9 WAR IN HEAVEN**

***And there was war in Heaven. Michael and his angels warring against the dragon. And the dragon and his angels warred,***

***but did not prevail. Nor was place found for them in Heaven any more.***

***And the great dragon was cast out, the old serpent called Devil, and Satan, who deceives the whole world. He was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.***

***Revelation 12:7-9(MKJV)***

We should first recall, the book of revelation was written of FUTURE events that were to take place from the time of its writing, rather than of eons past. If man will also notice, (Revelation 12:4) verse four tells us SATAN is the one who is casting the stars of heaven to the earth, while the other verses speak of Satan himself being cast out along with his angels, and the ones casting them out are MICHAEL and His angels. You see, in one we have Satan doing the casting out, and with the other it is Michael who is doing the casting out. What we have then is two entirely different prophetic events.

This being the case, it is essential for every Christian to know what is being said here. Since this war is in heaven and is fought by an army of “angels,” some might think there is no reason to be too concerned about such things, being that heaven is out there somewhere and one can read that the good guys eventually win. But dear saintly stars of God, when man realize the heaven spoken of here is the heavens within our very being, one may have the tendency to stand up and take notice and

prepare for the war we have actually been in for quite some time but just haven't known it.

The popular teaching about Satan has him dwelling upon the face of the earth as a result of losing a preadamic war in heaven against God, and God having used Michael as His chief captain to accomplish this defeat. The above-mentioned verses (Revelation 12:4 and 7-9) are the foundational scriptures to support these thoughts. However, when we look a little deeper into the matter, there are too many things that just don't measure up. For instance, if Satan's prison has been the face of this earth for the past 6,000 years or so, How can he be the PRINCE OF THE POWERS OF THE AIR, as mentioned in (Ephesians 2)? Or consider this: If the KINGDOM OF HEAVEN is some where in outer space, why was the devil able to sow bad seed among the good seed, being that his confinement was supposedly to the earth? And again, if heaven that Jesus spoke of was really somewhere other than upon the earth, why did He say the field of that kingdom of heaven is THE WORLD?

***in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience;***

***Ephesians 2:2(MKJV)***

The truth of the matter is simply this: heaven or the kingdom of heaven, as spoken of in the Bible, has nothing whatsoever to do with any particular location but has everything to do with the spiritual reality of spiritual things! If we insist on locating heaven to a certain place, then let us understand where that particular place might be in reference to the context of (Revelation 12) - the only place in the universe that it is - HEAVEN IS IN YOU, dear reader and nowhere else!

Yes indeed, this war in heaven is of the spirit, and "the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds; casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalted itself against the knowledge of God." (2 Corinthians 10) Although Jesus made it clear, "The kingdom of God cometh not

with observation: for, behold, the kingdom of God is within you” (Luke 17:20-21) people are still looking “out yonder” somewhere for it. Come on saints, let us submit to losing our natural thinking head so we can take on His mind and begin to see some of these things as they were intended.

***For the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds,***

***pulling down imaginations and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought into the obedience of Christ;***

***II Corinthians 10:4-5(MKJV)***

***And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, He answered and said, The kingdom of God does not come with observation.***

***Nor shall they say, Lo here! or, behold, there! For behold, the kingdom of God is in your midst.***

***Luke 17:20-21(MKJV)***

Hopefully by now, we are beginning to see what type of book Revelation is. Namely, it is a spiritual and prophetic book that pertains to spiritual and future things (from the time it was written)! Therefore, when we read of Michael and his angels, can we conclude that Michael just might be significant of something?

That perhaps his name is telling us something we should be aware of? - And does it in any way reflect upon an entity within us? - Being that this heaven and its war is within. In order to have everything in context with this subject and these questions, it is necessary to back up to Rev. 12:5 and start more at the front.

“And she [the woman in heaven] brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron, and her child was caught up unto God, and His throne.” (Come on now; let's stop thinking, “rapture,” for this is not what it is speaking of. We'll cover that topic later on in this series.)

The MAN CHILD should be translated MALE SON (arsen uios, Grk.), which would indicate someone who is MATURE and has the authority and power of his father. This mature son is caught up to the throne of God. Throne, as we see it in the Bible, refers to a realm of authority, and that realm is of the heavens where the war in question is fought. For a couple of points of reference we will notice in (Acts 7:48-49) and (Hebrews 12:2).

***But, the Most High does not dwell in temples made with hands, as the prophet says,***

***"Heaven is My throne and earth is My footstool. What house will you build Me, says the Lord, or what is the place of My rest?"***

***Acts 7:48-49(MKJV)***

***looking to Jesus the Author and Finisher of our faith, who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and sat down at the right of the throne of God.***

***Hebrews 12:2(MKJV)***

Some may say, "That is fine and good, but it sounds like this could just as well be speaking of the natural heavens and not necessarily of the heavens within people." In response, we will only remind ourselves of this: ***"...And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places (the heavens, Grk.) In Christ Jesus..."*** He dwelled with you, but shall be in you. ***"...At that day ye shall know that I am in My Father, and ye in Me, and I in you..."*** (Ephesians 2:6, John. 14:17, 20) Therefore, we see it as being very clear that wherever the Father is found is where we find Jesus, and wherever Jesus abides is where we will be found, which happens to be IN HEAVEN where THE THRONE OF GOD IS!

***and has raised us up together and made us sit together in the heavenlies in Christ Jesus,***

***Ephesians 2:6(MKJV)***

***the Spirit of Truth, whom the world cannot receive because it does not see Him nor know Him. But you know Him, for He dwells with you and shall be in you.***

***At that day you shall know that I am in My Father, and you in Me, and I in you.***

***John 14:17, 20(MKJV)***

Hopefully, we have adequately established in our minds where the heaven is that is spoken of in the book of Revelation. If we have, what follows should be easy enough to grasp.

Satan sits upon the throne of each human being of the entire earth whose father is Adam. However, when we are born of the Spirit of Christ something begins to happen. We begin to mature and become one with the Christ within. He soon takes His rightful position in us, which is the throne of His temple, for He has bought and paid for us with His own blood. Since it is God who sits there, in the form of Christ, and it is He (Jesus) who redeemed us, then our heart is in fact the THRONE OF GOD.

This, of course, presents a real problem, for a kingdom can only have one lord, and the one we had previously been serving (Satan) is not going to give up without a battle. This particular battle is spoken of beginning with (Revelation 12:7). We will go through these verses with that thought in mind, and by the time we finish, I believe most of you will agree.

***And there was war in Heaven. Michael and his angels warring against the dragon. And the dragon and his angels warred,***

***but did not prevail. Nor was place found for them in Heaven any more.***

***Revelation of John 12:7-8(MKJV)***

MICHAEL, as we mentioned earlier, does have a spiritual significance; that is, since this book of Revelation is one of signs or symbols that points to and describes certain things, so Michael also symbolizes something. Michael is a Hebrew name, which means "ONE LIKE GOD." Now, for another question.

WHO in the entire universe is LIKE GOD? ...I can think of none, except JESUS CHRIST who is the EXPRESS IMAGE OF HIS PERSON! See (Hebrews 1). And



also, WHO is the CHIEF MESSENGER of God to all those who are also messengers? ...Without contradiction, we must again say, it is JESUS CHRIST!

***who being the shining splendor of His glory, and the express image of His essence, and upholding all things by the word of His power, having made purification of our sins, He sat down on the right of the Majesty on high,  
Hebrews 1:3(MKJV)***

The word archangel has a very simple meaning, and when it is “translated” properly things begin to clear up considerably. ARCHANGEL is a transliteration from the Greek. A transliteration is a word that is not translated from an original language, but it is changed in spelling and pronunciation but usually retains a similar sound. In reality, it is a made up word that has no real meaning until someone decides to give it a definition that may or may not be accurate to the original word.

Baptism is a transliterated word, which in its original Greek form is baptisma, or baptize is baptizo. The actual word means, “to make whelmed.” The word ARCHANGEL comes from the Greek word ARCHAGGELOS that is a combination of two words: ARCHO, which means FIRST or CHIEF and AGGELOS, which simply means MESSENGER. Now, one more time, WHO is MICHAEL, THE ARCHANGEL? Or to ask it in proper translated form. WHO is THE ONE LIKE GOD WHO IS THE CHIEF MESSENGER? Can there be any other answer than THE LORD JESUS CHRIST? We think not but have no contention with those who may disagree.

If Michael is symbolic of Jesus and the heaven is contained within His people, then the context of this war takes on somewhat of a change. That change being, He and His angels/messengers (aggelos), are in a war that directly pertains to us. Therefore, not only are certain individuals messengers of Him, but also they are called sons and these are the ones who war with Satan and his messengers. There are at least two realms of messengers (possibly three, depending on whether we want to include demons) - they are messengers, which are inwardly and outwardly. Those outwardly are people who are motivated and moved according to the spirit of God or Satan.

The other realm (within) would consist of spiritual messengers that are the warriors of this monumental war in our own lives.

On one hand they would be the spirit of love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance, and on the other hand would be the spirit of depression, worry, fear, anger, hatred, envy, strife, greed, lust, perversion - or to sum it up - all the evil or negative thoughts of the mind.

In this heaven of our minds (figuratively, the air), Jesus is the Lord over the first (the positive) and Satan is the lord over the second (the negative). These are the "angels" that fight the war; with Jesus being the Prince of every good and prosperous aspect of God's Kingdom, while Satan is the prince of every thought and deed that is contrary to God and His purpose.

When this war is won in the realm of the soul by the Spirit and power of our great Prince and "archangel," the Lord Jesus Christ, what a shout will be heard (some are already shouting), which will be that of the voice of the archangel (I Thessalonians 4:16) and from this heaven this proclamation will be declared: **"...Now has come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of His Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night..."** (Revelation 12:10)

***For the Lord Himself shall descend from Heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ shall rise first.***

***I Thessalonians 4:16(MKJV)***

***And I heard a great voice saying in Heaven, Now has come the salvation and power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of His Christ. For the accuser of our brothers is cast down, who accused them before our God day and night.***

***Revelation 12:10:***

We will notice this casting down results in the establishment of the Kingdom of God. Therefore, with this alone we can say the war in question is not one of eons past; for His kingdom has never been established as it is stated in (Revelation 12:10). But praise God; we are now beginning to see the war ending in some of the saints and this great Kingdom being set up.

Although Satan has at times come in like a flood to all who have ascended to the throne of God; but now, when he comes to some he is finding nothing in them, as it was with Jesus, and he is cast out, for there is no foundation anywhere in them for him to hold to.

He therefore, winds up in the bottomless pit with nothing to stand on. Before his defeat he and his messengers (whether people or the evils in our minds) had a place (a real homestead) in this heaven, for it says in (Revelation 12:9), and [Satan and his messengers] prevailed not; neither was THEIR PLACE found any more in heaven."

***And the great dragon was cast out, the old serpent called Devil, and Satan, who deceives the whole world. He was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.***

***Revelation 12:9(MKJV)***

The kingdom of God is first rooted within every saint who has won their personal war, and then from there the war can be won outwardly. The ones whose father and captain is Satan can and will be at that time conquered, and the visible kingdom will then be seen in all the earth. There are many who do not believe the spirit of Satan is moving them, but evidence and the written Word attest otherwise. Paul said, "...Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey..." (Romans 6:16) Therefore, if someone is submitting to the pull of their carnal desires, fears, angers, or whatever, then they are being motivated by and are obeying Satan. He is their master, for they have given him place in their heaven to rule over.

***Do you not know that to whom you yield yourselves as slaves for obedience, you are slaves to him whom you obey; whether it is of sin to death, or of obedience to righteousness.***

***Romans 6:16(MKJV)***

Although our attention has been focused on Satan's influence upon Christians, we should not forget that he is the lord of the whole world of people who are not in Christ. He is lord to those who are inhabitants of the world and not of God's kingdom, as Jesus mentioned in (John. 14).

***I shall no longer speak many things with you, for the ruler of this world comes, and he has nothing in Me.***

***John 14:30(MKJV)***

(Revelation 12:9) has also recorded the magnitude of his influence and tells us of what type of lordship he has over his subjects. It says he is the one who "...deceives the whole world." Now who can say, they are a man of their own making, the captain of their own destiny that they serve neither God nor the devil? A fool perhaps, because whether it is known or not or whether we like it or not, we are serving one or the other; and when we are drawn by the Spirit and venture to serve God, and Christ takes his place upon the throne, this is when war begins.

Again, ***"And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of His Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night. And THEY overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of THEIR testimony; and THEY loved not their lives unto the death..."***

(Revelation 12:10-11). Who do we suppose "THEY" are that verse eleven speaks of? THEY ARE THE SAINTS OF GOD and not mystical, winged angels of age-old tradition. For THEY overcame him (SATAN) by the BLOOD OF THE LAMB, and by the WORD OF THEIR TESTIMONY, and they loved not THEIR LIVES (souls, Grk.) unto THE DEATH.

Neither of these attributes that enabled them to overcome Satan can be attributed to “angels” as it has been traditionally taught... everything here proclaims loudly that the victors of this war are MEN! If we will also keep everything tied together in this chapter, and quit spreading it out over the universe and throughout all the eons past and future, we can see the MAN CHILD of verse five, the ANGELS of verse seven, and the OVERCOMERS of verse eleven can be none other than THE SONS OF GOD who by Christ set up the kingdom of God within themselves and finally upon the earth.

(Revelation 12:13) also relates to this truthful fact by telling us of the dragon persecuting the woman who brought forth the MAN child (the Grk. omits “child”). It is this MANY-MEMBERED MAN that is referred to as: THEY WHO FEED the woman in the wilderness, the “ANGELS” who war in heaven, the OVERCOMERS who conquered by the blood of the Lamb and by their testimony and by not loving their lives unto the death. HE IS THE ONE, who defeats Satan in the heaven of themselves; and because of this his anger is turned to that which brought forth this man whose head and Lord is JESUS!

***And when the dragon saw that he was cast to the earth, he persecuted the woman who bore the man child.***

***Revelation 12:13(MKJV)***

Before we delve into the War in Heaven, we will refresh our thought with some interesting points in reference to what Jesus said in Matthew 24 concerning “the end of the world. Hopefully, it was made clear that what He foretold came to pass in 70 A.D. We know, of course, the black and white truth of that chapter is greatly opposed by some. With their attention focused on this era as being when that prophecy is to be fulfilled, it is not easy for them to see that Jesus was speaking of the end of Jerusalem. However, the Jewish leaders knew something was amiss and their kingdom was at stake. From observing the miracles Jesus did, according to

Nicodemus, it was clear to them He was sent from God, and anyone sent from God posed a grave threat to every dead and crooked thing for which they stood:

***“...Rabbi, we know that thou art a teacher come from God: for no man can do these miracles that thou does, except God be with him...”*** John 3:2

They surely saw that He could possibly be the beginning of the end of everything they embraced as being holy. Of course, it was hidden from them to what extent and how it would take place. Notwithstanding, He was a thorn in their side, and they did everything in their devilish power to stop Him, and eventually, they did — so it seemed! It truly appeared as though they had succeeded when their plans were carried out and they unjustly killed Him. However, had they known what lay ahead, they would have done everything in their power to shield Him from death; for His death not only sealed their end, it meant the salvation for all mankind. His death released Him to finish what He was sent to do on the other side of the veil, both, to manifestly bring an End to the old and the Beginning to the New.

They thought by killing their Master's Son, their world would never end; but as Jesus forewarned, that generation lived to see it pass away. He not only put the axe to the base of their glorious tree of knowledge of good and evil; he pulled it out by the roots.

Their unbending rule, their rituals and sacrifices (the very center of the Jews' life) passed away with a great noise. The elements of their structure melted with fervent heat, along with all their works, 2 Peter 3:10.

***But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, in which the heavens will pass away with a rushing noise, and the elements will melt with fervent heat. And the earth and the works in it will be burned up.***

***II Peter 3:10(MKJV)***

Having yet as the Book of Mark 12:6: explains ***“...Therefore, still having one son, his own beloved, he also sent him to them last of all, saying, They will respect***

***my son. Mark 12:7: But those vinedressers said among themselves, This is the heir! Come, let us kill him and the inheritance shall be ours. Mark 12:8: And they took him and killed him and cast him out of the vineyard. Mark 12:9: Therefore what will the lord of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the vinedressers and will give the vineyard to others. Mark 12:10: And have you not read this scripture The Stone which the builders rejected has become the Head of the corner: Mark 12:11: this was from the Lord, and it is marvelous in our eyes"?...***

There was no kingdom in the world with such pomp and pride, and Jesus ended it once and for all. He was literally the end of a world that caused all the tribes of the earth (the twelve tribes of Israel) to moan (Matthew 24).

***And then the sign of the Son of man shall appear in the heavens. And then all the tribes of the earth shall mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of the heaven with power and great glory.***

***Matthew 24:30(MKJV)***

He was not speaking of all the ethnic groups and nations of the world, not by any means. There are other scriptures that deal with the rest of the world, such as the ones that speak of the gentiles, the heathen, the inhabitants of the world, and the nations, but not so with Matthew 24.

That chapter is specific to the twelve tribes of Israel, and no others. The word, tribe or tribes is never used in the Bible except when speaking of Israel. So let us not make it otherwise.

It would also be beneficial to note that when the word, earth, is used in the scriptures; it is not in reference to the entire planet. It is translated hundreds of times from the Hebrew, *erets*, and always speaks of a country or a specific piece of land, such as, "...the land (*erets*) of Israel, (1 Samuel 13:19), and get thee out of thy country (*erets*), (Genesis 12:1). It is the same with world. It does not mean the planet we call Earth.

World is translated most often from aion, which means an age. Sometimes it comes from the Greek word, kosmos, and kosmos means an orderly arrangement, a decoration, such as a nation or a religious system.

“The End of the World” has captivated people’s minds for a thousand years or more, and hopefully a small amount of light from these few words will reveal what the scriptures clearly say about it. The phrase itself is used only five times in the New Testament. And to render that phrase from the Greek is enlightening, especially when reading it in the context of the verse: The word, end, in all five verses comes from sunteleia, and this form of the word is only used in those five verses. World is translated from aion, which is an age.

This is one of those verses where the phrase is found: “For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world (kosmos - orderly arrangement, a decoration): but now once in the end (sunteleia – entire completion, consummation) of the world (aion - age) hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself” Hebrews 9:26.

***(for then He must have suffered often since the foundation of the world), but now once in the end of the world He has appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of Himself.***

***Hebrews 9:26(MKJV)***

The end of the world is used twice in the Old Testament (Psalm 19:4) and (Isaiah 62:11); but the context is not related to the verses in the New Testament. They speak of the heavens declaring the Glory of God to the end of the world, and the Lord proclaiming to the end of the world the salvation for the daughter of Zion.

***Their line has gone out through all the earth and their words to the end of the world. In them He has set a tabernacle for the sun,***

***Psalms 19:4(MKJV)***



***Behold, the LORD has sent a message to the end of the earth, Tell the daughter of Zion, Behold, your salvation comes. Behold, His reward is with Him, and His work before Him.***

***Isaiah 62:11(MKJV)***

Let us take a moment and see what this verse is in reference to when it speaks of the sin that Jesus put away by His sacrifice. Sin, as most Bible students know, means to miss the mark. Being aware of this, and knowing what the writer of Hebrews was saying, namely, those men of the old world, the old order of the law, had missed the mark. The very existence of the Law set the stage for them to be in a continual act of sin. Without the Spirit of resurrection, the best they could do was to go through the motions of righteousness; but it was impossible for them to hit that coveted mark.

Therefore, Jesus laid down His life to end that kosmos, that world, that age wherein sin abounded. He appeared to put away that sin by the sacrifice of Himself, and not only did He put away the sin of man's religion, His sacrifice was designed to put away every sin of every nature in every age and in every world! But it had to first begin at the top before it could end at the bottom.

***(for then He must have suffered often since the foundation of the world), but now once in the end of the world He has appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of Himself.***

***Hebrews 9:26(MKJV)***

Since we are physically present on the earth and breathing natural air, we have no difficulty in believing that when Jesus appeared, everything was not consumed in a ball of fire. We only have to be conscious to know that when He laid down His life as a sacrifice, the world of all the nations and this planet did not come to a complete end. However, almost two thousand years ago, in that age, there was an utter end to that old world. That particular arrangement of natural Israel of that particular age dissolved and passed away with a great noise.

It is easily seen by most that Jesus spiritually brought the age of the law to an end when He said, "It is finished;" but it is not so easily seen by some that it physically ended when Jerusalem and the Temple fell at the hands of Titus. Yet, the works of His death reaches farther greater depths and heights than 70 A.D. It compasses all the ages, past, present, and future; but it is the past and present ages we are presently looking into for now.

Due to being void of His Holy Spirit, and the hardness the heart, the Law was written, as it were, upon stone. The Law of course, was holy; but their hearts were not. The Law that lay in the Ark of the Covenant in the Temple also lay in the heart of Jesus, whose heart was holy. Jesus was the holy manifestation of the Temple and of the Law. As an example, He fulfilled every aspect of both. And when He was killed, His Temple was destroyed, along with the Law that was written upon His Heart. It was the same law that was written in the hearts of stone.

***But they refused to listen, and gave a stubborn shoulder, and made heavy their ears from hearing.***

***And they made their hearts adamant from hearing the law and the words which the LORD of hosts has sent through His Spirit, by the former prophets. And great wrath came from the LORD of hosts.***

***Zechariah 7:11-12(MKJV)***

Due to the hardness of their hearts, Israel could not fulfill the Law; but Jesus fulfilled it with righteousness. He and the Law were one and easily entreated. And being one, they could, therefore, be raised together. When He ascended, the Law ascended and became a living law for every heart. And that is where He has written it in us, in the same place it was written in Him - not on tablets of stone but in our hearts! That is why we can fulfill it as He did. It is our nature to do so.

Before leaving that single cross, let us notice the two thieves which were nailed on either side of Him. One thief was good, while one was evil. The tree of good and evil died that day with the Law in their midst. All three - the good, the evil, and Jesus the

Holy Law — were smitten together. They were stricken, they were crucified, and they died. It was time for the new Tree to grow in the earth — the Tree of Life with righteous leaves budding from its branches for the healing of the nations. But we did not see much evidence of it until 70 A.D. when God's righteous hellfire was turned upon the city, the Temple, and the people.

That which began on the three crosses was seen coming to fulfillment on that horrifying day. The horror of the crosses was laid out for the entire world to see and to remember throughout the ages. The end of that world was to never be forgotten, and the manifestation of that hill's death-cry has been heard till this day.

Moreover, it will continue to the end of this age. There will be no peace until the law of religion's spirit, the tree of the good of man, and the evil of man, is stone cold dead. We can believe otherwise; but the dispensation of this world will march on until the hour arrives for it to end, as it did when Jerusalem's cup of iniquity was full.

## **9.1 The God Of This World**

If the god of this world has not blinded us we will have no problem in seeing these things. And please know - there is a god of this world, of this particular age, and he is a master at blinding people. Paul made reference of him in his second letter to the (Corinthians 4).

***in whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving ones, so that the light of the glorious gospel of Christ (who is the image of God) should not dawn on them.***

***II Corinthians 4:4(MKJV)***

Who do we believe the "god" of this world might be? Some say he is the "antichrist" of whom fictitious books and movies portray, while many others believe he is the devil who tempts people to sin in the manner we see daily throughout the world. This carnal sin, they say, is what blinds people to the truth. I can say that people living in

such darkness are certainly blind to the truth; for they are dead, and dead people are dead to truth. Dead people cannot see.

Paul, however, was not saying that people are blinded when the god of this world tempts them to sin in ways; such as, by boozing, cussing, partying, using drugs, riotous living, and cavorting with wild women or men. He was not talking about “a devil-laying wait around every corner” that delights in tempting every soul in some sort of sin and making them adulterers, homosexuals, murderers, child molesters, and rapists. Not by any means! People like this are drawn away by their own compromised, adamic emotions and lusts.

These emotions and lusts can stem from childhood abuse that either traumatized or tantalized their young minds; but regardless of the root cause, it is still on the human level. It can even go as far as to open them to entertain spirits of demons; yet this is still on the human level of carnal lust.

The apostle was not referring to the god of this world as being what the church system has painted as the devil. The fact is, the devil that the church system promotes doesn't exist. There is a devil, of course; but that particular devil is foreign to the scriptures. Only in their minds is there such a devil. Paul was talking about a devil that was religious in nature; namely, the religious order of that day - the Jewish priesthood, the scribes, the Pharisees, and the Sadducees.

It was that old hierarchy, that subtle, religious system that polluted priesthood of which he was speaking. He spoke the Satan, which was always the adversary of God's elect. Corporately, those adverse/satanic men were the god of that world, that cosmos, that age! As sure as there is a many-membered body of Christ — there was a many membered, corporate god, the Elohim who ruled Israel, and there is one like it today!

It may bother some when we refer to religious men as being satanic, but more so when we call them gods; however, the men of that religious order who judged the people were not only adverse to the godly prophets, they were called gods in the Old Testament. For instance: Then “**...his master shall bring him unto the judges (elohim - gods)...**” (Exodus 21).

**his master shall bring him to the judges. He shall also bring him to the door or to the door-post. And his master shall bore his ear through with an awl, and he shall serve him forever.**

**Exodus 21:6(MKJV)**

It was similar to when Jesus said:

**Now is the judgment of this world. Now shall the prince of this world be cast out.**

**John 12:31(MKJV)**

And permit me to be among the others to tell you that according to that word - the god of that dispensation, of that world, of that age was cast out. There was war in heaven, and he lost. He lost the war, brethren! The power of that serpentine system was removed! The “beautiful” dragon was cast out of heaven! The priesthood was stripped of its rank and order! That beaten god was cast from that high place of glory! He lost his prestige! The flaming firebrands of God’s elect consumed his honor, and so it has been till now, and so shall it ever be! Moreover, the hour will come when the world power we are now at war against will never be again.

Hopefully, it is becoming clear to us that there was a god/elohim of that age, that there was a cunning devil (traducer), a Satan (adversary) of that age, and he was destroyed along with the age wherein he ruled with unchecked authority until that time. When that age was dissolved and came to a close, by default, the spirit of that dispensation also came to a close. The priesthood of natural Israel was over.

Since we can grasp this as being true, then let us also understand that there is a cunning Satan/devil/god of this present age, and he is no different than the one back then. It is simply the spirit of religion, the spirit that empowers religious people as well as the religious systems of the world! Moreover, on the individual level, if this devil-god has not filled our ears with nonsense, and blinded our minds to truth, I believe we should be able to see that great conflict of 70 A.D. was a portion of the natural fulfillment at Calvary, and more.

The war against Jerusalem was a manifestation of the spiritual war in that heaven. It was a war that was waged against everything that had set itself up as God, and we have the same today. There are the unholy elect of God (the Government, the ACLU, Socialism, Communism, etc.) who are the agents on the ground, and there are the holy ones (the Sons of God) in the heavens. There was war in Jerusalem's heaven against that great red dragon. The priesthood of old flew through the heavens with great authority. That religious system ruled over the people of that world. It sat in an exalted place, until God and His elect cast it from that esteemed courtroom, and so it has been today.

Their day foreshadowed the war that every son of God would face. In similar fashion, there is a whore that sits upon many waters, which are the people and nations of the world, (Revelation 17:1, 15) and the sons who are caught up to God and His throne will remove her from her glorious seat of tyranny. We will let the ground forces of today's Titus do what they will. That is not our concern; but we will do what we are called to do, and we will finish it in victory.

***And one of the seven angels who had the seven vials came and talked with me, saying to me, Come here, I will show you the judgment of the great harlot sitting on many waters,***

***Revelation 17:1(MKJV)***

***And he says to me, The waters which you saw, where the harlot sits are peoples and multitudes and nations and tongues,***

***Revelation 17:15(MKJV)***

That which we are presently engaged is first against that religious spirit within us, and then the one in the heavens that is without. And if we have won the war within, if the devil, that great red dragon, has been destroyed in our own lives, it will also be destroyed in this present world. Once there is no engagement of war against mystery Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots and Abominations of the Earth within ourselves, the season will have come that we will be able to destroy that modern day city in the earth where the two witnesses will be killed.

***And their bodies will lie in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified.***

***Revelation 11:8(MKJV)***

From the day of Golgotha this war has continued one way or the other; but it will not last forever. A complete victory will be found with the devil destroyed and Satan's power removed forever from every life and from every place. It has been God's call to eventually strip the accuser inwardly and outwardly of his rank and cast him destroyed from his high place of glory to never see that religious system and temple of this age to be built again.

Every age has its serpent that grows to a great red dragon, and these ages have their great wars when God's elect are caught up to dethrone the dragon with the tail of lying prophets (Isaiah 9-15). Therefore, this present world war began after the last Great War ended in 70 A.D.

This war in heaven would march down through the centuries. It would not end until the enemy of God's people was unseated from its powerful place with its pride and prestige turned to shame and utter defeat. From that day in 70 A.D. until now, war has been shaking the heavens, and we find ourselves in the midst of it everyday. It has been between us and the great red (*purrhos* - fiery, fire produces light) dragon of (Revelation 12).

This is who has been against us and we against him. It has been no mystery that we have been warring against Satan, that ancient serpent, the adversary, the devil, the traducer of God's truth, that religious spirit which rules over individuals' spiritual lives, and especially the church system.

Most of us know the battles are no longer against an imaginary devil that is tempting our flesh. There is an area where the devil moves and has his being, and that is in the world of pseudo religion, and we are not tempted by any means to join again the ranks of the modern religious systems of the world. There is no desire to be joined to such a harlot, and we can't be tempted her seductive spirit; for that war has already been won.

For the most part, our war is against the red dragon, the religious angel of light between our ears! We have been engaged in this war in our heavens for a long time. However, some have gained victory; some are continuing to battle until it is secured for them, while some are prisoners of war who have surrendered to the alluring call of the harlot. An ample amount about her is found not only in the book of Revelation but also in the book Proverbs:

***For the lips of a strange woman drip honey, and her palate is smoother than oil;  
but afterward she is as bitter as wormwood, sharp as a two-edged sword.  
Her feet go down to death; her steps take hold on hell,  
lest you should meditate on the path of life, her tracks are movable; you cannot know them.  
And now hear me, O sons, and do not depart from the words of my mouth.  
Remove your ways far from her, and do not come near the door of her house,  
lest you give your honor to others and your years to the cruel;***  
***Proverbs 5:3-9(MKJV)***



When arrayed in such tempting beauty and with words dripping like honey from its comb, it is sometimes hard to see the truth of who or what Satan is.<sup>36</sup> He is truly such a master of deception, especially since he is so appealing to the carnal eye. However, when his identity is known, his reign ends, it goes up in smoke, and he is destroyed.

On the other hand, if that traducing devil, the god of this world, the religious spirit and system of this age has blinded our minds - slavery will be the order of the day. It will flourish while God's Kingdom diminishes. However, we know better! There are three hundred who have gone the distance, and seven thousand more we don't know about.

They have been tried and proven. They will rise at the beginning of the middle watch, at the darkest hour of the night, and the light from their broken lamps will pierce the darkness, while the word of their trumpets sounds the victory that is already sealed.

The host of the Midianites, the servants of Baalim and of the groves, will be cast from the heavens of God's great throne! Satan, the adversary, the dragon with his lying prophets will be cast down! Brethren, man's religious days are numbered! The god of this world has met his match!

## **10 CONCLUSION**

This thesis stated that: God through His Son as agent created Angels. The time of creation was before the creation of the material universe, and all were created at or near the same time as direct and individual products of God's fiat.

---

<sup>36</sup> Roach R (1996) War In Heaven. USA: Lighthouse Library, International.

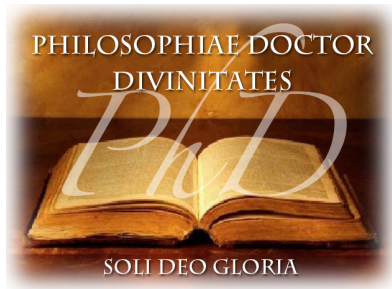
They were created to honor, worship, and serve God and Christ. Originally they existed in a holy state with great powers and privileges but limited in space, power, intellect, and holiness; and as creatures they are morally answerable to God their Creator.

Evidence abounds from Christ's personal narratives, ministry, and teaching that angels do exist. He spoke of holy and evil angels; He did battle with Satan; and He put reality of angels on a par with that of the resurrection. For the genuine believer in Jesus Christ, when He speaks on an issue, it is settled.

The combined witness of the Scriptures, the Old and New Testaments, and of the Savior assure man that there is a world of intelligent, powerful, invisible creatures about us above us that warrants our prayerful and careful study and challenges us to expand our categories of thought and to change our conduct of life in accord with God's truth. Though much was revealed of angels in the Old Testament, the progressive revelation of God has culminated in the New Testament with a highly developed angelology.

-----oOo-----





## CHAPTER TWO

### EXPOUNDING THE FEASTS, THE SABBATH AND SACRAMENTS ACCORDING TO THE WORD

***BLOOD has great significance in the Bible. Its meanings involve profound aspects of human life and God's desire to transform human existence. Blood is intimately associated with physical life. Blood and life or living being are closely associated. The Hebrews of Old Testament times were prohibited from eating blood. Only be sure that thou eat not the blood: for the blood is the life.***

#### 1 INTRODUCTION

This hypothesis aims to expound the significance of the feasts through food and drink celebrations between a deity and its worshippers originally scheduled regularly to coincide with nature's harvests and seasons. Many were held at the times and seasons of the planetary activity and others were observed in commemoration of the same great event or act of their gods.<sup>1</sup>

***Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, The feasts of the LORD, which you shall proclaim, holy convocations, even these are My appointed feasts.***

***Leviticus 23:2(MKJV)***

***Behold upon the mountains the feet of Him who brings good news, making it heard, Peace! O Judah, keep your appointed feasts, fulfill your vows; for the wicked shall pass through you no more; he is completely cut off.***

***Nahum 1:15(MKJV)***

---

<sup>1</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries. p. 218.

***These are sunken rocks in your love feasts, feasting together with you; feeding themselves without fear; waterless clouds being carried about by winds; fruitless autumn trees, having died twice, having been plucked up by the roots;***  
***Jude 1:12(MKJV)***

The Feasts will be discussed in detail later in chapter Two.

### **Sabbath The Sactified Day Of Rest**

- The seventh day.
- The day of God's rest.
- The rest day the Creator imposed on humanity and its world systems. Explained in the Law in (Exodus 20 and 31) and (2 Chronicles 36).<sup>2</sup>

***For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day, and sanctified it.***

***Exodus 20:11(MKJV)***

***Six days may work be done, but on the seventh is the sabbath of rest, holy to the LORD. Whoever does any work in the Sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death.***

***Exodus 31:15(MKJV)***

***to fulfill the word of the LORD in the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed its sabbaths. All the days of the desolation it kept the sabbath, to the full measure of seventy years.***

***II Chronicles 36:21(MKJV)***

This hypothesis aims to expound the importance of SABBATH The day of rest, considered holy to God by His rest on the seventh day after creation and viewed as a sign of the covenant relation between God and His people and of the eternal rest He has promised them.

Old Testament The word Sabbath comes from the Hebrew Shabbat, meaning, "to cease" or "desist." The primary meaning is that of cessation from all work. Some

---

<sup>2</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries. p. 475.

persons have traced the origin of the concept to the Babylonian calendar, which contained certain days, corresponding to phases of the moon, in which kings and priests could not perform their official functions. Such days bore an evil connotation, and work performed on them would have harmful effects. The fifteenth of the month, the time of the full moon in their lunar calendar, was shapattu, the "*day of pacifying the heart*" (of the god) by certain ceremonies.

Although one can show similarities to the Babylonian concept, the Hebrew Sabbath did not follow a lunar cycle. It was celebrated every seven days and became basic to the recognition and worship of the God of creation and redemption. Regulations concerning the Sabbath are a main feature of the Mosaic laws. Both reports of the Ten Commandments stated that the Sabbath belonged to the Lord. On six days the Israelites should work, but on the seventh, they as well as all slaves, foreigners, and beasts must rest. Two reasons are given. The first is that God rested on the seventh day after creation, thereby making the day holy (Exodus 29:8-11). The second was a reminder of their redemption from slavery in Egypt (Deuteronomy 5:12-15).

The day became a time for sacred assembly and worship (Leviticus 23:1-3), a token of their covenant with God (Exodus 31:12-17; Ezekiel 20:12-20). Death was the penalty for desecration (Exodus 35:1-3). The true observance of not following one's own pursuits on that day would lift a person to God's holy mountain and bring spiritual nourishment (Isaiah 56:1-7; 58:13), but failure to keep the Sabbath would bring destruction to their earthly kingdom (Nehemiah 13:15-22; Jer. 17:21-27).

Interbiblical the Sabbath became the heart of the law, and the prohibitions were expanded. Thirty-nine tasks were banned, such as tying or untying a knot. These in turn were extended until ingenious evasions were devised that lost the spirit but satisfied the legal requirement.

New Testament The habit of Jesus was to observe the Sabbath as a day of worship in the synagogues (Luke 4:16), but His failure to comply with the minute restrictions brought conflict (Mark 2:23-28; 3:1-6; Luke 13:10-17; John 5:1-18). At first, Christians also met on the Sabbath with the Jews in the synagogues to proclaim Christ (Acts 13:14). Their holy day, the day that belonged especially to the Lord, was the first day of the week, the day of resurrection (Matthew 28:1; Acts 20:7; Revelation 1:10). They viewed the Sabbath and other matters of the law as a shadow of the reality which had now been revealed (Colossians 2:16-23), and the Sabbath became a symbol of the heavenly rest to come (Heb. 4:1-11).<sup>3</sup>

Seven Days - This phrase is constant in ancient biblical and extra-biblical literature. Normally, it is linked to religious service, official consecration, and preparatory incubation. The most significant tie between this number of days and the aforementioned functions is that it is eternal. To appreciate its heavenly import, one must see the references to this number that consistently surface in Scripture as a standard of spiritual preparation and supernatural impartation.

The custom of requiring seven days for any preparation or consecration goes back to the seven spirits before God's throne in eternity and from this, the seven archons of creation. In fact, spiritual reference to, or application of, the number seven looks back to the seven spirits before God's throne as the totality of discrete powers of creation. These see to all His eminence, deeds, and activities throughout the spheres of His created works.<sup>4</sup>

Seven days is the full period of prophetic, priestly, and regnant consecration. It was an ordained incubation to finalize the official's readiness for service. During the incubation period, isolation, alienation, and separation occurred to divest the minister

---

<sup>3</sup> Bruce, Babara J [Article: Sabbath] Holmans Bible Dictionary.

<sup>4</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries. p. 501.

from the old and establish the new within him. Therefore, seven-day consecrations were important seasons of revelatory insight and inaugural maturity.<sup>5</sup>

### **Sacraments According To The Word Of God**

A rite of initiation.

Immersion of a person into a body of water as a figurative immersion into a body of knowledge to signify a novice's awakening to the deity, worship, and doctrines of a cult or religion.

The rite was performed to confirm an initiate's absorption into a doctrine or perspective. Generally applied to religion, baptism was introduced as a Christian rite with the onset of the ministry of John the Baptist.<sup>6</sup>

### **Communion In To God's Image**

To understand the deeper meaning of communion people needs to understand that man was made in God's image – a tripartite being – man has a body, soul and spirit.

People need to know that communion runs much deeper than just the taking of the physical elements and that it something that also *"happens"* in our spirit:

When God first created man He formed him of the dust from the ground, (Genesis 2) and then breathed *"the breath of life"* into his nostrils. As soon as the breath of life, which became man's spirit, came into contact with man's body, the soul was produced.

---

<sup>5</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) *The Prophet's Dictionary*. USA: Paula Price Ministries. p. 501.

<sup>6</sup> Price, Paula A (1999) *The Prophet's Dictionary*. USA: Paula Price Ministries, pp. 86-87.



***And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.***

***Genesis 2:7(MKJV)***

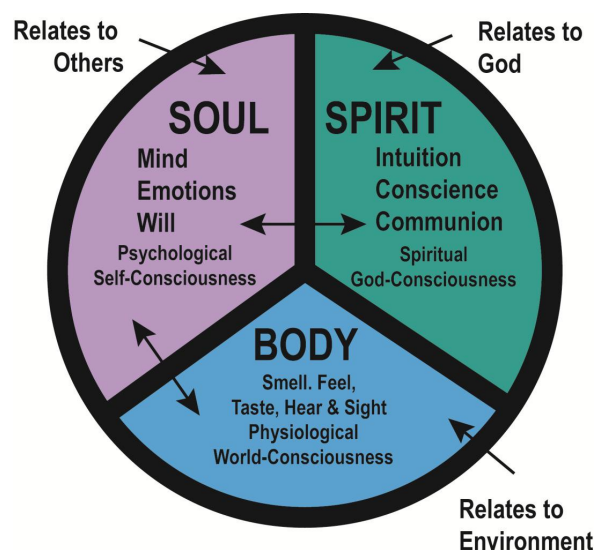
Hence the soul is the combination of man's body and spirit. The Scriptures therefore call man "a living soul". The breath of life became man's spirit; that is the principle of life within him.

The Lord Jesus teaches "it is the spirit that gives life" as seen in the Book of (John 6)

***It is the spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing: the words that I speak to you, are spirit, and they are life.***

***John 6:63(NKJV)***

God's idea was that man should follow the Holy Spirit which communes with man's own spirit. This is just a quick overview of the functions and characteristics we find in our soul and spirit so we could be able to discern which one is responsible for feelings, intuition etc.



Watchman Nee<sup>7</sup> states that the spirit is the noblest part of man for it joins with God, and occupies the innermost area of his being.

### **The Function Of The Spirit Are**

**Conscience:** in this part the fear and wisdom of God resides where one could know determine right from wrong.

**Intuition** which is the sensing organ – this makes man aware of the presence of demonic spirits, angelic presence of a human spirit – through man's intuition God gives revelations.

**Communion** – this part of the spirit is united with God through the seed of His Son implanted within a Christian it is here that God establishes His Lordship – directing and reigning in Christian's life. In this area one clearly hear God's voice and this is where He manifests His glorious intimacy.

**The functions of the soul:** here lies man intellect, thought imagination, emotions, choice etc – in other words that what makes man human.

**Volition** – the instrument of man's choice.

**Mind** – instrument for thoughts and intellectual power.

**Emotion** – where man express love, hate, joy, anger, sadness, happiness, etc.

---

<sup>7</sup> Nee, Watchman (1968) *The Spiritual Man*. New York: Christian Fellowship Publishers Inc.

Not going to discuss the flesh as most of us already know what happens in the flesh. Read Galatians (5:19-21) – Paul gives a list of the sins of the flesh.<sup>8</sup>

## **2 THE FEASTS OF THE LORD**

### **2.1 Feasts Through God's Perspective**

Firstly, Christians really need to understand the basics before realizing what's right from God's perspective. A perspective, by the way that has never changed despite what many in the church of today would have us believe.

Secondly, people need a clear understanding of the meaning of the festivals to better understand the New Testament and Revelation. That's the purpose of this section pertaining to the thesis.<sup>9</sup>

### **2.2 The Feast Festivals**

When man think about God's festivals one's reminded of that experience. God Himself ordained the festivals (also called the feasts) that He wanted His people to celebrate. He explained everything more than once, with great care, in the books of Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. For example, in just one of many references, when He explained what to do for the first Passover, the Lord said in (Exodus 12).

---

<sup>8</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 3-23.

<sup>9</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC. p. 163.

***And this day shall be a memorial to you. And you shall keep it as a feast to the LORD throughout your generations. You shall keep it as a feast by a law forever.***

***Exodus 12:14(MKJV)***

And yet, mankind have separated themselves so completely from the culture into which God gave those festivals that one have no understanding whatsoever of what they're all about, or why they were given to His people in the first place. They're so foreign to man they've become just as inscrutable as the most remote, non - English culture on the planet.

Most often, if people think about them at all one think of them as Old Testament only. And yet, Yeshua carefully observed (and modeled) all the festivals Himself. All the disciples, the apostles, and the early church did the same. Indeed, no one who studies the Scriptures objectively can miss a message so big, so obvious, so clear-cut, and so unambiguous. It's impossible to ignore it accidentally; we've had to do it on purpose!

*"But God meant that only for the Jews! All that stuff passed away once Messiah came! We're not an agricultural society anymore, so how can we celebrate a harvest? Besides, we like Christmas and Easter better!"*

Perhaps you've heard some of these excuses. Maybe you've even made a few of them yourself, in perfect sincerity, based on what you've been taught since you were old enough for your first visit to Sunday school. Nevertheless, not a single holiday that the Christian church observes today is truly a "holy day" in the sense that it was directly ordained by God.

God did not ordain Christmas, or Easter, nor any of the birthdays of any saints elected by the hierarchy of any church in the world. These are not holy days in any

"divine" sense - they are manmade institutions, some aspects of which might have God's blessing but he directly established none of which.

Let us say that again: God directly ordained Not a single holiday that the Christian church observes today.

Fortunately, God holds us accountable only for what we know, which might be a good reason for some readers to skip this chapter entirely! On the other hand, we're not here to point fingers and pass out blame. It's much more important to go forth from here with a firm understanding of what God actually ordained, why He did it, and what it all means in at least two important respects:<sup>10</sup>

### **2.3 Everything In Scripture Is Connected**

To expand on the above mentioned, perhaps the most important reason for studying the festivals, is their "*interconnectedness*" with the rest of Scripture, both the Tanakh (Old Testament) and B'rit Hadashah (New Testament). God's appointed times, His festivals, are consistent with this pattern and tell us a lot about the mind and heart of God.

Just as the menorah that God instructed the Israelites to build and place in the Inner Court of the Temple had seven lights, God also gave His people seven feasts to celebrate throughout the year, as a reminder of His character, His commitment, His mercy, His promise, and the relationship He desires to have with us.

---

<sup>10</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC. pp. 161-163.

---

God wanted His people to join Him in covenant. By instructing us to observe His celebrations, God intended for us to recall both our commitments to Him and His commitments to us. In that way we would continually renew our efforts to live up to His higher expectations throughout the year.

The seven feasts divide naturally into two groups. We celebrate the four feasts of the first group in the springtime, which the ancient Hebrews called “latter rain.” We celebrate the remaining three in the autumn, called “*early rain*.”

The spring feasts begin with Passover, the first of the Hebrew Holy Days. The next three, all of which directly relate to Passover, include the feasts of Unleavened Bread, First fruits, and Shavuot, the latter also known as Pentecost. According to the Roman calendar, all are usually observed in March, April, May, and sometimes June. On the Hebrew calendar, Passover, Unleavened Bread, and First fruits always fall in the first month of the Hebrew religious year (or the seventh month of the civil year), Nisan.<sup>11</sup> Shavuot is always celebrated in the month of Sivan.

The autumn feasts include the Feast of Trumpets (Rosh HaShanah), the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur), and the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot). All are observed during the month of Tishri, which is the seventh month on the Hebrew religious calendar (and the first month of the civil calendar) and usually straddles what our Gregorian calendar calls September and October.<sup>12</sup>

The 23<sup>rd</sup> chapter of the Book of Leviticus gives us an account of the “*Seven Great Feasts*” of the Lord. They were a prophecy and foreshadowing of future events, part

---

<sup>11</sup> The “Modern” Month Of Nisan Was Called Abib In Ancient Hebrew Times.

<sup>12</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC. p. 163-164.

of which have been fulfilled, and part yet to be. They are the “*shadow of things to come*,” of which Jesus Christ is the “*body*” or substance. See (Colossians 2).

***Therefore let no one judge you in food or in drink, or in respect of a holy day, or of the new moon, or of the sabbaths.***

***For these are a shadow of things to come, but the body is of Christ.***  
***Colossians 2:16-17(MKJV)***

They were “*Holy Convocations*” of the people. The Lord instituted them. The people had no voice in the matter. God promised that if the males went up at the “*set time*” went up at the **to Jerusalem** to keep these Feasts, He would look after their families. When the people became formal and indifferent, the Lord said, “***Your new moons and Your appointed Feasts My soul Hated; they are a Trouble unto Me; I am weary to bear them.***” See (Isaiah 1).

***Isaiah 1:14: Your new moons and your appointed feasts My soul hates; they are a trouble to Me; I am weary to bear them.***

***Isaiah 1:14(MKJV)***

Therefor Jesus Christ called them the “***Feasts of the Jews,***” rather than the “***Feasts of the Lord.***” The feasts of the Lord are seven in number. If one include the Sabbath there are eight. But the Sabbath stands by itself. It was to be observed “*weekly,*” the other Feasts “*annually.*” The Sabbath was to be observed at “*home,*” the other Feasts at “*Jerusalem.*”

The “***Seven Feasts***” may be divided into two sections of “***four***” and “***three.***” The first section includes the “***Passover,***” the Feast of “***Unleavened Bread,***” of “***First-Fruits***” and “***Pentecost.***” Then there was an interval of four months, followed by the Feasts of “***Trumpets,***” “***Day of Atonement,***” and “***Tabernacles.***” The “***Three Great Festivals***” were the “***Passover,***” “***Pentecost,***” and “***Tabernacles.***” They extended from the 14<sup>th</sup> day of the First Month to the 22<sup>nd</sup> day of the Seventh Month.

The First Four Feasts foreshadow truths connected with this present Gospel Dispensation and those who form the “*heavenly*” people of the Lord Jesus, the Church; while the Last Three Feasts foreshadow the blessings in store for God’s “*earthly*” people, the **Jews**.<sup>13</sup>

## **2.4 The Passover Feast**

The Passover Feast had its origin in Egypt. It was the memorial of the redemption and deliverance of the Children of Israel from Egypt. It was to them the “*beginning of months*,” and their birthday as a Nation. See (Exodus 12).

***This month shall be to you the beginning of months. It shall be the first month of the year to you.***

***Exodus 12:2(MKJV)***

It consisted of the taking of a male lamb, without blemish, of the first year, a lamb for a family, and killing it on the 14th day of the month in the evening, and sprinkling its blood, with a bunch of hyssop, on the two side posts and upper lintel of the door of their houses, so that when the Lord passed through Egypt that night and saw the blood on the doorposts, He would spare the first born sheltered within. The flesh of the lamb was to be roasted, and eaten with unleavened bread and bitter herbs, and none of it left until the morning. Those who ate of it were to do so with their loins girded, their shoes on then feet, and then stall in then hand, ready to leave Egypt.

The Passover Feast was to be to them as a “Memorial,” and they were to keep it as a Feast throughout their generations, and as an ordinance **Forever**. See (Exodus 12).

---

<sup>13</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.159.

---



***And this day shall be a memorial to you. And you shall keep it as a feast to the LORD throughout your generations. You shall keep it as a feast by a law forever.***

***Exodus 12:14(MKJV)***

The Passover Lamb was intended as a “type” of Jesus, the “**Lamb of God.**” The shedding of His blood on Calvary, and our applying it to our hearts by faith, has the same effect as to our salvation, as the applying of the Passover Lamb’s blood to the doorposts of those Egyptian houses had to the safety of those who were sheltered within. As that night was the “beginning of months” to them, so the moment a soul accepts Jesus Christ as its Saviour, that moment it is “born again,” and a new life begins, for Christ **Our Passover** was sacrificed for us. See (1 Corinthians 5).

***Therefore purge out the old leaven so that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For also Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us.***

***1 Corinthians 5:7(MKJV)***

The first time the Children of Israel observed the Passover Feast it was amid the terrors of God's judgment plagues in the land of Egypt, a type of the world. Thereafter its yearly observance was as a joyful Memorial of their deliverance from Egypt. While they still observe the Passover Feast no “lamb” is slain, and no “blood” used, but when they get back to their own land they will again keep the Passover. The Christian Church does not observe the Passover, but they do observe as a Memorial the ordinance of the Lord's Supper that Christ instituted in its place.<sup>14</sup>

John Klein and Adam Spears stated,<sup>15</sup> that Passover, which marks the beginning of the religious (i.e., God's) new year, always takes place on the fourteenth day of Nisan, the first month of the Hebrew calendar, which corresponds to March or April. On this day the Jews remember their deliverance from Egypt.

---

<sup>14</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.159.

<sup>15</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., pp. 164-167.

In the Hebrew language the word for Passover is *Pesach*, which literally means, **"to pass or jump over."** On the original Passover the Lord *"passed over"* all those who had applied the blood of an unblemished lamb to the doorposts and lintels of their homes. In Hebrew understanding, this corresponded to *tav*, the final letter in the Hebrew alphabet, which was shaped like a cross and literally means **"sign of the covenant."** This same sign also resembled the two sticks that were placed in the shape of a cross inside the body cavity of the Passover lamb, to keep it open as it was roasted, serving as a graphic illustration of the redemption Yeshua provided for us on the Cross at Calvary. Yeshua, the disciples, and the Apostle Paul (among others) kept this observance as well, recognising the redemption God had made for His people.

On the first Passover, just as God the Father did when He sent His Son Jesus Christ to die on the cross, God did not require any initial participation on our part, only acceptance and obedience (servanthood). Note, also, the language of (Exodus 12:27): **"You shall say, 'It is a Passover sacrifice to the LORD who passed over the houses of the sons of Israel in Egypt when He smote the Egyptians, but spared our homes.'"** In the original Hebrew text, this verse is in the present tense, reinforcing what the ancient sages taught, that there is only one eternal Passover feast that stretches across thousands of years.

## **2.5 The Feast Of Unleavened Bread**

The Feast of Unleavened Bread began on the day after the Passover, and continued for seven days. See (Leviticus 23).

***and on the fifteenth day of the same month is the Feast of Unleavened Bread to the LORD. You must eat unleavened bread seven days.***

***On the first day you shall have a holy convocation. You shall do no work of labor,***

***but you shall offer a fire offering to the LORD seven days. In the seventh day is a holy convocation. You shall do no work of labor.***

***Leviticus 23:6-8(MKJV)***

The lamb was slain on the 14th day at sunset, which ended the day. The Feast of Unleavened Bread began immediately after sunset, which was the beginning of the 15th day. Thus there was no interval between them. As the Passover is a type of the death of Christ, so the Feast of Unleavened Bread is a type of the “Walk” of the Believer, and there should be no interval between the salvation of a soul and its entrance on a holy life and walk. The “seven days” point to the whole course of the Believer’s life after conversion.

Leaven in the Scripture is a type of evil, so the Feast was to be kept with “unleavened” bread. See (Exodus 13).

***Unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days. And there shall be no leavened bread seen with you, nor shall there be leaven seen with you in all your borders.***

***Exodus 13:7(MKJV)***

Paul speaks of “malice” and “wickedness” as leaven. “Purge out therefore the ‘old leaven’ that ye may be a ‘new lump,’ as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us. Therefore let us keep the Feast, not with ‘old leaven,’ neither with the ‘leaven of malice and wickedness,’ but with the ‘unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.’ See (1 Corinthians 5).

***Therefore purge out the old leaven so that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For also Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us.***

***Therefore let us keep the feast; not with old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.***

***1 Corinthians 5:7-8(MKJV)***

The typical teaching then of the Feast of Unleavened Bread is that, having been saved by the shed blood of Christ our Passover, we are to “walk” in newness of life, purging out the leaven of wordliness, and doing no “servile work,” or work that is done to earn salvation.<sup>16</sup>

John and Adam reported,<sup>17</sup> that the children of Israel were instructed to lift up raw grain (barley) as a wave offering to the Lord. The week of Unleavened Bread is the response of a “good and faithful servant.” Temporarily, leaven represents sin, or contamination. God wants us to clean out and leave behind the leaven of the iniquity of our past lives, just as the Israelites left behind the iniquities of Egypt.

On Passover God does it all for mankind; that is, He provides what people cannot provide for themselves, salvation. But on Unleavened Bread He asks men to do something for themselves. He asked us to search out and eliminate any sin that may be lurking in our lives. Thus we prevent any *avon* (iniquity) from proceeding to *hatah* (transgression).

## **2.6 The Feast Of First Fruits**

The Passover took place on the 14th day of the month, the Feast of Unleavened Bread on the next day, which was the Sabbath, and the following day, which was the “morrow after the Sabbath,” the Feast of First Fruits was to be celebrated. This however could not be done until after the Children of Israel had entered Canaan, therefore the Feast of First Fruits was not observed during the Wilderness Wanderings. The Offering was a sheaf reaped from the waving fields of the ripened harvest,

---

<sup>16</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.159.

<sup>17</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., p. 167.

and carried to the priest to be waved before the Lord for acceptance, and was to be followed by a Burnt, Meat and Drink - Offering, but no Sin - Offering, The Burnt Offering was to be a male lamb without blemish of the year.

The Feast of First-Fruits was a type and foreshadowing of the **Resurrection of Christ**. He arose on the “*morning after the Sabbath*,” and His resurrection is spoken of by Paul, as the “*First-Fruits*” of the resurrection of the dead. As the “*Corn of Wheat*” see (John 12).

*Truly, truly, I say to you, Unless a grain of wheat falls into the ground and dies, it abides alone; but if it dies, it brings forth much fruit.*

*John 12:24(MKJV)*

He was buried in Joseph’s Tomb, and His resurrection was the “*First-Fruits*” of the Harvest of those who will be Christ’s at His coming. See (1 Corinthians 15:23).

*But each in his own order: Christ the first-fruit, and afterward they who are Christ’s at His coming;*

*I Corinthians 15:23(MKJV)*

When the Priest on the day of Christ’s resurrection waved the sheaf of “*First-Fruits*” in the Temple, it was before a “*rent veil*,” and was but an empty form, for the Substance had come and the shadow had passed away, and the empty tomb of Joseph proclaimed that the “*Great First-Fruits’ Sheaf*” had been reaped and waved in the Heavenly Temple. There will be no Feast of First Fruits in the Millennium; it has been fulfilled in Christ.<sup>18</sup>

---

<sup>18</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp.159-160.

---

John and Adam argued,<sup>19</sup> the festival of First fruits is a picture of God befriending the faithful servant by blessing his crops. At First fruits, the very first of the harvest was offered unto the Lord, yet man's offering cannot compare to the price paid by the perfect Lamb at his crucifixion, on Passover, approximately 2000 years ago. Yeshua was resurrected from the dead on the feast of First fruits (not Easter!), giving us a preview of our own glorious destiny. *"Yeshua rose from the dead as the first fruits of those who are asleep"* (I Corinthians 15).

***But now Christ has risen from the dead, and has become the firstfruit of those who slept.***

***I Corinthians 15:20(MKJV)***

The progression of relationships to God in the spring feasts precisely parallels the first two covenants. Passover recalls the shedding of blood to *"kippur"* (cover) sin, and corresponds to the Festival's blood sacrifice initiated by God to cover Adam's nakedness (Genesis 3:21). The feast of Unleavened Bread allows God's servants to become partners with Him as we search out and remove all leaven (impurity) from our homes, just as Noah partnered with God in cleansing the earth of its iniquity by building the ark. First fruits increase the intimacy of our relationship with God as one enters into the friendship covenant, just as He gave Abraham his new name and unconditional promises.

## **2.7 The Feast Of Pentecost (Shavuot)**

Fifty days after the Feast of First Fruits, the Feast of Pentecost was observed. The space between the two Feasts, which included Seven Sabbaths, was called the *"Feast of Weeks."* It began with the offering of the First - Fruits of the Barley Harvest, and ended with the ingathering of the Wheat Harvest. The First Day was the Feast of

---

<sup>19</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., pp. 168-169.

the First - Fruits; the Last Day was the Feast of Pentecost. Only the First and Last day were celebrated.

At the Feast of Pentecost a **New** Meat Offering was to be offered before the Lord. It was- called “new” because it must be of grain from the “new” harvest. At the Feast of First-Fruits “stalks of grain” were to be offered and waved, but at the Feast of Pentecost the grain was to be ground and made into flour, from which two loaves were to be baked with leaven. The “*two loaves*” represent the two classes of people that were to form the Church, the Jews and Gentiles, and as believers are not perfect, even though saved, the leaven represents that imperfection.

A “*Burnt Offering*” of seven lambs without blemish of the first year, one young bullock, and two rams, was to be offered with the “*Wave Loaves*,” as was also “*Meat*” and “*Drink*” Offerings for a sweet savor unto the Lord. These were to be followed by a “*Sin Offering*” of a kid of the goats, and two lambs of the first year for a “*Peace Offering*.” The “*Wave Loaves*” were to be waved before the Lord. Note that it is now “*loaves*,” not loose stalks of grain. The “*loaves*” represent the homogeneousness of the Church. The Feast of Pentecost had its fulfillment on the Day of Pentecost, when the Holy Spirit baptized the disciples of the Lord into one body. See (1 Corinthians 12).

***For also by one Spirit we are all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether bond or free, even all were made to drink into one Spirit.***  
***1 Corinthians 12:13***

Between the Feast of Pentecost and the Feast of Trumpets there was an interval of four months during which the Harvest and Vintage were gathered in. There was no convocation of the people during those busy months. This long “*Interval*” typifies the “*Present Dispensation*” in which the Holy Spirit is gathering out the elect of the Church, and during which Israel is scattered among the Nations. When the Present

Dispensation has run its course, and the “Fullness of the Gentiles” has been gathered in, as seen in (Romans 11:25)

***For I do not want you to be ignorant of this mystery, brothers, lest you should be wise within yourselves; that blindness in part has happened to Israel, until the fullness of the nations has come in.***

***Romans 11:25(MKJV)***

Along with the “remnant according to the election of grace” of Israel (Romans 11), then this “Dispensation of Grace” will end, and the elect of Israel will be gathered back from the four quarters of the earth to keep the Feast of Trumpets at Jerusalem.<sup>20</sup> See also (Matthew 24).

***Even so then, also in this present time a remnant according to the election of grace has come into being.***

***Romans 11:5(MKJV)***

***And He shall send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather His elect from the four winds, from one end of the heavens to the other.***

***Matthew 24:31(MKJV)***

If one position each feasts on the menorah, moving from right to left, the fourth feast (Shavuot - Pentecost) will occupy the shamash position. In English, Shavuot means “weeks” and occurs seven weeks (forty-nine days) after First fruits (Leviticus 23).

***And you shall count to you from the next day after the sabbath, from the day that you brought the sheaf of the wave offering; seven sabbaths shall be complete.***

***To the next day after the seventh sabbath you shall number fifty days. And you shall offer a new food offering to the LORD.***

***You shall bring out of your homes two wave loaves of two-tenth parts. They shall be of fine flour. They shall be baked with yeast, firstfruits to the LORD.***

***Leviticus 23:15-17(MKJV)***

---

<sup>20</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p. 160.



It is a week (seven) of weeks – a menorah of menorahs. Its English counterpart, Pentecost, means *"fifty days"* in Greek. (Incidentally, if you count to Shavuot from First fruits, you start with First fruits itself as day one.) The fiftieth day (Shavuot) is a memorial of the moment when God gave the Torah through Moses (Deuteronomy 4:10-14) and filled the elders with the Holy Spirit, as detailed in (Numbers 11:24-30).

To be a friend of God one must actively participate in the increase (leaven) of His kingdom (Matthew 13:33). People can increase with sin or righteousness, depending on whom they covenant with. The rewards of dying daily to our own evil desires bring an increase in intimacy and productivity, as represented by the leavened bread.

The Shavuot feast is the center of all other feasts, yet involves the least ceremony. It doesn't draw attention to itself but, rather, gives light to all the other feasts just as the shamash kindles the six other lamps. Likewise, our increase in maturity with Him should elevate God only, not people and their achievements.<sup>21</sup>

## **2.8 The Feast Of Trumpets**

The Feast of Trumpets, which was observed on the first day of the Seventh month, ushered in the second series of the *"set feasts."* It fell on a Sabbath day, at the time of the New Moon, and ushered in the Jewish New Year. The *"Day of Atonement"* followed it on the 10th day of the month, and by the *"Feast of Tabernacles"* which began on the 15th day of the month, a Sabbath day, and ended on the 22d day of the month, which was also a Sabbath day. It was ushered in with the blowing of Trumpets. During the Wilderness Wandering two silver Trumpets, made of the

---

<sup>21</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., pp. 168-170.

atonement money of the people, were blown for the “calling of the Assembly,” and for the “journeying’s of the Camps.” See (Numbers 10).

***And the LORD spoke to Moses saying,***

***Make two trumpets of silver for yourself. You shall make them of beaten work. And they shall be used for the calling of the assembly and for causing the camps to go forward.***

***And when they shall blow with them, all the assembly shall gather themselves to you at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.***

***And if they blow with one, then the rulers who are heads of the thousands of Israel shall gather themselves to you.***

***When you blow an alarm, then the camps that lie on the east parts shall pull up.***

***When you blow an alarm the second time, then the camps that lie on the south side shall pull up. They shall blow an alarm for their journeys.***

***But when the congregation is to be gathered, you shall blow, but you shall not sound an alarm.***

***And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow with the trumpets. And they shall be to you for an ordinance forever throughout your generations.***

***And if you go to war in your land against the enemy who fights against you, then you shall blow with the trumpets. And you shall be remembered before the LORD your God, and you shall be saved from your enemies.***

***Also in the day of your gladness, and in your solemn days, and in the beginnings of your months, you shall blow with the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings, so that they may be to you for a memorial before your GOD. I am the LORD your God.***

***Numbers 10:1-10(MKJV)***

**The fact that the Feast of Trumpets** comes immediately at the close of the “Interval” between the two series of “set feasts” is not without significance. As we have seen the “Interval” represents this “Dispensation of Grace,” and we know that two things are to happen at the close of this Dispensation. First the Church is to be caught out, and secondly Israel is to be gathered back to their own land. When the Church is caught out – ***“The Lord Himself shall descend from Heaven with a shout, with the voice of the Archangel, and with the Trump of God”*** (1 Thess. 4: 16), and ***“We shall not all sleep (die), but we (who are then alive) shall all be***

*changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the **Last Trump**; for the **Trumpet** shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed*" (1 Corinthians 15: 51, 52).

This "*last trump*" is not the last of the "*Seven Trumpets*" that sound in the Book of Revelation, for it does not sound until the "*Middle of the Week*," while the Church is caught out "*before*" the beginning of the "*Week*." We probably are to understand by the "last trump" the last of the Two Trumpets used by Israel, the first, for the "*calling of the Assembly*," will call out the dead in Christ from their graves, and the second or "*last*," for the "*journeying of the camps*," will be the signal for the upward journey of the risen and transformed saints to meet the Lord in the air.

Then we read in Matthew 24:31, that the Son of Man, when He comes in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory at His Revelation of Himself, shall send His angels with a great sound of a **Trumpet**, and they shall gather together His "*elect*" (not of the Church but of Israel) from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other. From this we see that the "*Feast of Trumpets*" has a typical relation to the "*catching out*" of the Church, and the re-gathering of Israel at the Second Coming of Christ.

This has led some to believe that as Jesus was crucified at the time of the Passover, and the Holy Spirit was given at Pentecost, that when He comes back the "Rapture" will take place at the Feast of Tabernacles, and the "*Revelation*" seven years later at the time of the same Feast. Time alone will reveal the correctness of this view.<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>22</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.160.

---

John and Adam argued,<sup>23</sup> that this is the season during which the ancient Israelites harvested figs, grapes, and other fruit; it is referred to as the "early rain" or "wet harvest." Rosh HaShanah (literally "the head of the year") ushers in the civil New Year with the sounding of trumpets.

In Hebrew, this festival was called **Yom Teruah** or "Day of the Trumpet Blast." While it occupied just one day on the calendar, it occupied a 24-hour time slot within a forty-eight-hour period. No one knew exactly which hour or on which of the two days the trumpet blast, literally the "alarm" trumpet blast (call to war) called *Yom Teruah*, would sound. In Yeshua's time, Rosh HaShanah was known as "The Day and the Hour Which No Man Knows." It is the first of the three fall feasts which, grouped together as a unity, another *echad*, are called "The Days of Awe."

The sound of the shofar (ram's horn trumpet) was considered a "thunder" - a call from God. The high priest alone could determine the exact time to blow the trumpet to begin the civil New Year. By viewing the stars the priests determined the exact hour and initiated a signal fire. The fire would be relayed from hill to hill, from the eastern wall of the Temple to the Mediterranean Sea in the west. Thus, another name for the Day of the Trumpet Blast was "The Feast of the Lightning that Shines from East to West."<sup>24</sup>

When Jesus' disciples asked what would be the sign of His coming, Yeshua gave seven specific references that any Jew of that day would understand to mean "Feast of Trumpets," as shown in the verses below from the (24th chapter of Matthew, verses 17, 27, 31, 36, 40, 41, and 42).

---

<sup>23</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., pp. 171-172.

<sup>24</sup> Neuser, Jacob (1988) *The Mishnah: A New Translation*. New Haven CT: Yale University Press, pp.301-307.

- ◆ **Verse 17** - Whoever is on the housetop, must not go down to get the things out that are in his house.
- ◆ **Verse 27** - For just as the lightning comes from the east and flashes even to the west, so will the coming of the Son of Man be.
- ◆ **Verse 31** - And He will send forth His angels with A GREAT TRUMPET and THEY WILL GATHER TOGETHER His elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.
- ◆ **Verse 36** - But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but the Father alone.
- ◆ **Verse 40** - Then there will be two men in the field; one will be taken and one will be left.
- ◆ **Verse 41** - Two women will be grinding at the mill; one will be taken and one will be left.
- ◆ **Verse 42** - "Therefore be on the alert, for you do not know which day your Lord is coming.

Rosh Hashanah is the day on which the ancient Jews were to ask for forgiveness; to examine themselves; to get their houses in order. And, if they realised that they'd wronged someone during the previous year, they were to make it right before bringing their offerings.

## **2.9 The Day Of Atonement (Yom Kippur)**

The “*Day of Atonement*” was Israel’s annual cleansing from sin. For a full account of the day and its services read (Leviticus 16: 1-34). Its typical meaning was fulfilled in Christ. He is our Great High Priest, who instead of offering a “*Sin-Offering*” for Himself, offered Himself as a “*Sin-Offering*” for us. See (Hebrew 9).

***But when Christ had become a high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building***

***nor by the blood of goats and calves, but by His own blood He entered once for all into the Holy of Holies, having obtained eternal redemption for us.***

***For if the blood of bulls and of goats and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling the unclean sanctifies to the purifying of the flesh,***

***how much more shall the blood of Christ (who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself unblemished spot to God) purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?***

***Hebrews 9:11-14(MKJV)***

But the fact that the “*Day of Atonement*” is placed between the “*Feast of Trumpets*,” which we have seen will have its typical fulfillment at the Second Coming of Christ, and the “*Feast of Tabernacles*,” which is a type of Israel’s “*Millennial Rest*,” implies that it has some typical significance between those two events. It must therefore refer to the time when a “*Fountain will be opened to the **House of David** and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem for sin and for uncleanness.*” See (Zechariah. 13).

***In that day there shall be a fountain opened to the house of David, and to the people of Jerusalem, for sin and for uncleanness.***

***Zechariah 13:1(MKJV)***

That is, there will be a National “Day of Atonement” for Israel after they have been gathered back to their own land unconverted, and shall repent and turn to God.<sup>25</sup> See (Zechariah 12:9-14).

***And it shall be in that day I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.***

***And I will pour on the house of David, and on the people of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of prayers. And they shall look on Me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for Him, as one mourns for his only son, and shall be bitter over Him, as the bitterness over the first-born.***

***In that day shall be a great mourning in Jerusalem, like the mourning of Hadad-rimmon in the valley of Megiddo.***

***And the land shall mourn, each family apart; the family of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of Nathan apart, and their wives apart***

***the family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart; the family of Shimei apart, and their wives apart;***

***all the families who remain, each family apart and their wives apart.***

***Zechariah 12:9-14(MKJV)***

Ten days after Rosh HaShanah comes Yom Kippur, the Day of Atonement. “On exactly the tenth day of this seventh month is the Day of Atonement; it shall be a holy convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to the LORD” (Leviticus 23:27).

***Also, on the tenth of this seventh month, this is a day of atonement. It shall be a holy convocation to you. And you shall afflict your souls and offer a fire offering to the LORD.***

***Leviticus 23:27(MKJV)***

Yom Kippur is the holiest day on the Hebrew calendar, but it is an odd mixture. It is a day of fasting and mourning for sin, yet a day of rejoicing in God's provision of a covering. The Jewish custom of wearing the kippah further represents this concept.

---

<sup>25</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.160.

They dress entirely in white, not black. Kippur, or "covering," is the word for the mercy seat on the Ark of the Covenant, where the Shekinah presence of God rested. Those who are humble in spirit, and truly repentant, shall find grace as a covering. Those who are not repentant will find judgment. So it is that we wear white, trusting in God to forgive judgment. So it is that we wear white, trusting in God to forgive our sins and to complete the work of purity in us.<sup>26</sup>

## **2.10 The Feast Of Tabernacles (Sukkot)**

This was the last of the Seven Set Feasts. It was a "*Harvest Home*" celebration to be observed at the end of the harvest, and was to continue seven days. See (Deuteronomy 16).

***You shall keep the Feast of Tabernacles seven days after you have gathered in your grain flour and your wine press.***

***Deuteronomy 16:13(MKJV)***

The people during the Feast were to dwell in booths (arbors) made of the branches of palm trees and willows from the brook, which would remind them of the palm trees of Elim, and the "*Willows*" of Babylon. See (Psalms 137).

***There we sat down by the rivers of Babylon; also, we wept when we remembered Zion.***

***We hung our lyres on the willows in its midst.***

***For there our captors demanded a song from us; and our plunderers demanded gladness, saying, Sing us one of the songs of Zion.***

***How shall we sing the LORD's song in a foreign land?***

***If I forget you, O Jerusalem, let my right hand forget.***

---

<sup>26</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., p. 172.



***If I do not remember you, let my tongue cling to the roof of my mouth; if I do not prefer Jerusalem above my chief joy.***

***Remember, O LORD, the sons of Edom in the day of Jerusalem; who said, Make it bare! Make it bare, even to the foundation of it!***

***O daughter of Babylon, O destroyed one! Blessed is he who will repay to you your reward which you rewarded to us.***

***Blessed is he who seizes and dashes your little ones against the stones.***  
***Psalms 137:1-9(MKJV)***

The Anti-type of this Feast has not as yet appeared though Peter anticipated it, when on the Mount of Transfiguration, he said – “Lord, it is good for us to be here; if thou wilt, let us make here three Tabernacles; one for Thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.” See (Matthew 17).

***And Peter answered and said to Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here. If You will, let us make here three tabernacles; one for You, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah.***

***Matthew 17:4(MKJV)***

What Peter desired the dwelling of heavenly with earthly people on the earth, was not possible then, but will come to pass in Millennial Days, when Heaven and Earth shall be in closer union. The Feast of Tabernacles points forward to Israel's "*Millennial Rest*."

What the "*Seventh Day*," or Sabbath, is to the week, a day of rest; so the "*Seventh Month*" to the other six months of the "*Seven Month Cycle*," typifies a period of rest – the "***Sabbatic Rest***" of the "*Millennial Age*," or 1000 years, in relation to the other six thousand years of the world's work day history. Like the Lord's Supper is to us, a "*Memorial*" pointing back to the "*Cross*" and forward to the "*Coming*," so the "*Feast of Tabernacles*" will be a "*Memorial*" to Israel, pointing back to Egypt and forward to Millennial Rest. While the Feast of Tabernacles began on the Sabbath and continued seven days, it was to be followed by a Sabbath. See (Leviticus 23).

***Also in the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when you have gathered in the fruit of the land, you shall keep a feast to the LORD seven days. On the first day shall be a sabbath, and on the eighth day shall be a sabbath.***

***Leviticus 23:39(MKJV)***

This Sabbath on the “*Eighth Day*” points to the New Heaven and Earth that follow the Millennium, and to the “*Eighth Dispensation*,” the Dispensation of the “*Fullness of Times*” as shown on the Chart “*Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth*.”<sup>27</sup>

John and Adam stated,<sup>28</sup> that the seventh and final feast is Sukkot, the Feast of Tabernacles, celebrated for eight days. Starting on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, God's people are commanded to build booths to live in for a week (Leviticus 23:33-44). These temporary tabernacles (the actual ancient Hebrew word for “*dwelt*” also means “*tabernacle*”) remind us that the world we live in is a wilderness.

Just as God's people wandered in the wilderness, so do mankind. Our tabernacle here is temporary, but is still a dwelling for the Spirit of the Living God.

Yeshua came in the flesh to dwell among us (John 1:14). Scholars generally agree that Yeshua's birth occurred during the Feast of Tabernacles. Thus, Yeshua dwelt (tabernacled) with mankind for 33 years.

And, even as Rosh Hashana and Yom Kippur typify sandal covenant, Sukkot, our dwelling with God, is the culmination of all feasts, just as marriage is the culmination of all covenants. So, the correlation is absolute. Sukkot is symbolic of the marriage covenant, and anticipates our eternal dwelling with God.

---

<sup>27</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 160-161.

<sup>28</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC., p. 174.

Abraham Joshua Heschel stated.<sup>29</sup> One of the most important facts in the history of religion was the transformation of agricultural festivals into commemorations of historical events. The festivals of ancient peoples were intimately linked with nature's seasons. They celebrated what happened in the life of nature in the respective seasons.

Thus the value of the festive day was determined by the things nature did or did not bring forth. In Judaism, Passover, originally a spring festival became a celebration of the exodus from Egypt; the Feast of Weeks, an old harvest festival at the end of the wheat harvest (hag hakazir), (Exodus 23; and 34).

***Also the Feast of Harvest, the first-fruits of your labors, which you have sown in the field. Also the Feast of Ingathering, in the end of the year, when you have gathered in your labors out of the field.***

***Exodus 23:16(MKJV)***

***And you shall observe the Feast of Weeks, of the first-fruits of wheat harvest, and the Feast of Ingathering at the year's end.***

***Exodus 34:22(MKJV)***

This became the day on which the Torah was given at Sinai; the Feast of the Booths, an old festival of vintage (hag haasif, Exodus 23:16), commemorates the dwelling of the Israelites in booths during their sojourn in the wilderness (Leviticus 23:42f.)

***And you shall take the fruit of majestic trees for yourselves on the first day, branches of palm trees, and the boughs of thick trees, and willows of the brook. And you shall rejoice before the LORD your God seven days.***

***Leviticus 23:40(MKJV)***

To Israel the unique events of historic time were spiritually more significant than the repetitive processes in the cycle of nature, even though physical sustenance depended on the latter. While the deities of other peoples were associated with

---

<sup>29</sup> Heschel, Abraham Joshua (2005) *The Sabbath*. USA: Published By Farrar, Straus and Giroux, p. 7.

places or things, the God of Israel was the God of events: the Redeemer from slavery, the Revealer of the Torah, manifesting Himself in events of history rather than in things or places. Thus, the faith in the un-embodied, in the unimaginable was born.

Jewish ritual may be characterized as the art of significant forms in time, as architecture of time. Most of its observances the Sabbath, the New Moon, the festivals, the Sabbatical and the Jubilee year depend on a certain hour of the day or season of the year.

While the festivals celebrate events that happened in time, the date of the month assigned for each festival in the calendar is determined by the life in nature.

Passover and the Feast of Booths, for example, coincide with the full moon, and the date of all festivals is a day in the month, and the month is a reflection of what goes on periodically in the realm of nature, since the Jewish month begins with the new moon, with the reappearance of the lunar crescent in the evening sky. In contrast, the Sabbath is entirely independent of the month and unrelated to the moon. Its date is not determined by any event in nature, such as the new moon, but by the act of creation. Thus the essence of the Sabbath is completely detached from the world of space.

### **3 THE SABBATH AS AN UNIQUE OCCASION**

Abraham Joshua Heschel argued.<sup>30</sup> It is, indeed, a unique occasion at which the distinguished word *qadosh* is used for the first time: in the Book of Genesis at the end of the story of creation. How extremely significant is the fact that it is applied to

---

<sup>30</sup> Heschel, Abraham Joshua (2005) *The Sabbath*. USA: Published By Farrar, Straus and Giroux, p. 10.

time: *"And God blessed the seventh day and made it holy."* There is no reference in the record of creation to any object in space that would be endowed with the quality of holiness.

***And the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them.***

***And on the seventh day God ended His work which He had made. And He rested on the seventh day from all His work which He had made.***

***And God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it He had rested from all His work which God created to make.***

***Genesis 2:1-3(MKJV)***

This is a radical departure from accustomed religious thinking. The mythical mind would expect that, after heaven and earth have been established, God would create a holy place a holy mountain or a holy spring whereupon a sanctuary is to be established. Yet it seems as if to the Bible it is holiness in time, the Sabbath, which comes first.

When history began, there was only one holiness in the world, holiness in time. When at Sinai the word of God was about to be voiced, a call for holiness in man was proclaimed: *"Thou shalt be unto me a holy people."*

Clarence Larkin stated<sup>31</sup> that If God instituted the *"Sabbath"* before the *"Fall of Man,"* it seems strange that the fact is not recorded in Genesis, and that Adam was not told to observe it. Nowhere in the Book of Genesis do one read of Adam, or any of his descendants, or Noah, or Abraham observing the Sabbath. The only hint man have of a "seven-fold" division of days is found in (Genesis 7).

---

<sup>31</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p. 31.

---

***For in seven more days I will cause it to rain upon the earth forty days and forty nights. And I will destroy from off the face of the earth every living thing that I have made.***

***And it happened after seven days that the waters of the flood came into being on the earth.***

***Genesis 7:4, 10(MKJV)***

When **seven days of grace** were granted before the Flood came, and in (Genesis 8), where a seven-day period elapsed between the sending forth of the dove.

***He also sent forth a dove from him, to see if the waters had gone down from off the face of the earth.***

***But the dove found no rest for the sole of her foot. And she returned to him into the ark, for the waters were on the face of the whole earth. Then he put out his hand and took her, and pulled her in to him into the ark.***

***And he waited yet another seven days. And again he sent forth the dove out of the ark.***

***And the dove came in to him in the evening. And, lo, in her mouth was an olive leaf plucked off. So Noah knew that the waters had gone down from off the earth.***

***And he waited yet another seven days, and sent forth the dove. And she did not return again to him any more.***

***Genesis 8:8-12(MKJV)***

The first place we read of the Sabbath is in (Exodus 16), in connection with the gathering of the manna Six days you shall gather it; **but** on the **SEVENTH** day, **WHICH IS THE SABBATH**, in it there shall be none.

***And he said to them, This is that which the LORD has said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy sabbath to the LORD. Bake what you will bake today, and boil what you will boil. And that which remains over, lay up for you to be kept until the morning.***

***And they laid it up until the morning, as Moses said. And it did not stink, neither was there any worm in it.***

***And Moses said, Eat that today. For today is a sabbath to the LORD. Today you shall not find it in the field.***

***Six days you shall gather it, but on the seventh day, the sabbath, in it there shall be none.***

***Exodus 16:23-26(MKJV)***

Here we have the **"SEVENTH"** day designated as **"THE SABBATH."** That the "Seventh Day" of the "Creative Week" was a **type** of the Sabbath is clear from (Exodus 20:11).

***For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day, and sanctified it.***

***Exodus 20:11(MKJV)***

"For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them in, and rested the **SEVENTH** day; wherefore the Lord **blessed** the **SABBATH** day, and **hallowed it.**" But one have no evidence that the Sabbath was commanded to be observed until after the Exodus, and the reason is clear. God's "Rest Day" was broken by the "Fall of Man," and there could be no "rest" until redemption was brought in, and this was **typically** brought in by the redemption of the Children of Israel from Egypt through the offering of the "Passover Lamb," a type of Christ. The purpose of their deliverance was that they might find rest in Canaan from the weary toil and slavery of Egypt. (Deuteronomy 5).

***And remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt, and the LORD your God brought you out from there with a mighty hand and with a stretched-out arm. Therefore the LORD your God commanded you to keep the sabbath day.***

***Deuteronomy 5:15(MKJV)***

When a few weeks later the "Ten Commandments" were given on Mount Sinai, the Lord said to Israel, **"REMEMBER the Sabbath Day to keep it holy,"** (Exodus 20).

***Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy.***

***Exodus 20:8(MKJV)***

The Sabbath Day they were to remember was not the "Seventh Day" on which God rested, but the "Day" that God had appointed as the "Sabbath Day" at the time of the giving of the manna. The command to observe the Sabbath was given to Israel **EXCLUSIVELY**. It was not given to the Gentiles. It was given to Israel as the "**SIGN**" of the "Mosaic Covenant." "*Verily My Sabbaths you shall keep: for it is a 'SIGN' between Me and you **throughout your generations**.*" (Exodus 31) and (Ezekiel 20: 12).

*Speak also to the sons of Israel, saying, Truly you shall keep My sabbaths. For it is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, to know that I am the LORD who sanctifies you.*

*Exodus 31:13(MKJV)*

*And also I gave them My sabbaths to be a sign between Me and them, that they might know that I am the LORD who sets them apart.*

*I am the LORD your God. Walk in My statutes, and keep My judgments, and do them,*

*and keep My sabbaths holy; and they shall be a sign between Me and you, that you may know that I am the LORD your God.*

*But the sons rebelled against Me. They did not walk in My statutes, nor kept My judgments to do them; the judgments which, if a man do, he shall even live in them; they profaned My sabbaths and I said I would pour out My fury on them, to fulfill My anger against them in the wilderness.*

*Ezekiel 20:12, 19-21(MKJV)*

The Sabbath day then belongs to the Jews alone and is not binding on the Gentiles (the world) or on the Church (Christians). Nowhere in the Bible do you find God finding fault with any nation or people, except the Jewish nation, for not observing the Sabbath. As a Jewish ordinance it has never been abrogated, changed, or transferred to any other day of the week, or to any other people. It is now in abeyance as foretold in (Hosea 2) it would be.

*I will also cause all her joy to cease, her feast days, her new moons, and her sabbaths, and all her appointed feasts.*

*Hosea 2:11(MKJV)*



It is to be resumed when the Jews are nationally restored to their own land. (Isaiah 66) and (Ezekiel 44; 46)

***And it will be, from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, all flesh will come to worship before Me, says the LORD.***

***Isaiah 66:23(MKJV)***

***And in a dispute they shall stand in judgment; and they shall judge it according to My judgments. And they shall keep My laws and My statutes in all My assemblies, and they shall keep My sabbaths holy.***

***Ezekiel 44:24(MKJV)***

***So says the Lord Jehovah: The gate of the inner court that faces eastward shall be shut the six working days. But on the Sabbath it shall be opened, and in the day of the new moon it shall be opened.***

***And the ruler shall enter by the way of the porch of that gate outside, and shall stand by the gatepost. And the priests shall prepare his burnt offering and his peace offerings, and he shall worship at the threshold of the gate. And he shall go out, but the gate shall not be shut until the evening.***

***And the people of the land shall worship at the door of that gate before the LORD on the sabbaths and in the new moons.***

***Ezekiel 46:1-3(MKJV)***

If this were true, then the "Sabbath" does not belong to the Church, and is not to be observed by Christians, for the "Sabbath Day" is a part of **"THE LAW,"** and Christians are not under **"LAW,"** but under **"GRACE."** (Romans 6).

***For sin shall not have dominion over you, for you are not under Law, but under grace.***

***Romans 6:14(MKJV)***

In his letter to the Galatian Christians Paul reproved them for going back to the "Law," and declared that those who did so were **"under the CURSE."** (Galatians 3).

**For as many as are out of works of the Law, these are under a curse; for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who does not continue in all things which are written in the Book of the Law, to do them."**

**Galatians 3:10(MKJV)**

"How turn you again to the '**beggarly elements**' (religious ordinances) whereunto you desire again to be **in bondage**? You observe **DAYS** (Sabbath and Feast Days), and months, and times, and years. I am **afraid of you**, lest I have bestowed upon you labor in vain." (Galatians 4).

**But now, knowing God, but rather are known by God, how do you turn again to the weak and beggarly elements to which you desire to slave anew?**

**You observe days and months and times and years.**

**I fear for you, lest somehow I have labored among you in vain.**

**Galatians 4:9-11(MKJV)**

"Let no man therefore judge you in **meats** or in **drink**, or in respect of a **holy day**, or of the **new moon**, or of the **SABBATH**." (Colossians 2).

**Therefore let no one judge you in food or in drink, or in respect of a holy day, or of the new moon, or of the sabbaths.**

**Colossians 2:16(MKJV)**

If Christians are under obligations to keep the "*Jewish Sabbath*," then they are under the Jewish "*Ceremonial Law*" and should observe all the ordinances and Feast Days of the Jewish Ritual.

As an institution of Judaism, the Sabbath, with all the "*Feast Days*" and other ritualistic ceremonies and offerings of Judaism, ceased to function with the close of the Jewish Dispensation. The **JEWISH** Sabbath was not changed to the **CHRISTIAN** Sabbath, any more than "Circumcision" was changed to "Baptism." There is no such thing as the "**CHRISTIAN Sabbath**." "*Sabbath*" has to do with **LAW**, and "*Christian*"

with **GRACE**, and to join **"LAW"** and **"GRACE"** is to unite what God has forever separated.

After the Resurrection, Christ and His Disciples never met on the "Sabbath" but on the **"FIRST DAY of the week."** (John 20), (Acts 20) and (1 Corinthians 16).

*The first day of the week Mary Magdalene came early to the tomb, darkness still being on it, and she saw the stone taken away from the tomb.*

*Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the sabbaths, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the midst, and said to them, Peace to you!*

*John 20:1, 19(MKJV)*

*And on the first of the week, the disciples having been assembled to break bread, being about to depart on the morrow, Paul reasoned to them. And he continued his speech until midnight.*

*Acts 20:7(MKJV)*

*On the first day of the week let each of you put by himself, storing up what ever he is prospered, so that there may be no collections when I come.*

*I Corinthians 16:2(MKJV)*

It is true that they went into the Jewish Synagogues on the Sabbath, but not to worship, but that they might have opportunity to preach the Gospel. The *"First Day of the Week"* is the day to be observed for rest and worship by the Christian Church. It is prefigured in the Old Testament as the **"EIGHTH DAY,"** or the **"DAY AFTER THE SABBATH."**

*"You shall bring a sheaf of the 'FIRST-FRUITS' of your harvest unto the priest, and he shall wave the sheaf before the Lord, to be accepted for you; on the 'MORROW AFTER THE SABBATH' the priest shall wave it."* (Leviticus 23).

*Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, When you have come into the land which I give to you, and shall reap the harvest of it, then you shall bring a sheaf of the firstfruits of your harvest to the priest.*

**And he shall wave the sheaf before the LORD to be received for you. On the next day after the sabbath the priest shall wave it.**

**Leviticus 23:10-11(MKJV)**

What did that **"First Fruits"** typify? Read (1. Corinthians 15)

**But now Christ has risen from the dead, and has become the firstfruit of those who slept.**

**I Corinthians 15:20(MKJV)**

**"Now Christ is raised from the dead, and become the 'FIRST - FRUITS' of them that slept." When did Christ rise from the dead and become the "FIRST FRUITS?" Not on the "Sabbath," for He lay dead in the tomb on that day, but on the "FIRST DAY OF THE WEEK," on the "MORROW AFTER THE SABBATH."**

The fact that the **"Birthday"** of the Church was at Pentecost, and that fell on the **"First Day of the Week,"** is further proof that the Church should keep the **"First Day of the Week"** and not the **"Seventh"** day or **"SABBATH."**

The Jewish Sabbath links man with the **"Old Dispensation,"** the **"First Day of the Week"** links man with the **"New."** It is claimed that the Roman Catholic Church changed the day of rest from the **"Seventh Day"** to the **"First Day of the Week,"** but the claim is false, for the Papacy did not exist until a long time after the **"First Day of the Week"** had become a fixed day for Christian worship.

It is a noteworthy fact that the whole of the **"Ten Commandments"** (Exodus 20: 1-17) are reaffirmed in the New Testament, except the **"Fourth Commandment"** regarding the Sabbath. (Romans 13:8-10), (Ephesians 6:1-2), (James 5:12) and (1 John 5:21). Why this omission if the Law of the **"Sabbath"** is still in force? It is called the **"THE LORDS DAY"**. It belongs to Him. It is not called a **"rest day"** in the Bible. It is a day that should be filled with worship and service and Holy activity. It is not a day to be spent in laziness or pleasure, or the giving of sacred concerts and discussion of

worldly betterment schemes, but a day for the teaching and preaching of the Word of God.

## **4 THE MYSTERY OF THE BLOOD AS SEEN IN COMMUNION**

### **4.1 The Blood In The Spiritual World**

Ana Méndez Ferrell argues<sup>32</sup>, why is blood so important to God? And what does it mean in the spiritual world? Blood is the first element of atonement that God reveals to man. From the time of the fall of man to the revelation of the glorious future of the Church, people see God's continual intervention; a scarlet thread woven throughout Scripture, and this thread is the blood. Mankind will never reach fulfillment, spiritual peace or total victory, without understanding the powerful mystery of this element. The high priest of Israel must enter the Holy of Holies of the temple once a year to make atonement for the people in order to reconcile man with God. Concerning this event the Word says: see (Hebrew 9)

***But once in the year into the second the high priest goes alone, not without blood, which he offered for himself and for the errors of the people)***  
***Hebrews 9:7(MKJV)***

From the time man fell into sin in the Garden of Eden, man has found himself separated from God. Sin puts an end to the plan of God, distancing Him from His beloved creation. That is why God hates sin so much, because it blocks our communion with Him. God had to provide something so powerful that it would redeem everything that sin had destroyed. It must also satisfy His wrath and cry of

---

<sup>32</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 39-44.

His own righteousness that demands payment for transgression. Only one thing held this power: the love of God flowing from the very fountain of redemption through the shedding of **Jesus'** blood.

This blood was typified through animal sacrifices offered to God in the Old Testament as a foreshadow of Christ, the perfect sacrifice. The victim took the place of the sinner. One life was taken instead of another.

Abel was the first priest and prophet to whom God revealed the power of the blood. Abel's life was devoted to offering sacrifices to Jehovah. At that time, man did not eat meat yet; this began at the time of the flood. Therefore, the only reason Abel cared for a flock of sheep was in order to offer the sacrifice owed to God was through blood. It is still the same way today.

Without this precious element, man cannot receive from God. He cannot receive His blessings, His communion, His revelation, or His power. This is the first law for man to come to God. Without this sacrifice, Enoch would never have been able to be caught up to heaven, and Noah would never have been able to hear God. Noah knew what he had to do. After the flood, he sanctified the earth, offering a sacrifice to God. See (Genesis 8).

***And Noah built an altar to the LORD. And he took of every clean animal, and of every clean bird, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.***

***Genesis 8:20(MKJV)***

The new earth was then consecrated, and the first commandment of God was given: as can be seen in (Genesis 9).

***But you shall not eat of flesh with the life in it, or the blood of it.***

***and surely the blood of your lives will I require. At the hand of every animal will I require it, and at the hand of man. At the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man.***

***Genesis 9:4-5(MKJV)***

Blood is something that belongs to God and therefore cannot be taken lightly. There is something profound in it that God looks at. There is something that God designed within blood that has His seal, and for that reason, must be respected. One life is taken to save another life! This is the principle behind every atoning sacrifice. It's also the principle through which Christ redeemed His people. This principle is seen in the first Passover. In Egypt, God told Moses that the angel of death would pass over, killing every first born. Jehovah then commanded them to sacrifice a lamb and to put its blood on the lintels of the doors.

***For I will pass through the land of Egypt this night, and will smite all the first-born in the land of Egypt, both man and beast. And I will execute judgments against all the gods of Egypt. I am the LORD.***

***And the blood shall be a sign to you upon the houses where you are. And when I see the blood, I will pass over you. And the plague shall not be upon you for a destruction when I smite in the land of Egypt.***

***Exodus 12:12-13(MKJV)***

Here, God establishes an everlasting foundation: Those who are under the protection of the blood of the sacrifice cannot be touched by death. It was not enough to kill a Passover lamb and shed its blood. The blood must be applied to the lintels of the doors. Likewise, it is not enough that Jesus shed His blood. The blood must be applied to the lintels of the door of a man's heart, which is his spiritual house. This is done through drinking His blood. Jesus said:

***Behold, I stand at the door and knock; if anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and will dine with him, and he with Me.***

***Revelation 3:20(MKJV)***

This door is our innermost being, and this meal is the new covenant in His blood. It is through blood that God executed judgment upon Egypt, which is a symbol of the

world and the life of sin therein; He literally pulled His people out from under the yoke of Pharaoh. This is what Communion does through the blood of Christ. It brings judgment upon sin, destroying it in our lives and leading us into a new walk with Him.

It is in this walk that the tabernacle of His presence is going to be built within man, as it was in the desert. Between leaving Egypt and entering the Promised Land, God must build His dwelling among men and establish His law in the hearts of His children. The blood then continues flowing on its way to the most inward parts of our being. The blood will not just be a sign of salvation on the lintels of our hearts, but it must be poured upon the altar, sanctifying all of man's soul, mind and will. From there it must be taken to the Holy of Holies, which is man's spirit.

The blood must run through and sanctify our inner being, so one can become the dwelling place of the Most High. It was very clear in the old covenant that this holy place could not be entered except through the blood. The strongest and purest communion with the presence of God can only be accomplished through the union of His blood with our spirit. See (John 6).

***He who partakes of My flesh and drinks My blood dwells in Me, and I in him.***  
***John 6:56(MKJV)***

How can a sinner live in fellowship with the Holy God? In the Book Genesis in the beginning with Adam and Eve, one sees sin and death enter the world and a huge separation arise between God and humanity. And from that time, the greatest need of humanity is to find a way back across that division. But humanity couldn't bridge that gap – only God could do that, and the way He demonstrated is “*bridge*” was through **blood sacrifice** and **Jesus Christ**.<sup>33</sup> The necessity of the shedding of blood for reconciliation with God stands at the very center of the Christian message of

---

<sup>33</sup> Smith, Lukie (2012) *An Exegetical Exposé Pertaining To The Role Of Blood Revealing The Phenomenological Impact Thereof*. SA: Published By Râdâh Academy, p. 81.



redemption. Of the several hundred appearances of the word blood in the Old Testament, more than one hundred relate to the blood of sacrifices.<sup>34</sup>

#### **4.1.1 The Contents Of The Blood**

Ferrell further argues<sup>35</sup>, that God's Life is found in the Blood. Blood is the element in which life is found. And it is the origin of this life that determines its value. The Bible establishes in Leviticus 17:

***For the life of the flesh is in the blood. And I have given it to you on the altar to make an atonement for your souls. For it is the blood that makes an atonement for the soul.***

***Leviticus 17:11(MKJV)***

When man look at the lives of animals, one find that the larger they are, the more valuable their lives are as a sacrifice. A turtledove has a certain value while an ox has a greater value. It is the same way among men. For pagans who sacrifice human beings, a maiden has a certain value while a firstborn son has a greater value. But without a doubt, the most valuable blood is that of the only **begotten Son of God**.

The life in the blood is described by the Greek word zoe. Everything that breathes and is alive possesses the zoe of God. This is the essential energy that characterizes every living being. Nevertheless, zoe is not the nature of the Most High. Jesus was conceived of the very life of the Father, possessing everything that God is. But He also had His mother's zoe, and this is the life that made him a mortal being. Read also (Philippians 2).

***who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God,***

---

<sup>34</sup> Baxter, Mary K (2005) *The Power Of The Blood*. Claremont, FL, USA: Whitaker House, p. 39.

<sup>35</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 45-51.

***but made Himself of no reputation, and took upon Himself the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men.***

***Philippians 2:6-7(MKJV)***

The life of Jesus with perishable substance was transformed into resurrection life, when He conquered death and was raised from the dead. The life that now flows in His blood is life that cannot die.

When Jesus descended into hell, the life in His blood was full of glorious power of the Spirit of God. The mortal, corruptible substance of His human body was transformed at its deepest biological levels. From this moment on, the blood and the Spirit of God united to bring about the greatest miracle in history: the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

***Now may the God of peace (who brought again our Lord Jesus from the dead, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant)***

***Hebrews 13:20(MKJV)***

The union of that glorious blood with the Spirit of God produced the power that pulled Jesus out of the grave, defeating death and hell. The invincible power of the resurrection penetrated the redeemed body of Jesus. The life in His blood became the most powerful inheritance that He could leave us. Paul lived this reality in his own flesh and in the fullness of his spirit.

This is what he was trying to transmit to us. He knew that drinking from the blood of the covenant was not a ritual or a tiny sip of liquid that disappeared within ten minutes. He knew that his entire being was impregnated with this vital fluid. The blood of Jesus penetrates our spirit and invades our whole body, transforming our soul and flooding every cell of our body. The strength of His might is at work in us through His resurrection. Paul prayed for our eyes to be opened to this reality and for us to truly understand the inheritance that Jesus left us.

***the eyes of your understanding being enlightened, that you may know what is the hope of His calling, and what is the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints,***

***and what is the surpassing greatness of His power toward us, the ones believing according to the working of His mighty strength***

***which He worked in Christ in raising Him from the dead, and He seated Him at His right hand in the heavenlies,***

***Ephesians 1:18-20(MKJV)***

One just read that, thanks to His blood, the power of the Spirit of God raised Jesus from the dead. This dynamic power now operates within us. Jesus wanted man to drink of His blood in order to give His people this wonderful inheritance.

Partaking of His blood and His flesh were leading man to a deeper knowledge of God. His life invading peoples spirit each day. The rivers of the water of life flowing from ones inner being begun to be real. **The Light of God Is Found in His Blood.**

***All things came into being through Him, and without Him not even one thing came into being that has come into being.***

***In Him was life, and the life was the light of men.***

***And the light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overtake it.***  
***John 1:3-5(MKJV)***

The life of God is liquid light that runs through the veins of Jesus. This light is visible in the spiritual world and is greatly feared by darkness. The light in Jesus' blood is what transforms the spiritual realm and strips the devil of his strength. Darkness, the arena in which Satan and his hosts operate, lacks substance. Its best definition is the absence of light. When man turn on a light, darkness is automatically dispelled. Just as a fish needs water to live, the devil needs darkness to survive. Exposing the devil to the light of God is the same thing as taking a fish out of the water. It loses its strength until it dies, or in the case of the devil, he falls defeated.

Ana Méndez Ferrell began to understand that by drinking the blood of Jesus, His light ran through her veins, and she became a fearful adversary for the devil. The kingdom of darkness realized that she was aware that the light within her spirit was intensifying as she took Communion. This filled the devil with terror. She would no longer be a prey for him, nor would she fall into his deceivers' traps so easily. After taking the Lord's Supper, she frequently spend long periods of time meditating in her spirit, basking in that marvelous light that emanates from His life.

At the beginning of the 20th century, the Lord raised up John G. Lake, one of the most powerful men in the history of the kingdom of God. John was an American missionary in Africa. He was known for the extraordinary gift of healing that moved in his ministry. His holiness and knowledge of God have inspired great ministries of today.

John G. Lake practiced Communion daily, and this greatly affected his physical and spiritual life. Many missionaries went to Africa in those days and died of different diseases that were rampant on the black continent.

Nevertheless, John never got sick. This attracted the attention of some investigators, who requested a sample of his blood for analysis. They wanted to discover what it was that kept the missionary in such good health. They took the sample and added all kinds of germs of the most dreadful sicknesses. His biographers say that his blood emitted light that burned up the germs. The life of God had become one with the missionary's blood.

Light has another characteristic, it enlightens our understanding. His light shines in our inner being and leads us to glorious revelations of the hidden mysteries of God. Life, light and the love of God are intimately tied to His blood.

The **Love of God** is found and manifested in the **Blood of Jesus**. God is Love. That love was contained in the Father's blood that entered into Mary's womb at His Son's conception. Jesus was born carrying the mark of the love that surpasses all understanding. This love gives all without reservation. This is the Father's nature, giving of Himself and giving without measure. God's love is the door to everything that He is and to everything He possesses.

God created man due to love. He needed a being like Himself into whom He could pour His essence of love. This is how we were created; to be the most beloved thing that He had. Love is fullness. Where love is there is peace, joy and complete satisfaction. There is no desire, achievement or goal that contains all that love provides to the spirit and soul of man. Even the body receives benefits, filling it with a health and vitality that only love brings to life.

Love is not a feeling. Man cannot create it because it is of divine origin. Love is a person. It is Jesus incarnate. He wants to live through us and fill the earth with love. Jesus is the Teacher and the Provider of perfect love. That is why He said: See (John 13)

***By this all shall know that you are My disciples, if you have love toward one another.***

***John 13:35(MKJV)***

His blood contains this wonderful love, and as man drink it, one become more and more filled with it. One begin to understand Him and desire Him more than anything else in the world. Love lives and beats through the blood of Jesus. It helps us to love where it is difficult to do so. It leads us to hate all separation because this is what Jesus did: He loved those who had trespassed against Him, closing the breach between God and man and reconciling us again with the Father.

The Scripture says that the blood of Jesus speaks. It cries out to God for having been shed. But it is the love contained within that blood that gathers us up and brings us to Jesus. His love groans for us because He cannot tolerate being separated from the object of His love, placing His very life on the line. See (Hebrews 12).

***and to Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling that speaks better things than that of Abel.***

***Hebrews 12:24(MKJV)***

The maximum manifestation of the Father's love is that He gave His only begotten Son as a sacrifice for our sins. His love for us was greater than the pain He felt when He saw Jesus brutalized and put to death on the cross.

Since love requires its beloved, love does not reject; love redeems. Love has good will towards men. It focuses, not on defects, but on virtues. It doesn't consider our deeds as important, but rather who people are to Him. He suffers and exposes Himself to reproach every day, so that He can be the unchanging banner of love over us.

Love doesn't close its heart in the face of our betrayal, indifference and contempt. It appears each morning, sweet and tender, always trying to make up. It is kind. It's always looking for ways to do well, to please, to woo a pleasant moment. With tenderness it tries to file off the rough places.

Love has long-lasting endurance. It is patient and kind. It never demonstrates envy and never boils over with jealousy. It doesn't brag or show off. It doesn't have displays of haughtiness. It isn't proud or arrogant. It is not rude and is never unmannerly. Love is not selfish. It doesn't demand its rights or its manner of doing things because love doesn't seek its own way.

Love is not irritable. It doesn't feel threatened or hold grudges. It doesn't rejoice in injustice or desire to do evil. It rejoices when truth and right prevail. It is not offended. It takes no account of a wrong.

Love endures everything. It is always ready to believe the best of every person. It is full of hope and faith at all times. It always remains strong in any situation. It is infinitely sacrificial and is a giver without limits. It is brave, a fighter, and is not intimidated in the face of any enemy. It does not give up; it wins. In it there is no fear. It can do anything, and nothing can stop it. Love shreds to pieces fierce foes, and conquers tempestuous rivers in its desire to save one who is drowning. Love is courageous. It demolishes insurmountable walls. It changes hearts of stone into hearts of flesh.

It has thousands of unreachable paths, and where there is no way, it creates one. Love never fails. It never decays, never becomes obsolete, never abandons the cause, and never ceases to exist. Love cannot be overcome by anything or anyone. Love is the most powerful force in the universe. It is the purest manifestation of His Being. It is what makes God visible and tangible on earth.

This is what Christians drink when they partake of His blood. This is what one ate and converted into, and what we appropriate for ourselves when one make that love ours every day. The blood of Jesus fuses with our own, as one allow Him to live and to express His love to a lost world.

His love is liquid fire, running through our veins. It makes us do things that one would never do under other circumstances. It's a zeal that burns for lost souls. It is like a giant magnet, pulling us toward those in need and those who want to feel that they matter to someone else. It is God's greatest force. His love compels us to make any

sacrifice. In Him, man can accomplish exploits, giving no thought to the price that one must pay.

Natural man can only aspire to a cheap imitation of the true love found in Christ, which has the power to conquer all. Man's love is conditional. It's incapable of the level of sacrifice and inner death required in order to love with one's whole heart.

Within the blood of Jesus runs this incorruptible form of the Father's love. From the time Jesus was a boy, His blood continually spoke to him about sacrifice. Every time Jesus saw the lambs being offered upon the altar of the temple, His blood spoke to him about the love sacrifice into which He would be converted. He was the Lamb slain before the foundation of the world. This was like a seal within his own bloodstream.

R K Harrison summarizes<sup>36</sup> the matter that, the Israelites of old learned from Leviticus, as nowhere else up to that point in time, the preciousness of blood to God. How much greater value does blood take on the New Testament saint, whose blessings are all a result of the shed blood of Jesus Christ?

The blood is the life of the flesh (Leviticus 17:11) and it is through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ that the believer receives redemption (1 Peter 1:18-19) forgiveness (Ephesians 1:7), Justification (Romans 5:9), Spiritual peace (Colossians 1:20), and sanctification (Hebrews 13).

---

<sup>36</sup> Harrison, R K (1980) *Leviticus: An Introduction And Commentary*. Downers Grove: Inter-Varsity Press, p. 178.

---



## **4.2 The Power of the Blood of Jesus**

Ferrell stated that<sup>37</sup> Jesus' blood has power because it is intimately linked with God's glory. It is the only tangible manifestation of the perfect life of the Father. It was at the same time human and divine. It was celestial and physical. Within it, Heaven and Earth were united. In Jesus, God and man became one.

When this substance entered the Holy of Holies in heaven and settled upon the mercy seat, God's glory became one with man. The man Jesus was the first being of flesh and bone to contain the power of His glory.

***For it pleased the Father that in Him all fullness should dwell.***

***Colossians 1:19(MKJV)***

His blood continues to release power, judging and destroying everything that opposes the righteousness of the Most High. It is a burning fire that the devil cannot endure.

The blood of Jesus contains all the authority of God. It speaks of His victory. It reminds the devil how Jesus' sacrifice unleashed the power of God upon hell, taking from the devil the keys of authority over the earth and mankind.

***And when I saw Him, I fell at His feet as dead. And He laid His right hand upon me, saying to me, Do not fear, I am the First and the Last,***

***and the Living One, and I became dead, and behold, I am alive for ever and ever, Amen. And I have the keys of hell and of death.***

***Revelation 1:17-18(MKJV)***

---

<sup>37</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 61-64.

When man drink His blood, his spirit is flooded with that glorious power. From it, our soul drinks, and then our body, until our entire being is saturated with undefeatable power. Since my husband and I drink and eat this spiritual food, almost every day our level of revelation and spiritual experiences with God has greatly increased. The light of that blood enlightens and opens the Kingdom of God before us, and we are transformed more and more into His image.

***But we all, with our face having been unveiled, having beheld the glory of the Lord as in a mirror, are being changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Lord Spirit.***

***II Corinthians 3:18(MKJV)***

Sometimes, as mankind enters deeply into prayer, one can see us saturated and submerged in that blood. It is as if one was soaking in a bathtub of blood and our entire beings were being filled with it. One see the current of His strength like thousands of tiny lightning bolts going forth from it, filling Christians with His power.

This is not simply a matter of pleading His blood. Man must have a continual, invigorating fellowship with it. The issue is that the blood needs to fill our lives completely.

Many people have been taught to plead the power of the blood of Jesus, but within themselves they don't have a living experience with that blood. The Holy Spirit has taught us that it is not what man say that has power, but the spiritual position from which one say it.

Roy Hession Argues<sup>38</sup> that the message and challenge of revival, which faces many of us in these days, is searching in its perfect simplicity. It is this, that there is only one thing in the world that that can hinder the Christian from walking in victorious

---

<sup>38</sup> Hession, Roy (1950) The Calvary Road. Christian Literature Crusade Publisher, England, pp. 91-92

fellowship with God, and being filled with the Holy Spirit – and that is sin in whatever form.

There is only one thing in the world that can cleanse the Christian from sin, and so bring liberty and victory – and that is the power of the blood of the Lord Jesus Christ. It is, however, most important for us that one should see what gives the blood of Christ its mighty power with God on behalves of men, for only then shall one understand the conditions through which its full power may be experienced in peoples lives.

#### **4.3 The Blood Has The Power To Open That, Which Is Impossible**

Ferrell stated that<sup>39</sup> there, submerged in His blood, the voice of God is so clear. The blood speaks in many different ways. The heavens open because the blood has the power to open everything that stands in its way. It is a torrent of power so great that at times Ana have seen it as a high caliber explosion, opening the way like a turbulent river of fire, leveling everything in its path and tearing down the devil's strongholds in the spiritual world. Jesus' blood opens the way so that God's plans can be established upon the earth. It is an advancing force that tears down walls and levels down mountains. The blood destroys everything that stands against the will of God.

When Jesus gave up His Spirit and the spear pierced His heart, water and blood flowed from His side. However in the invisible world, an extremely powerful beam shone forth that ripped the veil of the temple. The closed path between God and man had finally been opened.

---

<sup>39</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 64-66.

The blood penetrated hell and opened the doors of death. Sheol was filled with the victorious power of the blood of the Lamb. The chains that bound us began to break, falling off as they felt the power of His blood. Everything remained desolate in hell and then Jesus took the keys of death and of Hades. Everything began to tremble as if shaken by the reverberating effects of an explosion.

The blood opened the way so that Jesus could ascend in resurrection. The power arrived all the way to the tomb and removed the stone. The veil of the temple was torn, and the tomb was transformed into the reflection of the Holy of Holies in heaven. God's glory filled everything, and the splendor of the resurrection shone from the tomb in all its power. Two cherubs guarded God's presence over the Ark of the Covenant, and two angels showed up to make His glory accessible to all men. The blood opened the heavens, so that they could be revealed to God's children. In this way, His children could be translated to Heaven in this life and in the one to come.

The blood is still the channel that unites us with the dimensions of Heaven. At times, God has given Ana the privilege of going to the third Heaven before His Throne, as well as to other celestial places pertaining to the kingdom of God, as He did with the Apostle Paul. (Ana say this in all humility, without comparing myself in any way to the great Apostle.) Each time this has happened, it has had something to do with being submerged in His blood.

The blood of Jesus has an opening power, like a master key that opens the mysteries of God. See (Colossians 2).

***that their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and to all riches of the full assurance of the understanding, to the full knowledge of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;***

***Colossians 2:3: in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.***  
***Colossians 2:2-3(MKJV)***

#### **4.4 The Finished Work Is Revealed In Each Way The Blood Was Shed**

Each one of the seven parts of Christ's suffering in which His blood was poured out are doors to hidden mysteries that open and reveal themselves in fellowship with His blood. The cross is an infinite paradise of blood droplets, each one full of light and revelation. It is the entrance to the Heavenly City, to the dwelling places of the Spirit and to celestial places. Thousands of experiences of deep knowledge and revelation are before the believer who finds this master key, and dives into this river of light.<sup>40</sup>

According to Delitzsch,<sup>41</sup> people sins were until death, and it was only redeemable when a High Priest placed his hands upon the head of an animal, in order to signify people's identification with the animal and the transference of sins of the people to it. (Leviticus 16:21). (Hebrew 2:9) states that Jesus **"suffered death, so that by the grace of God he might taste death for everyone."** In this manner, this Scripture perceives the death of Jesus as a substitutionary sacrifice for sinners.

The contest of (Hebrew 2:9) has to do with death in all its fullness, including its physical and spiritual aspects. Thus, one can agree with the fact that it refers to physical death for all mortals, and spiritual death for disobedient people who die in sin. However, Jesus only died a physical death, due to the fact that He was sinless and obedient to His Father. In making the supreme sacrifice on man's behalf, Jesus offered the most precious thing that belonged to Him - His very life.

---

<sup>40</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 66-67.

<sup>41</sup> Delitzsch D.D., (1978) *Commentary on the Epistle the Hebrews vol.2*. Minneapolis: Klock & clock Christian Publishers: p.116

#### **4.5 The Blood In The Sweat Of His Forehead**

Victory over all pain and suffering of the soul is found in those drops in the sweat of His forehead. The power that submits our will to that of God is found there. We can drink of those same drops, and make any desire that opposes God to submit to Him. These are drops of blood that take us to unprecedented levels of intercession.

They attract God's angels to help us die to ourselves and assist us in passing tests of purification that, without His blood and His angels, would be impossible to get through. See (Luke 22).<sup>42</sup>

***saying, Father, if You are willing, remove this cup from Me. Yet not My will, but Yours be done.***

***And being in an agony He prayed more earnestly. And His sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground.***

***Luke 22:42, 44(MKJV)***

#### **4.6 The Blood That Flowed From The Slaps And Blows That Disfigured His Face**

The blood that flowed from the slaps and blows that disfigured Jesus' face gives us triumph over pride and vanity, and rescues us from the yoke of reproach and rejection. It gives us the power to endure when people humiliate and mock us. It allows us to be like Him during the loss of our reputation.

It helps us to see the celestial and divine side found when the beauty within us has been destroyed in order for His beauty to shine through our being. When the soul and the spirit are full of this beauty, men's words no longer matter.

---

<sup>42</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p. 67.

Many times, God has asked me to love those who have destroyed me with their mocking and reproach. Drinking this blood has strengthened my heart in order to love and love and love again, where natural man no longer has that capacity. See (Matthew 26).<sup>43</sup>

***Then they spat in His face and beat Him with the fist. And others struck Him with the palms of their hands,***

***saying, Prophecy to us, Christ; who is the one who struck you?***  
***Matthew 26:67-68(MKJV)***

#### **4.7            The Blood Shed When Pieces Of His Beard Were Pulled Out**

His beard speaks of the priesthood. Through this blood we reclaim the lost priesthood that permits us to minister before His presence. It is from Jesus' beard that His anointing descends upon his entire body, as it occurred with Aaron, the high priest. See (Psalm 133) and (Isaiah 50).<sup>44</sup>

***It is like the precious ointment on the head that ran down on the beard, Aaron's beard, that went down to the mouth of his garments;***

***Psalms 133:2(MKJV)***

***I gave My back to the strikers, and My cheeks to pluckers; I did not hide My face from shame and spitting.***

***Isaiah 50:6(MKJV)***

---

<sup>43</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p. 68.

<sup>44</sup> Brand, Prof Dr. Connie (2012) Mini Conference February 2012, Pretoria, RSA: Self-Published., p. 40.

#### **4.8 The Blood Shed During The Whipping That Tore His Back**

Christian people drink the victory over all disease in their physical body as one drink this blood. Just as Jesus took away our sins, He suffered in order to carry in His body all sickness and pain.

Jesus was never sick while He was on the earth. He was a man without sin, and this protected His body so the devil could not touch Him. Satan can only touch fallen nature due to sin. The prince of evil wanted to destroy Jesus with all kinds of sickness, but he could not.

When He was on the cross, Jesus covered Himself with sin. This attracted to Himself all sickness and He carried it to death, through His own death. This is one of the most powerful things that happened at Calvary and that gives us the possibility of living a life of health. It would be difficult for a body continually washed with the blood of Jesus to become sick. God is calling us in this generation to enter and possess all that Jesus did for us through His sacrifice. See (Isaiah 53).

***Surely He has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we esteemed Him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.***

***Isaiah 53:5: But He was wounded for our transgressions; He was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was on Him; and with His stripes we ourselves are healed.***

***Isaiah 53:4-5(MKJV)***

When Ana's husband and An are attacked in their physical bodies, instead of running to the doctor, they cling to the power that is in the blood and in the flesh of Jesus. They look at His wounds and His shed blood and we decree, believing with all our hearts that these wounds were not in vain for us. He gave the death sentence to all



sickness, and one should believe it and drink in that blood our own victory over all sickness.<sup>45</sup>

#### **4.9 The Blood Produced By The Crown Of Thorns**

This blood crowned Him as King of kings and Lord of lords. It gave Him the victory over the devil's empire. He conquered the government of the earth. This gives us the position of kings and the ability to govern with Christ. This blood conquered strongholds in the spiritual world and in the mind of man. By drinking this blood, we conquer our thought life so we can have the mind of Christ. We appropriate for ourselves the conscience of Christ.

Jesus the man believed everything that was written about Him. He knew that everything He was in His Spirit had to invade His entire human nature until He became the Christ in His whole being. He trained His mind to be subject to His Spirit in order for Him to see Himself as He really was. He was Christ, the Son of God. Likewise, through fellowship with His blood, we allow the truth of who we are to penetrate our mind, until we literally become everything that is written about us. See (2 Corinthians 10) and (Matthew 27).<sup>46</sup>

***pulling down imaginations and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought into the obedience of Christ;***

***II Corinthians 10:5(MKJV)***

***And plaiting a crown of thorns, they put it on His head, and a reed in His right hand. And they bowed the knee before Him and mocked Him, saying, Hail, King of the Jews!***

---

<sup>45</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 70-71.

<sup>46</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 71-72.

***And spitting at Him, they took the reed and struck at His head.***

***Matthew 27:29-30(MKJV)***

#### **4.10            The Spirit And The Blood**

Andrew Murray stated<sup>47</sup> that, it is only where the Spirit works that the power of the *blood* will be manifested. Scripture states in (1 John 5:8) that ***"there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood; and these three agree in one."*** The water refers to baptism unto repentance and the laying aside of sin. The blood refers to redemption in Christ. The Spirit is He who supplies power to the water and the blood. So also, the Spirit and the blood are associated in (Hebrews 9:14), where one read, ***"How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge our conscience."***

It was by the eternal Spirit in our Lord that His blood had its *value and power*. It is always through the Spirit that the blood possesses its living power in heaven and in the hearts of men. The Spirit and the blood always bear witness together. *Where the blood is honored in faith, there the Spirit works*. The living bond between the Spirit and the blood cannot be broken.

#### **4.11            The Authority In The Blood**

As from time past eternity, God had, has and will have **ultimate authority** until the time of future eternity. Therefore one can say all authority outside of God will be delegated authority in other words authority being transferred from God to Jesus Christ (in the flesh) to man.

---

<sup>47</sup> Murray Andrew (1993) The Power Of The Blood Of Christ, New Kensington, PA, USA: Whitaker House.Pp.35-36

In the beginning all authority was in God's hands, but in the garden a limited portion of that authority changed hands. God delegated some of his authority to man **and he never has taken it back**. As Sherman says: *"This is why people are now doing all kinds of evil and God is not stopping them."*<sup>48</sup>

In order to understand how the change of **authority** works, one must go back to the beginning when God made mankind in the Garden of Eden, He created him different than animals. **He gave man free will, as well as dominion and authority**. Some feel this transfer of authority has diminished God's authority or sovereignty. It has not. **GOD HAD, GOD HAS AND GOD ALWAYS WILL HAVE ALL AUTHORITY**.

He has total jurisdiction over everything. He is all-powerful and rules without limit or question. God is able, however, to delegate portions of His authority.

According to Wycliffe, the **ALTIMATE AUTHORITY** is God. The Bible plainly states that the true source and seat of authority is in God. Paul writes that there is no authority except from God. (Romans 13).

***Let every soul be subject to the higher authorities. For there is no authority but of God; the authorities that exist are ordained by God.***

***Romans 13:1(MKJV)***

Jesus argues that God alone need be feared, because He alone has authority to cast into hell. (Lukas 12).

***But I will warn you of whom you shall fear: Fear Him who, after He has killed, has authority to cast into hell. Yea, I say to you, fear Him.***

***Luke 12:5(MKJV)***

---

<sup>48</sup> Sherman, Dean (1990) *Spiritual Warfare For Every Christian, How To Live In Victory And Retake The Land*, Seattle WA: Ywam Publishing.

God's authority over mankind consists in His unchangeable right and power to deal with men as He pleases, just as the potter has 'eksousia' over the lump of clay. (Romans 9).

***Does not the potter have power over the clay, from the same lump to make one vessel to honor and another to dishonor?***

***Romans 9:21(MKJV)***

Man is not an attempt to unravel the mystery of future times and epochs which God the Father has fixed by His own authority. (Acts 1).

***And He said to them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father has put in His own authority.***

***Acts 1:7(MKJV)***

Jesus Christ's authority is both original and derived. As the Son of God, His authority is original because He is Himself God, the Co- creator and sharer in all the Father's works.<sup>49</sup>

Dean Sherman<sup>50</sup> is a practical way illustrates the following:

*"Presidents of large corporations hire people and give them jobs as directors, managers and supervisors. With each position comes a set of responsibilities and the authority to fulfill them. The authority is a portion of the president's. It is still under his control, but is delegated to various employees. Similarly, God has delegated authority to man, but still reigns over man."*

---

<sup>49</sup> Pfeiffer, Charles F, Vos Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers, p. 179

<sup>50</sup> Dean Sherman Is Dean Of College Of Christian Ministries At Youth With A Mission's University Of Nations. He Is Respected Internationally As A Bible Teacher, Having Taught On Spiritual Warfare Since The 1970's In Ministries Conferences, YWAM Schools And Churches In 49 States And More Than 40 Countries. He And His Wife Michelle And Their Two Children Live In Salem, Oregon.

All authority is restored to Christ and it can never be lost again.

***And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, All authority is given to Me in Heaven and in earth.***

***Matthew 28:18(MKJV)***

Jesus took all the authority back at the Cross, but did not give it directly to man as in the beginning with Adam. He keeps that delegation for Himself. The only way man could move into this delegation is through the blood of Jesus on the Cross and man's relationship with Him.<sup>51</sup> (Matthew 16).

***He said to them, But who do you say I am?***

***And Simon Peter answered and said, You are the Christ, the Son of the living God.***

***Jesus answered and said to him, You are blessed, Simon, son of Jonah, for flesh and blood did not reveal it to you, but My Father in Heaven.***

***And I also say to you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.***

***Matthew 16:15-18(MKJV)***

The authority or influence assigned to the Body of Christ belonged to all mankind from the beginning of creation. God told Adam and Eve, ***"fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air over every living creature that moves on the ground."*** Genesis 1:28. The earth was ours to rule over while He retained authority in the heavens.

Jesus brought a new dimension of authority and power when He came to earth. As seen in Wycliffe:<sup>52</sup> He had within Himself the power or authority to lay down His life and to take it up again, although the charge or directive to do so he had received from His Father. (John 10).

---

<sup>51</sup> Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries.org>)

<sup>52</sup> Pfeiffer, Charles F, Vos Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers, p. 179

***No one takes it from Me, but I lay it down from Myself. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it again. I have received this commandment from My Father.***

***John 10:18(MKJV)***

He did not have to pray to God for help or hesitate to assume complete authority in the presence of storms or disease or demon-possession. He took it upon Himself to forgive sins, the prerogative of God alone (Mark 2:5-10). He dared to beyond the precepts of the Law of Moses, which was accepted as of divine origin (Matthew 5:22, 28, 34); thus He taught as one having authority in Himself.

#### **4.11.1 Definition Of Authority**

The right to command and enforce obedience, the right to act officially, authorizes, endowed with authority, formally sanctioned, justify, commission, accepted as authoritative.

In the popular Systematic<sup>53</sup> guide to understanding Biblical Truth, Charles C Ryrie gives relevance to the debated issue concerning authority as seen in Biblical Theology.<sup>54</sup>

Authority constitutes the foundational principle in the study of theology. Presumably all who operate within the broadest concept of "*Christian*" theology would acknowledge the authority of God as the supreme norm for truth. However, how the authority of God is conceived and expressed varies considerably within the "*Christian*" spectrum."<sup>55</sup>

---

<sup>53</sup> See Terms & Definitions.

<sup>54</sup> See Terms & Definitions.

<sup>55</sup> Ryrie, Charles C (1999) Basic Theology, a Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago; Moody Press, p. 20.

Authority is the right to rule/reign and one need to have a revelation of that right to reign. One has to know the Word of God, to understand delegated authority and have faith in what Jesus did. Only then will you have rights in the spirit realm.

**Power follows authority.** If man implement control through power, without legitimate authority, one are usurping, are a rebel and probably a dictator. Power has never been the issue in the war between the kingdom of darkness and the Kingdom of God, the issue is one of **in whose authority** do you stand.

Jesus did not come to deal with the power of Satan at the cross. The Word says that Jesus came to deliver us from the authority of Satan.

Authority is the issue that must be decided:

*Since then the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He also Himself likewise partook of the same; that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death (that is, the Devil),*

*Hebrews 2:14(MKJV)*

**“Destroy – katargetho”** to spoil in the sense of making useless or voiding a contract; void or undo a legal hold that one has on someone else; make without affect.<sup>56</sup>

*[But] he who commits sin [who practices evil] is of the devil [takes his character from the evil one], for the devil has sinned (violated the divine law) from the beginning. The reason the Son of God was made manifest (visible) was to undo (destroy, loosen, and dissolve the works of the devil [has done],*

*1 John 3:8(Amplified Bible)*

---

<sup>56</sup> Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries>) p.8

**"Destroy - Leo"** legal term, means destroy in a literal sense; to dissolve a contract or something that legally binds; to declare that someone is no longer bound.<sup>57</sup>

Mankind should not attempt to contest Satan's power, for man stand on **delegated Authority**. The word *AUTHORITY* comes from the word *AUTHOR*. The *AUTHOR* is the one who give man *AUTHORITY*. Unless man understands what the *AUTHOR* did from the beginning, He cannot move in *AUTHORITY*,<sup>58</sup>

God's throne is established upon authority as all things have been created by the authority of God and all laws are held together through authority.

#### 4.11.2 Etymology Of The Term "Authority"

The Greek "*exousia*" (Exouaia)<sup>59</sup> is the chief word translated as "*authority*" in the New Testament. Originally it signified the power and freedom of choice.

***Nevertheless he that standeth steadfast in his heart, having no necessity, but hath power over his own will and hath so decreed in his heart that he will keep his virgin, doeth well.***  
***1 Corinthians 7:37(KJV)***

Ancient wills expressed the "*right*" or the testator to dispose of his property as he wished. In the New Testament "*exousia*" (Exouaia ) is used in the sense of one's rights. Paul spoke of his rights as an apostle (1 Corinthians 9:1-14). Those who wash their robes have the right to the tree of life (Revelation 22). Even as Christ gives the right to become children of God to those who receive Him (John 1).

---

<sup>57</sup> Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries>) p.8

<sup>58</sup> Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries>) p.10

<sup>59</sup> Marshall, Alfred foreword by Phillips, Cannon JB (1979) The R.S.V Interlinear Greek-English New Testament, The Nestle Greek Text with a Literal English Translation, London; Samuel Bagster, p. 278.



***Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.***

***Revelation 22:14(KJV)***

***But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:***

***John 1:12(KJV)***

The "exousia" (Exouaia) came to mean the rightful power to act or possess or control, as in the case of the sale proceeds of the property of Anannias and Sapphira (Acts 5:4).

***While it remained, was it not your own? And after it was sold, was it not in your own authority? Why have you conceived this thing in your heart? You have not lied to men, but to God.***

***Acts 5:4(MKJV)***

Christians must know and be aware that they have purpose and destiny, but that it will not be fulfilled unless they keep their minds renewed daily in Christ, in the newness of life and authority.

Using our God-given authority in the body of Christ is of utmost importance, since it is possible to become discouraged by the size and the sophistication of Satan's forces. However, God has established an even stronger army namely every Christian.

Christian's have authority over the power of darkness although some are not convinced we have. To rectify the mistake of confusing authority with emotions we must look at authority as a legal arrangement and not as a personality type.

Our authority is not a product of our maturity or the type of our calling. The enemy will do everything he can to keep us from being convinced of our authority. Christians are no threat to Satan, if they are constantly wavering and uncertain.

According to Dean Sherman, Spiritual Warfare and the authority it entails is the normal calling and daily challenge of the whole church, not the specialized business of spiritual elite.<sup>60</sup>

The basis for our spiritual authority is a legal one. It is a legal reality that does not waver because of our unbelief and is real as any transaction. It's a **legal arrangement** much like a marriage, for example if you ask someone if they are married you will never hear that person being uncertain about whether he or she are married or not. It is not just a concept: **it's an actual thing.**

#### **4.11.3 God's Authority Challenged**

***In the beginning, God...***<sup>61</sup> God was already there when history began - supreme in power, total in authority over all that existed. With Him were angels and perhaps other heavenly beings that He has created. These lived under His authority and did His bidding.

At least certain of these angels seem to have had authority delegated to them. The archangel Michael is said to have been assigned at a later date to protect Israel (Daniel 12:1). And Gabriel, who described himself as one who **"stand in the presence of God"** (Luke 1:19), seems to have been given authority to interpret God's revelations to humans (See Daniel 8:15-27; 9:20-27).

Then there was an angel named Lucifer: He was one of the archangels, perhaps the highest of them. We are not told what his assignment was, only that he rebelled. As Isaiah puts it,

---

<sup>60</sup> Sherman, Dean (1990) *Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land*, Seattle WA; Ywam Publishing p. 118

<sup>61</sup> Genesis 1:1

***You were determined to climb up to heaven and to place your throne above the highest stars.***

***You thought you would sit like a king You said you would climb to the tops of the clouds and be like the Almighty.***

***Isaiah 14:13-14***

One do not know why this being now known as Satan sacrificed his position as second in command to fight his Master. Perhaps what tipped him in that direction was the rumor that God planned to create a new being, a human, who would carry God's own image and displace Lucifer from second place in the universe. The theory is that this plan of God angered him beyond his willingness to remain obedient, so he rebelled and set up his own kingdom.

Whatever the reason, when Lucifer rebelled he became an enemy of God. But he left the presence of God with considerable authority and power. One do not know just how much of his authority and power as an archangel Lucifer was able to keep. Perhaps God allowed him to retain as much as he had had when he was serving Him. Whatever the amount, Lucifer seems to have a good bit of ability to disrupt the plans of God and His creatures. This situation has resulted in one of the great ironies of history: *a being that uses the very power God allows him to oppose the God who gave it to him.*

But this irony is paralleled by another; *the fact that God has done the same thing with humans.* God has set certain limitations on Himself by giving to humans (and apparently to angels) a certain amount of autonomy that we can use, if we choose, even to oppose the One who gives it to us.<sup>62</sup>

---

<sup>62</sup> Kraft, Charles H, *I Give You Authority* (1997) Grand Rapids, MI, USA: Chosen Books Publishers, pp. 17-21.

However, Adam and Eve had something of tremendous value to Satan. Satan wanted the authority God had given to man<sup>63</sup> Satan knew that man could use or misuse the authority given to him.

When man disobeyed God, Satan was able to usurp man's authority. Just as God transferred some of His authority to man, so man passed it on to Satan.

Yet Satan does not have complete authority. He cannot simply rule the world. He operates the same way today as did in Eden, usurping what God has given man. Man gave his authority to Satan, but Satan can only use it through man.

***He can only influence the world to the degree that man chooses to sin and live in disobedience to God.*** This is what we might call the balance of power.<sup>64</sup>

#### **4.11.4 Basis For The Believer's Authority**

As Frank Hammond in his book on the believer's commission, authority and anointing reflects.<sup>65</sup> The disciples were reminded of the authority given to them. ***"They shall tread upon serpents and scorpions."***<sup>66</sup> That is, they received dominion over both the greater and lesser ranks of evil spirits.

Serpents are more venomous than scorpions and represent more powerful demons. Too, serpents and scorpions may also refer to different types of demons. Throughout

---

<sup>63</sup> Sherman, Dean (1990) *Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land*, Seattle WA; Ywam Publishing p. 119.

<sup>64</sup> Brand Connie MJ, (2005) *An Exposition Of Biblical Warfare Central To Christian Involvement In A Theodicy Considered From Philosophic-Theological Perspective*. Print And Bookbinding Solutions Pretoria. RSA, pp.468-476.

<sup>65</sup> Hammond, Frank D (1991) *Demons And Deliverance In The Ministry Of Jesus*. Impact Christian Books, p. 123.

<sup>66</sup> The Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries.org>) p.38.

scripture the serpent is associated with deception and the scorpion is a type of fear and torment.

In specific reference to the definition of authority as *"formally sanctioned"* it does seem to fit the argument of an awesome responsibility of Church authority to loose Satan to deal with those who refuse to submit to Church discipline. As part of the delegated authority given to the Church one see this as obligation to the Church. ***"I will build my church..."*** It is the first time it appears in Scripture. Buys states that *"this is a governmental term; a word used by the Greeks to describe a parliament, an assembly set apart to govern the affairs of a state or nation, literally a parliament of a congress."*<sup>67</sup>

What Jesus actually said was: ***"/ will build My parliament/government/legislator in the earth."***

The word *"purpose"* in Greek means parliament/government.<sup>68</sup> David's two most significant contributions to the life of Israel were:

- The unification of the twelve tribes into a monarchy whose capital was in Jerusalem.
- The plans for the centralization of worship in Jerusalem in a temple. (1 Chronicles 6:31; 16:7, 41-42; 25:1).<sup>69</sup>

David served the *government of God*. ***"For David, after he had served God's will and purpose and counsel in his own generation, fell asleep [in death] and was***

---

<sup>67</sup> The Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries.org>) p.38.

<sup>68</sup> The Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries.org>) p. 38.

<sup>69</sup> Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (2003); Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers. 429.

***buried among his forefathers, and he did see corruption and undergo putrefaction and dissolution [of the grave]."*** (Acts 13:36).

Believers must understand that they are *God's government* in the earth. Jesus gave to the believers the keys to the Kingdom to bind and lose. Binding and losing is legal terms.

**"Bind"** - *"deo"* (1210) means legally binding as in a contract, a court decision.

**"Loosing"** - *"Luo"* (3089) legally dissolving a contract, to be released from a contract.

The Church will have God's authority to make decrees in the earth and reverse that what had been happening. God and the keys to the kingdom will release the authority of His Kingdom through them.<sup>70</sup>

***For kings and all who are in positions of authority or high responsibility, that [outwardly] we may pass a quiet and undisturbed life [and inwardly] a peaceable one in all godliness and reverence and seriousness in every way.***

***1 Timothy 2:2***

Believers are also a spiritual army with a spiritual government that has the authority to make decrees in the Spirit and release a spiritual force of LIFE in the earth.

***[Come] and' like living stones, be yourselves built [into] a spiritual house, for a holy (dedicated, consecrated) priesthood, to offer up [those] spiritual sacrifices [that are] acceptable and pleasing to God through Jesus Christ.'***

***But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a dedicated nation, [God's] own purchased, special people, that you may set forth the wonderful deeds and display the virtues and perfections of him who called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.***

***1 Peter 2:5; 9(Amplified Bible)***

---

<sup>70</sup> The Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries.org>) p. 36.

Believers are a Holy and Royal Priesthood of the Melchizedek Order. He was an Old Testament picture of Jesus and both King and Priest. (Genesis 14:18, 22; Psalm 110:1,4).

According to Ryrie in reflection to Congregational government he describes the following on **Authority**. *"Basically the congregational form of government means that ultimate for governing the church rests in the **members themselves**."*

In an appraisal of Congregationalism he states that ultimate authority rests in the local church under Christ's headship does seem to be clearly taught in the New Testaments.

In an appraisal of Congregationalism he states that ultimate authority rests in the local church under Christ's headship does seem to be clearly taught in the New Testament. This does not preclude fellowship with other congregations, but it does not allow for organizational structure above the local church.

Paul let the Church to use her authority on two occasions where the troublemakers could not be permitted to remain within the fellowship to corrupt the body or to disrupt the unity.

They were turned over to Satan.<sup>71</sup> Something changed between the Old and New Testaments. We now have Jesus **Name** and His **Blood** with which to fight the spiritual battles against Satan both personally and for captives being rescued out of his evil kingdom. Jesus said to His followers:

---

<sup>71</sup> Hammond, Frank D (1991) *Demons and Deliverance in the ministry of Jesus*. Impact Christian Books, p. 118.

***Until now you have asked for nothing in My name; ask and you will receive, that your joy may be made full.***

***John 16:24***

As a warning uttered by Eric Gondwe one have to consider the following warnings concerning the extreme right and the extreme left views on the subject of authority. Knowing our sphere or territory of influence is important to avoid going into unauthorized territory and matters. Much error has arisen here in the Body of Christ. On the extreme right some have assumed we could exercise authority over everything on earth and in heaven except God.

One example is that the church as an institution assumed it had the authority to forgive (loose) or withhold (bind) the sins of its members.<sup>72</sup>

Another concerns "*spiritual warfare*" where believers have assumed they have authority to directly confront evil spirits that live outside people and in the heavenly realms. Both use scripture to justify their understanding.

Gondwe also claimed that through sin that came by Satan's deception on Adam and Eve we lost this authority on earth. What Jesus did on the Cross was to restore authority to us. He was restoring the authority mankind lost by giving it to His church. Unbelievers however are still under the influence and authority of Satan. As a matter of fact Satan stole our birthright namely of "*ruling the earth*". The Body of Christ is immune to Satan's authority since he can try to influence us, but definitely not rule over us. We have the final say in determining the course of our lives and the decisions that we make through the residency of the Holy Spirit of God in us.

Some believe that on the extreme left some have assumed we are mere passengers in God's master plan that only He dictates while we follow. He is the Potter while

---

<sup>72</sup> Gondwe, Eric. Spiritual Warfare book 1: A Major Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance Alert. (<http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html/christian-spiritual-warfare-1.html>)

---



we're the clay so we have no say in how our lives unfold. Whatever experience or matter in our lives, good or bad, big or small, he predestined it to come our way.

Another assumption holds all man can do, like Job, is to trust Him that He knows what he is doing even though we may not understand. By faith we keep going. This assumption also uses scripture. Like the other extreme above, it is harmful to believers in the Body of Christ.<sup>73</sup>

#### **4.11.5 Authority In The Blood Of Jesus**

Jesus raised the question as to His identity. Do men know who He is? Most saw Him as one of the prophets returned from the dead. They saw Him as someone special but not as God's Son. Who do the chosen twelve see Him to be? Peter, as the spokesman, responds, **"Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God."** (Matthew 16:16) Jesus congratulates Peter on His spiritual insight. Peter has truly received a revelation from the Heavenly Father.

Jesus asked this question for a reason. What He was about to teach them required that they first know unequivocally who He is. **HIS NAME IS SYNONYMOUS WITH HIS AUTHORITY.** They must know this truth in order to understand His church and its mission of spiritual warfare. His Church is built upon the Rock (foundation) of His Name (authority).

***"And I say also unto thee, that thou art Peter and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it."***

***Matthew 16:18(KJV)***

---

<sup>73</sup> Brand, Connie MJ (2005) Spiritual Warfare 1, Biblical outline Pertaining to Spiritual Authority, Pretoria, RSA, Self Published., pp 15-19.

It fits the argument to say that the gates of Hades shall not prevail against the Church (Body of Christ) that the Church will be a militant Church an army. The gates of Hades shall not prevail against the Church. That is, His church will be a militant church: an army.

It is apparent that the authority of the believer in this case strongly reflects on the responsibility as a believer towards the body of Christ as a participant in the Spiritual war against the schemes of darkness.

## **4.12 Communion**

### **4.12.1 Inheritance Through Communion**

**Jesus** left us a great legacy: the mystery of Communion – unlike our practice today the breaking of bread was much more than merely a ritual for the early Christians. Everything one need is contained in the act of Communion. If one read about the church in Acts one can see that they were filled with the Holy Spirit they walked in profound love for one another, became of one heart and one soul, they held everything in common, they had so much power the presence of God manifested among them – they saw angels, were supernaturally transported from one place to another and witnessed extraordinary miracles.

This brings us to one big unanswered question today: if we are supposed to have everything, why don't we have it? The answer lies in the Holy Communion!

The reason why the church in Acts could reach this level of intimacy with God is because they understood the Holy Communion in a living, powerful way. For them it was not a ritual but an intimate union of the Spirit of Christ with the spirit of man.

***And they continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, in the breaking of bread, and in prayers.***

***Then fear came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were done through the apostles***

***Acts 2:42-43(KJV)***

The apostles obviously taught them to persevere in these truths and due to this the fear of God and His holiness prevailed in the church – producing so many signs and wonders<sup>74</sup>

#### **4.12.2 Jesus Told Man To Eat My Flesh And Drink My Blood**

***I am the living bread which came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever; and the bread that I shall give is My flesh, which I shall give for the life of the world.***

***The Jews therefore quarreled among themselves, saying, "How can this Man give us His flesh to eat?"***

***"Then Jesus said to them, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink His blood, you have no life in you.***

***Whoever eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day.***

***For My flesh is food indeed, and My blood is drink indeed. He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood abides in Me, and I in him.***

***John 6:51-56(KJV)***

When Jesus was conceived, the Father's nature was fused with that of the woman. Blood can only be transmitted through the seed of the man to the egg of the woman – in this case the Father puts His life in the form of blood into the womb of Mary. It is through this blood by the Father that the blood of Jesus was formed.

---

<sup>74</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries.

Eternity penetrated time and inhabited a body for the first time at Jesus' conception – which is ETERNAL LIFE. The eternal life that is God Himself first became blood and then flesh.

Jesus tried to explain that our faith in Him brings His Spirit and presence to us – but we should use communion so we could become one with His Spirit.

#### **4.12.3      What Is Communion Then?**

God created food for the body to stay strong and healthy; He therefore also created food for the spirit for that very same reason.

For the Father to give life – He must present Jesus as form of food – which is bread. All life created by God must not only be born but must be fed, or it will become weak and die.

Throughout Scripture Jesus is referred to as the bread of life, it also teaches that if man eats the bread of life eternal life would be received and that when man comes to Jesus he will hunger or thirst no more (John 6:35).

Jesus compares communion to eating and drinking, a **daily** substance, food and water for the body which is essential to stay strong and active. He does not refer to communion as a ritual or a memorial.

Jesus wants to make Himself present in our spirit every day! He is establishing a principle that will become a way of life – something that must be done daily! Like eating and drinking.

***And continuing with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, they shared food with gladness and simplicity of heart,***  
***Acts 2:46(MKJV)***

In order for man's spirit to stay strong, to withstand the darts from the unseen satanic kingdom the spirit needs to take in the necessary substance - food for the spirit. For what is true in the earthly realm is also true in the spiritual realm, when one participates in communion the spirit of man is fed.

Jesus instilled the importance of daily communion to His Apostles – it not only kept the presence of God continually in their spirits but it would be the basic principle to do the works of God just as Jesus did.

***As the living Father sent Me, and I live because of the Father, so he who feeds on Me will live because of Me.***

***John 6:57(NKJ)***

When a person is filled with the blood of Christ, it purifies and cleanses from within each part of man which is corrupted with sin, slowly the flesh will die and the spirit will be filled with Jesus.

Jesus wants His supernatural life to operate in each and every person who chooses Him, for it is His inheritance for man. For this man's spirit needs to abide/dwell in Jesus, meaning a permanent dwelling place where we live everyday - by eating and drinking everything He is.

***He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.***  
***John 6:56(MKJV)***

By abiding in Christ, prayers will be powerful and the miraculous power of God will flow through each believer in Christ as man will remain in His presence. See (John 15:5-7).

***I am the Vine, you are the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, the same brings forth much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing.***

***If anyone does not abide in Me, he is cast out as a branch and is withered. And they gather and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.***

***If you abide in Me, and My words abide in you, you shall ask what you will, and it shall be done to you.***

***John 15:5-7(MKJV)***

#### **4.12.4 Communion As A Spiritual Act**

Communion is much more a spiritual than a physical act. When the elements of communion are sanctified, Christ is powerfully present among the participants. The elements of the bread and fruit of the vine will ALWAYS remain bread and fruit of the vine BUT in the invisible realm the body and blood of Christ is really there.

Man's spirit will literally drink the blood of Christ which is the light and the life as will be explained a bit later and the man will become one with His flesh and His body. Thus the flesh (sinful nature of man) will become less and Jesus will become more. Little by little man will be consumed within God, becoming one spirit with Him knowing His will and following His commandments.

***But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.***

***1 Corinthians 6:17(KJV)***

For this reason the works of God was prominent in the early Church, it represented the very life of Christ. His life was so visible within them that the works of God was seen everywhere.

Christ was miraculously working through them and the fear of God kept them in holiness and in profound love for one another, this brought about the first great harvest of souls, which is so necessary today for people to literally be able to see

Christ in Christians, to feel love and compassion, to see light in a world of darkness, hatred, backstabbing and captivity.

To move into a stronger spiritual relationship with Christ after He has cleansed a person with His blood and His life, man has to fill himself with Christ to affect the masses who do not believe in His abundant love, grace and mercy.

***And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.***

***And fear came upon every soul: and many wonders and signs were done by the apostles.***

***And all that believed were together, and had all things common;***

***And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men, as every man had need.***

***And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart,***

***Praising God, and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.***

***Acts 2:42-47***

Throughout the Bible one can find various examples in which God provided spiritual food and drink to His children as well as to Jesus which filled them with the supernatural power of God, to perform miracles and do the works of Christ.

One of these men is the prophet Elijah who was strengthened by food from heaven as he escapes from Queen Jezebel in order to save his life. See (1Kings 19).

***Then as he lay and slept under a broom tree, suddenly an angel touched him, and said to him, "Arise and eat."***

***Then he looked, and there by his head was a cake baked on coals, and a jar of water. So he ate and drank, and lay down again.***

***And the angel of the Lord came back the second time, and touched him, and said, "Arise and eat, because the journey is too great for you."***

***So he arose, and ate and drank; and he went in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights as far as Horeb, the mountain of God.***

***1 Kings 19:5-8 NKJ***

The angel of the Lord was Jesus prior to Him coming in the flesh. The cake which Jesus gave him is natural bread, like the Communion bread, but because Jesus gave this to him it affecting his being to such a degree that it literally drives him in a supernatural journey to the mountain of God.

His spirit was filled with the supernatural power of God and he walked for 40 days without rest – the meal leads him to a unique encounter with the Father.

By eating His flesh we enter into a dimension with God that transforms our very being and understanding.

Another example is the pilgrimage through the desert to the Promised Land – the Israelites were supernaturally sustained. The Father provided bread from heaven and water from a Rock – this is a symbol of the spiritual food that Jesus would give us in His flesh and blood. See (1 Corinthians 10).

***Moreover, brethren, I do not want you to be unaware that all our fathers were under the cloud, all passed through the sea,***

***all were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea, all ate the same spiritual food,***

***and all drank the same spiritual drink.***

***For they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them, and that Rock was Christ***

***1 Corinthians 10:1-4 (NKJ)***

**To eat the Word of God, the Bread of life purifies man! To eat and drink of the cup of devils corrupts man's very being, his life, body, soul and spirit.**



Therefore the Word of God also mentions abominable drinks pertaining to the kingdom of darkness which tries to emulate the Kingdom of God and its principles which Satan is very aware of, one of these drinks is the chalice of fornication of the great harlot of Revelation – (Revelations 17:4, 18:3).

God also states in (1 Corinthians 10:19-21) that man cannot drink from the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons, in Pauls time the Gentiles participated in a ritual which they drank from a cup and ate bread, sacrificing it to wooden idols.

Drinking and eating are symbols or something real in the spirit and these acts link the spiritual world with the natural world. Through these acts the Spirit of God or demons exercise profound influence in people's lives.

#### **4.12.5 Blood In The Spiritual World**

Blood is something that belongs to God and therefore cannot be taken lightly – there is something that God designed within blood that has His seal and therefore must be respected. Blood is the first element of atonement, without it we cannot receive from God – we cannot receive His blessings, communion, revelation or His power.

The first Passover - in Egypt blood was applied on the doorposts – those under the protection of the blood wasn't touched by death - the same principle still applies today – the blood must be applied to the lintels of the door of our hearts and this is done through drinking His blood.

Ana Mendez Ferrell compares the walk in the desert between leaving Egypt and entering the Promised Land to the tabernacle. It is in this walk that the tabernacle of His presence is going to be built within us; God must build His dwelling place among men and establish His law in the hearts of His children.

The blood continues flowing on its way to the most inward parts of our being. The blood will not just be a sign of salvation on the lintels of our hearts but it must be poured upon the altar, sanctifying all of our soul, mind and will. From there it must be taken to the Holy of Holies – which is our spirit. The blood must run through and sanctify our inner being, so we can become the dwelling place of the Most High.

It's very clear from the old covenant that this holy place could only be entered through the blood – the strongest and purest communion with the presence of God can only be accomplished through the union of His blood with our spirit.

Many religions believe that the symbols of communion, the fruits of the vine and the bread, physically becomes the blood and body of Christ<sup>75</sup>. One must keep in mind that taking the physical symbols of communion is only a symbol of what happens in the spiritual realm, the physical symbols does not become the blood and body of Christ. In the spirit Jesus ministers His blood and body to the spirit of man which is **the light, health, life, power and purification**.

The blood of Jesus releases power, judging and destroying everything that opposes the righteousness of the Most High. It is a burning fire that Satan cannot endure. The blood of Jesus contains all the authority of God, it speaks of His victory it reminds Satan of how Jesus' sacrifice unleashed the power of God upon hell taking from him the keys of authority over the earth and mankind.

Light is in the blood of Jesus – it is this light in the spiritual realm that strips Satan of his strength. Satan needs darkness to operate in and survive – exposing Satan to the light of God he falls defeated.

---

<sup>75</sup> Anatolion, K and Brown, Stephen F (2009) *World Religions. Catholicism & Orthodox Christianity*. New York: Chelsea House, p.63.

---

Light also opens up our understanding – shines on our inner being and leads us to glorious revelations of the hidden mysteries of God. **Life, Light and the Love of God are intimately tied to His blood.**

The blood of Christ contains the love of God, where there is love there is peace, joy and complete satisfaction. There is no desire, achievement or goal that contains all that love provides to the spirit and soul of man.

Love also brings forth benefits in the body of man, filling it with health and vitality which only **love** brings to life.

According to Scripture the blood of Jesus speaks, it cries out to God for having been shed (Hebrews 12:24). But it is the love contained in His blood which gathers and brings man to Jesus. Jesus' love groans for man for He cannot endure being separated from the object of His love, His creation and therefore He placed His very life on the line.<sup>76</sup> Love is not a feeling, man cannot create it because of its divine origin, Love is Jesus incarnate, He is the teacher and provider of perfect love desiring to life through His created beings, man and to fill the earth with this amazing LOVE.

We are converted to the wonderful Love that is within Christ when we drink His blood. The blood of Jesus fuses with our own, as we allow Him to live and to express His love to a lost world.

Could this be way we cannot get ourselves to Love like Christ loves? Because we do not take communion on a daily basis – not filling ourselves with the Love of Jesus?

---

<sup>76</sup> Brand, Prof Dr CMJ (18 February 2012) Mini Conference. South Africa: Self Published, pp. 9-21, 32.

Drinking His blood makes us a pleasing sacrifice upon the altar – it gives us the strength and conviction of loving as He loved, giving as He gave, sacrificing as He sacrificed.

#### **4.13 The Body Of Christ**

Jesus' mission is to establish His Fathers Kingdom in every nation, for this He needs His body, which is the Church – composed of each and every one of His children. The Spirit of God unites with man through Communion.

***For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.***

***1 Corinthians 12:13(KJV)***

Jesus' will is that His body will grow until it reaches all the fullness that is in Him. This will occur when all its members are operating in perfect coordination. Jesus is watching the finished work from Heaven where He is head, His children is His body, moving in harmony with Him.

Upon losing the essence of Communion, man has lost the supremacy of the body. The body became divided and remained dismembered on earth. Thousands of sermons are held to try and unite the body, which only makes man feel guilty, but lack the unifying power that comes from eating His flesh.

Paul prayed for believers' eyes to be opened to see and understand who they are and what it means to be His body. The reality of being His body does not automatically guarantee a pass to heaven. **Being His body is a powerful truth.** If means literally being Jesus on earth, with all His authority and virtue.

***Do not cease to give thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers:***

***that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give to you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of Him,***

***the eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that you may know what is the hope of His calling, what are the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints***

***Ephesians 1:16-18(NKJ)***

If a believer's eyes are not enlightened to life in the power of this truth, he will keep acting like a churchgoing Christian who has lots of problems, believing that God sometimes hears him and at sometimes does not.

The key for the enlightenment of believer's eyes is the **breaking of the bread of Communion** it reveals Christ in all His glory. On the road to Emmaus the disciples walked with Jesus and heard Him speak.

Although His anointing revived their spirits, they did not recognise Him (Luke 24:15-16), Isn't this also true of many Christians today in their walk with Christ?

They are next to Jesus, they can hear Him and feel His Spirit, but they do not really understand that they are truly with Him and in Him as His very body.

Upon breaking the bread, Jesus reveals Himself to and within believers. See (Luke 24).

***Now it came to pass, as He sat at the table with them, that He took bread, blessed and broke it, and gave it to them.***

***Then their eyes were opened and they knew Him; and He vanished from their sight***

***Luke 24:30-31 NKJ***

Eating His flesh will open the eyes of man's understanding to know all the riches that He has granted, to see Him face to face. Seeing the Lord is not the privilege of a few, it is in the believer's heritage and it transforms man into His image! See (John 14).

***A little while longer and the world will see Me no more, but you will see Me.  
Because I live, you will live also.***

***At that day you will know that I am in My Father, and you in Me, and I in you.  
John 14:19-20(NKJ)***

Jesus came to establish His body upon the earth – because this is how He implants His designs in us. It is through His body – which is us – that He governs and bring His Kingdom to earth.

To be ignorant and misinformed about the body leads to illness, weakness or even death in the physical body. Today the body of Christ are mutilated and divided thousands of Christians are sick and many die because they attack or destroy the body of the Lord which is the Church.

***For I received from the Lord that which I also delivered to you: that the Lord Jesus on the same night in which He was betrayed took bread;***

***and when He had given thanks, He broke it and said, “Take, eat; this is My body which is broken for you; do this in remembrance of Me.”***

***In the same manner He also took the cup after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in My blood. This do, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me.”***

***For “as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim” the Lord’s death till He comes.***

***1 Corinthians 11:23-26 NKJ***

By breaking the bread in Communion, we must remember what our sins had done to the body of the Lord. Our sins caused His wounds – the wounds of our Lord had our names on it – to know this will cause our souls to feel pain which will produce pure and true repentance.

The Hebrew word for “in memory of me” – means to vividly reliving an event as if it was happening in that moment. How can we see our sins cruelly wound our beloved

Lord and commit the same sins again? To proclaim the Lord's death means talking about His death, to understand it in relation to one's own deeds, that each and every person's sins and iniquities led Jesus to die on the cross.

Believers literally need to eat this knowledge until every deed and thought is saturated with His sacrifice, through this Christ's life will manifest through believers. It is Jesus' death that conquered death and Satan's empire. To turn Communion into a lifeless ritual would cause judgement, sickness and death upon the church.

***The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?***

***For we, though many, are one bread and one body; for we all partake of that one bread.***

***1 Corinthians 10:16-17(NKJ)***

The breaking of the bread thus unifies the Body of Christ, the love of God that bonds together all those who are His children, was put into action through the act of breaking the bread.

As the bread is broken into pieces it generates the opposite force – members that are separated will be attracted to form the spiritual body. The body (bread) that is divided in the physical realm is united in the spiritual realm

To operate in the opposite spirit of the one we want to conquer is a spiritual principle.

Through Jesus' death He produced life in man, His wounded body produced health, His humility conquered pride, His true love disarmed hatred, under this principle the breaking of the bread, symbolic of His pierced body – frees a power that supernaturally binds together those who are legitimately His church.

Upon eating the bread, believers are submerged in the spiritual body of Christ throughout the world. When we, the Church operate in this spiritual body ministries will work, churches will no longer suffer with financial problems - people will unite to bring forth the Kingdom of God. The body of Jesus is real food that sustains us and gives us strength

***Then Jesus said to them, Most assuredly, I say to you, Moses did not give you the bread from heaven, but My Father gives you the true bread from heaven.***

***For the bread of God is He who comes down from heaven and gives life to the world.***

***John 6:32-33 NKJ***

Not only does the unity of our spirit with Jesus produce health, but we receive strength and vitality as well. The Body of Christ has the power that puts His desires in our souls and makes us detest everything that does not line up with His will.

**Jesus' flesh was saturated with privation and obedience – when we eat His flesh this same feeling invades our heart and emotions.**

It is possible to live a life of Holiness - no one can offer us what our Creator gives us according to His perfect design. In Him we attain the highest purpose for our lives.

#### **4.14            How To Take Communion**

When the Apostle Paul in his letter to the Corinthians institutes the Lord's Supper, he told man to examine themselves before taking the elements. He tells man to get things right with God, to come to the light in order to be cleansed by His blood.

***Therefore whoever eats this bread or drinks this cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord.***



***But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of the bread and drink of the cup.***

***For he who eats and drinks in an unworthy manner eats and drinks judgment to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.***

***For this reason many are weak and sick among you, and many sleep.***

***For if we would judge ourselves, we would not be judged.***

***But when we are judged, we are chastened by the Lord, that we may not be condemned with the world.***

***1 Corinthians 11:27-32(NKJ)***

It is therefore essential to ask God to search one's heart before participation in Communion, when this is done daily sin won't be able to separate man from God as man comes into a habit of confessing his sin to God without a day going by, thereby strengthening the relationship one has with the Lord.

For the early Church Communion formed part of the food they ate every day, it wasn't a religious ceremony and they did not require a priest to distribute it (Acts 2:46), emphasis was placed on the need of giving this meal the spiritual sense it should have in order for it to produce life and not death.

Each person evaluated his own life and walk with the Lord with regards to their sins and the effect it had on the Lord's body. When the bread was received he would relive in his own flesh and heart the memory of the painful sacrifice that Jesus made for the world, so he could live a holy life for Him.

Communion should form a part of life – it is not a ritual – life happens and it is not planned. Communion can be taken in the morning after worship or at night. We should put enough time aside to be able to be in deep contact with our Lord and Saviour. To focus on the meaning of Communion, to repent and cleanse our sins before our Lord.

## 5 REVEALING THE REFORMATION OF BAPTISM

Emerson Ferrell stated,<sup>77</sup> the baptism men have traditionally understood requires the same reformation as the *born again* experience. God is concerned about form without substance, which is why He formed the earth from the living water or Christ and desires His Church to follow the same living water or Christ and desires His Church to follow the same spiritual DNA.

God uses order to establish principles, which produce heavenly results. The experience of *born again* followed with baptism is form with substance and produces spiritual authority. Christ's preeminence and mysteries are intended for His disciples to share. The consciousness of Christ was formed in the early Church largely because of baptism. The Church has lost its voice in the earth because of following the traditions of men instead of the principles of heaven.

During the first three centuries, Roman citizens who were baptized became outcasts by losing their property and citizenship. Nevertheless, they would line up along the riverbanks to pledge their lives to Christ in baptism, aware of the persecution that would ensue.

Persecution to the point of death is unfamiliar to most Christians in the West, but was undeniably the most important dynamic for spreading Christianity throughout the world. Furthermore, except for baptism the Bible does not speak about a public altar call to follow Jesus.

---

<sup>77</sup> Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) *Immersed In Him*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries., pp. 113-115.

Baptism altered the consciousness of the disciple to witness the spiritual realm known as the Kingdom of Heaven. The fear of death was eliminated and indeed another level of faith flooded their souls.

The devil knew the strategy, to destroy the spread of Christianity; this was to change the spiritual principles of God into formulas and rituals. The result is religion or form without substance and has grieved the Lord as much as Adam's betrayal. Moses asked God thousands of years before "to show him the ways of His Spirit." Moses wanted to "know" God in the way a husband and wife unite as one flesh. He knew intimacy would please God and establish order.

***Now therefore, I pray You, if I have found grace in Your sight, make me see now Your ways, that I may know You, that I may find grace in Your sight. And consider that this nation is Your people.***

***Exodus 33:13(MKJV)***

To know God one must do things His way and baptism is no exception. In order to be "in Christ" one must have intimate knowledge of Him. The knowledge of God is revealed to those who follow His precepts out of love, not as a religious prescription.

## **5.1 John The Baptist**

It was a mystery why John the Baptist, a priest from the lineage of Levi, would introduce baptism to the Jews. Furthermore, he made the path straight for Jesus, whom he would later baptize. John was the last of the old covenant prophets and the greatest according to Jesus. Moreover, John was the only prophet, aside from Jesus, whose birth was prophesied in the scriptures. (Malachi 3 and Matthew 11)

***Behold, I will send My messenger, and He will clear the way before Me. And the LORD, whom you seek, shall suddenly come to His temple, even the Angel of the Covenant, in whom you delight. Behold, He comes, says the LORD of hosts.***

***Malachi 3:1(MKJV)***

***But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yea, I say to you, and one more excellent than a prophet.***

***For this is the one of whom it is written, "Behold, I send My messenger before Your face, who shall prepare Your way before You."***

***Truly I say to you, Among those who have been born of women there has not risen a greater one than John the Baptist. But the least in the kingdom of Heaven is greater than he.***

***Matthew 11:9-11(MKJV)***

Man's revelation of Christ will be enhanced each time he see Him as the physical and spiritual waters of the Word.

***And you shall bring Aaron and his sons to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and wash them with water.***

***And you shall put the holy garments on Aaron, and anoint him and sanctify him, so that he may minister to Me in the priest's office.***

***Exodus 40:12-13(MKJV)***

***Take the Levites from among the sons of Israel, and purify them.***

***And in this way shall you do to them to purify them. Sprinkle water of sin-offering on them, and let them shave all their flesh and wash their clothes, and make themselves clean.***

***Numbers 8:6-7(MKJV)***

Baptism was God's demand for a higher level of consecration than the Old Testament laws concerning the washing of the priests. The Jews believed circumcision was their mark of blessing, but had forgotten their responsibility of sanctification.

The Law required male children to be circumcised on the eighth day. Infant baptism was subsequently ordained in Churches around the world as a result of this practice. There is no rationale for that practice and it is one of the strategies the devil has used to undermine and destroy the true power in baptism.

God hates religion and He instructed John to warn the Pharisees and Sadducees who came to be baptized to produce fruits verifying their hearts circumcision or run from God's judgment.<sup>78</sup>

***Circumcise yourselves to the LORD, and take away the foreskins of your heart, men of Judah and people of Jerusalem; lest My fury come forth like fire, and burn so that none can put it out; because of the evil of your doings.***  
***Jeremiah 4:4(MKJV)***

John was bridging the old and new covenants with the waters of Christ. He was proclaiming the message of the kingdom with a greater revelation of power and universal authority. John was not a high priest, but he was about to baptize our High Priest and in so doing, ministered to the Holy of Holies.

Therefore, John announced a better revelation and consecration than the previous generation because he was filled with the Holy Ghost, while in his mothers' womb.

***And it happened as Elizabeth heard the greeting of Mary, the babe leaped in her womb. And Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit,***  
***Luke 1:41(MKJV)***

## **5.2 Baptism Of Jesus**

***The baptism of Jesus*** marks the beginning of his public ministry. This event is recorded in the canonical gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke. John's gospel does not describe Jesus' baptism, but John the Baptist does testify of the other things in John 1:15-36. In the New Testament, John the Baptist preached the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins (Luke 3:3), and declared himself a forerunner of he that would baptize "with the Holy Ghost and with fire" (Luke 3:16). In so doing he was preparing the way for Jesus. Jesus came to the Jordan River where He was

---

<sup>78</sup> Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) Immersed In Him. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries., pp. 115-120.

baptized by John. The baptismal scene includes the heavens opening, a dove-like descent of the Holy Spirit, and a voice from heaven saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased"<sup>79</sup>.

***And he came into all the country around Jordan, proclaiming the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins,***

***Luke 3:3(MKJV)***

***John answered all, saying, I indeed baptize you with water, but He who is mightier than I comes, the thong of whose sandals I am not worthy to loose. He shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire,***

***Luke 3:16(MKJV)***



**Figure 11:** Francesco Albani's 17th century *Baptism of Christ* is a typical depiction with the sky opening and the Holy Spirit descending as a dove.

---

<sup>79</sup> Harrington, Daniel J (2008) "Jesus Goes Public". America: pp.38ff.

---

### 5.3 Jesus Baptized Into Christ

Emerson Ferrell stated,<sup>80</sup> the spiritual significance of that event is even more astounding than words and is mankind's inheritance once one are *born again*.

People must understand Jesus was not born "*the Christ*" or the source for our Salvation. He was born into a physical body with a soul contaminated from the first Adam. His spirit was and is God, but it (His spirit] had to dominate the body and soul, the same as all men.

***though being a Son, yet He learned obedience by the things which He suffered.***

***And being made perfect, He became the Author of eternal salvation to all those who obey Him,***

***Hebrews 5:8-9(MKJV)***

The power of salvation is different from the authority of being born into Christ. Jesus purchased salvation for all men and it is available to whoever will call upon Him. The thief dying next to Jesus on the cross received salvation because he believed Him to be the Son.

He was not *born again* because he was not immersed into Christ. The description Jesus explained to Nicodemus is, "*immersed into Him*" and is available to disciples today.

After He came up from the water in the Jordan, the Holy Spirit rested, overshadowed or hovered on Him and the Father spoke.

***And Jesus, when He had been baptized, went up immediately out of the water. And lo, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting upon Him.***

---

<sup>80</sup> Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) Immersed In Him. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries., pp. 122- 125

***And lo, a voice from Heaven, saying, This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.***

***Matthew 3:16-17(MKJV)***

**The model used at creation was forming the second Adam, but this time there would be no chance for failure.** Jesus understood the element of water was more than liquid; it was His soul's consciousness of Christ. Jesus was immersed into His Spirit. At that instant he became one with the Father and the Spirit in the element of Himself.

***He was in the beginning with God.***

***All things came into being through Him, and without Him not even one thing came into being that has come into being.***

***John 1:2-3(MKJV)***

It was at that instant heaven opened and the second Adam emerged with all the power of heaven. **His spirit was one with the Holy Spirit and He and the Father's word became one as it was before the foundation of the world.** More importantly for us, He became the eternal spring of living water.

**The heavenly blueprint to reproduce God Sons in the earth was established and sealed with the baptism of Jesus.** The living water is the spiritual womb into the kingdom of God. God's word is His incorruptible seed and the Holy Spirit is the person who impregnates our spirits. Baptism is designed to release heaven into our spirit, soul and body the same way it did Jesus.

The transition had taken place between the old and new covenants. Jesus was both sinless man and God. His kingdom transcended the visible and invisible dimensions simultaneously by the Holy Spirit. A temple not made with hands in order for each generation to grow in the revelation of Christ and His kingdom authority.



His baptism was the signed contract with heaven of His commitment to go to the cross to "fulfill all righteousness" and finish what had been decided before the foundation of the world.

***indeed having been foreknown before the foundation of the world, but revealed in the last times for you,***

***1 Peter 1:20(MKJV)***

Baptism must be conducted the way heaven ordained it, in order for the same power to be released. The model has been corrupted through out history. God is releasing a new reformation and sending prophets to make the crooked Straight.

## **5.4 Single Immersion**

Emerson Ferrell stated,<sup>81</sup> that John baptized in the name of Jehovah or God the Father. This was because he was preparing the way for the one who had not yet arrived.

John's baptism was a single immersion into the Fathers forgiveness of those who confessed their unrighteousness and willingness to be transformed. This baptism was for those whose minds had been converted from the dead works of religious sacrifices and the hypocrisy associated with circumcision. John was the forerunner of the kingdom and was reconciling a remnant whose hearts and minds were committed to the coming Christ.

John's time on earth was coming to a close because he had fulfilled his purpose and calling. John's pure heart and clear purpose are reflected in the scripture below. If people want to live a life filled with joy allow Him to increase, while you decrease.

---

<sup>81</sup> Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) Immersed In Him. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries., pp. 125-127.

John had proved himself a worthy son of God and was recognized by Jesus for his work.

***He must increase, but I must decrease.***

***John 3:30(MKJV)***

The transition between John and Jesus was physical, as well as spiritual, and demonstrates the ways of God. John was the prophetic head of God's remnant Church on the earth prior to Jesus' baptism. The transition required a change in headship, as well as covenants.

***And immediately going in with haste to the king, she asked, saying, I desire that you give me at once the head of John the Baptist on a platter.***

***Mark 6:25(MKJV)***

***And He is the Head of the body, the church, who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead, that He may be pre-eminent in all things.***

***Colossians 1:18(MKJV)***

The eternal Son was now the head over the Church forever and His kingdom would never end. The head of Christ would never be deceived or rebel against the Father.

The mind of Jesus Christ is the consciousness of God whose image and likeness would be on those who were *born again* and baptized into Christ.

## **5.5 Submerged Twice**

Emerson Ferrell stated,<sup>82</sup> that Baptism in the early church was different in form and as a result, produced a much different Christian than today. My understanding and revelation of Christ as both physical and spiritual water led me to research the history

---

<sup>82</sup> Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) Immersed In Him. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries., pp. 127-129.

of baptism. The results will shock you as it has me. Most importantly, these revelations will change your understanding and commitment to Christ profoundly.

The characteristic of the, Godhead is the distinction between the baptism of John and Jesus not just transition between the old and new covenant. John's baptism was into the Father, while Jesus baptized His disciples into the Father and His own name.

Jesus required repentance and faith in God the Father and Himself. He was the co-creator of all things and Messiah to the Jews. Those who accepted Jesus, as Christ, would be immersed twice. The baptisms were into the Father, as John preached and the Son of God.

Paul describes the difference between the two baptisms in (Acts 19):

***And he said to them, Then to what were you baptized? And they said, To John's baptism.***

***And Paul said, John truly baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying to the people that they should believe into Him coming after him, that is, into Jesus Christ.***

***And hearing, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.***

***Acts 19:3-5(MKJV)***

Dual baptisms were only practiced while Jesus was on the earth. After His resurrection He instructed the disciples to baptize into the complete Godhead. This was the only time He gave instructions on the power way to seal one's immersion into the Kingdom.

## 5.6 Immersed Into The Full Godhead

Emerson Ferrell stated,<sup>83</sup> that in order to reestablish the ways of God, it will be helpful to demonstrate the pattern and practice of the early Church. One's purpose is to bring back the principals of Christ, in order to change men into God's champions in the earth.

The following articles will confirm the practice of the early church was to immerse the candidates into the names of the Godhead, three separate times. This was the method until Pope Gregory in 633 A.D., changed the practice to single immersion.

Here is a quote from Saint Basil the Great (330-379) “- *one of the most important saints of the Orthodox church: This great sign of baptism is fulfilled in three immersions, with three invocations, so that the image of death might be completely formed, and the newly-baptized might have their souls enlightened with divine knowledge.*”<sup>84</sup>

Here is a quote from the Apostolically Constitutions written 200 A.D.: *"If any bishop or presbyter does not perform the three immersions of the one admission, but one immersion, which is given into the death of Christ, let him be deprived; for the Lord not say, "Baptize into my death," but, "Go ye and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them into the name of the Father and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." Do ye, there fore, O Bishops baptize thrice into one Father, and Son, and Holy Ghost, according to the will of Christ, and our constitution by the Spirit?*"<sup>85</sup>

---

<sup>83</sup> Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) Immersed In Him. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries., pp.129-136.

<sup>84</sup> St. Basil the Great, On The Holy Spirit, page 59

<sup>85</sup> Apostolical Constitutions, Ante-Nicene Christian Library, vol. 17, p. 263

---

*"Baptize into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit in living (running) water. But if they have not living water, baptize into other water; and if thou canst not in cold, in warm" (baptisate eis to onoma tou patos kai tou huiou kai tou hagiou pneumatos en hudati zonti). "But if thou have not either, pour out water thrice (tris) upon the head into the name of the Father and Son and Holy Spirit."*<sup>86</sup>

Here the triple action is maintained throughout, even in clinical baptism, while immersion is the rule.

"And indeed it is not only once but three times that we are immersed into the Three Persons, at each several mention of their names" (*nam nec semel, sed ter, ad singula nomina, in personas singulos, tinguimur*).<sup>87</sup>

Introduced single immersion "into the death of Christ." This innovation was condemned. Apostolically Constitutions, 50, says, *"If any presbyter or bishop does not perform the one initiation with three immersions, but with giving one immersion only into the death of the Lord, let him be deposed."*<sup>88</sup>

Single immersion was allowed by Gregory the Great (circa 691) to the church in Spain in opposition to the Arians who used a trine (not triune) immersion. This was exceptional.

The Greek Church has always baptized by triune immersion. The historical practice of the Christian church may well be summed up in the words of Dean Stanley: "There can be no question that the original form of baptism - the very meaning of the word - was complete immersion in the deep baptismal waters; and that for at least four centuries, any other form was either unknown, or regarded, unless in Uncase of

---

<sup>86</sup> The Didache (100-150 A.D.) Chapter VII

<sup>87</sup> Tertullian

<sup>88</sup> Eunomius (circa 360) Epis., i.43

dangerous illness, as an exceptional, almost monstrous case... A few drops of water are now the western substitute for the threefold plunge into the rushing river or the wide baptisteries of the East."<sup>89</sup>

For the first three centuries the most universal practice of baptism was "...that those who were baptized, were plunged, submerged, immersed into the water".<sup>90</sup>

Jesus is very precise when choosing His words. He introduces the third person of the Godhead as the complete and full measure of heavenly baptism. There can be no doubt of the significance and importance of these instructions from our Lord. Neither can there be any resistance to being immersed three separate times.

***And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, All authority is given to Me in Heaven and in earth.***

***Matthew 28:19: Therefore go and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,***

***Matthew 28:20: teaching them to observe all things, whatever I commanded you. And, behold, I am with you all the days until the end of the world.***

***Matthew 28:18-20(MKJV)***

Jesus is commanding an allegiance and undying faith in God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit illustrated by immersion into each of their characters and natures.

Kingdom baptism is both physical and spiritual immersion into the nature and character of the Father, Son and Holy Ghost. The revelation one has discovered about the "living water" changes the dynamics about water being only physical. The

---

<sup>89</sup> Greek Church History of Eastern Church, 28

<sup>90</sup> Christian Institutions, p. 21 James Quinter, Triune Immersion as the Apostolic Form of Christian Baptism; C. F. Yoder, God's Means of Grace, Brethren Pub. House, Elgin, Ill, U.S.A.; Smith, Diet, of Christian Antiquities; Hastings, ERE; Bible Diets.; Church Fathers; Church Histories, and Histories of Baptism. (All of these documents are copied from the public domain of crosswire).

journey into Christ is eternal. People who are willing to renounce everything and trust the following Words of Jesus are eligible to taste the goodness of God.

***John 14:6: Jesus said to him, I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life; no one comes to the Father but by Me.***

***John 14:6(MKJV)***

## **5.7 Baptism Through Water Cleansing**

The English word "*baptism*" is derived indirectly through Latin from the neuter Greek concept noun *baptisma* (Greek βάπτισμα, "*washing-ism*"), which is a neologism in the New Testament derived from the masculine Greek noun *baptismos* (βαπτισμός) which is a term for ritual washing in Greek language texts of Hellenistic Judaism during the Second Temple period, such as the Septuagint. Both of these nouns are nouns derived from *baptizein* (βαπτίζω, "I wash" transitive verb), which is used in Jewish texts for ritual washing, and in the New Testament both for ritual washing and also for the apparently new rite of *baptisma*. The Greek verb root *bpt* in turn is hypothetically traced to a reconstructed Indo-European root *\*gwabh-* or *\*gwebh-* in the suffixed zero-grade form *\*gwabh-yo-*[30] The Greek words are used in a great variety of meanings.

## **6 CONCLUSION**

God's feasts are consistent with the pattern of the menorah lights and the progression of the covenants. They are road maps showing, the way in the wilderness and marking important milestones. We can't learn to negotiate the whole map in a few hours; on the contrary, the feasts teach us that our covenant with God evolves over our entire lives and requires regular renewals of commitment.

The question to the church today is, since the beliefs, promises, and hopes of all believers are so completely expressed in these seven feasts, why are they ignored (and, indeed, sometimes even ridiculed) by so many Christians today?

Truly - if man invalidate the feasts one invalidate the sacrifice of Yeshua, for then His death is no longer a fulfillment of Truth - if you invalidate the feasts you invalidate the sacrifice of Yeshua, for then His death is no longer a fulfillment of prophecy. Consider the meaning of God's appointed feasts again, in sequence:

- ◆ Passover represents deliverance by the blood of Yeshua. God purchases His people through the blood covenant. This servant (blood) covenant, represented by Adam, is a picture of God beginning the process of delivering fallen man. The sacrifice of the blood covenant provides a covering and offers mankind the opportunity to enter into this relationship through obedience.
- ◆ Unleavened Bread is a call to mankind to participate in the cleansing of our lives. Sin and iniquity (leaven) contaminate and separate humankind from God. He desires that man make decisions in life to forsake those actions, just as Noah responded to the call to servant hood and participated in God's plan to cleanse the house of mankind from the leaven of iniquity.
- ◆ At First fruits one shares with God the produce of life through the wave offering. It is a picture of mankind (Abraham) offering back to God what He has been given, through friendship, as symbolized in the salt covenant (Genesis 18:1-8).
- ◆ God presented the feast of Shavuot as an opportunity to enter into a closer relationship by receiving the Torah and by being filled with the Holy Spirit. This results in a changed and circumcised heart - a heart for friendship. Jacob,



whose name was changed to Israel, wrestled with God in a face-to-face relationship to receive the blessing that was promised. Covenants of friendship with God involve a change of name, as a sign of how God sees man at that moment and how He intends man to be.

- ◆ Feast of Trumpets is a time of preparation, a call from God to repent and to war against our sin natures. The ruach (breath, wind, spirit) is symbolically represented by the breath blown through the shofar, an awakening alarm calling us to self - examination and preparation for His return. The sound of the shofar was first heard when Moses led the people out of the camp to meet with God at the foot of Mount Sinai.
- ◆ On Yom Kippur, or Day of Atonement, we respond to God's call with prayer, fasting, and self-examination (acts of repentance). God now gives us an inheritance of holiness. David mirrored the covenant of son ship as he received the throne for an eternal inheritance (Psalm 89:29-37). David had many failings but he always returned to God with acts of repentance, trying to right his wrongs.
- ◆ On Sukkot, God desires us to enter His dwelling. God Has placed our lives in abodes of flesh. This is a time for us to build and enter temporary shelters representing our earthen vessels. We also, prophetically, look forward to our union, in our perfected bodies, with Him. We should be reminded of God's ultimate goal to restore mankind to Him through the relationship of marriage. By offering the renewed covenant, or B'rit Hadeshah, to mankind see (Jeremiah 31:31)

***Behold, the days come, says the LORD, that I will cut a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah,***

***Jeremiah 31:31(MKJV)***

- ◆ Yeshua, Son of the living God, took on the image of man and tabernacle with us on earth. A permanent fulfillment of the promise of this feast is His final coming, when He restores all things and sets up His permanent rule on earth. He comes to our house, the earth, as a groom looking for a bride.<sup>91</sup>

When a believer has to struggle to separate himself from sin, it is due to a strong presence of iniquity in his life. Many times this iniquity is strengthened by unclean spirits that make the battle more difficult.

The solution is to take the step of repentance, desiring with one's whole heart that the power of God will free and transform one. The determination of the heart, together with the blood and body of Christ will give the believer total victory. The authority of the resurrection is established in every true believer so they can cast out every tormenting demon.

When a Christian struggles for holiness, the “*blood*” he drinks, day after day through Communion will regenerate him. Sin will not only be destroyed, but the Lord through His blood is going to feed man with His will.

Man's sinful desires change into good, holy desires. The irresistible urge to do evil, lie and pursue fleshly desires is exchanged for the urge to do good and to draw nearer to God.

Just as natural blood cleanses the body with its purifying power to eliminate toxic elements and waste, thus purifying, feeding and regenerating the whole body. The spiritual blood of Jesus pulls out every root of iniquity, destroys strongholds in the

---

<sup>91</sup> Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC. pp. 175-177.

inner man and provides man with the elements of life and power that will carry him from glory to glory.

Daily intake of communion helps us to be in right standing with God – on a daily basis, one will examine ourselves and man will be filled with Jesus' authority and through His power, love, light and purification one will be able to have an intimate relationship with God.

He will reveal His word to us as we start to have an intimate relationship with Him. And man will be able to understand the deeper things in His Word – one will live a life of the supernatural power of Jesus in our everyday lives, people will see Jesus in each Christian and man could lead more people out of the bondage of Satan into the glorious Light of God!

As seen from the early church, Communion can thus be taken daily as Jesus Himself will always be present. Let man thus share in this wonderful inheritance Jesus established for all who believes in Him, to walk in His brilliant light, abundant life and health through Jesus Christ Saviour and Redeemer of mankind!

### **3 R's**

- ▶ **REMEMBER - what Jesus did for us**
- ▶ **RECUR – we should have a continuous relationship with Jesus increasing and deepening our relationship with Him**
- ▶ **RENEW – renew and grow in our relationship with Jesus through taking Communion**

This Chapter concludes that Jesus' entrance into the heavenly sanctuary through His own blood-life sacrifice emphasizes His sacrifice's superiority. His entrance into the presence of God for us brought about tremendous results with regard to sacrificial rituals: Jesus' blood-life sacrifice secures eternal redemption, is the ransom price for redemption, makes eternal atonement for sins, and cleanses worshippers' conscience, remove sin and guilt.

Jesus' blood-life sacrifice was performed through the Eternal Spirit- it emphasizes the incomparable superiority of Jesus' sacrifice, because it was the sacrifice of Himself. All this seems to reveal something peculiar to the blood- life is in the blood, or blood is life.

Therefore, a mysterious power resides in the blood, and when blood is being shed, it communicates some power that affects the lives of worshippers. Jesus' blood-life sacrifice communicates power for soteriological benefits: it makes worshippers holy and places them in a state of purity and continuous relationship with God.

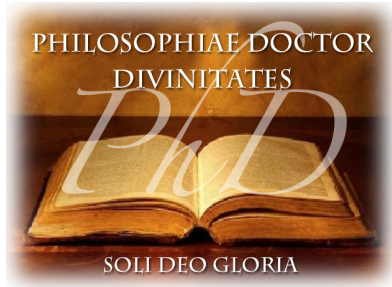
It grants them redemption, salvation and full forgiveness of their sins, including an unclouded access to God through Jesus Christ.

Jesus' blood-life sacrifice communicates power in the sense that one's consciousness and hearts is cleansed, sin and guilt are removed, internal feelings of remorse are taken care of, and worshippers are delivered from bondages of the fear of death, since Jesus' blood-life sacrifice and resurrection overcame death.

It thus communicated power for sociological benefits, because the power of Jesus' blood achieves complete and total liberation from dead works, in order to worship the living God. Christian believers are united as a worshipping community, a society of liberated, saved, redeemed people who socialize and gather together to worship and

serve the living God. They express their gratitude to Him as they confess His Name, and show compassion through sharing and mutual support.

-----oOo-----



## CHAPTER THREE

### DECEPTION AS SEEN IN MISTRANSLATION AND INTERPRETATION OUT OF GOD'S WORD

*It is the glory of God to conceal a matter, but the glory of kings is to search out a matter.*

*Proverbs 25:2*

*Hypocrites! You know to discern the face of the heaven and the earth, but how is it that you do not discern this time?*

*Luke 12:56(MKJV)*

#### 1 INTRODUCTION

Man is at war! A momentous struggle of great cosmic significance is occurring. Just about every page of the New Testament gives testimony to this fact. As Christians, we are participants in this war between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan, for the souls and destiny of mankind. Christianity may well be facing the greatest challenge in its history - a series of powerful and growing **seductions** that are subtly changing biblical interpretations and undermining the faith of millions of people. Most Christians however, not even to mention unbelievers, are scarcely aware of what is happening, and do not discern the shocking assault and all-out spiritual warfare being waged against the people of God by Satan's demonic legions, his New Age leadership and their millions of disciples. **The prize they're seeking - the souls of men, women and children!**

For centuries Satan has labored, laying the foundation of his final assault, in this the twentieth century - the supposed dawning of the Golden Age of Aquarius. His bait though, has always been the same - the **promise of godhood** offered to Eve by the

Serpent in the Garden of Eden. The attempt to realize this godhood has involved the human race in numerous forms of occultism throughout history, but never on the scale we're witnessing at present.

One can accurately conclude that people are in the midst of a New Age occult explosion, sweeping across South Africa and the globe, snatching up thousands of unsuspecting people in its rotten net. The end goal has ever been the same - to wipe out all knowledge and worship of Jesus Christ from the earth and thereby causing future generations to worship and pledge allegiance to Lucifer alone as God.

With this occult explosion, one have also seen a re-emergence and dedication to the Divine Feminine, whether in the form of Wicca, witchcraft, the re-emphasis on Mary in Roman Catholicism, radical feminism, the Da Vinci Code, or increasingly those in the liberal church.

This misinformation reminds us of the admonitions given to us in the Bible:

***nor to give heed to fables and endless genealogies (which provide doubts rather than a stewardship of God in faith).***

***I Timothy 1:4(MKJV)***

***But refuse profane and old-womanish tales, and exercise yourself to godliness.***

***I Timothy 4:7(MKJV)***

***For they changed the truth of God into a lie, and they worshiped and served the created thing more than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.***

***Romans 1:25(MKJV)***

The science of interpreting the Bible (or any piece of literature) is called hermeneutics. The word comes from a Greek word, *hermeneuo*, which means to interpret or to explain. Interpreting the Bible is not a simple process of reading what has been written. The art of biblical interpretation developed slowly. While there have always been some people who interpreted the Bible in ways similar to what we do

today, the science of biblical interpretation began to develop in the days of the Renaissance and Reformation and was given new importance by the work of Luther and Calvin.

The meaning of a piece of writing is seldom clearly self-evident to anyone who happens to read it. Especially true, if the writing is a very old document, written for someone who lived in a very different cultural-historical setting. If people want to interpret a piece of literature, one must ask at least five questions:

- a) Who was the writer and to whom was he writing?
- b) What was the cultural-historical setting of the writer?
- c) What was the meaning of the words in the writer's day?
- d) What was the intended meaning of the author and why was he saying it?
- e) What should this mean to me in my situation today? These basic questions lead into other questions that must be explored in a serious attempt to understand the message of the Bible. The reader today must somehow try to enter the world of the biblical writer and seek to understand what the writer was saying. Then he must bring that ancient message into today's world where the reader lives.

There are some basic principles that should be observed by the interpreter of the Scriptures.

The Bible is a divinely inspired book as seen in (2 Timothy 3) and should be reverently approached. Perhaps the reader should hear what was said to Moses as he stood before the burning bush: (Exodus 3). One must be careful to reverence the divine character of Scripture.

***All Scripture is God-breathed, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness,***

***II Timothy 3:16(MKJV)***



***And He said, Do not come near here. Put off your sandals from your feet, for the place on which you stand is holy ground.***

***Exodus 3:5(MKJV)***

The Bible has a genuinely human element, also, since God used ordinary people to write the Scriptures. Recognition should be given to the human elements utilized by the Holy Spirit in giving us God's Word. To miss the human element is as much a mistake as to miss the divine element.

The primary aim of the interpreter is to discover the original meaning of the author who wrote the passage under consideration.

Preference should be given to the interpretation, which is clearest and simplest, the most obvious.

Only one meaning should be given to any passage of Scripture, unless a later passage of Scripture assigns it a second meaning. Only an inspired writer of Scripture can be allowed to give a passage more than one meaning.

Careful attention must be given to the literary form of a passage in determining its meaning.

Careful attention must be given to the historical situation of a portion of Scripture.

Historical Task Interpretation begins with a historical task. The interpreter needs to know as much as possible about the writer and his cultural-historical setting. If we know nothing concerning who wrote a passage, when it was written, or under what conditions it was written, we are almost left to guess what its meaning might be.

The literary task begins with the task of translation of the Scripture from the ancient Hebrew and Greek into the language best understood by the interpreter. Translation

is itself a stage of interpretation. For translation is more than simply substituting English words for the Greek and Hebrew words. If you cannot do a good job of translating Greek and Hebrew into English (or whatever your language is), then you must rely upon good translations of the Bible. You really should utilize several good translations to help you understand what the ancient writer was trying to say to you.

There is a personal, spiritual task of the interpreter. One who would be a good interpreter must be devoted to diligent, careful study of the Scriptures as seen in (2 Timothy 2).

***Study earnestly to present yourself approved to God, a workman that does not need to be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of Truth.***

***II Timothy 2:15(MKJV)***

Prayerfully seeking the leadership of the Holy Spirit continually while interpreting the Scriptures (John 16; 2 Peter 1).

***I have yet many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now.***

***John 16:13: However, when He, the Spirit of Truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth. For He shall not speak of Himself, but whatever He hears, He shall speak. And He will announce to you things to come.***

***John 16:14: He will glorify Me, for He will receive of Mine and will announce it to you.***

***John 16:15: All things that the Father has are Mine. Therefore I said that He will take of Mine and will announce it to you.***

***John 16:12-15(MKJV)***

***We also have a more sure word of prophecy, to which you do well to take heed, as to a light that shines in a dark place, until the day dawns and the Daystar arises in your hearts,***

***II Peter 1:20: knowing this first, that no prophecy of the Scripture came into being of its own private interpretation.***

***II Peter 1:21: For prophecy was not borne at any time by the will of man, but holy men of God spoke being borne along by the Holy Spirit.***

***II Peter 1:19-21(MKJV)***

Only illumination or divine guidance can lead to correct interpretation. On the one hand, the Bible is a piece of literature that is to be interpreted just like any other piece of literature. On the other hand, the Bible is unique in that God through the Holy Spirit inspires it; one who reads the Bible should therefore seek the guidance of God in understanding what is written there.<sup>1</sup>

Eschatology means the theology of last things. This thesis study can cover all things that were future at the time of their writing, or it can include only those things that are still future from our present vantage point. It deals with the consummation of all things, both those things that relate to individuals and to the world. Everyone has some sort of eschatology. For many moderns, eschatology is a study in despair, for all things will end in death—the death of the individual and the death of the universe. Even evolution does not promise immortality. For others the despair is modified by a vague hope in some sort of life after death. For the **Christian** the Bible provides **clear and detailed teaching** concerning the future so that they may know with certainty what lies ahead.<sup>2</sup>

## **2 BACKGROUND TO THE CONCEPT OF BIBLICAL HERMENEUTICS**

The concept of hermeneutics has acquired at least two different but related meanings, which are in use today. Firstly, in the older sense, Biblical hermeneutics may be understood as the theological principles of exegesis which is often virtually synonymous with “principles of biblical interpretation” or methodology of Biblical exegesis.

---

<sup>1</sup> Young, Terry J - Holman Bible Dictionary – [Article: Bible Hermeneutics].

<sup>2</sup> Ryrie, C. Charles (1986) Basic Theology, USA: Printed In The United States Of America. p. 496.

Secondly, the more recent development is to understand the term "Biblical hermeneutics" as the broader philosophy and linguistic underpinnings of interpretation. The question is posed: "How is understanding possible?" The rationale of this approach is that, while Scripture is "more than just an ordinary text," it is in the first analysis "text" which human beings try to understand; in this sense, the principles of understanding any text apply to the Bible as well (regardless of whatever other additional, specifically theological principles are considered).

## **2.1 Crossing The Meaning "Gap"**

Judging from recent missiological literature,<sup>3</sup> evangelicals have taken seriously at least one of the issues raised by the proponents of the new hermeneutic. They accept notion that one's pre-understanding necessarily affects the way in which we **understand**, **interpret** and **communicate** the meaning of a given Biblical text.<sup>4</sup> Accordingly, the interpreter's initial task is to seek to span the gap between the horizon of his own culturally bound mode of understanding and the horizon of understanding established by the cultural context in which the text was formulated.

The gap must be crossed in such a way as to meet the demands of the interpreter's horizon without violating the intension emanating from the horizon of the text. Once this text-informed understanding has been achieved the interpreter may attempt to communicate that understanding across contemporary cultural boundaries. The complexity of the interpretive and communicative challenge involves three cultures:

- That of the source;
- That of the interpreter/communicator;

---

<sup>3</sup> Carson, D. A. (1984) *Biblical Interpretation And The Church*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson. pp. 170-179.

<sup>4</sup> Thiselton, Anthony C. (1980) *The Two Horizons: New Testament Hermeneutics And Philosophical Description* USA: Grand Rapids: Eerdmans.

➤ That of the Listener;

Any attempt to communicate Biblical content cross-culturally will involve in an initial stage of contextualization, the process of minimizing intercultural meaning discrepancy as well as the interference occasioned by ones own search for transcultural understanding.

Once the Gospel has been successfully implanted in a given culture, as individuals are converted and incorporated into a new and developing church, contextualization assumes an added dimension. It must be unfolded with appropriate meanings for that culture.

Ultimately this is the theological responsibility of the church embedded in the cultural matrix to which the Gospel has been applied. In many cases these will be the so-called younger churches, which have developed out of the cross-cultural missionary outreach of European and North American churches. In other cases it will involve established churches in their struggle to maintain relevancy in an ever-changing world.

Christians are being called upon to observe and help evaluate their fellow believers' attempts to bridge the gap between their own horizon of understanding and the horizon of Scripture and to do so from the vantage point of a third, once own, horizon. The Christian's task, then, is one of hearing, understanding, and encouraging rather than of merely passing judgment.

## **2.2 Basic Assumptions Relating To The Truth Of The Gospel**

### **2.2.1 The Supracultural Validity Of The Truth Of The Gospel**

According to the Book of Acts one has every right to assume the supracultural validity of the Christian Gospel. The Gospel was presented to Parthians, Medes, Elamites, and a host of other nationalities as seen in (Acts 2) on the day of Pentecost.

*And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.*

*Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.*

*And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galileans?*

*And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?*

*Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,*

*Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,*

*Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.*

*And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?*

*Others mocking said, These men are full of new wine.*

*Acts 2:5-13(1833 Webster Bible)*

It was later conveyed to Samaritans as seen in (Acts 8):

*Therefore they that were scattered abroad went every where preaching the word.*

*Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto them.*

***And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did.***

***For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed with them: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed.***

***And there was great joy in that city.***

***Acts 8:4-8(KJV)***

The Gospel was also conveyed to Romans as seen in (Acts 10):

***Then Peter opened his mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons:***

***But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.***

***And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.***

***Acts 10:34-35; 45(KJV)***

The Gospel was also conveyed to Greeks as seen in (Acts 11):

***Now they which were scattered abroad upon the persecution that arose about Stephen travelled as far as Phenice, and Cyprus, and Antioch, preaching the word to none but unto the Jews only.***

***And some of them were men of Cyprus and Cyrene, which, when they were come to Antioch, spake unto the Grecians, preaching the Lord Jesus.***

***And the hand of the Lord was with them: and a great number believed, and turned unto the Lord.***

***Acts 11:19-21(KJV)***

Without denying or violating the cultural trappings in which it was couched, the truth of God's revealed Plan of Salvation was presented to and understood by representatives of an amazingly diverse group of cultures. The evaluative responsibility to which people have referred does demand that a framework be established for making decisions about the degree of faithfulness to Scripture achieved or maintained in any contextualization attempt.

For that reason it may be more useful to our view of the Truth of the Gospel if one distinguish two types of validity – categorical and principle – each equally true but each differing from the other in its scope and modus of actualization.

➤ **Categorical Validity;**

This can be ascribed to those aspects of the Christian message, which are absolutely nonnegotiable. They can be grouped into two broad types.

First, consider those aspects of the Truth necessary for **Justification by Grace**, such as the sacrificial death of **Jesus Christ, Faith, Repentance**, and **Conversion**. But however presented, the sacrificial death of Jesus Christ must be shown to be a vicarious death which is the sole source of salvation within any culture.

Second, consider that which, by nature of its form or symbolism, **cannot be altered without losing its meaning**. The sacraments offer a very good illustration. In the case of baptism the use of water is tied to the meaning which the sacrament seeks to convey and must be retained unaltered throughout the process of contextualization. In the Lord's Supper, however, the form of the elements could conceivably be altered, without changing the basic meaning of the ordinance.

➤ **Principal Validity;**

This can be ascribed to those aspects of revealed truth, which grow out of the implications of new life in Jesus Christ. Again they can group into two broad subcategories. First, people encounter those elements of the Truth of the Gospel which have explicitly stated and logically necessary implications for Godly living, walking worthy of one's calling, separation from the world, and



keeping the moral law. Nothing should be taught or changed to undermine the basic moral and ethical implications of the Gospel. Our concern for the oppressed, although valid, cannot be allowed to develop into a theologically anchored hatred of the rich or the oppressors.

Second, people have to deal with those aspects of the Gospel's Truth which, although clearly outgrowths of the believer's life in Jesus Christ, are not explicitly stated and for that reason allow considerable latitude of expression. The particular form or mode of expression could be changed or determined by the respective culture in which it has been implanted. Here we are aided by the principalization or the universalization of the concepts presented in Scripture.

### **2.2.2 The Cross-Cultural Communicability Of The Gospel**

That the Gospel can be communicated cross-culturally assumes that the interpreter can bridge the gap back to the horizon of the text and accurately understand its intended meaning. If this were not the case, the commands to keep Christ's teaching and to proclaim the Gospel to all nations would be both meaningless and impossible as seen in the Book of (Matthew 28)

***Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:***

***Matthew 28:19(KJV)***

With regard to the principally valid aspects of the Gospel, we assume that genuine Faith has the same ethical implications for daily life in any society in which one lives.

## **2.3 Hermeneutical Patterns In Context**

To determine which category of validity a specific scriptural command or teaching fits we will first have to determine the meaning of the words as used in a given text (context). This involves the spectrum of meaning of which a word is capable (public meaning), as well as the specific sense prescribe by its use in the text (user's meaning).

If the interpreter (hearer) ascribes to the text a meaning which generally accepted usage does not include, or favors one possible meaning over the author's intended meaning, the text ceases to communicate anything other than what is foisted upon it by the interpreter.

### **2.3.1 Public Meaning Pertaining To The Accepted Use Of Speech**

The effective use of any language depends on a "latitude of correctness," that is, the correct or generally accepted use of speech. One is free to insist that he rides to work in a sardine can. But this arbitrary redefinition of a term not usually used of transportation wrecks the communication process. Some meaning could be salvaged if the redefined term were in some way related to the broad limits of acceptable usage. "Sardine can" could refer to a very crowded bus, in which case the speaker would have to give clear indication of that figurative use.

Another possibility would be for the user of such private language to carefully explain his terms. But how can we be sure of the meaning of the explanation? And how could this private redefinition be presented as the meaning intended by anyone else? It is this kind of arbitrary redefinition of key theological terms that has made recent deliberation so frustration and fruitless.

### **2.3.2 The User's Meaning Within Latitude Of Correctness**

Caird deems that although a word's meaning must be limited to that of which it is capable, the user controls its actual meaning in speech. Within the latitude of correctness marked out by public usage, or even slightly beyond it, he determines the sense of the words he uses...<sup>5</sup> To ignore this principle is to fall into the trap of the international fallacy, supposing that a writer mean something other than he has actually written.

### **2.3.3 Principles Involving Changes Of Meaning**

One has already seen that meaning is determined in part by the limits of correct definition, which, in turn, are delineated by current usage according to Hasselgrave. Usage is subject to change, latitude of correctness and ultimately meaning are themselves in a constant state of flux.<sup>6</sup>

## **3 REVEALING ESCHATOLOGICAL POSSIBILITIES**

Given the voluminous possibilities that thus exist between transhumanism,<sup>7</sup> related sciences, and eschatology - for instance how biotech could result in a plague of Biblical proportions such as described in (Zechariah 14:12) - for in this thesis, the scenarios would be limited to three varieties in which end-times prophecy may be fulfilled as a result of trans humanism:

---

<sup>5</sup> Caird, G B (1980) *The Language And Imagery Of The Bible*. London: Published By Duckworth. P. 49.

<sup>6</sup> Hesselgrave, David J And Rommen, Edward (1989) *Contextualization Meanings, Methods, And Models*. USA: Printed By Baker Book House.

<sup>7</sup> See Terms And Definitions.

- The fulfillment of Matthew 24:37 and “the days of Noah”;
- Revelation 13:16-17 and “the Mark of the Beast”; and
- The fulfillment as seen in 1 Timothy 4:1 and 2 Timothy 4:2 regarding end-times “doctrines of demons.”

### **3.1 Trans Humanism As Fulfillment Of Matthew 24:37**

#### **“As It Was In The Days Of Noah”**

*But as the days of Noah were, so shall be the coming of the Son of man.*  
*Matthew 24:37(MKJV)*

In Matthew 24, when the Lord's closest disciples asked Him what would be the sign of His coming and the end of the age, He provided a long list of eschatological markers, concluding in verse 37, ***"As it was in the days of Noah, so it will be when the son of man returns."***

*And as He sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? And what shall be the sign of Your coming, and of the end of the world?*

*Matthew 24:3(MKJV)*

The legend of the Days of Noah and what happened then is recorded in numerous ancient texts within every major culture of the ancient world, where the astonishingly consistent story is told of “gods” that descended from heaven and materialized in bodies of flesh.

From Rome to Greece - and before that, to Egypt, Persia, Assyria, Babylonia, and Sumer - the earliest records of civilization tell of the era when powerful beings known

to the Hebrews as Watchers and in the book of Genesis as the *benei ha-elohim* (sons of God) mingled themselves with humans, giving birth to part-celestial, part-terrestrial hybrids known as Nephilim.

The Bible says this happened when men began to increase on earth and daughters were born to them. When the sons of God saw the women's beauty, they took wives from among them to sire their unusual offspring.

In Genesis 6:4 we read the following account:

***There were giants in the earth in those days. And also after that, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men, and they bore to them, they were mighty men who existed of old, men of renown.***

**Genesis 6:4(MKJV)**

When this Scripture is compared with other ancient texts, including Enoch, Jubilees, Baruch, Genesis Apocryphon, Philo, Josephus, Jasher, and others, it unfolds to some that the giants of the Old Testament, such as Goliath, were the part-human, part-animal, part-angelic offspring of a supernatural interruption into the divine order and natural evolution of the species. This was certainly the view of most, if not all, of the Ante-Nicene church fathers including Athenagoras, Commodianus, Julius Africanus, et al. The apocryphal book of Enoch gives a name to the angels involved in this cosmic conspiracy, calling them "Watchers." We read:

*And I Enoch was blessing the Lord of majesty and the King of the ages, and lo! The Watchers called me - Enoch the scribe - and said to me: "Enoch, thou scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives: Ye have wrought great destruction on the earth: And ye shall have no peace nor forgiveness of sin: and inasmuch as they delight themselves in their children [the Nephilim], The murder of their beloved ones shall they see, and over the*

*destruction of their children shall they lament, and shall make supplication unto eternity, but mercy and peace shall ye not attain."*

*1 Enoch 10:3-8*

According to Enoch, two hundred of these powerful angels departed "high heaven" and used human DNA to extend their progeny into mankind's plane of existence. The Interlinear Hebrew Bible offers an interesting interpretation of (Genesis 6:2) in this regard. Where the King James Bible says, "The sons of God saw the daughters of men that they [were] fair" (brackets in original), the IHN interprets this as, "The benei Elohim saw the daughters of Adam, that they were fit extensions." The term "fit extensions" seems applicable when the whole of the ancient record is understood to mean that the Watchers wanted to leave their proper sphere of existence in order to enter Earth's three-dimensional reality.

They viewed women or at least their genetic material as part of the formula for accomplishing this task. Departing the proper habitation that God had assigned them was grievous to the Lord and led to divine penalization. Jude described it this way: The angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day (Jude 6:6).

Besides apocryphal, pseudepigraphic, and Jewish traditions related to the legend of the Watchers and the "mighty men" born of their union with humans, mythologized accounts tell the stories of "gods" using humans to produce heroes or demigods (half-gods). When the ancient Greek version of the Hebrew Old Testament (the LXX or Septuagint) was made, the word "Nephilim - referring to the part-human offspring of the Watchers - was translated "gegegenes," a word implying "Earth-born." This same terminology was used to describe the Greek Titans and other legendary heroes of part-celestial and part-terrestrial origin, such as Hercules (born of Zeus and the

mortal Alcmena), Achilles (the Trojan hero son of Thetis and Peleus), and Gilgamesh (the two-thirds god and one-third human child of Lugalbanda and Ninsun).

These demigods were likewise accompanied in texts and idol representation by half-animal and half-human creatures like centaurs (the part-human, part-horse offspring of Apollo's son, Centaurus), chimeras, furies, satyrs, gorgons, nymphs, minotaurs, and other genetic aberrations. This is seen as indication that the Watchers not only modified human DNA during the construction of the Nephilim, but animals as well. As a point the book of Enoch supports, saying in the seventh chapter that the fallen angels "sinned" against animals as well as humans.

Other books such as Jubilees add that this interspecies mingling eventually resulted in mutations among normal humans and animals whose "flesh" (genetic makeup) was "corrupted" by the activity, presumably through crossbreeding (see Jubilees 5:1-5; 7:21-25). Even the Old Testament contains reference to the genetic mutations that developed among humans following this timeframe, including "men" of unusual size, physical strength, six fingers, six toes, animal appetite for blood, and even lion-like features (2 Samuel 21:20; 23:20).

***And there was yet again a battle in Gath. And there was a man of stature who had six fingers on each hand, and six toes on each foot, twenty-four in number. And he also was born to the giant.***

***II Samuel 21:20(MKJV)***

***And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada from Kabzeel, a son of a mighty man, great in deeds. He killed two lion-like men of Moab. He went down also and killed a lion in the middle of a pit in time of snow.***

***II Samuel 23:20(MKJV)***

Perhaps of all ancient records, the most telling extra-biblical script is from the book of Jasher, a mostly-forgotten text referred to in the Bible in (Joshua 10) and (2 Samuel 1:18).

***And the sun stood still, and the moon stood still, until the people had avenged themselves on their enemies. Is this not written in the Book of Jasher? And the sun stood still in the midst of the heavens, and did not hasten to go down about a whole day.***

***Joshua 10:13(MKJV)***

***And he said to teach the sons of Judah The Song of the Bow. Behold, it is written in the Book of Jasher:***

***II Samuel 1:18(MKJV)***

Jasher records the familiar story of the fall of the Watchers, and then adds an exceptional detail that none of the other texts is as unequivocal about, something that can only be understood in modern language to mean advanced biotechnology, genetic engineering, or “transgenic modification” of species.

*After the Watchers had instructed humans “in the secrets of heaven,” note what Jasher says occurred: “[Then] the sons of men [began teaching] the mixture of animals of one species with the other, in order therewith to provoke the Lord” (Jasher 4:18).*

The phrase “the mixture of animals of one species with the other” cannot mean Watchers had taught men hybridization, as this would not have “provoked the Lord.” God made like animals of different breeds capable of reproducing. For example, horses can propagate with other mammals of the Equidae classification (the taxonomic “horse family”), including donkeys and zebras.

It would not have “provoked the Lord” for this type of animal breeding to have taken place, as God, Himself, made the animals able to do this. If, on the other hand, like trans humanists James Hughes and Nick Bostrom propose, the Watchers were crossing species boundaries by mixing incompatible animals of one species with the other, such as a horse with a human (centaur), this would have been a different matter and may cast light on the numerous ancient stories of mythical beings of variant-species manufacturing that fit perfectly within the records of what the Watchers were accomplishing.



Understandably, this kind of chimera making would have “provoked the Lord,” and it raises the serious question of why the Watchers would have risked eternal damnation by tinkering with God's creation in this way.

Yahweh had placed boundaries between the species and strictly ordered that “each kind” reproduce only after its “own kind.” Was the motive of the Watchers to break these rules simply the desire to rebel, to assault God's creative genius through biologically altering what He had made? Or was something of deeper significance behind the activity?

Some believe the corruption of antediluvian DNA by Watchers was an effort to cut off the birth line of the Messiah. This theory posits that Satan understood the protoevangelium - the promise in (Genesis 3) that a Savior would be born, the seed of the woman, and that He would destroy the fallen angel's power. Satan's followers therefore intermingled with the human race in a conspiracy to stop the birth of Christ.

***And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He will bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel.***  
***Genesis 3:15(MKJV)***

If human DNA could be universally corrupted or “demonized,” they reasoned, no Savior would be born and mankind would be lost forever. Those who support this theory believe this is why God ordered His people to maintain a pure bloodline and not to intermarry with the other nations.

When Israel breached this command and the mutated DNA began rapidly spreading among men and animals, God instructed Noah to build an ark and to prepare for a flood that would destroy every living thing.

That God had to send such a universal fiat like the Flood illustrates how widespread the altered DNA eventually became. In fact, the Bible says in Genesis 6:9 that only Noah, and by extension his children, were found “perfect” in their generation.

***These are the generations of Noah. Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations. Noah walked with God.***

***Genesis 6:9(MKJV)***

The Hebrew word for “perfect” in this case is *tamiym*, which means “without blemish” or “healthy” the same word used in Leviticus to describe an unblemished, sacrificial lamb. The meaning was not that Noah was morally perfect, but that his physical makeup his DNA had not been contaminated with Nephilim descent, as apparently the rest of the world had become. In order to preserve mankind as He had made them, God destroyed all but Noah’s family in the Flood. The ancient records including those of the Bible appear to agree with this theology, consistently describing the cause of the Flood as happening in response to “all flesh” having become “corrupted, both man and beast.”

### **3.1.1 An Alternative Reason Why The Watchers Blended DNA**

While the author believes, the theory of ***"DNA corruption as an intended method for halting the coming of Christ"*** has merit, an alternative or additional reason the Watchers may have blended living organisms exists. This theory is original with me and grew from my need to incorporate the voluminous historical texts, which described this peculiar history, into a consistent account corresponding with consistent Scriptural interpretation.

To harmonize the ancient records, I came to believe (after six thousand pages and over a decade of research) that the overriding motive for whatever the Watchers were doing with the DNA of various species had to be understood within the context

of their foremost goal, which was to leave their plane of existence and to enter ours. My challenge then became to answer the question how blending various species would satisfy this goal or provide Watchers with a method of departure from "high heaven" and incarnation into man's "habitation." While I cannot take time in this paper to explain every detail, I eventually hypothesized that the Watchers blended species in the way they did in order to create a soulless or spiritless body into which they could extend themselves.

The rationale is that every creature as it existed originally had its beginning in God, who ordered each creature to reproduce "after its own kind." The phrase, "after its own kind," verifies what kind of spirit can enter into an intelligent being at conception. When the sperm of a dog meets ovum of a dog and the life of a dog is formed, at the first spark of life the spirit or personality of a dog enters that embryo and it grows to become a dog in spirit and in form. The spirit of a man does not enter it, in the same way that a man is not born with the spirit of a horse or cow. This creature/spirit integrity is part of the divine order and would have kept the Watchers, who wanted to incarnate within the human realm (not just "possess" creatures), from displacing the spirits of humans or animals and replacing them with their own.

How did they overcome this problem? Like some trans - humanists advocate for and scientists are doing today, it appears based on the ancient records that they blended existing DNA of several living creatures and made something that neither the spirit of man or beast would enter at conception, for it was neither man nor beast. As *Mysterious World*, in its 2003 feature, "Giants in the Earth," noted:

The Nephilim were genetically manufactured beings created from the genetic material of various pre-existing animal species... The fallen angels did not personally interbreed with the daughters of men, but used their godlike intellect to delve into the secrets of YHWH's Creation and manipulate it to their own purposes. And the key to

creating or recreating man, as we have rediscovered in the twentieth century, is the human genome—DNA.<sup>8</sup>

This manipulation of living tissue by the fallen angels led to an unusual body made up of human, animal, and plant genetics known as Nephilim, an *"earth-born"* facsimile or *"fit extension"* into which they could incarnate. Some students of prophecy envision the same science being used in modern times to revive extinct animals or Nephilim, or to create newly engineered versions of demigods and mythological animals as part of the coming kingdom of Antichrist.

This is because as interbreeding begins between transgenic animals, genetically modified humans, and species as God made them, the altered DNA will quickly migrate into the natural environment, and when that happens (*as is already occurring among genetically modified plants and animals*), *"alien"* and/or animal characteristics will be introduced to the human gene pool and spread through intermarriage, altering the human genetic code and eventually eliminating humanity *as we know it*.

This is what happened before the Great Flood, according to many theologians, and perhaps that has been the whole idea for the end-times as well to create a generation of genetically altered humans to serve as *"fit extensions"* for the resurrection of underworld Nephilim - hordes in preparation of Armageddon.

Does a curious verse in the book of Daniel hint at this? Speaking of the last days of human government, Daniel said: *"They shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay"* (Daniel 2).

---

<sup>8</sup> "Giants In The Earth: Part I: Giants Of The Ancient Near East," Mysterious World Spring (2003), (<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants/>.) accessed 26 April 2011.

---

***And as you saw iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mix themselves with the seed of men. But they shall not cling to one another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.***

***Daniel 2:43(MKJV)***

While Daniel does not explain who "they" that "mingle themselves with the seed of men" are, the personal pronoun "they" caused conservative eschatologists Chuck Missler and Mark Eastman, in their book, *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon*, to ask: ***"Just what (or who) are 'mingling with the seed of men?' Who are these Non-seed? It staggers the mind to contemplate the potential significance of Daniel's passage and its implications for the future global governance."***<sup>9</sup>

Daniel's verse troubled Missler and Eastman because it may suggest that the same phenomenon that occurred in Genesis chapter 6, where non-human species or "non-seed" mingled with human seed and produced Nephilim, would happen again in the end-times. When this verse from Daniel is coupled with Genesis 3:15, which says, *"And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed [zera, meaning "offspring," "descendants," or "children"] and her seed,"* an incredible tenet emerges that Satan has seed, and that it is at enmity with Christ.

To "mingle" non-human seed with Homo sapiens through altering human DNA while simultaneously returning Nephilim to earth seems to have been the inspiration of the spirit of Antichrist ever since God halted the practice during the Great Flood. According to Louis Pauwells and Jacques Bergier in *The Dawn of Magic*, this was certainly the goal of the antichrist like Adolf Hitler:

*Hitler's aim was neither the founding of a race of supermen, nor the conquest of the world; these were only means towards the realization of the great work he dreamed*

---

<sup>9</sup> Missler, Chuck And Eastman, Mark (1997) *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind The UFO Phenomenon*, USA: Coeur d'Alene, ID: Koinonia House, p. 275.

*of. His real aim was to perform an act of creation, a divine operation, the goal of a biological mutation, which would result in an unprecedented exaltation of the human race and the "apparition of a new race of heroes and demigods and god-men."*<sup>10</sup>

One cannot read the conclusion by Pauwells and Bergier regarding Hitler's Antichrist ambition without calling to mind how, from the Middle Ages forward, some church leaders have believed the Antichrist would ultimately represent the return of the Nephilim the reunion of demons with humans. St. Augustine, himself, wrote of such demoniality in *The City of God*, and the *De Daemonialitate et Incubis et Succubis*, by Fr. Ludovico Maria Sinistrari de Ameno (1622-1701), also perceived the coming of Antichrist as representing the biological hybridization of demons with humans. "To theologians and philosophers," Fr. Ludovico wrote, "it is a fact, that from the copulation of humans with the demon... Antichrist must be born."<sup>11</sup>

English theologian George Hawkins Pember agreed with this premise, and in his 1876 masterpiece, *Earth's Earliest Ages*, he analyzed the prophecy of Christ that says the endtimes would be a repeat of "the Days of Noah." Pember outlined the seven great causes of the antediluvian destruction and documented their developmental beginnings in his lifetime. The seventh and most fearful sign, Pember wrote, would be the return of the Nephilim, "The appearance upon earth of beings from the Principality of the Air, and their unlawful intercourse with the human race."<sup>12</sup>

Consequently, if Antichrist is the reincarnation or representation of the return of Nephilim, trans humanism, and related sciences, which imagine remanufacturing mankind via GRIN technology including integration of human-animal genetics,

---

<sup>10</sup> Pauwells, Louis and Bergier, Jacques (1976) *Le Matin Des Magiciens* [The Dawn Of Magic], Paris: Editions Gallimard, Published In London Panther Books Ltd, p. 68.

<sup>11</sup> Reed, Annette Yoshiko (2005) *Fallen Angels And The History Of Judaism And Christianity: The Reception Of Enochic Literature*, New York: Cambridge University Press, p. 214.

<sup>12</sup> Hawkins, George Pember, *Earth's Earliest Ages*.

eschatology believers could imagine trans humanism as the fulfillment of Matthew 24:37 - that the end times will witness a repeat of "the Days of Noah."

### **3.1.2 Comparisons Between Nephilim And Trans Humanism**

As the director of the Future of Humanity Institute and a professor of Philosophy at Oxford University, Nick Bostrom<sup>13</sup> is a leading advocate of trans humanism who, as a young man, was heavily influenced by the works of Friedrich Nietzsche (from whom the phrase "God is dead" derives) and Goethe, the author of *Faust*. Nietzsche was the originator of the *Urbemensch* or "Overman" that Adolf Hitler dreamed of engineering, and the "entity" that man who is nothing more than a rope "tied between beast and Overman, a rope over an abyss" according to Nietzsche, will eventually evolve into.

Like the ancient Watchers before him (Watchers, remember, were fallen angels that mingled human DNA with animals and their seed to produce Nephilim), Bostrom envisions giving life to Nietzsche's Over-man (post-humans) by remanufacturing men with animals, plants, and other synthetic life-forms through the use of modern sciences including recombinant DNA technology, germ-line engineering, and transgenics (in which the genetic structure of one species is altered by the transfer of genes from another).

Given that molecular biologists classify the functions of genes within native species yet remain unsure in most cases how a gene's coding might react from one species to another, one should expect the genetic structure of the modified animal-humans to be changed in physical appearance, sensory modalities, disease propensity, personality, behavior traits, and more as a result of these modifications.

---

<sup>13</sup> ([www.NickBostrom.com](http://www.NickBostrom.com))

Despite these unknowns, such genetic tinkering as depicted in the movie *Splice* is already taking place in thousands of research laboratories around the world, including the United States, Britain, and Australia, where animal eggs are being used to create hybrid human embryos from which stem-cell lines can be produced for medical research. Not counting synthetic biology, where entirely new forms of life are being brewed, there is no limit to the number of human-animal concoctions currently under development within openly contracted as well as top-secret science facilities, one would suspect.

A team at Newcastle and Durham Universities in the United Kingdom recently illustrated this when they announced plans to create "hybrid rabbit and human embryos, as well as other chimera embryos mixing human and cow genes." The same researchers more alarmingly have already managed to reanimate tissue "from dead human cells in another breakthrough which was heralded as a way of overcoming ethical dilemmas over using living embryos for medical research." In the United States, similar studies led Irv Weissman, director of Stanford University's Institute of Cancer/Stem Cell Biology and Medicine in California, to create mice with part-human brains, causing some ethicists to raise the issue of "humanized animals" in the future that could become "self-aware" as a result of genetic modification.

Even former president of the United States, George W. Bush, in his January 31, 2006, State of the Union address, called for legislation to "prohibit...creating human-animal hybrids, and buying, selling, or patenting human embryos." His words mostly fell on deaf ears, and now "the chimera, or combination of species, is a subject of serious discussion in certain scientific circles," writes senior counsel for the Alliance Defense Fund, Joseph Infranco. "We are well beyond the science fiction of H. G.



Wells' tormented hybrids in the Island of Doctor Moreau; we are in a time where scientists are seriously contemplating the creation of human-animal hybrids.”<sup>14</sup>

When describing the benefits of man- with-beast combinations in his online thesis, “Trans humanist Values,”<sup>15</sup> Bostrom cites how animals have "sonar, magnetic orientation, or sensors for electricity and vibration," among other extra-human abilities. He goes on to include how the range of sensory modalities for trans humans would not be limited to those among animals, and that there is "no fundamental block to adding, say, a capacity to see infrared radiation or to perceive radio signals and perhaps to add some kind of telepathic sense by augmenting our brains," a position verified by the U.S. National Science Foundation and Department of Commerce in the report, *Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance*.

### **3.1.3 Trans Humanism As Fulfillment Of Revelation 13:16-17**

#### **“The Mark Of The Beast”**

There are those who believe the Biblical mark of the Beast will evolve as an abstract of trans humanist aspirations and could be a conspiracy employing biotechnology in the form of a manufactured virus or bioweapon. For example, as a mental exercise, we imagine that an occult elite operating behind the U.S. government devises a virus that is a crossover between human and animal disease - let's say an entirely new and highly contagious influenza mutation and intentionally releases it into the public.

---

<sup>14</sup> Infranco, Joseph “President Barack Obama Warped And Twisted Science With Embryonic Stem Cell Order,” The Manhattan Declaration, (<http://prolifecoalition.blogspot.com/2009/04/president-barack-obama-warped-and.html>). Accessed 13 April 2009.

<sup>15</sup> Bostrom, Nick “Trans Humanist Values,” Nick Bostrom’s Web Site, (<http://www.nickbostrom.com/tra/values.html>.) Accessed 18 April 2001.

A pandemic ensues, and the period between when a person contracts the virus and death is something like ten days. With tens of thousands dead in a few weeks and the rate of death increasing hourly around the globe, a universal cry for a cure goes out. Seemingly miraculously, the government then steps forward with a vaccine. The only catch, they explain, is that, given the nature of the animal-human strain, the "cure" rewrites one's genetics, so that the person is no longer entirely human. The point is that those who receive this antidote would become part "beast," and thus the title, "mark of the Beast."

No longer "entirely human" would also mean according to this outline that the individual could no longer be "saved" or go to heaven, explaining why the book of Revelation says *"whosoever receiveth the mark"* is damned forever while also explaining why the Nephilim similarly could not be redeemed. If one imagines the global chaos of such a pandemic, the concept of how the Antichrist "causes all," both small and great, to receive this mark becomes clearer. When looking into the eyes of dying children, parents, or a spouse, it would be incredibly difficult to allow oneself to die or to encourage others to do the same. Lastly, this scenario would mean that nobody is allowed to *"buy or sell"* in the marketplace without the mark-cure, due to the need to quarantine all but the inoculated, thus fulfilling all aspects of the mark of the Beast prophecy.

Researching the science behind this abstract as an eschatological possibility, was to contact Sharon Gilbert whose background includes Theology and molecular Biology. According to Gilbert true humans may unknowingly receive trans human instructions via an implant or injection. A seemingly innocuous vaccine or identification "chip" can initiate intracellular changes, not only in somatic or "body" cells, but also in germ line cells such as ova and sperm. The former alters the recipient only; the latter alters the recipient's doomed descendants as well.

In her second novel, *The Armageddon Strain*, Sharon<sup>16</sup> presented a device called the "Bio Strain Chip" that employs Nano - technology to induce genetic changes inside the carrier's body. This miracle chip is advertised as a cure for the H5NI/Ebola chimera that is released in the prologue to the book. On reading the novel, one learns how the Bio Strain chip does far more than "cure it also kills.

Though a work of fiction, *The Armageddon Strain* raises a chilling question: What limitations lie within the payload of a biochip? Can such a tiny device do more than carry digitized information? Could it actually serve as the mark of the Beast? The answer is yes.

DNA (Deoxyribonucleic acid) has become the darling of researchers who specialize in synthetic constructs. The "sticky-end" design of the DNA double helix makes it ideal for use in computing. Though an infinite number of polyhedral are possible, the most robust and stable of these "building blocks" is called the double crossover (DX). An intriguing name, is it not? The double-cross.

Picture an injectable chip comprised of DNA-DX, containing instructions for a super-soldier. Picture too, how this DNA framework, if transcribed, might also serve a second, sinister, purpose not only to instruct, but also to alter.

Mankind has come perilously far in his search for perfection through chemistry. Although millennia passed with little progress beyond roots, herbs, and alchemical quests for gold from lead, the twentieth century ushered science into the rosy dawn of breathless discovery. Electricity, lighter than air travel, wireless communication, and computing transformed the ponderous pace of the scientific method into a light speed race toward self-destruction.

---

<sup>16</sup> The Armageddon Strain.

By the mid 1950s, Watson and Crick had solved the structure of the DNA molecule and the double helix became all the rage. Early gene splicing, and thus transgenics, began in 1952 as a crude, cut-and-paste sort of science cooked up in kitchen blenders and petri dishes as much accident as inspiration. As knowledge has increased as seen in (Daniel 12:4).

***But you, O Daniel, shut up the words and seal the book, even to the time of the end. Many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.***

***Daniel 12:4(MKJV)***

Genetic scientists learned to utilize microbiological "vectors" and sophisticated methods to insert animal or plant genes from one specie into another. It's the ultimate "Mr. Potato Head" game, where interchangeable plastic pieces give rise to an infinite number of combinations; only, in genetic splicing, humanity is the unhappy potato.

Vectors provide the means of transport and integration for this brave new science. Think of these vectors as biological trucks that carry genetic building materials and workers into your body's cells. Such "trucks" could be a micro syringe, a bacterium, or a virion (a virus particle). Any entity that can carry genetic information (the larger the load capacity, the better) and then surreptitiously gain entry into the cell is a potential vector. Viruses, for example, can be stripped of certain innate genes that might harm the cell. Not only does this (supposedly) render the viral delivery truck "harmless," it also clears out space for the cargo.

Once inside the cell, the "workers" take over. Some of these "workers" are enzymes that cut human genes at specific sites, while others integrate—or load—the "cargo" into appropriate reading frames like microscopic librarians. Once the payload is stored in the cell's nuclear "library stacks," the new genes can be translated, copied, and "read" to produce altered or brand-new, "alien" polymers and proteins.

The resulting hybrid cell is no longer purely human. If a hybridized skin cell, it may now glow, or perhaps form scales rather than hair, claws rather than fingernails. If a brain cell, the new genetic instructions could produce an altered neurotransmitter that reduces or even eliminates the body's need for sleep. Muscle cells may grow larger and more efficient at using low levels of calcium and oxygen. Retina cells may encode for receptors that enable the *"post human being"* to perceive infrared or ultra-violet light frequencies. The hybrid ears may now sense a wider range of sounds, taste buds a greater range of chemicals. Altered brains might even attune to metaphysics and "unseen" gateways, allowing communication with supernatural realms.

Germ line alterations, mentioned earlier, form a terrifying picture of generational development and may very well already be a reality. Genetic *"enhancement"* of sperm-producing cells would change human sperm into tiny infiltrators, and any fertilized ovum a living chimera. Science routinely conducts experiments with transgenic mice, rats, chickens, pigs, cows, horses, and many other species. It is naive to believe humans have been left out of this transgenic equation.

Humans constantly battle mutagenic assaults from external and internal pressures. Externally, our cells endure daily bombardment by pollution, waveform radiation, and chemicals that can alter the molecular structure of nucleotides (guanine, cytosine, thymine, adenine). Internally, our systems work overtime to filter genetically altered food, impure water, and pharmaceuticals. Our bodies are changing. To paraphrase Shakespeare, humanity *"alters when it alteration finds"* (Sonnet 116).

If so many scientists (funded by government entities) believe in the *"promise"* of genetic alteration and transgenic *"enhancement,"* how then can humanity remain human? We cannot. We will not. Perhaps, some have not.

Spiritually, Sharon says, the enemy has ever sought to corrupt God's plan. Originally, fallen angels altered human DNA to corrupt the original base pair arrangements. Our genome is filled with *"junk DNA"* that seemingly encodes for nothing. These "introns" may be the remains of the corrupted genes, and God, Himself, may have switched them off when fallen angels continued their program, post-Flood. If so, today's scientists might need only to *"switch them back on"* to resurrect old forms such as gibborim and Nephilim.

We should point out that not all *"trucks"* (vectors) deliver their payload immediately. Some operate on a time delay. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) is a common infective agent resident in the cells of many humans today. It *"sleeps"* in our systems, waiting for a window of opportunity to strike. Recently, genetic specialists began utilizing CMV vectors in transgenic experiments.

In 1997, the Fox television program *Millennium* featured an episode in the second season called *"Sense and Antisense"* (referring to the two sides of the DNA molecule). In this chilling story, a scientist named Lacuna reveals a genetic truth to Frank Black: *"They have the map, the map, they can make us go down any street they want to. Streets that we would never even dream of going down. They flip a switch, we go east. They flip another switch, we go north. And we never know we have been flipped, let alone know how."*<sup>17</sup>

In the final days of this current age, some believe humanity may indeed *"flip."* Paul tells us that Christians will be transformed in a moment as seen in (1 Corinthians 15:51-53).

***Behold, I speak a mystery to you; we shall not all fall asleep, but we shall all be changed;***

---

<sup>17</sup> Bland, Eric "Part Human, Part Machine Transistor Devised," Discovery News, (<http://news.discovery.com/tech/transistor-cell-membrane-machine.html>.) Accessed 2 June 2010.

---

***in a moment, in a glance of an eye, at the last trumpet. For a trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall all be changed.***

***For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.***

***I Corinthians 15:51-53(MKJV)***

Is it possible that the enemy also plans an instantaneous "flip"? Are genetic sleeper agents (idling "trucks") already at work in humanity's DNA, waiting and ready to deploy at the appropriate moment?

"Science is ready," Sharon finished. "Knowledge has been increased. The spiritual players have taken the stage." All one need is the signal. The sign. The injection. The mark. The moment. "We shall ALL be changed. Some to incorruptible bodies ready to meet the Lord. Others to corrupted genomes ready to serve the Beast."

### **3.1.4 Trans Humanism As Fulfillment Of Timothy 4:1-2 And Timothy 4:3**

#### **"End Times Doctrines Of Demons"**

Perhaps related to the rise of Antichrist and his human-trans-forming "mark of the Beast" technology is an intriguing aspect of trans humanism that is only now developing into what could be an end-times Universalist religion. Is it a coincidence that this comes during the same time in which the Claremont School of Theology analyzing the future of American religion concluded at its 2010 Theology After Google Conference that "*technology must be embraced*" for Christianity to survive?

Although most trans humanists, especially early on, were secular atheists and would have had little resemblance to prototypical "*people of faith*," in the last few years, the exclusion of super - naturalism in favor of rational empiricism has softened as the movement's exponential popularity has swelled to include a growing number of

Gnostic Christians, Buddhists, Mormons, Islam, Raelianism, and other religious traditions among its devotees. From among these groups, new tentative "churches" arose:

- The Church of Virus;
- The Society for Universal Immortalism, Transtopianism;
- The Church of Mez;
- The Society for Venturism;
- The Church of the Fulfillment, Singularitarianism, and others.

Today, with somewhere between 25 - 30 percent of trans humanists considering themselves religious, these separate sects or early "*denominations*" within trans humanism are coalescing their various religious worldviews around generally fixed creeds involving spiritual transcendence as a result of human enhancement or technocracy. Leaders within the movement, whom we refer to here as trans evangelists, have been providing religion-specific lectures during conferences to guide these disciples toward a collective (hive) understanding of the mystical compatibility between faith and trans humanism.

At Trinity College in Toronto, Canada, for instance, trans humanist Peter Addy lectured on the fantastic "*Mutant Religious Impulses of the Future*" during the Faith, Trans humanism, and Hope symposium. At the same meeting, Prof. Mark Walker spoke on "*Becoming Godlike*," James Hughes offered "*Buddhism and Trans humanism: The Technologies of Self-Perfection*," Michael LaTorra gave a "*Trans-Spirit*" speech, nanotechnologist and lay Catholic Tihamer Toth-Fejel presented "*Is Catholic Trans humanism Possible?*" and Nick Bostrom spoke on "*Trans humanism and Religion*."<sup>18</sup>

---

<sup>18</sup> To View The Program Schedule Of This Convention Event, See: (<http://www.Transhumanism.org/tv/2004/program.shtml>).

---



Recently, the *New York Times* picked up this meme (contagious idea) in its 11 June 2010, feature titled "*Merely Human? That's so Yesterday*," speaking of trans humanism and the Singularity as offering a modern-day, quasi-religious answer to the Fountain of Youth by affirming the notion that, yes indeed, humans or at least something derived from them can have it all.<sup>19</sup> In commenting on the *New York Times* article at his blog, bioethicist, Wesley J. Smith, observed the following:

*Here's an interesting irony: Most trans humanists are materialists. But they desire eternal life as much as the religionists that so many materialists disdain. So they invent a material substitute that offers the benefits of faith, without the burden of sin, as they forge a new eschatology that allows them to maintain their über-rationalist credentials as they try to escape the nihilistic despair that raw materialism often engenders. So they tout a corporeal New Jerusalem and prophesy the coming of the Singularity—roughly equivalent of the Second Coming for Christians that will begin a New Age of peace, harmony, and eternal life right here on Terra firma.<sup>20</sup>*

In the peer-reviewed *Journal of Evolution and Technology* published by the Institute for Ethics and Emerging Technologies (founded in 2004 by trans humanists Nick Bostrom and James Hughes), the "Apologia for Trans humanist Religion" by Prof. Gregory Jordan lists the many ways trans humanism is emerging as either a new form of religion or a mirror of fundamental human ambitions, desires, longings, shared hopes, and dreams that traditional religions hold in common.

---

<sup>19</sup> Vance, Ashlee "Merely Human? That's So Yesterday," *New York Times*, (<http://www.nytimes.com/2010/06/13/business/13sing.html>.) Accessed 12 June 2010.

<sup>20</sup> Smith, Wesley J "Pitching The New Trans Humanism Religion In The NYT," *First Things*, (<http://www.firstthings.com/blogs/secondhandsmoke/2010/06/ching-the-new-transhumanism-religion-in-the-nyt/>.) Accessed 14 June 2010.

In spite of denial by some of its advocates, Jordan concludes that trans humanism may be considered a rising religion because of its numerous parallels to religious themes and values involving godlike beings, the plan for eternal life, the religious sense of awe surrounding its promises, symbolic rituals among its members, an inspirational worldview based on faith, and technology that promises to heal the wounded, restore sight to the blind, and give hearing back to the deaf.

Of the technological **Singularity**<sup>21</sup> in particular, Jordan writes how some trans humanists especially view the Singularity as a religious event, "a time when human consciousness will expand beyond itself and throughout the universe." Quoting Kurzweil's "The Singularity is Near: When Humans Transcend Biology," Jordan provides:

The matter and energy in our vicinity will become infused with the intelligence, knowledge, creativity, beauty, and emotional intelligence (the ability to love, for example) of our human-machine civilization. Our civilization will expand outward, turning all the dumb matter [normal humans] and energy we encounter into sublimely intelligent transcendent matter and energy. So in a sense, we can say that the Singularity will ultimately infuse the world with spirit.

According to these Singularitarians, this expansion of consciousness after the Singularity will also be an approach to the divine:

*"Evolution moves toward greater complexity, greater elegance, greater knowledge, greater intelligence, greater beauty, greater creativity, and greater levels of subtle attributes such as love. In every monotheistic tradition God is likewise described as all of these qualities, only without any limitation: infinite knowledge, infinite*

---

<sup>21</sup> See Terms And Definitions.

*intelligence, infinite beauty, infinite creativity, infinite love, and so on. So evolution moves inexorably toward this conception of God. We can regard, therefore, the freeing of our thinking from the severe limitations of its biological form to be an essentially spiritual undertaking."*<sup>22</sup>

Yet while development of a loosely knit Universalist religion appears to be forming among members of trans humanism's enlightenment, conservative scholars will taste the ancient origin of its heresy as the incarnation of Gnosticism and its disdain for the human body as basically an evil design that is far inferior to what we can make it. "Despite all their rhetoric about enhancing the performance of bodily functions," says Brent Waters, director of the Jerre L. and Mary Joy Stead Center for Ethics and Values, "the post human project is nevertheless driven by a hatred and loathing of the body."<sup>23</sup> Transhumanist Prof. Kevin Warwick once put it this way: "I was born human. But this was an accident of fate—a condition merely of time and place."<sup>24</sup>

Conversely, in Judeo-Christian faith, the human body is not an ill designed "meat sack," as trans humans so often deride. We were made in God's image to be temples of His Holy Spirit. The incarnation of God in the person of Jesus Christ and His bodily resurrection are the centerpieces of the Gospel and attest to this magnificent fact. While in our fallen condition human suffering is reality, most traditional Christians believe this struggle makes us stronger and that healing and improvements to the human condition are also to be desired.

---

<sup>22</sup> Jordan, Gregory "Apologia For Trans Humanist Religion," Journal Of Evolution And Technology, Published By The Institute For Ethics And Emerging Technologies, <http://jetpress.org/volume15/jordan2.html>.) Accessed 2005.

<sup>23</sup> Waters, Brent "The Future Of The Human Species (Part 1)," (<http://cbhd.org/content/future-human-species>).

<sup>24</sup> Warick, Kevin "Cyborg 1.0," Wired Magazine, (<http://www.wired.com/wired/archive/8.02/warwick.html>.) Accessed 1 February 2000.

---

Throughout history, the Church has therefore been at the forefront of disease-treatment discovery, institutions for health care, hospitals, and other medical schools and research centers. In other words, most conservative Christians do not champion techno-dystopianism. Indeed, what a day it will be when cancer is cured and we all shout "Hallelujah!"

But in the soulless post human, where DNA is recombined in mockery of the Creator and no man is made in God's image, *"there are no essential differences, or absolute demarcations, between bodily existence and computer simulation, cybernetic mechanism and biological organism, robot technology and human goals,"*<sup>25</sup> says Katherine Hayles, professor of English at the University of California, in her book, *How We Became Posthuman: Virtual Bodies in Cybernetics, Literature, and Informatics*.

*"Humans can either go gently into that good night, joining the dinosaurs as a species that once ruled the earth but is now obsolete, or hang on for a while longer by becoming machines themselves. In either case...the age of the human is drawing to a close."*<sup>26</sup>

Thus, those who were created *"in His image"* will either adapt and be assimilated to post human, or be replaced by Nephilim and the revival of their ancient mystery religion. In either case, this solidifies for some how, the more one probes into the ramifications of merging unnatural creations and no biological inventions according to the trans humanist scheme of seamlessly recalibrating humanity, a deeper malaise emerges, one that suggests those startling "parallels" between modern technology

---

<sup>25</sup> Hayles, Kathrine N. (1999) *How We Became Post Human: Virtual Bodies In Cybernetics, Literature, And Informatics*, Chicago, IL: The University Of Chicago Press, p. 3.

<sup>26</sup> Hayles, Kathrine N. (1999) *How We Became Post Human: Virtual Bodies In Cybernetics, Literature, And Informatics*, Chicago, IL: The University Of Chicago Press, p. 283.

and ancient Watchers activity may be no coincidence at all that, in fact, a dark and prophetic conspiracy is truly unfolding as it did "in the Days of Noah."<sup>27</sup>

#### **4 THE REVELATION OF THE SIGNS OF THE TIMES**

Clarence Larkin stated,<sup>28</sup> while one cannot name the exact date of the Lord's Return its nearness may be known by the **character** of the Times. As to this the New Testament gives no uncertain sound. In Daniel 12:4, 9-10, we read:

***But you, O Daniel, shut up the words and seal the book, even to the time of the end. Many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.***

***And He said, Go, Daniel! For the words are closed up and sealed until the end-time.***

***Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried. But the wicked shall do wickedly. And none of the wicked shall understand, but the wise shall understand.***

***Daniel 12:4, 9,10(MKJV)***

These words declare that the prophecies of Daniel were to be "shut up" and "sealed" until the **"TIME OF THE END."** This expression does not mean the "end of Time," but is the angelic messenger's way of referring to the *"Last Days"* of the *"Times of the Gentiles."* At which time He declares that the Book will be *"unsealed,"* and **"knowledge shall be increased."** What is here meant is *"prophetic knowledge"* of the things recorded in the Book of Daniel and other prophetic writings of the Scriptures.

---

<sup>27</sup> Horn, Thomas (2011) Pandemonium's Engine: How The End Of The Church Age, The Rise Of Trans Humanism, And The Coming Of The Übermensch (Overman) Herald Satan's Imminent And Final Assault On The Creation Of God. USA: Printed In The United States Of America. pp. 37-66.

<sup>28</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est. p. 173-175.

This is made clear by the statement that only the "wise" shall understand. That is, those who are enlightened by the Holy Spirit, and not those who merely have intellectual knowledge, for the wicked **SHALL NOT UNDERSTAND**. How wonderfully this is true of these days. The Higher Critics have labored hard to discredit the Book of Daniel, but without avail, for the Book is more studied than ever, and is being "unsealed" by Holy Spirit enlightened students of the Word of God, who clearly see that we have reached the "Time of the End," and are living in the closing days of the "Times of the Gentiles."

The "unsealing" began about 100 years ago, when the "Midnight Cry," "Behold, the Bridegroom Cometh," was heard in the "Revival of Premillennial Truth." For centuries while the Bridegroom tarried the Wise and Foolish virgins "ALL slumbered and slept," and the Church lapsed into a condition of spiritual apathy, and "The Blessed Hope" was eclipsed. But now all over the world the Blessed Hope has emerged from the shadow, and the virgins are "trimming their lamps" preparatory to going out to meet their Lord, but only the "wise" have oil in their vessels and in their lamps. We are now living in the "Fourth Watch of the Night," soon the "MORNING STAR" (Christ Revelation 22) will appear and we shall be caught out at the Rapture to meet Him and go into the Marriage Feast. Let us take a hasty glance at the "Signs of the Times." A careful study of the Chart will reveal "Ten Signs."

*I, Jesus, have sent My angel to testify these things to you over the churches. I am the Root and the Offspring of David, the bright and Morning Star.*  
*Revelation 22:16(MKJV)*

#### **4.1 Post Millennial Scoffers**

In the Book of (2 Peter 3) one reads:

*First, knowing this, that there will come in the last days scoffers walking according to their own lusts*

***and saying, Where is the promise of His coming? For since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of creation.***

***II Peter 3:3-4(MKJV)***

How true this is of the present day. The Doctrine of the Second Coming is "scoffed" at, and those who hold it are looked upon as deluded fanatics, and sad to say, this opposition comes from prominent religious leaders of the Day.

## **4.2 Apostasy As Seen As The Act Of Rebellion**

Apostasy (*a pahs' tuh see*) is the act of rebellion against, abandoning, or falling away from what one has believed.

***Let not anyone deceive you by any means. For that Day shall not come unless there first comes a falling away, and the man of sin shall be revealed, the son of perdition,***

***II Thessalonians 2:3(MKJV)***

***For the time will be when they will not endure sound doctrine, but they will heap up teachers to themselves according to their own lusts, tickling the ear.***

***And they will turn away their ears from the truth and will be turned to myths.***

***II Timothy 4:3-4(MKJV)***

This "Falling Away" is evidenced on hand, as seen according to the increase of rebellion, disobedience and sin in the Post-Modern times of Christian Society.

## **4.3 False Teachers Increasing In The "Last Days"**

In (2 Peter 2:1-2) we are warned against "False Teachers" who shall privately bring in "damnable heresies," even denying the Lord that bought them, such as Christian Scientists and Russelites, and that many shall follow their "pernicious ways," and sad to relate these "followers" are recruited from the orthodox church members, of whom

the Apostle Paul wrote to Timothy (2 Timothy 4: 3-4), saying: **"The time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears: and they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto FABLES."** This "turning away" is evidenced on every hand.

There is a "turning away" in doctrinal standards, in the demand for a regenerated church membership, in church and Sunday school attendance, and in Sabbath observance. Many churchgoers will not endure "sound doctrine." They will not go to hear those who preach the "total depravity" of man, the necessity of the "New Birth," and the conscious and endless torment of those who reject Christ as a personal Savior. They demand teachers who will "itch" (tickle) their ears with pleasing, novel and sensational doctrines.

#### **4.4 Spiritualism Forsaking Christian Belief**

In (1 Timothy 4) people are warned of a departure from the faith. That in the **"Latter Times"** (the Last Days of this Dispensation some shall "depart from the faith, giving heed to **seducing spirits** and **doctrines of devils**." This is being fulfilled in the increasing number of those who are forsaking their Christian belief to become followers of Spiritualistic Mediums and to dabble in Psychical Research.

***Therefore I solemnly witness before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, who is going to judge the living and the dead according to His appearance and His kingdom,***

***II Timothy 4:1(MKJV)***

#### **4.5 Perilous Times As Grievous Times**

Of these times Paul told Timothy as seen in 2 (Timothy 3).



***Know this also, that in the last days grievous times will be on us.***

***For men will be self-lovers, money-lovers, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy,***

***without natural affection, unyielding, false accusers, without self-control, savage, despisers of good,***

***traitors, reckless, puffed up, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God,***

***having a form of godliness, but denying the power of it; even turn away from these.***

***II Timothy 3:1-5(MKJV)***

One have neither time nor space to enlarge upon the above, but what a catalogue one have here of the "perilous conditions" of the times in which one live.

#### **4.6 Heaped Up Treasures In The "Last Days"**

In (James 5:1-6), we are told that in the "**LAST DAYS**" there shall be a class of "**rich men**," who shall have "**HEAPED** treasure together," and that by "**FRAUD**," and who shall use their ill-gotten gain in the pursuit of "pleasure" and "wantonness," and that God will hear the cry of those who have been cheated of their just share of the profits, and will send a sore judgment upon the guilty. What a description one have here of the unprincipled, speculative and profiteering spirit of the days in which man live, when men become millionaires, and multi-millionaires, in a few years. Truly people are living in the "Last Days" of this Dispensation.

#### **4.7 A Laodicean Church**

In the Message to the Church of Laodicea (Revelation 3:14-22) we have a description of the last stage of the professing Church on earth, It is described as neither "hot" nor "cold," but nauseatingly lukewarm, so that Christ says He will "spue

it out of His mouth." It boastingly will claim to be "rich" and "increased with goods," and to have "need of nothing." not even of Christ, for He will be excluded and will have to knock for admittance, and it will be ignorant of its true condition, that it is wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked. Unspeakably sad it is that this is the condition to a large extent of the professing Church of today.

***And to the angel of the church of the Laodicea write: The Amen, the faithful and true Witness, the Head of the creation of God, says these things:***

***I know your works, that you are neither cold nor hot. I would that you were cold or hot.***

***So because you are lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will vomit you out of My mouth.***

***Because you say, I am rich and increased with goods and have need of nothing, and do not know that you are wretched and miserable and poor and blind and naked,***

***I counsel you to buy from Me gold tried in the fire, so that you may be rich; and white clothing, so that you may be clothed, and so that the shame of your nakedness does not appear. And anoint your eyes with eye salve, so that you may see.***

***As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten; therefore be zealous and repent.***

***Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and will dine with him and he with Me.***

***To him who overcomes I will grant to sit with Me in My throne, even as I also overcame and have sat down with My Father in His throne.***

***He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.***

***Revelation 3:14-22(MKJV)***

## **4.8            The Fig Tree Sign As The Sign Of the Second Coming**

When Jesus' Disciples asked Him, after He had foretold the destruction of the Temple: "Tell us, when shall these things be? And what shall be the **SIGN of THY COMING**, and of the end of the world (Age)?" In (Matthew 24), Jesus gave as a "Sign" of His Coming the "**Fig-Tree Sign.**"

***And Jesus went out and departed from the temple. And His disciples came to Him to show Him the buildings of the temple.***

***And Jesus said to them, Do you not see all these things? Truly I say to you, There shall not be left here one stone on another that shall not be thrown down.***

***And as He sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? And what shall be the sign of Your coming, and of the end of the world?***

***Matthew 24:1-3(MKJV)***

The "Fig-Tree" symbolizes the nation of Israel, and it's "budding" the revival of Israel as a nation as seen in (Matthew 24).

***Now learn a parable of the fig tree. When its branch is still tender and puts out leaves, you know that summer is near.***

***Matthew 24:32(MKJV)***

Here again one have evidence of the nearness of the Lord's Return for the revival of Zionism, and the passing of the Land of Palestine into the hands of a Christian nation, opens the way for the restoration of the Jews to their own land, and the fulfillment of the Fig-Tree Sign.

The fact that the City of Jerusalem surrendered without the firing of a shot is significant. Jesus said that Jerusalem was to be trodden down of the Gentiles until "The Times of the Gentiles" should be fulfilled as seen in (Luke 21), and the taking of Jerusalem at this time may signify that "The Times of the Gentiles" is drawing to a close.

***And they shall fall by the sword's edge. And shall be led away captive into all nations. And Jerusalem shall be trodden down by the nations until the times of the nations is fulfilled.***

***Luke 21:24(MKJV)***

## 4.9 The Perplexity Of The Distress Of Nations

In (Luke 21:24-27) Jesus tells us that as the "Times of the Gentiles" come to a close, "there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth **DISTRESS OF NATIONS**, with perplexity; the sea and the waves (the peoples of the earth) roaring; men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the 'Powers of Heaven' (the Principalities and Powers of Evil, (Ephesians 6), shall be shaken.

*Put on the whole armor of God so that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.*

*For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the world's rulers, of the darkness of this age, against spiritual wickedness in high places.*

*Ephesians 6:11-12(MKJV)*

And **THEN** shall they see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory." In the prophecy of (Haggai 2), one reads:

*For so says the LORD of hosts: Yet once, it is a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land.*

*And I will shake all the nations; and the desire of all nations shall come; and I will fill this house with glory, says the LORD of hosts.*

*Haggai 2:6-7(MKJV)*

This has never been fulfilled as yet, and the present "**Distress of Nations**," the uprising of the masses in "National Revolutions," the "Tottering Thrones" and other indications that the nations are Being Shaken, is still further proof that we are living in the times just preceding the appearing of the Son of Man, the "**DESIRE OF ALL NATIONS**", who will bring peace to this troubled earth.

## **4.10            Noah Days**

The last "sign" that one would mention is the "sign" of the "Noah Days." See (Luke 17).

***And as it was in the days of Noah, so it also shall be in the days of the Son of man.***

***They ate, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark; and the flood came and destroyed them all.***

***So also as it was in the days of Lot: they ate, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they built;***

***but the day Lot went out of Sodom, it rained fire and brimstone from the heaven and destroyed them all.***

***Even so it shall be in the day when the Son of man is revealed.***

***Luke 17:26-30(MKJV)***

As it was in the days of Noah, they did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded, so shall it be in the days of the Son of Man. Where, you say, is the sin in doing these things?

They are not only commanded, they are necessary. That is true. The sin was not in "doing" them, but in doing them **"UNTIL the Flood came."** That is, they did nothing else.

They forgot to worship their Maker. So today men and women are so busily engaged in doing the good things of life that they have no time to worship God. They are so busy building homes for themselves on earth that they are neglecting to secure a home in heaven. They are more anxious that their children should make a good match on earth, than that they should be united to the Lord. They are so much concerned about their case in Court that they have forgotten that they must stand at the Judgment Bar of God.

## 5 THE NEED FOR SPECIAL REVELATION

### 5.1 What Is Special Revelation?

Robert Saucy<sup>29</sup> argues WHILE THE UNIVERSE and human nature reveal something of God, they were never designed to supply all that God wants us to know about Himself and His will for us. God made us for Himself. He created man for fellowship with Him, our Maker. Surrounded by the beauty of the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve knew the handiwork of God, but to know God personally they needed direct communication. From the beginning, therefore, God revealed Himself not only through His creation but also directly through words.

Gazing at creation and reflecting on their own nature could never help Adam and Eve come to know that God's will for their lives and His purpose for them was to rule the earth (Genesis 1) and in the the garden (Genesis 2).

***And God said, Let Us make man in Our image, after our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the heavens, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creepers creeping on the earth.***

***And God created man in His image; in the image of God He created him. He created them male and female.***

***And God blessed them. And God said to them, Be fruitful, and multiply and fill the earth, and subdue it. And have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the fowl of the heavens, and all animals that move upon the earth.***

***Genesis 1:26-28(MKJV)***

***And the LORD God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to work it and keep it.***

***Genesis 2:15(MKJV)***

---

<sup>29</sup> Saucy, Robert (1960), *Scripture, Its Power, Authority, and Relevance*, Word Publishing, Tennessee 37214, pp 45-56, 168-169, 176-177.

God had to communicate this to them in words. We don't know the full extent of God's personal communication with the first human beings. However, the form of the word "walking" in the phrase that God was "walking in the garden in the cool of the day" as seen in (Genesis 3), intimates that it was a regular occurrence.

***And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day. And Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God in the middle of the trees of the garden.***

***Genesis 3:8(MKJV)***

The same word was used later in relation to God's presence in the tabernacle. So one commentator concludes that the Garden, like the tabernacle, was the place of God's presence, and that "maybe a daily chat between the **Almighty** and his **creatures** was customary." Thus from the very beginning general revelation through nature provided the background for personal verbal communication.

The entrance of sin into the world heightened the need for personal communication. Through nature and conscience, history reveals that people have come to realize that there is a God and that He has established the world on the principles of moral law.

People are also conscious that no one is able to live up to this law consistently. But nowhere in nature or in people themselves do we find a way out of this dilemma.

The history of religions reveals that when people do not receive the special revelation of God, they find no true release from guilt. Religions are established in search of answers, but apart from special revelation, religious people remain trapped within the knowledge they have through general revelation. They know they ought to live up to certain standards, but they don't. Consequently they establish ways to compensate for their failure.

Inevitably religions founded on general revelation are religions of works. Without the special revelation of God's forgiveness through Christ, they give no rest from the burden of guilt. As the psalmist wrote, "The heavens are telling of the glory of God" (Psalms 19), but it is "the law of the Lord that is perfect, restoring the soul".

***To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David. The heavens declare the glory of God; and the expanse proclaims His handiwork.***

***Psalms 19:1(MKJV)***

***The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul; the testimony of the LORD is sure, making the simple wise.***

***Psalms 19:7(MKJV)***

Special revelation adds certain truths lacking in the revelation of God in creation, and it also gives people the ability to see the truths in general revelation correctly. Until a person is brought back to God through a personal relationship with Jesus Christ, he or she cannot view the world from God's perspective. Only the illuminating work of God can open eyes blinded by sin. The one who spoke of God's glory in the heavens was a godly person as seen above in (Psalms 19:1).

But an atheistic astronomer views the heavens and comes to a different conclusion. John Calvin, the great French Reformer, aptly illustrated the necessity of special revelation for one to read the "book of nature" correctly. "Just as old or bleary-eyed men and those with weak vision, if you thrust before them a most beautiful volume, even if they recognize it to be some sort of writing, yet can scarcely construe two words, but with the aid of spectacles will begin to read distinctly; so Scripture, gathering up the otherwise confused knowledge of God in our minds, having dispersed our dullness, clearly shows us the true God.'

Special revelation, through which God communicates directly in a personal way, is thus vital for human life. From the beginning we were created for a personal relationship with God. When sin entered the human race, it disrupted that fellowship



and brought alienation between God and humanity. But God's loving plan to restore that broken relation-ship requires all the more that He speak His word of grace to us through special revelation.

## **5.2 The Forms Of Special Revelation?**

How does God communicate with man? Some scholars say that God has revealed Himself in His mighty acts throughout history, but not in words. Others point to the personal revelation of God in Christ. Since He is called the Word of God as seen in (John 1):

***In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.***

***John 1:1(MKJV)***

They argue that the words of the Bible cannot be the Word of God. Such conflicting teachings demand that one look carefully at what the Bible says about God's special revelation.

The writer of Hebrews declared, "God after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, in these last days has spoken to us in His Son" in (Hebrews 1).

***God, who at many times and in many ways spoke in time past to the fathers by the prophets,***

***has in these last days spoken to us by His Son, whom He has appointed heir of all things, by whom also He made the worlds,***

***Hebrews 1:1-2(MKJV)***

As this statement suggests, special revelation has included a variety of methods, climaxing in the coming of the Son of God. The following is an overview of the principal methods of God's special revelation.

### **5.2.1 Theophany Through Revealing Himself**

A prominent way in which God revealed Himself during the early portions of human history recorded in Scripture was through theophanies. The word *theophany* comes from two Greek words, *theos* ("God") and *phainō* ("to make visible" or "to appear"). A theophany is therefore an appearance of God.

In some instances the form of this appearance is not revealed. For example, Scripture simply records, **"And the Lord appeared to Abram"** as seen in (Genesis 12:7). In other instances the record indicates that God took different forms in making Himself visible. On one occasion, Abraham welcomed three men into his tent to show them hospitality.

Two of them were angels, but the third was the Lord Himself as one read in (Genesis 18:1-2, 22; 19:1). The mysterious "man" who wrestled with Jacob at Peniel was also an appearance of God, for Jacob said, "I have seen God face to face, yet my life has been preserved" as seen in (Genesis 32:24, 30).

Several times God's appearing is said to be as "the Angel of the Lord." The Angel of the Lord appeared to Moses as flames of fire from within a bush that was not being consumed in (Exodus 3:2-4). But this angel also appeared in a personal form, and Scriptural statements make clear he was no ordinary angel. Something about the appearance of the angel or his prophetic message made Hagar, fleeing in the wilderness, declare, "Thou art a God who sees...Have I even remained alive here after seeing Him?" (Genesis 16:9-13). From His "awesome" appearance, His prophetic speech, and the way He "ascended in the flame of the altar?" the parents of Samson knew that the angel who spoke with them was the Angel of the Lord, whom they recognized as God (Judges 13:3-23; see also the Angel's appearance to Gideon; in Judges 6:11-24).

Although not literal "theophanies," the Angel appeared in dreams (Genesis 31:11-13) and spoke to individuals without any visible appearance (for example, Genesis 22:11-12). Many Bible students believe that the Angel of the Lord was none other than the Son Himself temporarily manifesting Him-self before He took on human nature at His birth in Bethlehem. While this may not be conclusive, the fact that He can pardon sins and the fact that He bears the name of God clearly indicate that He is a revelation of God. In one sense the coming of Christ in human flesh was also a theophany, but it differed from all the rest. In the other instances God simply assumed a form; in the birth of Jesus, God the Son took on Him-self a genuine human nature.

## **5.2.2 Dreams And Visions**

Although dreams did not play a major role in revelation, on a number of significant occasions, especially in the Books of Genesis and Daniel, God communicated to His servants in dreams.

Well-known instances include Jacob's dream of a ladder extending from earth to heaven (Genesis 28:12-16) and the dreams of Joseph concerning his being exalted above his brothers (37:5-7,9). Solomon (1 Kings 3:5) and Joseph, the husband of Mary (Matthew 1:20; 2:13, 19), also received divine revelation in dreams.

Nor were dreams limited to God's people. The pharaoh of Egypt and King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon were given dreams about God's future plans (Genesis 41:1-7; Daniel 2:3, 31-35). In both cases, however, the interpretations were conveyed through those who belonged to God's people. Most of these revelatory dreams included speech from God although some, as with Joseph's dream about himself and his brothers.

Visions were much more common as a means of revelation, especially to the prophets. In some instances what was seen was described in a pictorial scene. Ezekiel clearly saw the temple in Jerusalem in a vision (Ezekiel 8:3). However, with Amos "what he saw concerning Israel" (Amos 1:1) also involved the hearing or perceiving of words. Visions were commonly associated with prophets so much so that they were sometimes called "seers" (for example, 2 Samuel 24:11; 1 Chronicles 9:22; 2 Chronicles 16:7; 29:30).

### **5.2.3 Direct Communication**

Frequently God spoke directly to people. Expressions such as "God said," "the Word of the Lord came unto me," and "thus said the Lord" occur repeatedly in the Bible. In some instances there seems to have been an audible sound, as with Paul's hearing the voice from heaven (Acts 9:4) and young Samuel's hearing God speak (1 Samuel 3:4, 6, 8, 10-14).

***And he fell to the earth and heard a voice saying to him, Saul, Saul, why do you persecute Me?***

***Acts 9:4(MKJV)***

***And the LORD called Samuel. And he answered, Here am I.***

***1 Samuel 3:6: And the LORD called again, Samuel! And Samuel arose and went to Eli and said, Here am I, for you called me. And he answered, I did not call, my son. Go back, lie down.***

***1 Samuel 3:8: And the LORD called Samuel again, the third time. And he arose and went to Eli and said, Here am I, for you called me. And Eli saw that the LORD had called the child.***

***1 Samuel 3:10: And the LORD came and stood, and called as at other times, Samuel, Samuel! Then Samuel answered, Speak, for Your servant hears.***

***1 Samuel 3:11: And the LORD said to Samuel, Behold, I will do a thing in Israel at which both the ears of everyone who hears it shall tingle.***

***1 Samuel 3:12: In that day I will confirm to Eli all that which I have spoken as to his house, beginning and making an end.***

***I Samuel 3:13: For I have told him that I will judge his house forever for the iniquity which he knows, because his sons made themselves vile and he did not restrain them.***

***I Samuel 3:14: And therefore I have sworn to the house of Eli that the iniquity of Eli's house shall not be purged with sacrifice nor offering forever.***

***I Samuel 3:4, 6, 8, 10-14(MKJV)***

At other times it must have been some type of inward speech, such as we may use in silent prayer to God. When an angel commanded Philip to "join" the chariot of the Ethiopian official (Acts 8:29), or the Holy Spirit told Peter that three men were looking for him (Acts 10:19) or told the church to send out Barnabas and Saul (Acts 13:2), it was probably this type of speaking.

This kind of disclosure may have been what Paul received from Christ in the Arabian desert (Galatians 1:11-17).

A unique direct communication was given to Moses. (Exodus 33:11) states, "Thus the LORD used to speak to Moses face to face, just as a man speaks to a friend."

When Miriam and Aaron questioned the authority of Moses, God said that He spoke with them through visions and dreams, but with Moses, "I speak mouth to mouth," meaning with a direct intimacy (Numbers 12:6-8).

***And He said, Hear now My words. If there is a prophet among you, I the LORD will make Myself known to him in a vision, and will speak to him in a dream.***

***Not so, My servant Moses. He is faithful in all My house.***

***I will speak with him mouth to mouth, even clearly, and not in dark speeches. And he shall behold the likeness of the LORD. Why then were you not afraid to speak against My servant Moses?***

***Numbers 12:6-8(MKJV)***

## **5.2.4 Negotiation Through Angels**

Occasionally God used angels to communicate His revelation. They appeared in this role especially at the beginning of a new work of God. For example, the Law was given to Moses through the mediation of angels (Acts 7) and (Galatians 3).

*who received the Law through disposition of angels, and did not keep it.*  
*Acts 7:53(MKJV)*

*Why then the Law? It was added because of transgressions, until the Seed should come to those to whom it had been promised, being ordained through angels in the Mediator's hand.*

*Galatians 3:19(MKJV)*

An angel also announced the good news of the birth of the Savior (Luke 2).

*And the angel said to them, Do not fear. For behold, I give to you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.*

*And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host, praising God and saying,*

*Luke 2:10, 13(MKJV)*

One of the most interesting examples of revelation through an angel occurred with Daniel. On two occasions God answered his prayer for Israel by sending messages through angels, one of who was Gabriel (Daniel 9:20-21; 10:10-21).

'While angels are superior to people in many ways, it is clear that they are only messengers of God's Word and not its originators. Their limitation in knowledge is evident in Peter's statement that even angels "long to look" into the good news of the gospel (1 Peter 1:12).

### **5.2.5 Miracles Through Communication**

When God communicated His Word directly to man, He often gave evidence of His presence by performing miracles. By a miracle, we are referring to an act that is different from ordinary events. Normally God operates His universe according to what we call "natural laws:" which He has established as part of creation. A miracle occurs when God chooses to act in an extraordinary way for the purpose of revealing Himself.

The biblical language for miracles shows their revelatory function. Speaking of the miracles of Jesus, Peter described them as "miracles and wonders and signs" (Acts 2).

***Men, Israelites, hear these words. Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by powerful works, and wonders and miracles, which God did through Him in your midst, as you yourselves also know,***

***Acts 2:22(MKJV)***

This is not a reference to three different kinds of acts, but the same act seen from three viewpoints. The term "miracle" looks at the deed as a display of power. From the perspective of their striking character and the amazement evoked, they were "wonders." And the word "signs" points directly to their purpose as revelatory events. Signs in Scripture are like pointers that direct our attention to something.

According to Old Testament prophecies, the Messiah would come and work miracles as signs that point to His messiah ship. For this reason the Jews continually asked Jesus, "What sign do You show to us?" (John 2:18; see also Matt. 12:38; 16:1). The miracle of the healing of the paralytic (Mark 2) illustrates these three dimensions of a miracle. Clearly, God's dynamic power was displayed when the paralytic man lying on the pallet got up and walked (2:12).

***And immediately he arose and took up his cot and went out before all. So that all were amazed and glorified God, saying, We never saw it this way.***

***Mark 2:12(MKJV)***

The effect of wonder is seen in the statement that "they were all amazed and were glorifying God, saying, 'We have never seen anything like this' " (Mark 2:12). But Jesus stated the ultimate point of the miracle: "that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins" (Mark 2:10). This authority belongs only to God; thus the miracle was a revelation of the deity of Jesus Christ.

Miracles are involved in revelation in two important ways. First, they point to the fact that revelation is happening. They make us sit up and take notice that God is at work. Second, they reveal something of the nature of God's power and the purpose for which He exerted it. Although in some cases it may be difficult to see anything more than the evidence of God's power over nature, as in Jesus turning water into wine (John 2), most miracles in Jesus' ministry revealed God's power to overcome sin and its effects.

The healing of the sick and lame and the restoration of sight to the blind all point to the triumph of God over the misery of sin. The raising of Lazarus and others who had died announced the fact that sin's ultimate power is broken, and death, the last enemy of humanity, can be vanquished by God's power. The resurrection of Christ is portrayed as the ultimate demonstration of the supernatural miraculous power of God (Ephesians 2:19-20).

***Now therefore you are no longer strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God,***

***and are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the chief cornerstone,***

***Ephesians 2:19-20(MKJV)***



While miracles are a form of revelation, their full significance is known only through the Scriptures. Miracles are thus seen as signs pointing to messengers of the Word. As Peter wrote, miracles "attested" or "accredited" the person of Christ to the people. They validated His person and therefore also His words, which declared God's will and purpose. The apostle Paul wrote that the miraculous works that God performed through him was "signs of a true apostle" (2 Corinthians 12:12). These "signs and wonders and miracles" validated Paul as an apostle of Christ and therefore affirmed that his teaching was from God.

***Truly the signs of the apostles were worked out among you in all patience, in miracles and in wonders, and by works of power.***

***II Corinthians 12:12(MKJV)***

## **5.2.6 The Person Of Christ**

The writer to the Hebrews declared that "in these last days God has spoken to us in His Son" (Hebrew 1). In this Word the revelation of God reaches its climax. The "many portions" of God's speech that had previously been revealed through "many ways" were only fragments pointing to the coming of Him "in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge" (Colossians 2).

***has in these last days spoken to us by His Son, whom He has appointed heir of all things, by whom also He made the worlds,***

***Hebrews 1:2(MKJV)***

***that their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and to all riches of the full assurance of the understanding, to the full knowledge of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;***

***Colossians 2:3: in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.***

***Colossians 2:2-3(MKJV)***

In the Incarnation one gain additional knowledge of God as He revealed Himself in a different way. For Christ did not so much make a revelation of God as He is the

revelation. He is God incarnate, that is, God in human flesh. It is one thing to receive knowledge about a person, but this never compares with meeting the person himself.

In Jesus Christ God Himself confronted the world. John declared that "no man has seen God at any time; the only begotten God...He has explained Him" (John 1).

***No one has seen God at any time; the Only-begotten Son, who is in the bosom of the Father, He has declared Him.***

***John 1:18(MKJV)***

This must not be interpreted to mean that Jesus was simply a greater teacher of divine truth than all previous teachers. He "explained" God in the sense that to view Him was to see God, even as he told Philip, "He who has seen Me has seen the Father" (John 14:9). He could say this because "in Him all the fullness of Deity" was resident; God in all His fullness dwelt in Christ in bodily form (Colossians 2:9).

***For in Him dwells all the fullness of the Godhead bodily.***

***Colossians 2:9(MKJV)***

The revelation of God in Christ was given through His teachings. He was recognized as *the* Teacher sent from God (John 3:2), speaking the words of God as none had done before.

***He came to Jesus by night and said to Him, Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher come from God; for no man can do these miracles which you do unless God is with him.***

***John 3:2(MKJV)***

But in addition to words, God spoke through Jesus' person and work, which were climaxed in the Cross-and the Resurrection. In Jesus' sacrifice for sin, God revealed His infinite love and also His infinite holiness and righteousness. Jesus is not simply the climax of revelation; He is the theme of all revelation. Scripture testifies to Him

(John 5:39), for the prophets before Him and the apostles after Him were inspired by the Holy Spirit, who is also the Spirit of Christ (1 Peter 1:11) and (Revelation 19:10).

### **5.2.7 The Scriptures**

One final form of revelation is the written Word. Much of the Bible is the written record of revelation, which was given in many of the forms we have already noted. Dreams and visions were recorded, and direct communication of God's Words to the prophets was written down. When God spoke directly to people, they were conscious of His controlling influence. When dreams and visions occurred, the individuals were basically passive recipients of the message of God. Most certainly, when God wrote the Ten Commandments with His finger on the tablets of stone, Moses could do nothing but bring them to the people.

On the other hand, in contrast to those who were conscious of the overpowering influence of God in giving His revelation to them, a number of the human writers of Scripture wrote the Word without such conscious influence. The Spirit of God worked within and through their own personalities to reveal His truth. Their minds and emotions were totally involved as they recorded God's truth. Yet the Spirit of God controlled them so that what they wrote was exactly what God wanted to communicate. We might say that in this form of revelation God and man were joined more closely than in any way except in the person of Christ. It is only natural that such revelation would occur primarily in New Testament times when God by His Spirit began to take up residence in believers' hearts.

All these forms of revelation show that there was a fundamental progression in the types of revelation used throughout history. All these methods, other than that of the unique person of Christ, may be summed up in three forms - appearance of God, or theophanies; some type of direct communication or prophecy; and inspiration. They

advance from the visible and external to the internal, from what stands apart to what is intimately near. This clearly follows the progression of God's entire relationship with human beings. In the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve were separated from God because of sin. But through redemption in Christ, God brings believers near Him and by His Spirit He resides in the human heart in ultimate fellowship. Despite these differences in the forms and relationships, however, the Bible never makes any distinction as to the revelatory value of each form. All equally revealed God.

Several facts about special revelation may be noted. First, special revelation is act and word. Contrary to many scholars who see God's special revelation only in the "mighty acts" of God, the various forms God used to communicate with His people demonstrate that He used both actions and words. All the forms mentioned could be categorized under one or both of these headings. Without God's interpretation of His actions, they would not have been fully understood. Many witnessed the Exodus out of Egypt, the Babylonian captivity of Israel, the death of Christ, or the empty tomb. But all did not see the same meaning in these acts. Only God's revelation can tell us, for example, that the crucifixion of Christ was "for our sins." Unless God reveals the meaning of His actions, we can never be sure of their full significance.

A revelation through words is also necessary for a personal relationship. While perhaps most people would choose deafness over blindness, in reality the blind suffer less emotional disturbance than do the deaf. The reason has to do with the importance of words for personal relationship. As Bernard Ramm explained, "The warm personal relationships of life are carried on by means of conversation, and the deaf man is largely severed from those relationships."

The soundless world is far more frustrating than the sightless world. Radio drama is entertaining but a television drama robbed of the sound track is drained of all meaning. *In life as in drama it is the word which carries the meaning; it is the word*

*which is the element of cohesion; and it is the word which is the necessary presupposition for warm personal friendships."* God's special revelation is designed for personal fellowship. And this requires words so that one might understand God's actions and respond to them.

Second, special revelation is personal and verbal. The fact that the Bible is the Word of God is the subject of the following chapter. But it is necessary here simply to note that our review of the forms of special revelation demonstrates that there is no dichotomy between Christ as the personal Word of God and God's verbal Word. It is, of course, possible to focus on the words of Scripture without fellowshiping with the living Word of whom it speaks. Some of the Jews in Jesus' day studied the Scriptures intently, believing them to give the way of life. But Jesus told them, "It is these [Scriptures] that bear witness of Me; and you are unwilling to come to Me, that you may have life" (John 5:39-40). Unfortunately some "Bible-believing" people know all about the Bible, but they do not have a living relationship with Christ.

According to the Scriptures, there can be no real separation between the written words and the personal Word. In our own communication with another person, his or her words are the way we get to know that person's thoughts and feelings. In a real sense a person's words are an extension of that individual as he or she seeks to bridge the distance between himself or herself and another. So the living God who came to earth in the person of His Son, Jesus Christ, reveals His heart and mind to humanity through the medium of language, the verbal Word of God.

Third, special revelation is intelligible only in the context of general revelation. God reveals Himself in His handiwork and in personal communication. The artist and the architect, in fact all of us, tell something about ourselves in what we do. Whether a person's desk is neat or messy reveals something about that individual. An artist also communicates in words to his family and friends, and those words go beyond simply

letting his work speak for him. So God reveals Himself in the splendor and awesomeness of the work of His creation and also in direct and personal communication with His personal creatures.

The entrance of sin brought spiritual and personal alienation from God and with it a disastrous loss of personal communication. Like Adam, sinners feel uncomfortable in the presence of God. His awesome holiness made the people of Israel ask for Moses to talk to God for them. But in love God has sought out sinful people, communicating His Grace in Actions and Word in order to bring them back into that fellowship for which life was designed. Biblical history reveals that this communication has grown and will grow until believers will one day be at home in His presence.

The revelation of God in nature and His personal communication in special revelation belong together. The Lord speaks His Word and acts within history to restore our relationship with Him. But without the knowledge of God as the Almighty Creator and Ruler of all things, the One who is righteous and good, these special interventions through acts and words to bring us back to Him would not be intelligible or credible. It would be difficult to accept Him as Redeemer if one did not know Him also as Creator.

## **6 AN OVERVIEW OF DECEPTION IN THE LAST DAYS**

### **6.1 Revealing The Same Old Lie**

Satan and his "salesmen" are busier today trying to sell the same old lie. God is the author of life and He has promised eternal life with Him only to those who are born

again through faith in what His Only Begotten Son did for them on the Cross - dying for their sins as seen in (John 3) and (1Corinthians 15).

***For God so loved the world that He gave His only-begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.***

***John 3:16(MKJV)***

Still, why would anyone want to believe in Jesus Christ when they can have a needle shot in the arm or take a pill and have eternal, immortal life? This is the same old lie, based on so-called scientific knowledge that man does not have to obey God to live forever as seen in 1 Corinthians 15). As humans, even Christians, this present body is subject to the temptations of the eyes, lusts of the flesh, and the pride of life. People are also subject to pain, sorrow, suffering, and physical death. Yet, God *Himself* promised a glorious transhuman change, however, not by medical science.<sup>30</sup>

***Behold, I speak a mystery to you; we shall not all fall asleep, but we shall all be changed;***

***in a moment, in a glance of an eye, at the last trumpet. For a trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall all be changed.***

***For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.***

***1 Corinthians 15:51-53(MKJV)***

## **6.2 Increasing Of Knowledge**

As it was in the Days of Noah, as Daniel prophesied and referenced by Jesus, knowledge has increased. The masses are running to and fro. Without the increase of knowledge as prophesied, there would be no telephones, radios, televisions,

---

<sup>30</sup> Horn, Thomas (2011) Pandemonium's Engine: How The End Of The Church Age, The Rise Of Trans Humanism, And The Coming Of The Übermensch (Overman) Herald Satan's Imminent And Final Assault On The Creation Of God. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 257.

automobiles, airplanes, nuclear weapons, or transhuman efforts. The Nephilim are among us again.

However, just as God saved **faithful** Noah and his household from the judgment of the Flood, He will save the **faithful** from the coming judgment of Great Tribulation that will surely come soon upon this present world. (1 Thessalonians 4):

***For the Lord Himself shall descend from Heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ shall rise first.***

***Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air. And so we shall ever be with the Lord.***

***1 Thessalonians 4:16:***

A subheading in the article titled “2045: The Year Man Becomes Immortal” in the February 21, 2011 edition of *Time Magazine* states: “Within 30 years, we will have the technological means to create super-human intelligence. Shortly after, the human era will be ended.”<sup>31</sup>

False science dictates the obvious: human bodies have too many flaws, one of which is death at around the age of seventy years or shortly thereafter. I have briefly noted this article at the beginning of this chapter, but what are our newly appointed body-makers going to do about it?<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>31</sup> Grossman, Lev “2045: The Year Man Becomes Immortal,” *TIME Magazine*, February 2011, <http://www.time.com/time/health/article/0,8599,2048138,00>

<sup>32</sup> Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium's Engine: How The End Of The Church Age, The Rise Of Trans Humanism, And The Coming Of The Übermensch (Overman) Herald Satan's Imminent And Final Assault On The Creation Of God.* USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 258-259.



### **6.3 As In The Days Of Lot**

As Jesus said, the entire world is reverting back to the days of Lot. The World Health Organization's Web site notes that 59 percent of the females in Africa have HIV or AIDS.

Special laws for Sodomites have been introduced in the U.N. for worldwide enforcement. Also, as it was in the days of the biblical Noah, violence is filling the earth. Wars and rumors of wars continue, earthquakes are increasing, and man is looking for eternal life in all the wrong places.

The Gospel is being published, broadcast by radio, presented over television, 365 days a year, twenty-four hours a day. This is one of the most important signs that the end of the age is near as seen in (Matthew 24:14).<sup>33</sup>

***And this gospel of the kingdom shall be proclaimed in all the world as a witness to all nations. And then the end shall come.***

***Matthew 24:14(MKJV)***

## **7 THE FINAL CONFLICT**

Frank and Ida Mae Hammond stated<sup>34</sup> that: Man knows that throughout Biblical history, God on occasion spoke to His servants through visions and dreams. On the day of Pentecost, Peter quoted from the prophet Joel:

***"And it shall be in the last days, says God, I will pour out of My Spirit upon all***

---

<sup>33</sup> Horn, Thomas (2011) Pandemonium's Engine: How The End Of The Church Age, The Rise Of Trans Humanism, And The Coming Of The Übermensch (Overman) Herald Satan's Imminent And Final Assault On The Creation Of God. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 260-261.

<sup>34</sup> Hammond Frank And Ida Mae (1973) Pigs In The Parlor, A Practical Guide To Deliverance. USA: Printed In The United States of America., pp. 145-146.

***flesh. And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams.***

***Acts 2:17(MKJV)***

One pray that it will be a blessing and inspiration to you as it has been to many others with whom it has been shared.

## **7.1 The Interpretation Of Dreams**

Frank and Ida Mae Hammond argued<sup>35</sup> that: A spiritual dream cannot be figured out it must be interpreted. As the Holy Spirit recalled the dream, He will begin to give mankind the interpretation.

Christian friends, mankind should note that they are in the end of the age. The final conflict between the forces of Satan and the army of God is ALREADY under way. One see the evidences of it on every side. It is the call unto battle. There is no more time to delay. The warfare is on! The question is are Christians involved?

## **7.2 The Sequel Relationship**

Frank and Ida Mae Hammond discussed<sup>36</sup> that: Home base represented just what it signified home relationships. The Spirit shows man that everything began at home base and ended at home base. When the members of the Lord's team came to bat they had to start at home and get a hit there.

---

<sup>35</sup> Hammond Frank And Ida Mae (1973) *Pigs In The Parlor, A Practical Guide To Deliverance*. USA: Printed In The United States of America., p 146.

<sup>36</sup> Hammond Frank And Ida Mae (1973) *Pigs In The Parlor, A Practical Guide To Deliverance*. USA: Printed In The United States of America., pp 152-153.

No matter how impressively they ran the bases of social, business or even church relationships, if they had not gotten started right at home they were nothing but hypocrites!

God is placing an emphasis upon right home-life today. He is setting Christian homes in order. He is restoring the husband and father to his place of authority in the home. The home is becoming the center of spiritual life. This is God's divine order.

Men cannot be right in any other relationship in life until there lives are right at home. The devil's team is throwing fastballs and curve balls at home. The devil must be defeated first of all in his onslaught against our homes. Each member of the family must assume the roll that God has ordained:

***Wives, submit yourselves to your own husbands, as to the Lord.***

***Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it,***

***Ephesians 5:22, 25(MKJV)***

***Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right.***

***Ephesians 6:1(MKJV)***

The first test for Christian living comes at home. If the love, joy and peace of the Holy Spirit does not issue from our lives in relationship with members of our own household, then Satan has gained a victory over us.

When it becomes apparent that Satan has already gained a foothold in our home and through oneself, it is a call to spiritual warfare. Defeat the devil in your own life and in your family and then you will be able to carry the warfare on into other areas of life.

In His parable of the mote and the beam Jesus showed us that man must get their own life in order before they can minister to others. Let's be sure there are no pigs in our own parlors.

## **8 CONCLUSION**

Faithfulness to Scripture is the standard for evaluating contextualization. This raises the question of what aspects of the Truth of the Gospel have cross-cultural applicability. This thesis has suggested that the Gospel can be viewed in such a way as to enable man to distinguish between its categorically valid and principally valid aspects.

To determine which type of validity applies to a given Biblical teaching one have proposed the use of several hermeneutical principles, which involve public meaning, the user's meaning, and change in meaning.

Many people live as if there were no God, and some hold views of reality, such as naturalism, that logically exclude God. But modern surveys as well as human history demonstrate the truth of Scripture that human beings recognize the existence of God (though they don't always acknowledge it). He created man to know Him, and therefore He makes Himself known. His revelation fully satisfies our questions about the meaning of human existence. Through the world about us He reveals His eternal existence and almighty power.

Through His special action and words He communicates His personal character as a God of love and gracious redemption. Through it all He reveals Himself so that we might know Him, who to know is eternal life. Most of the "so-called" scientific problems in the Bible stem from an approach to reality that rules out the supernatural.

Miracles are rejected as myth because they contradict natural laws. When the existence of God is accepted, however, one has no legitimate reason for denying His super-natural intervention in His creation as He wishes. To insist that what the Bible

calls demonic activity is unscientific superstition is to base belief on *unproven presuppositions* and not on true science.

Since evolution has unsuccessfully demonstrated, there is no basis to charge the Bible with error in relation to creation. Bible-believing scientists and an increasing number of advocates of evolution affirm that evolution is only an unproven theory.

From the beginning of time, mankind has been tempted with an alternate but deceptive relationship, one that promises to satisfy our fleshly ambitions and lusts but brings us only death. The books of Daniel and Revelation documents Satan's final attempt to proclaim himself as the Messiah and force all mankind to worship him as God. He still presumes that the deception and subjugation of mankind will bring him the authority and identity he seeks.

This power fills end time dilution and deception emphasized in **mistranslation** and interpretation out of God's Word. Through the lack of proper Biblical hermeneutics humankind will see a great falling away from the truth (2 Thessalonians 2), and (Matthew 24:5, and 24) many will be deceived, as the world become deluded.

***Let not anyone deceive you by any means. For that Day shall not come unless there first comes a falling away, and the man of sin shall be revealed, the son of perdition,***

***II Thessalonians 2:3(MKJV)***

***For many will come in My name, saying, I am Christ, and will deceive many.***

***For false Christs and false prophets will arise and show great signs and wonders; so much so that, if it were possible, they would deceive even the elect.***

***Matthew 24:5, 24(MKJV)***

The devil was behind some wicked transhumanism business in Noah's day and he has never changed his lie or evil ways since. He is behind the transhuman science of our day. He lied to Eve when he told her if she ate of the fruit of the Tree of the

Knowledge of Good and Evil she wouldn't die, but the front cover of *TIME Magazine* for February 21, 2011 presented the startling news "2045 - The Year Man Becomes Immortal."<sup>37</sup>

The reader might think the article is referencing some kind of joke or advertising ploy, but it was not so. The genetic scientists are dead serious.

Transformation means the modification or changing of an entity into different shape, form, or identity for a purpose other than was first intended. Satan cannot create; therefore, he attempts to transform what God has created into something that he can use to exalt himself above God (2 Corinthians 11).<sup>38</sup>

***For such ones are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ.***

***Did not even Satan marvelously transform himself into an angel of light?***

***Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also transform themselves as ministers of righteousness, whose end shall be according to their works.***

***II Corinthians 11:13-15(MKJV)***

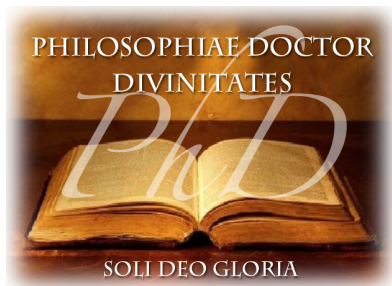
-----oOo-----

---

<sup>37</sup> Grossman, Lev "2045: The Year Man Becomes Immortal," *TIME Magazine*, February 2011, <http://www.time.com/time/health/article/0,8599,2048138,00>

<sup>38</sup> Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium's Engine: How The End Of The Church Age, The Rise Of Trans Humanism, And The Coming Of The Übermensch (Overman) Herald Satan's Imminent And Final Assault On The Creation Of God.* USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 251.





## CHAPTER FOUR

### REVELATION OF THE MYSTERIES AND HIDDEN MEANING OF BIBLICAL SCRIPTURE

*The spiritual path seems to have a special connection to the story of Babel since the builders of Shinar (like we of the New Age) sought to build a tower to reach to the heavens. In our attempts to transcend purely physical limitations, we too are reaching to the heavens.*

*Magical Blend Magazine Issue 15,1987, p. 1*

*And I heard another voice from Heaven, saying, Come out of her, My people, that you may not be partakers of her sins, and that you may not receive of her plagues.*

*Revelation 18:4(MKJV)*

*And the whole earth was of one language and of one speech.*

*Genesis 11:2: And it happened, as they traveled from the east, they found a plain in the land of Shinar. And they lived there.*

*Genesis 11:3: And they said to one another, Come, let us make brick and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and they had asphalt for mortar.*

*Genesis 11:4: And they said, Come, let us build us a city and a tower, and its top in the heavens. And let us make a name for ourselves, lest we be scattered upon the face of the whole earth.*

*Genesis 11:1-4(MKJV)*

## 1 INTRODUCTION

According to Rob Sciba<sup>1</sup> the word **Babylon** comes up 265 times in a keyword search of the King James Bible, or 273 times in the New American Standard Bible. Even just a cursory glance over the various references reveals that it is not good to be in Babylon. It is a place associated with captivity and evil. It is the city that was first

---

<sup>1</sup> Skiba, Rob (2011) Babylon Rising And The First Shall Be Last. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 200.



founded by Nimrod. There he build a tower with the goal of “reaching” into Heaven. After crossing over from this world into the Heavenly realm, his plan was to make war with the angels, overtake the Throne Room, kill God and set up false gods to take His place, (Genesis 11). And at least in theory, according to the text – apart from killing God – it would appear some of that may actually have been possible.

***And the LORD said, Behold! The people is one and they all have one language. And this they begin to do. And now nothing which they have imagined to do will be restrained from them.***

**Genesis 11:6(MKJV)**

Babylon was situated on the Euphrates River, the original foundation of which is described under the word Babel. Many ancient traditions, credit Nimrod as the builder of both the Tower of Babel and the city.

Texe Marrs Stated that:<sup>2</sup> The more things change, the more they tend to stay the same. Thus it is that in considering the mysterious architecture unmasked in this book, it is accurate to point out that, *"the end is revealed in the beginning."* The building of the ancient *Tower of Babel* — and its subsequent, fateful end — perfectly epitomizes this ironic, profound historical principle.

The Tower of Babel was built by Nimrod and his queen, Semiramis. Their goals as builders are instructive for us today. It is recorded in (*Genesis 11*) that they declared, *"let us build a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth."*

A chief goal, then, was that of reaching unto heaven. Was this not a sin of *hubris*, or pride? Why seek and supplicate the great God in heaven? They reasoned. Why not

---

<sup>2</sup> Marrs, Texe (2008) *Mysterious Monuments*, Encyclopedia Of Secret Illuminati Designs, Masonic Architecture, And Occult Places. USA: Published By River Crest Publishing, 1708 Patterson Road, Austin, Texas 78733., pp. 479-482.

build a tower so that man may reach unto heaven. They desired to be gods. Their aim, as the occultists and illuminists put it, was to "*marry earth and heaven*," to fuse the Cosmic Order, to meld the terrestrial and the celestial: In sum, to become gods.

Moreover, they intended to build both a city *and* a tower. This would stamp Babylon as a great, earthly kingdom and power of renowned reputation. The annals of history indicate that all ambitious emperors, kings, and potentates seem to be desirous of a city and a tower (or monument) to exemplify their majesty and grandeur. Alexander the Great, Herod, the Caesars, Napoleon, Hitler, Stalin pursued monumental building projects. Even America's 18th century founding fathers sought the same in their plans for and building of Washington, D.C.

The builders of the ancient city of Babylon and its Tower of Babel reasoned further that the construction of a tower was necessary, "*lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth*." Here we observe the desire for *unity* the quest to unite the disparate peoples, to give them a common name. This goal would also be realized by the creation of a marvelous architectural edifice the Tower of Babel that would effectively be a *symbol* of that common unity of purpose and spirit.

So, we find an alchemically volatile combination of reasons for the grandiose city and tower project: An excess of human pride, a haughty spirit of rebellion against the one true God, the desire to claim a name and a kingdom, and the quest to spiritually and physically unify the people, creating *Or do Ab Chao* (Order out of Chaos). On top of all this, the occult objective of pursuing spiritual equilibrium, the making of "*As Above, So Below*" a reality, was paramount: the alchemical marriage of heaven and earth "*reaching unto the heavens*."

### ***Ending Their Scheme for "E Pluribus Unum"***

Interestingly, God well understood the rationale behind this ancient, pre-Weishaupt Illuminati building project. And He took appropriate action to end their little *E Pluribus Unum* ("Out of Many, One") scheme:

***And the Lord came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men builded.***

***And the Lord said, Behold the people is one, and they have all one language: and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do.***

***Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech.***

***So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city.***

***Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the Lord did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the Lord scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.***

***Genesis 11:5-9(MKJV)***

### ***Modern Attempts to Build a "Tower of Babel" World Order***

From the ruination of Babylon's ill-fated tower to today, illuminist-minded tyrants and schemers have sought to build their own version of the Tower of Babel. They have inspired numerous civilizations, built cities, and erected more and more towers. This revolutionary process continues today with the recent, announced intentions of the U.S.A., the world's greatest superpower, to force a "*democratic*" New World Order on the inhabitants of the planet. Oddly enough, the 21st century conquest of Iraq, the physical heir to the land and culture of ancient Babylon, is the very cornerstone of this contemporary project by the United States and its allies, Britain and Israel, to instill *Ordo Ab Chao* and reshape the globe into a clay-like common mold.

But war is not the only tool being used by the elite to rebuild a modern-day global Tower of Babel order. English is today's universal language, but also the computer and its internet networks are a common denominator, not to mention the drive to

unify money and banking systems under a corporate conglomerate, umbrella superstructure. Can we not say that the "architecture" of the world order — whether we speak of political economic, cultural, or digital architecture — is fast becoming a reality. What we have is a "Pan" world All is One, All belongs to the unified Beast System (*Revelation 17*).

The Tower of Babylon seems, therefore, to be the prototype and model structure for the proliferation of towers that have succeeded it. Just as *MYSTERY, BABYLON* is identified in the scriptures not as merely an end in itself, but as a fertile model and archetype —even a "mother" for what was and is to come; so that "*MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT*" is, in fact, "*THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH*" (*Revelation 17:5*).

## 2 THE MYSTERIES

Writing to the Corinthians Paul says:

*Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God*

*1 Corinthians 4: 1*

In Romans 16 Paul speaks of what he calls "My Gospel," which he calls the "Revelation of the Mysteries," which was kept "**Secret**" since the world began, but now is made "**Manifest**."

*Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,*

***But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:***

***(Romans 16:25-26 KJV)***

This was the “revelation” that was promised to Paul at his conversion, and which comprises the **“Mysteries of God.”**

***But rise and stand on your feet, for I have appeared to you for this purpose, to make you a minister and a witness both of what you saw, and in what I shall appear to you;***

***delivering you from the people and the nations, to whom I now send you***

***in order to open their eyes so that they may turn from darkness to light, and from the authority of Satan to God, so that they may receive remission of sins and an inheritance among those who are sanctified by faith in Me.***

***(Acts 26:16-18 MKJV)***

Clarence Larkin Stated<sup>3</sup> that The “Mysteries” are eleven in quantity, eight of which were revealed to Paul. Of the remaining three, our Lord Jesus Christ revealed one, and two were revealed to the Apostle John. A “Mystery” in the New Testament sense is not something that cannot be understood, but is some plan or purpose of God that has been known to Him from the beginning, but which He has withheld from the knowledge of men until the time came from Him to reveal it. Let us examine these “Mysteries” in the order, which they are fulfilled.

- The Mystery Of The “Incarnation.”

“Without controversy great is the **‘Mystery Of Godliness’**: God (Jesus Christ) was **manifest in the flesh**, justified in the **Spirit**, seen angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.

---

<sup>3</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 151-152.

***And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen by angels, preached among nations, believed on in the world, and received up into glory.***

***I Timothy 3:16(MKJV)***

It is no mystery that God should reveal Himself by speaking from the Heavens, as on Mount Sinai, but that He should take on the “Human Form” and “Tabernacle” among us that was a great mystery. This He did in the person of Jesus Christ. (See John 1)

***In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.***

***He was in the beginning with God.***

***All things came into being through Him, and without Him not even one thing came into being that has come into being.***

***In Him was life, and the life was the light of men.***

***And the light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overtake it.***

***There was a man sent from God; his name was John.***

***This one came as a witness, to bear witness concerning the Light, so that all might believe through him.***

***He was not that Light, but was sent to bear witness of that Light.***

***He was the true Light; He enlightens every man coming into the world.***

***He was in the world, and the world came into being through Him, and the world did not know Him.***

***He came to His own, and His own received Him not.***

***But as many as received Him, He gave to them authority to become the children of God, to those who believe on His name,***

***who were born, not of bloods, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but were born of God.***

***And the Word became flesh, and tabernacled among us. And we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and of truth.***

***John 1:1-14(MKJV)***

So Jesus could say, “He that hath seen Me seen the Father.” Read this in John 14:9.

- The Mystery Of The “Divine Indwelling.”

In (Colossians 1), Paul speaks of another “Mystery” which had been hid from “Ages” and from “Generations,” but was then made manifest to the saints. Paul calls it the Mystery of “**Christ in You.**” This is a great mystery because it is the mystery of the “**New Birth.**” A mystery that brought from Nicodemus the exclamation – **How** can a man be born when he is old?”

*Nicodemus said to Him, How can a man be born when he is old? Can he enter the second time into his mother's womb and be born?*

*John 3:4(MKJV)*

The New Birth is wonderful, but it is a wonderful fact. It is the union of the Divine Nature and ours. So that just as Jesus became one with us by His taking our human nature, so we become one with Him by taking on the Divine Nature. The mystery of this union is, that it is a union of “identity.” We are just as much a part of Christ as the members of the body are a part of the body. We read this in (1 Corinthians 12)

*For as the body is one and has many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body; so also is Christ.*

*1 Corinthians 12:12(MKJV)*

It is for Jesus Christ to live in us, see (Galatians 2).

*I have been crucified with Christ, and I live; yet no longer I, but Christ lives in me. And that life I now live in the flesh, I live by faith toward the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself on my behalf.*

*Galatians 2:20(MKJV)*

- The Mystery Of The “union Of Jews And Gentiles In One Body Called The Church.”

In his letter to the saints at Ephesus (Ephesians 3:1-11), Paul says, that God by revelation made known to him the “Mystery,” which in other Ages had not been made known unto the sons of men, “That the Gentiles should be ‘Fellow Heirs,’ and of the ‘Same Body,’ and partakers of His promise in Christ by the Gospel.”

It is almost impossible to overestimate the bitter “Race Hatred” which existed in Christ’s day between Jew and Gentile. The Jews looked upon the Gentiles as “dogs,” and the Gentiles despised the Jews. This was therefore to them a revelation that God was going in this Dispensation to take some Jews and some Gentiles and form of them a “New Body” and called it the Church. In Christ all race and class distinctions disappear, and it is only in the Church that such a “Holy Brotherhood” can be found as the world is seeking.

- The Mystery Of The “Seven Stars” And The “Seven Candle Sticks.”

To the Apostle John was revealed the Mystery of the “Seven Stars,” and the “Seven Candlesticks.” As can be seen in (Revelation 1).

***And I turned to see the voice that spoke with me.***

***And having turned, I saw seven golden lampstands. And in the midst of the seven lampstands I saw One like the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the feet, and tied around the breast with a golden band.***

***His head and hair were white like wool, as white as snow. And His eyes were like a flame of fire.***

***And His feet were like burnished brass having been fired in a furnace. And His voice was like the sound of many waters.***

***And He had seven stars in His right hand, and out of His mouth went a sharp two-edged sword. And His face was like the sun shining in its strength.***



***And when I saw Him, I fell at His feet as dead. And He laid His right hand upon me, saying to me, Do not fear, I am the First and the Last,***

***and the Living One, and I became dead, and behold, I am alive for ever and ever, Amen. And I have the keys of hell and of death.***

***Write the things which you have seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be after this,***

***the mystery of the seven stars which you saw in My right hand and the seven golden lampstands. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands which you saw are the seven churches.***

***Revelation 1:12-20(MKJV)***

He was told that the “Seven Stars” stood for the Angels or Messengers of the Seven Churches that were in Asia Minor, and the Seven Candlesticks stood for the Seven Churches themselves. The Mystery of these Candlesticks lay in the fact that the Seven Churches mentioned were representative Churches, whose history was typical of the history of the Christian Church for the past 1900 years, and the Mystery could not be understood until the present time, or until the correspondence between the character of those Churches and Church history should be revealed.

- The Mystery Of The “Kingdom Of Heaven.”

When the Jews rejected Christ, and thus prevented the setting up of the Kingdom, the Kingdom took on another form, the “Mystery Form.” To show the character of this “Mystery Form” of the Kingdom, Jesus restored the parables. These parables are Thirteen in number and are found only in the Matthew Gospel.

- The Mystery Of The “Translation Of The Living Saints.”

In (1 Corinthians 15), Paul says:

***Behold, I speak a mystery to you; we shall not all fall asleep, but we shall all be changed;***

***in a moment, in a glance of an eye, at the last trumpet. For a trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall all be changed.***  
***I Corinthians 15:51-52(MKJV)***

This is the greatest of all mysteries, because it reveals something that reason never dreamed of. According to reason the common lot for man is to die, but to be taken off this earth and to be translated to heaven without dying was never thought of until revealed to Paul.

- The Mystery Of “Israel’s Blindness.”

Writing to the Romans in (Romans 11) Paul says:

***For I do not want you to be ignorant of this mystery, brothers, lest you should be wise within yourselves; that blindness in part has happened to Israel, until the fullness of the nations has come in.***

***Romans 11:25(MKJV)***

***There is a secret truth, my friends, which I want you to know, for it will keep you from thinking how wise you are. It is that the stubbornness of the people of Israel is not permanent, but will last only until the complete number of Gentiles comes to God.***

***Romans 11:25(GNB)***

This is not so much spiritual blindness as judicial blindness caused by their rejection of Jesus Christ. This blindness is national and not individual, for one must not forget that the bulk of believers in the Apostles’ day were Jews, and quite a few Jews have embraced Christianity since. The revelation of this Mystery to Paul was to account for what otherwise would remain a Mystery, the survival of the Jewish people as a race while scattered among the Gentile nations.

- The Mystery Of “Iniquity.”

In (2 Thessalonians 2:1-12), Paul, speaking of the “Man of Sin” or the Anti-Christ, and calls his teaching and claims the “**Mystery of Iniquity**,” which was already at work in Paul’s day and still at work to this day. The “Mystery of Godliness” is **God** manifest in the **flesh**, and the “Mystery of Iniquity” is **Satan** manifest in the **flesh**.

- The Mystery Of “Babylon The Great.”

This Mystery is revealed in the seventeenth chapter of the Book of Revelation.

- The Mystery Of The Church As The “Bride Of Christ.”

This was revealed to Paul, and is disclosed in the Book of (Ephesians 5), under the figure of the relation of the man and wife. “This is a ‘**Great Mystery**’. The first Adam had a bride, Eve; and the second, or Last Adam must have a Bride, the Church.

This is a “Great Mystery” because it explains why there should be a “Parenthetical Dispensation” between the First and the Second Coming of Jesus Christ, in which, by grace, a chosen people should be “called out” to form the Church, the Bride of Jesus Christ.

- The Mystery Of The “Restoration Of All Things.”

This is spoken of by Paul in his letter to the Ephesians in (Ephesians 1:9-10) as the “**Mystery of His Will**,” and reveals how that in the “Dispensation of the Fullness of Times,” it is God’s purpose to undo all sin has done, and restore “All Things” as they were before the “Rebellion of Satan” and the fall of “Man.”

*making known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he purposed in him*

*unto a dispensation of the fulness of the times, to sum up all things in Christ,  
the things in the heavens, and the things upon the earth; in him, I say,  
Ephesians 1:9-10(ASV)*

### 3 BIBLICAL HISTORY PERTAINING TO BABYLON, THE GREAT HARLOT

#### 3.1 Mystery Babylon The Great (Revelation 17: 1-18)

Clarence Larkin argued<sup>4</sup> that the ancient city of Babylon restored is to play an important part in the startling events of the last days of this Dispensation, is very clear. This is seen from what is said of it in the seventeenth and eighteenth chapters of the Book of Revelation. At first sight the two chapters, which contain some things in common, are difficult to reconcile, but when we get the **"Key"** the reconciliation is easy.

The seventeenth chapter speaks of a **"Woman,"** and this **"Woman"** is called **"MYSTERY,"** **Babylon the Great, The Mother of Harlots And Abominations of the Earth."**

The eighteenth chapter speaks of a **"City,"** a **literal city,** called **"Babylon the Great."** That the **"Woman"** and the **"City"** do not symbolize the same thing is clear, for what is said of the "Woman" does not apply to a city, and what is said of the "City" does not apply to a woman. The **"Woman"** is destroyed by the **"Ten Kings,"** while the **"Kings of the Earth"** in the next chapter, **"bewail and lament"** the destruction of the **"City,"** which is not destroyed by them, but by a mighty earthquake and fire. Again

---

<sup>4</sup>Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 140-141.

the "Woman" is destroyed **Three and a Half Years BEFORE THE CITY**; and the fact that the first verse of chapter eighteen says **"after these things,"** that is after the destruction of the "Woman" what happens to the "City" occurs, shows that the "Woman" and the "City" are not one and the same.

The "Woman's" name is **"MYSTERY, Babylon the Great." "Mystery!"** Where have one heard that word before, and in what connection? Paul calls the Church a "Mystery" because the Old Testament Patriarchs and Prophets did not know it. (Ephesians 3:1-21). That Christ was to have a "Bride" was first revealed to Paul (Ephesians 5), and the "Mystery" that Antichrist is to have a "bride" was first revealed to John on the Isle of Patmos.

*For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church; and He is the Savior of the body.*

*Therefore as the church is subject to Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in everything.*

*Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it,*

*that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the Word,*

*that He might present it to Himself as the glorious church, without spot or wrinkle or any such things, but that it should be holy and without blemish.*

*So men ought to love their wives as their own bodies. He who loves his wife loves himself.*

*For no man ever yet hated his own flesh, but nourishes and cherishes it, even as the Lord loves the church.*

*For we are members of His body, of His flesh, and of His bones.*

*"For this cause a man shall leave his father and mother and shall be joined to his wife, and the two of them shall be one flesh."*

*This is a great mystery, but I speak concerning Christ and the church.*

*Ephesians 5:23-32(MKJV)*

The name of Antichrist's "bride" is "*Babylon the Great*." Some one may ask why give to a "bride" the name of a "City"? The answer is that it is not unusual in the Scriptures. When the same angel that showed John in this chapter "*Mystery, Babylon the Great*," came to him in (Revelation 21) and said "*Come hither, I will shew thee the Bride 'The Lamb's Wife,'*" he showed John, instead of a woman, that great City, the "**Holy Jerusalem**" descending out of Heaven from God.

*And one of the seven angels who had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues came to me and talked with me, saying, Come here, I will show you the bride, the Lamb's wife.*

*And he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain and showed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of Heaven from God,  
Revelation 21:9-10(MKJV)*

Here one see that a "city" is called a "bride" because its **inhabitants**, and not the city itself, are the **bride**. "*Mystery, Babylon the Great*," the "bride" of Antichrist, then, is not a literal city, but a "**System**," a religious and apostate "System." As the Church, the Bride of Christ, is composed of regenerated followers of Christ, so "*Mystery, Babylon the Great*," the bride of Antichrist, will be composed of the followers of all **False Religions**.

The river Euphrates, on which the city of Babylon was built, was one of the four branches into which the river that flowed through the Garden of Eden was divided, and Satan doubtless chose the site of Babylon as his headquarters from which to sally forth to tempt Adam and Eve.

It was doubtless here that the Antediluvian Apostasy had its source that ended in the Flood. To this center the "*forces of Evil*" gravitated after the Flood, and "*Babel*" was the result. This was the origin of nations, but the nations were not scattered abroad over the earth until Satan had implanted in them the "**Virus**" of a doctrine that has been the **source** of every false religion the world has ever known.

Nimrod built Babel, or Babylon. (Genesis 10). It was the seat of the first great Apostasy.

***And Cush fathered Nimrod. He began to be a mighty one in the earth.***

***He was a mighty hunter before the LORD. Therefore it is said, Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter before the LORD.***

***And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.***

***Genesis 10:8-10(MKJV)***

Here the **"Babylonian Cult"** was invented, a system claiming to possess the highest wisdom and to reveal the divinest secrets. Before a member could be initiated he had to "confess" to the Priest. The Priest then had him in his power. This is the secret of the power of the Priests of the Roman Catholic Church today.

Once admitted into these order men were no longer Babylonians. Assyrians, or Egyptians, but members of a **Mystical Brotherhood**, over who was placed a Pontiff or "High Priest," whose word was law.

The city of Babylon continued to be the seat of Satan until the fall of the Babylonian and Medo-Persian Empires, when he shifted his Capital to Pergamos in Asia Minor, where it was in John's day. (Revelation 2).

***And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write: He who has the sharp sword with two edges says these things.***

***I know your works, and where you live, even where Satan's seat is. And you hold fast My name and have not denied My faith, even in those days in which Antipas was My faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwells.***

***Revelation 2:12-13(MKJV)***

When Attalus, the Pontiff and King of Pergamos, died in B.C. 133, he bequeathed the Headship of the **"Babylonian Priesthood"** to Rome. When the Etruscans came to Italy from Lydia (the region of Pergamos), they brought with them the Babylonian religion

and rites. They set up a Pontiff who was head of the Priesthood. Later the Romans accepted this Pontiff as their civil ruler. Julius Caesar was made Pontiff of the Etruscan Order in B.C. 74. In B.C. 63 he was made "*Supreme Pontiff*" of the "*Babylonian Order*," thus becoming heir to the rights and titles of Attalus, Pontiff of Pergamos, who had made Rome his heir by will.

Thus the first Roman Emperor became the Head of the "*Babylonian Priesthood*," and Rome the successor of Babylon. The Emperors of Rome continued to exercise the office of "*Supreme Pontiff*" until A.D. 376, when the Emperor Gratian, for Christian reasons, refused it. The Bishop of the Church at Rome, Damasus, was elected to the position. He had been Bishop 12 years, having been made Bishop in A.D. 366, through the influence of the monks of Mt. Carmel, a college of Babylonian religion originally founded by the priests of Jezebel. So in A.D. 378 the Head of the "*Babylonian Order*" became the Ruler of the "*Roman Church*." Thus Satan united **Rome and Babylon In One Religious System.**

Soon after Damasus was made "*Supreme Pontiff*" the "*rites*" of Babylon began to come to the front. The worship of the Virgin Mary was set up in A.D. 381. All the outstanding festivals of the Roman Catholic Church are of Babylonian origin. Easter is not a Christian name. It means "*Ishtar*," one of the titles of the Babylonian Queen of Heaven, whose worship by the Children of Israel was such an abomination in the sight of God.

The decree for the observance of Easter and Lent was given in A.D. 519. The "*Rosary*" is of Pagan origin. There is no warrant in the Word of God for the use of the "*Sign of the Cross*." It had its origin in the mystic "**Tau**" of the Chaldeans and Egyptians. It came from the letter "**T**," the initial name of "**Tammuz**," and was used in the "*Babylonian Mysteries*" for the same magic purposes as the Romish Church now employs it. **Celibacy**, the **Tonsure**, and the **Order of Monks** and **Nuns**, have



no warrant or authority from Scripture. The Nuns are nothing more than an imitation of the **"Vestal Virgins"** of Pagan Rome.

As to the word **"Mystery,"** the Papal Church has always shrouded herself in **mystery**. The mystery of **"Baptismal Regeneration;"** the mystery of **"Miracle and Magic"** whereby the simple memorials of the Lord's Supper are changed by the mysterious word **"Transubstantiation,"** from simple bread and wine into the **literal Body and Blood of Christ;** the mystery of the **"Holy Water;"** the mystery of **"Lights on the Altar,"** the **"Mystery Plays,"** and other superstitious rites and ceremonies mumbled in a language that tends to mystery, and tends to confusion which is the meaning of the word Babylon.

All this was a **"Mystery"** in John's day, because the **"Papal Church"** had not as yet developed; though the **"Mystery of Iniquity"** was already at work (2 Thessalonians 2:7), but it is no longer a **"Mystery"** for it is now easy to identify the **"Woman"**. **Mystery, Babylon the Great,** which John described as the **"Papal Church."**

*For the mystery of lawlessness is already working, only he is now holding back until it comes out of the midst.*

*II Thessalonians 2:7(MKJV)*

In (Revelation 17) we read that the **"Woman"** **"was arrayed in purple and scarlet color, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a 'Golden Cup' in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornications."**

*And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet. And she was gilded with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication.*

*Revelation 17:4(MKJV)*

Now who does not know that **scarlet** and **purple** are the **colors** of the Papacy? Of the different articles of attire specified for the Pope to wear when he is installed into

office **five** are **scarlet**. A vest covered with **pearls**, and a mitre, adorned with **gold and precious stones** was also to be worn. How completely this answers the description of the Woman's dress as she sits upon the **Scarlet Colored Beast**.

We are also told that the Woman was **"drunken with the blood of the Saints, and with the blood of the Martyrs of Jesus."** While this refers more particularly to the martyrs of the time of Antichrist, yet who does not know, who has studied the history of the Christian Church for the past nineteen centuries, that this is true of the Papal Church during those centuries?

One has only to read the history of the persecutions of the early Christians and more particularly the story of the *"Inquisition"* in Papal lands, to see that the Papal Church has been *"drunk"* with the **blood of the Saints**.

The fact that the Woman sits on a *"Scarlet Colored Beast"* reveals the fact that at that time the Beast (Antichrist) will support the Woman in her ecclesiastical pretensions, or in other words, the Woman, as a *"State Church,"* will control and rule the State, and her long dream of world-wide Ecclesiastical Supremacy will at last be realized, for John tells us that *"the waters which thou sawest, where the 'Whore' sitteth, are Peoples, and Multitudes, and Nations and Tongues."*

That means that after the **"True Church"** (the Bride of Christ) is taken out of the world the **"False"** or **"Papal Church"** (the bride of Antichrist) will remain, and the professing body of Christians (having the *"form of Godliness without the power"*) left behind, will largely enter the Papal Church, and it will become the **Universal Church**.

But this will continue for only a short time for the *"Ten Kings"* of the *"Federated Kingdom,"* finding their power curtailed by the *"Papal System"* will **"hate The**

**Whore,"** and strip her of her gorgeous apparel, confiscate her wealth (eat her flesh) and burn her churches and cathedrals with fire. (Revelation 17).

***and the ten horns which you saw on the beast, these will hate the harlot and will make her desolate and naked. And they will eat her flesh and burn her with fire.***  
***Revelation 17:16(MKJV)***

This will occur at the time the worship of the Beast is set Up, for Antichrist in his jealous hate will not permit any worship that does not center in himself.

The Beast upon which the Woman sits is introduced to show from whom the Woman (the Papal Church) gets her power and support after the True Church has been *"caught out,"* and also to show that the Beast (Antichrist) and the Woman (the Papal Church) are not one and the same, but separate.

Therefore the Papacy is not Antichrist. For a description of the *"Scarlet Colored Beast"* see the Chapter on The Antichrist.

From this fore view of the Papacy one see that the Papal Church is not a **dying "System."**

That she is to be revived ***"Universal Church,"*** and in doing so is to commit fornication with the kings of the earth, and that she shall again be *"drunk with the blood"* of the martyrs of the Tribulation Period.

The meaning of chapter seventeen of the Book of Revelation is no longer a Mystery; the prophetic portrait of the Woman there given corresponds too closely with the history of the Papal Church to be a mere coincidence.

### 3.2 Commercial Babylon The Great (Revelation 18: 1-24)

Clarence Larkin stated<sup>5</sup> that this (Revelation 18) begins with the words **"after these things."** What things? The things recorded in the previous paragraph, the destruction of **"Mystical Babylon."**

If *"Mystical Babylon"* was destroyed in the previous paragraph then she cannot appear in this chapter, and the *"City"* here described must be a literal city called Babylon, and as there is no city of that name on the earth today, nor has been since the ancient city of Babylon was destroyed, it must refer to some future city of Babylon.

That the two chapters refer to different things is further verified by the fact that different angels announce them. The events of chapter seventeen are announced by one of the "Vial" Angels, while those of the eighteenth are announced by "another" angel; probably the *"Second Angel Messenger,"* who by way of anticipation, announced in (Revelation 14), the *"Fall of Babylon,"* that is there called **"That Great City"**.

***And another angel followed, saying, The great city, Babylon, has fallen, has fallen; because of the wine of the anger of her fornication; she has made all nations to drink.***

***Revelation 14:8(MKJV)***

The ancient city of Babylon from the days of Nimrod (Genesis 10):, grew in size and importance century after century until it reached its greatest glory in the reign of Nebuchadnezzar B.C. 604-562. As described by Herodotus it was an exact square of 15 miles on a side, or 60 miles around, and was surrounded by a brick wall 87 feet thick, and 350 feet high, though probably that is a mistake, 100 feet being nearer the

---

<sup>5</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 141-144.

height. On the wall were 250 towers, and the top of the wall was wide enough to allow 6 chariots to drive abreast. Outside this wall was a vast ditch surrounding the city, kept filling with water from the river Euphrates; and inside the wall, and not far from it, was another wall, not much inferior, but narrower, extending around the city.

Twenty-five magnificent avenues, 150 feet wide, ran across the city from North to South, and the same number crossed them at right angles from East to West, making 676 great squares, each nearly three-fifths of a mile on a side, and the city was divided into two equal parts by the river Euphrates, that flowed diagonally through it, and whose banks, within the city, were walled up, and pierced with brazen gates, with steps leading down to the river. At the ends of the main avenues, on each side of the city, were gates, whose leaves were of brass, and that shone as they were opened or closed in the rising or setting sun, like *"leaves of flame."*

The Euphrates within the city was spanned by a bridge, at each end of which was a palace, and these palaces were connected by a subterranean passageway, or tube, underneath the bed of the river, in which at different points were located sumptuous banqueting rooms constructed entirely of brass.

Near one of these palaces stood the ***"Tower of Bel,"*** or Babel, consisting of 8 towers, each 75 feet high, rising one upon the other, with an outside winding stairway to its summit, which towers, with the Chapel on the top, made a height of 660 feet. This Chapel contained the most expensive furniture of any place of worship in the world. One golden image alone, 45 feet high, was valued at \$17,500,000 and the whole of the sacred utensils were reckoned to be worth \$200,000,000.

Babylon also contained one of the *"Seven Wonders"* of the world, the famous Hanging Gardens. These Gardens were 400 feet square, and were raised in terraces one above the other to the height of 350 feet, and were reached by stairways 10 feet

wide. The top of each terrace was covered with large stones, on which was laid a bed of rushes, then a thick layer of asphalt, next two courses of brick, cemented together, and finally plates of lead to prevent leakage; the whole was then covered with earth and planted with shrubbery and large trees.

The whole had the appearance from a distance of a forest-covered mountain, which would be a remarkable sight in the level plain of the Euphrates. These Gardens were built by Nebuchadnezzar simply to please his wife, who came from the mountainous country of Media, and who was thus made contented with her surroundings. The rest of the city was, in its glory and magnificence, in keeping with these palaces, towers, and "*Hanging Gardens*." The character of its inhabitants and of its official life is seen in the description of "Belshazzar's Feast" in (Daniel 5:1-31).

Babylon was probably the most magnificent city the world has ever seen and its fall reveals what a city may become when it forsakes God and He sends His judgment upon it. It is so intimately connected with the history of God's people that the Scriptures have much to say about it. A large part of the Book of Daniel and of the prophecy of Jeremiah relates to it, and it is mentioned in 11 other books of the Old Testament, and in 4 of the New Testament. And that the Book of Revelation is a continuation of the Book of Daniel is further proven by the fact that the city of Babylon is again spoken of in it, and its prominence in the affairs of the world at the "*End Time*" disclosed, and its final destruction foretold.

That the ancient city of Babylon was destroyed there can be no question, but when we affirm that it is to be rebuilt and again destroyed we are met with two objections.

- ***That all the Old Testament prophecies in reference to its destruction have been literally fulfilled, and that it cannot be rebuilt.***

- ***As there is no city of Babylon now in existence the references in the Book of Revelation to the destruction of such a city must be symbolical and not refer to a literal city.***

Let us take up the first objection. For a description of Babylon and her destruction we must turn to (Isaiah, 13 and 14), and (Jeremiah, 50 and 51). In these two prophecies we find much that has not as yet been fulfilled in regard to the city of Babylon.

The city of Babylon was captured in B.C. 541 by Cyrus, who was mentioned "*by name*" in prophecy 125 years before he was born. (Isaiah 44: 28-45: 4) B.C. 712. So quietly and quickly was the city taken on the night of Belshazzar's Feast by draining the river that flowed through the city, and entering by the river bed, and the gates that surmounted its banks, that the Babylonian guards had forgotten to lock that night, that some of the inhabitants did not know until the "*third*" day that the king had been slain and the city taken. There was no destruction of the city at that time.

Some years after it revolted against Darius Hystaspis, and after a fruitless siege of nearly 20 months was taken by strategy. This was in B.C. 516. About B.C. 478 Xerxes, on his return from Greece plundered and injured, if he did not destroy, the great "*Temple of Bel.*"

In B.C. 331 Alexander the Great approached the city which was then so powerful and flourishing that he made preparation for bringing all his forces into action in case it should offer resistance, but the citizens threw open the gates and received him with acclamations. After sacrificing to "*Bel,*" he gave out that he would rebuild the vast Temple of that god, and for weeks he kept 10,000 men employed in clearing away the ruins from the foundations, doubtless intending to revive the glory of Babylon and make it his capital, when his purpose was defeated by his sudden death of marsh-fever and intemperance in his thirty-third year.

During the subsequent wars of his generals Babylon suffered much and finally came under the power of Seleucus, who, prompted by ambition to build a Capital for himself, founded Seleucia in its neighborhood about B.C. 293. This rival city gradually drew off the inhabitants of Babylon, so that Strabo, who died in A.D. 25, speaks of the latter as being to a great extent deserted. Nevertheless the Jews left from the Captivity still resided there in large numbers, and in A.D. 60 one find the Apostle Peter working among them, for it was from Babylon that Peter wrote his Epistle (I Peter 5: 13), addressed "to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia and! Bithynia."

About the middle of the 5th century Theodoret speaks of Babylon as being inhabited only by Jews, who had still three Jewish Universities, and in the last year of the same century the "*Babylonian Talmud*" was issued, and recognized as authoritative by the Jews of the whole world.

In A. D. 917 Ibu Hankel mentions Babylon as an insignificant village, but still in existence. About A.D. 1100 it seems to have again grown into a town of some importance, for it was then known as the "*Two Mosques.*" *Shortly afterwards it was enlarged and fortified and received the name of Hillah, or "Rest."* In A.D. 1898 Hillah contained about 10,000 inhabitants, and was surrounded by fertile lands, and abundant date groves stretched along the banks of the Euphrates.

*Certainly it has never been true that "neither shall the **Arabian pitch tent there,** neither shall the **shepherds make their fold there.**" (Isaiah 13:20). Nor can it be said of Babylon Her cities are a desolation, a dry land, and a wilderness, a land **wherein no man dwelleth**, neither doth any son of man pass thereby. (Jeremiah 51:43). Nor can it be said "*And they shall not take of thee a **stone for a corner, nor a stone for foundations,** but thou shalt be desolate forever, saith the Lord*" (Jeremiah 51:26), for many towns and cities have been built from the ruins of Babylon, among*



them **Four Capital Cities**, Seleucia, built by the Greeks; Ctesiphon, by the Parthians, Al Maiden, by the Persians; and Kufa, by the Caliphs. Hillah was entirely constructed from the debris, and even in the houses of Bagdad, Babylonian stamped bricks may be frequently noticed.

But Isaiah is still more specific for he locates the **Time** when his prophecy will be fulfilled. He calls it the **"Day of the Lord."** (Isaiah 13: 9). That is the Millennium. And he locates it at the **beginning** of the Millennium, or during the events that usher in the Millennium, for he says:

*And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars. And on the earth will be anxiety of nations with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring;*

*men fainting from fear, and expecting those things which have come on the earth. For the powers of the heavens shall be shaken.*

*And then they shall see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.*

*Luke 21:25-27(MKJV)*

"The **stars of heaven** and the **constellations thereof shall not give their light**; the **sun shall be darkened** in his going forth, and the **moon shall not cause her light to shine.**" (Isaiah 13:10) (Luke 21).

Surely nothing like this happened when Cyrus took Babylon. In the description of the destruction of the city of Babylon given in (Revelation 18), we read that her judgment will come **in one hour** (vs. 10), and that in **one hour** she shall be made **desolate** (vs. 19), and as an illustration of the **suddenness** and **completeness** of her destruction, a mighty angel took up a **stone** like a **Great Millstone**, and cast it into the sea, saying *"Thus with **Violence** shall that great city Babylon be thrown down and shall be found no more at all."* (Revelation 18:21).

We are also told in the same chapter that she is to be destroyed by **FIRE** (Revelation 18:8, 9, 18), and this is in exact harmony with the words of (Isaiah 13: 19).

"And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldeans' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew **Sodom and Gomorrah**;" and the Prophet Jeremiah makes the same statement. (Jeremiah 50:40).

*As God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah and their neighbors, says the LORD,  
no man shall live there; nor shall any son of man live in it.*

*Jeremiah 50:40(MKJV)*

The destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah was not protracted through many centuries, their glory disappeared in a few hours (Genesis 19:24-28), and as ancient Babylon was not thus destroyed, the prophecies of Isaiah and Jeremiah cannot be fulfilled unless there is to be a Future Babylon that shall be thus destroyed.

In (Revelation 16: 17-19), humankind are told that Babylon shall be destroyed by an Earthquake, attended with most vivid and incessant lightning and awful thunder. It would appear then, that as Sodom and Gomorrah were first set on fire and then swallowed up by an earthquake, that the rebuilt city of Babylon will be set on fire, and as the site of ancient Babylon is under laid with **Bitumen** (Asphalt), that an earthquake will break up the crust of the earth, and precipitate the burning city into a "**Lake of Fire**," and the city like a "**Millstone**" (Revelation 18:21) sink below the surface of the earth as into the sea, and be swallowed up so that it will be impossible to ever take of her stones for building purposes, and the land shall become a Wilderness where no man shall ever dwell.

As to the probability of the ancient city of Babylon being rebuilt one have only to consider the events that in recent years have been happening in that part of the world looking to just such a thing.

In the Department of War of France, at Paris, there is to be seen the records of valuable surveys and maps made by order of Napoleon I, in Babylonia, and among them is a plan for a **New City of Babylon**, thus showing that the vast schemes of Napoleon comprehended the **Rebuilding of the Ancient City of Babylon**, and the making it his Capital, as his ambition was to conquer the whole of Europe and Asia, and he recognized to that end the strategically position of ancient Babylon as a governmental and commercial center.

It is a fact that the whole country of Mesopotamia, Assyria and Babylonia, only needs a system of irrigation to make it again the most fertile country in the world, and steps have already been taken in that direction. In 1850 the British Government sent out a military officer with his command to survey and explore the river Euphrates at a cost of \$150,000, and when the European war broke out, the great English Engineer who built the Assouam dam in Egypt, was engaged in making surveys in the Euphratean valley for the purpose of constructing a series of irrigation canals that would restore the country and make it again the great grain producing country it once was. As a result towns and cities would spring up and railroads would be built. What is needed in that part of the world is a **"Trans-European-Asiatic-Indian Air Line"** that will connect Europe with India, and China? Such a line has been the dream of Emperor William of Germany.

It was that desire that made him and Abdul Hamid, of Turkey, the closest of political friends, and he secured from Abdul Hamid a concession to build a railway from the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus, by way of Aleppo, to the **Tigris** river, and from there to Bagdad, and from Bagdad via **Babylon** (via Babylon) to Koweit on the Persian Gulf, and most of the road has been built to Bagdad.

With these facts in mind it can readily be seen that it is the purpose of European capitalists to revive the country of Babylonia and rebuild its cities, and when once the

time comes the city of Babylon will be rebuilt almost in a night and on a scale of magnificence such as the world has never seen.

How can one say that they can expect Jesus to come at "*any moment*," if the city of Babylon must be rebuilt before He can come? There is not a word in Scripture that says that Jesus cannot come and take away His Church, until Babylon is rebuilt. The Church may be taken out of the world 25 or even 50 years before that. Babylon the Great will be an immense city the greatest in every respect the world has ever seen. It will be a typical city, the London, the Paris, the Berlin, the Petrograd, the New York, the Chicogo of its day. It will be the greatest commercial city of the world. Its merchandise will be of gold and silver, and precious stones and pearls, of purple, and silk, and scarlet and costly wools. Its fashionable society will be clothed in the most costly raiment and decked with the most costly jewels. Their banquets will be supplied with the sweetest of wines, the richest of pastry, and the most delicious of meats.

It will be a city of music. Amid the noise and bustle of its commercial life will be heard the music of its pleasures resorts and theatres. There will be the sound of "*harpers and musicians, of pipers and trumpeters*" (vs. 22). The world's best singers and players will be there. Its theatres and places of music will be going day and night. In fact there will be no night, for the electric illumination of the city by night will make the night as bright and shadowless as the day, and its stores and places of business will never close, night or day, or Sunday, for the mad whirl of pleasure and absorbing desire for riches will keep the wheels of business constantly moving.

And all this will be easy because the "*God of this World*", Satan will possess the minds and **bodies** of men, for one read in verse 2, that Babylon at that time will be "*the **Habitation of Devils**, and the **Hold of Every Foul Spirit**, and the **Cage of Every Unclean and Hateful Bird**.*" The city will be the seat of the most imposing

**"OCCULTISM,"** and mediums, and those desiring to communicate with the other world, will then go to Babylon, as men and women now go to Paris for fashions and sensuous pleasures. In that day demons, disembodied souls, and unclean spirits will find at Babylon the opportunity of their lives to materialize themselves in human bodies, and from the atmospheric heavens above, and from the Abyss below they will come in countless legions until Babylon shall be full of demon possessed men and women, and at the height of its glory, and just before its fall, Babylon will be ruled by **SATAN HIMSELF**, incarnate in the *"Beast"* – **ANTICHRIST**.

But before its destruction God will mercifully deliver His own people, for a voice from heaven will cry:

*And I heard another voice from Heaven, saying, Come out of her, My people, that you may not be partakers of her sins, and that you may not receive of her plagues.*

*Revelation 18:4(MKJV)*

As Sodom and Gomorrah could not be destroyed until righteous Lot had escaped, so Babylon cannot be destroyed until all the righteous people in it have fled.

The destruction of the city will be sudden and without warning. A fearful storm will sweep over the city. The lightning and thunder will be incessant. The city will be set on fire and a great earthquake will shake it from center to circumference. The tall office buildings, the *"Hanging Gardens"* and the great towers will totter and fall, the crust of the earth will crack and open, and the whole city with its inhabitants will sink like a **"Millstone,"** (vs. 21), into a lake of burning bitumen, and the smoke will ascend as of a burning fiery furnace, and the horror of the scene will be intensified by vast clouds of steam, generated by the waters of the Euphrates pouring into that lake of fiery asphalt, and when night comes on those clouds of steam will reflect the light of the burning city so it can be seen for miles in all directions in that level country.

And the kings of the earth, and the merchants, and the shipmasters, and sailors, and all who have profited by her merchandise, will stand afar off and cry, and wail because of her destruction, but the heavens will rejoice for God will have rewarded her **Double** according to her works, and **BABYLON WILL BE NO MORE.**

### 3.3 The Judgment Of Babylon

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell stated<sup>6</sup> that from the onset of His message in the **Book of Revelation**, Jesus is directing the prophecy into a climax, which is the judgment of *Babylon* - the Great Harlot - and of the corrupt systems of this world. To do this He has to refine the Church with the necessary enlightenment and tools to confront *Babylon* and subject her.

The first century Church was living under the conditions narrated in the seven letters of (Revelation 2-3), which were designed to encourage and prepare them for the judgment that was to come between the years 66 and 70 A.D. Every judgment of God is just, and those who will be assigned to judge have to be purged from every **Babylonian** alliance and practice so they are not judged jointly with her.

*And I saw thrones, and they sat on them, and judgment was given to them. And I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the witness of Jesus and for the Word of God, and who had not worshiped the beast nor his image, nor had received his mark on their foreheads, nor in their hands. And they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.*

*Revelation 20:4(MKJV)*

*Do you not know that the saints shall judge the world? And if the world shall be judged by you, are you unworthy to judge the smallest matters?*

*Do you not know that we shall judge angels, not to speak of this life?*

*I Corinthians 6:2-3(MKJV)*

---

<sup>6</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) Apocalypse. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., p. 121.

### 3.4 Who Is This Religious Babylon

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell argued<sup>7</sup> that **Babylon** is the religious system that kills the spiritual life of the Church and renders us inept to reign. *Babylon* has existed ever since religious systems existed, no matter what these may be. This is the spirit that took over the Jewish priesthood during the time of Jesus. *Babylon* is not the Roman Catholic Church as some think; it is a whole system that has the form of godliness yet lacks the life of God. The "form" will always resist the "Life" and end up destroying the vessel. It is a hypocritical system that says one thing and lives another.

Jesus speaks in an imperative manner to HIS PEOPLE to exit *Babylon*:

***And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues.***  
***Revelation 18:4(KJV)***

Ana stated That God is not speaking to a pagan people - He is talking to His Church. All people come from *Babylon*; nobody escapes. Those of us who came out of the Roman Church were impregnated with religion. Man exchange idolatry for the richness of the Bible but continue calling "church" and even "temple" the rock - and - cement buildings where people gather. Humankind continue using phrases such as, "See you in church on Sunday," When we - the people - are the temple of God.

Man embraced the reformation principles Martin Luther left us without realizing he also came from the Roman *Babylonian* system. He gave us the essence of the message of salvation man now have, but brought with it the same system of having church exclusively within the four walls of a building which little by little does away with the life of the true Church.

---

<sup>7</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) Apocalypse. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., pp. 129-130.

*Babylon* makes us follow man under the guise of following God. One continues viewing the leadership as the anointed ones who are closer to God than the rest of the people. Man continues separating the priests from the laymen. People depend more on the hand of man than on the guiding hand of God. They make the man or woman of God the source of their answers. As leaders, one does not propel people to depend on God and to know Him, because, in a certain way, we like them to depend on people. And unintentionally, whereas our words speak of loving God and following Him, our religious system makes us continue perpetuating their depending on people. If we are Heaven's ambassadors, we need to speak and to see ourselves as manifesting Heaven, not just reproducing men's systems.

When God revealed Himself to man, He showed them how much *Babylon* was in humankind. He made man understand how each one of us has collaborated in dividing the Body of Christ and how this is nothing but the *Babylonian* system in which people operate. When one understands this, they will call out to His Name to get out of *Babylon*.

### 3.5 Victory Over Babylon Through Revelation Of The Seven Churches

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell stated<sup>8</sup> that although this is not one of the main themes that reveal the interpretation of the **Book of Revelation**, its include here as the *Victory over Babylon*. Each letter is a key that will allow people to defeat the *spirit of religion*, and destroy *Babylon*.

Jesus manifests His own characteristics in each letter, which helps man obtain the prize that will allow people to govern. These are doors of infinite revelation to reign in the here and now.

---

<sup>8</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) Apocalypse. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., p. 133.



### 3.5.1 The Message To The Church At EPHESUS (Revelation 2:1-7)

*To the angel of the Church of Ephesus write: He who holds the seven stars in His right hand, who walks in the midst of the seven golden lampstands, says these things.*

*I know your works and your labor and your patience, and how you cannot bear those who are evil. And you tried those pretending to be apostles, and are not, and have found them liars.*

*And you have borne, and have patience, and for My name's sake you have labored and have not fainted.*

*But I have against you that you left your first love.*

*Therefore remember from where you have fallen, and repent, and do the first works, or else I will come to you quickly and will remove your lampstand out of its place unless you repent.*

*But you have this, that you hate the deeds of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.*

*He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To him who overcomes I will give him to eat of the Tree of Life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God.*

*Revelation 2:1-7(MKJV)*

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell stated<sup>9</sup> that Ephesus: Its name means "*desirable*." The theme of this letter is: **true love is what crowns us**. Jesus introduces Himself to man as the One who is amidst the candlesticks. Jesus is the One who is in control of the Church; man is not. Pure love is what positions us in the center of *Paradise*, which is the place of ruling.

Love is the *fountain of life* that feeds the nations and opposes *Nicolaitanism*, the hierarchical religious system that raises leadership atop a pedestal and takes the power and authority away from lay people, who are also children of God. *Nicolaitanism* raises its own kingdom and does not let God build His up. It steers the believers to depend on men who are at the head, not on THE head who is Jesus.

---

<sup>9</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) *Apocalypse*. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., pp. 133-135.

Although an order of authority exists in the Church, man's spiritual dependence must be on Jesus.

Christ is the *Tree of Life*; this represents the life of the Spirit as opposed to the *Tree of Good and Evil*, which is based on human reasoning. The first one raises a system of life, whereas the second, one of death. Love and our marriage commitment to Christ lead us to the dominion of all things.

### 3.5.2 The Message To The Church At SMYRNA (Revelation 2:8-11)

*And to the angel of the church in Smyrna write: The First and the Last, who became dead and lived, says these things:*

*I know your works and tribulation and poverty (but you are rich), and I know the blasphemy of those saying themselves to be Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan.*

*Do not at all fear what you are about to suffer. Behold, the Devil will cast some of you into prison, so that you may be tried. And you will have tribulation ten days. Be faithful to death, and I will give you the crown of life.*

*He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. He who overcomes will not be hurt by the second death.*

*Revelation 2:8-11(MKJV)*

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell stated<sup>10</sup> that Smyrna: Its name means "*martyr*" or "*fragrance*." Its theme is: **The keys against death**. Jesus introduces Himself as the First and the Last, the One who is alive but was dead. Jesus was the One who defeated death, the beginning and the end of all things. This is the key to vanquish death and to inherit the *Crown of Life*. We have to remain faithful unto death for this one: die to this world to live in Jesus. When people are able to see death as a victory and when one are clothed with our heavenly house, death cannot intimidate us. It's in this victory that man obtain the authority to resurrect the dead and transform dead

---

<sup>10</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) Apocalypse. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., pp. 135-136.

territories so they can live. Having death under our feet enables man to defeat the devil in all his ways.

***And they overcame him because of the blood of the Lamb, and because of the word of their testimony. And they did not love their soul to the death.***

***Revelation 12:11(MKJV)***

***I have been crucified with Christ, and I live; yet no longer I, but Christ lives in me. And that life I now live in the flesh, I live by faith toward the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself on my behalf.***

***Galatians 2:20(MKJV)***

This key gives mankind the ability to understand how tribulations are instruments that position them more and more into greater, higher - authority ranks.

To vanquish death in all its forms - fear, sicknesses, bitterness, and sin - enables man to live in the spheres of what is Eternal.

This key changes our perspective to see things from their temporary state to see them in their eternal function and purpose.

### **3.5.3      The Message To The Church At PERGAMOS (Revelation 2:12-17)**

***And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write: He who has the sharp sword with two edges says these things.***

***I know your works, and where you live, even where Satan's seat is. And you hold fast My name and have not denied My faith, even in those days in which Antipas was My faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwells.***

***But I have a few things against you, because you have there those who hold the teachings of Balaam, who taught Balak to cast a stumbling-block before the sons of Israel, to eat things sacrificed to idols and to commit fornication.***

***So you also have those who hold the teaching of the Nicolaitans, which thing I hate.***

***Repent! But if not I will come to you quickly, and will fight with them by the sword of My mouth.***

***He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To him who overcomes I will give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give to him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knows except he who receives it.***

***Revelation 2:12-17(MKJV)***

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell stated<sup>11</sup> that Pergamos: Its name means "*high place*" and its theme is **the power of the Word**. Jesus introduces Himself as the One who has the two-edged sword and who releases judgment with the authority of His Word. Those who govern with Him must have authority to judge and see all things from God's righteous heart. We have to tower above the obscure levels of our own opinion to judge with righteous judgment.

This is the key to conquer every circumstance even if it's Satan's throne on Earth. It's the key to overcome the power of greed, money and the desire to be in good standing with men rather than God.

*Balaam*, the prophet in (Numbers 22-24) was mentioned in this letter. He sold his message and his call for money, as nowadays there are those who do so, too, today. To eat things sacrificed to idols and commit fornication speaks to us about how the Word of God is spoken with indolence and Luke warmth. This attitude is contrary to the sharp two-edged sword that confronts and discerns the soul and the spirit, thereby converting the heart.

The prize is the *hidden manna*, the true revelation necessary to rule. It is the provision of Heaven that comes over the givers, those who divest themselves of their wealth for the love of God's work and their fellow men, defeating *Mammon*, the god of riches.

---

<sup>11</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) *Apocalypse*. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., pp. 136-138.

God gives man a new name here; our authority and our identity are in that name. Through this new name one can subdue nations, loose the loins of kings, straighten crooked places, open iron gates, and receive from God His treasures.

***So says the LORD to His anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have made strong in order to humble nations before him. And I will loosen the loins of kings, to open before him the two-leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut.***

***I will go before you, and make hills level. I will break in pieces the bronze gates, and cut the iron bars in two.***

***And I will give you the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that you may know that I am the LORD, who calls you by your name, the God of Israel.***

***Isaiah 45:1-3(MKJV)***

### **3.5.4      The Message To The Church At THYATIRA (Revelation 2:18-29)**

***And to the angel of the church at Thyatira write: The Son of God, He who has His eyes like a flame of fire and His feet like burnished metal, says these things:***

***I know your works and love and service and faith and your patience, and your works; and the last to be more than the first.***

***But I have a few things against you because you allow that woman Jezebel to teach, she saying herself to be a prophetess, and to cause My servants to go astray, and to commit fornication, and to eat idol-sacrifices.***

***And I gave her time that she might repent of her fornication, and she did not repent.***

***Behold, I am throwing her into a bed, and those who commit adultery with her into great affliction, unless they repent of their deeds.***

***And I will kill her children with death. And all the churches will know that I am He who searches the reins and hearts, and I will give to every one of you according to your works.***

***But to you I say, and to the rest in Thyatira, as many as do not have this doctrine, and who have not known the depths of Satan, as they speak, I will put on you no other burden.***

***But that which you have, hold fast until I come.***

***And he who overcomes and keeps My works to the end, to him I will give power over the nations.***

***And he will rule them with a rod of iron, as the vessels of a potter they will be broken to pieces, even as I received from My Father.***

***And I will give him the Morning Star.***

***He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.***  
***Revelation of John 2:18-29(MKJV)***

Clarence Larkin stated<sup>12</sup> that in God's commendations of the Church, Christ lays the emphasis on their "works," as if they depended on them, and claimed they deserved merit for "works" of "Supererogation." But God had a complaint to make against them that was terrible in its awfulness. He charges them not merely with permitting a bad woman, Jezebel, who called herself a "Prophetess," to remain in the Church, but with permitting her to "teach" her pernicious doctrines, and to "seduce" the servants to "commit fornication," and to "eat things sacrificed to idols."

Who this woman was is a question. She was a "pretender," and called herself a "prophetess." Probably she was of noble lineage. She certainly was a woman of commanding influence. Whether her real name was Jezebel or not, she was so like her prototype in the Old Testament, Jezebel the wife of Ahab, that Christ called her by that name. Jezebel, the wife of Ahab, was not by birth a daughter of Abraham, but a princess of idolatrous Tyre, at a time, too, when its royal family was famed for cruel savagery and intense devotion to Baal and Astarte. Her father, Eth-baal, a priest of the latter deity, murdered the reigning monarch Phales, and succeeded him.

Ahab, king of Israel, to strengthen his kingdom, married Jezebel, and she, aided and abetted by Ahab, introduced the licentious worship of Baal into Israel, and killed all the prophets of the Lord she could lay her hands on. This influence she exercised,

---

<sup>12</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 130-131.

not only while her husband was alive, but also during the reign of her two sons, Ahaziah and Jehoram. More over, the marriage of her daughter Athaliah to Jehoram, son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, introduced idolatrous worship into Judah, and it was not long before there was a house of Baal built in Jerusalem, and so Jezebel caused all Israel to sin after the sin of Jeroboam the son of Nebat.

***And in the thirty-eighth year of Asa king of Judah, Ahab the son of Omri began to reign over Israel. And Ahab the son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty-two years.***

***And Ahab the son of Omri did evil in the sight of the LORD above all who were before him.***

***And as if it had been a light thing for him to walk in the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, he also took Jezebel, the daughter of Eth-baal king of the Sidonians, for a wife. And he went and served Baal, and worshiped him.***

***And he reared up an altar for Baal in the house of Baal, which he had built in Samaria.***

***And Ahab made an Asherah. And Ahab did more to provoke the LORD God of Israel to anger than all the kings of Israel who were before him.***

***I Kings 16:29-33(MKJV)***

There is no question that, whether Jezebel was a real person or not, she typified a “System” and that “System” was the “Papal Church.” When the “Papal Church” introduced images and pictures into its churches for the people to bow down to it became idolatrous. And when it set up its claim that the teaching of the Church is superior to the Word of God, it assumed the role of “Prophetess.” A careful study of the “Papal System” from A.D 606 to the Reformation A.D 1520, with its institution of the “Sacrifice of the Mass” and other Pagan rites, reveals in it the sway of “Jezebelism.”

It was also a period of “Jezebelistic Persecution,” as seen in the wars of the Crusades, and the rise of the Inquisition. A careful comparison of this “Message” with the Parable of “The Leaven,” will reveal the wonderful correspondence between the two, the “Jezebel” of the Church of Thyatira, being the “Woman” of the Parable, who

inserted the “Leaven” of “False Doctrine” into the Meal of the Gospel. This period extended from A.D. 606 to the Reformation A.D. 1520.

### **3.5.5 The Message To The Church At SARDIS (Revelation 3:1-6)**

***And to the angel of the church in Sardis write: He who has the seven Spirits of God and the seven stars says these things. I know your works, that you have a name that you live, and are dead.***

***Be watchful and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die. For I have not found your works being fulfilled before God.***

***Remember then how you have received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. Therefore if you will not watch, I will come upon you as a thief, and you will not know what hour I will come upon you.***

***You have a few names even in Sardis who have not defiled their garments. And they will walk with Me in white, for they are worthy.***

***The one who overcomes, that one will be clothed in white clothing. And I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life, but I will confess his name before My Father and before His angels.***

***He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.***

***Revelation of John 3:1-6(MKJV)***

Clarence Larkin stated<sup>13</sup> that the Church at Sardis was called a “Dead Church” though it had a name to live. That is, it was a “Formalistic Church,” a church given over to “formal” or “ritualistic” worship. It had the “Form of Godliness without the power.” The meaning of the word “Sardis” is the “escaping one,” or those who “come out” and so it is an excellent type of the Church of the Reformation Period.

By the Reformation one mean that period in the history of the Christian Church when Martin Luther and a number of other reformers protested against the false teaching, tyranny and claims of the Papal Church.

---

<sup>13</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p. 131.



This Period began about A.D. 1500. The condition of affairs in the realm dominated by the Papal Church became intolerable, and came to a crisis when Martin Luther on October 31, 1517 A.D., nailed his 95 Theses on the church door at Wittenberg, Germany. From that date the Reformation set in. But it was more a struggle for political liberty, than a purely Christian or religious movement.

It had the advantage of encouraging and aiding the circulation of the Holy Scriptures, that had hitherto been a sealed book, the revival of the Doctrine of “*Justification by Faith*,” and a reversion to more simple modes of worship; but the multiplication of sects only led to bitter controversial contentions, that, while they threw much light on the Word of God, interfered greatly with the spiritual state of the Church, until it could truthfully be said, “*That she had a name to live and was dead.*”

While the reformers swept away much ritualistic and doctrinal rubbish they failed to recover the promise of the Second Advent. They turned to God from idols, but not to “wait for His Son from the Heavens.” The “Sardis Period” extended from A.D. 1520 to about A.D. 1750.

### **3.5.6            The Message To The Church At PHILADELPHIA (Revelation 3:7-13)**

***And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write: He who is holy, He who is true, He who has the key of David, He who opens and no one shuts; and shuts and no one opens, says these things:***

***I know your works. Behold, I have given before you an open door, and no one can shut it. For you have a little strength and have kept My word and have not denied My name.***

***Behold, I will give out of those of the synagogue of Satan, those saying themselves to be Jews and are not, but lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before your feet, and to know that I have loved you.***

***Because you have kept the word of My patience, I also will keep you from the hour of temptation which will come upon all the world, to try those who dwell upon the earth.***

***Behold, I come quickly. Hold fast to that which you have, so that no one may take your crown.***

***Him who overcomes I will make him a pillar in the temple of My God, and he will go out no more. And I will write upon him the name of My God, and the name of the city of My God, New Jerusalem, which comes down out of Heaven from My God, and My new name.***

***He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.***  
***Revelation of John 3:7-13(MKJV)***

Clarence Larkin stated<sup>14</sup> that there is no question about the meaning of the word Philadelphia. It means “Brotherly Love,” and well describes the charity and brotherly fellowship that dissipated the bitter personal animosities that characterized the theological disputants of the “Sardis Period,” and made possible the evangelistic and missionary labors of the past 150 years.

Three things are said of this Church:

- It had a “*little strength*.” It was like a person coming back to life who was still very weak. It was the “*dead*” Sardis Church “*revived*,” and Revivals have been characteristic of the Philadelphia Period. These Revivals began with George Whitefield in A.D. 1739, followed by John Wesley, Charles G. Finney and D. L. Moody.
- It had set before it an “*open door*,” that no “*man*” could shut. Note that this promise was made by Him, who “*hath the ‘Key of David,’ He that ‘openeth’ and no man shutteth; and no man openeth.*” In 1793 William Carey sailed for India, where he found an “*open door*,” and since then the Lord has opened the door into China, Japan, Korea, India, Africa and the isles of the sea, until there is not a country in the world where the missionary cannot go.

---

<sup>14</sup>Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God’s Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p. 131.

---

- It was to be kept from the “*hour of temptation*” (Tribulation), that shall come upon the entire world. As the Church at Philadelphia is still in existence, and the only one of the seven that has survived, and while it suffered more or less under the “*Ten Persecutions*” of the “*Smyrna Period*,” it has never yet suffered in a persecution that was worldwide. This “*hour of temptation*” then must be still future and refers doubtless to the “*Great Tribulation*” that is to come upon the “*whole world*,” just before the return of the Lord to set up His Millennial Kingdom, and as the promise is that the “*Philadelphia Church*” shall not pass through the Tribulation, is not this additional proof that the Church shall be “*caught out*” before the Tribulation?

The “*Philadelphia Period*” covers the time between A.D. 1750 and A.D. 1900. One must not forget that the characteristics of all these Periods continue on in the Church down to the end. This is true of the Evangelistic and Missionary movements of the “*Philadelphia Period*,” but they are now more mechanical and based on business methods, and there is less spiritual power, and this will continue until Jesus Christ’ return.

### 3.5.7 The Message To The Church At LAODICEA (Revelation 3:14-22)

***And to the angel of the church of the Laodicea write: The Amen, the faithful and true Witness, the Head of the creation of God, says these things:***

***I know your works, that you are neither cold nor hot. I would that you were cold or hot.***

***So because you are lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will vomit you out of My mouth.***

***Because you say, I am rich and increased with goods and have need of nothing, and do not know that you are wretched and miserable and poor and blind and naked,***

***I counsel you to buy from Me gold tried in the fire, so that you may be rich; and white clothing, so that you may be clothed, and so that the shame of your nakedness does not appear. And anoint your eyes with eye salve, so that you may see.***

***As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten; therefore be zealous and repent.***

***Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and will dine with him and he with Me.***

***To him who overcomes I will grant to sit with Me in My throne, even as I also overcame and have sat down with My Father in His throne.***

***He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.***

***Revelation 3:14-22(MKJV)***

### 3.6 Biblical History Pertaining to Babylon

Kanaan Mysteries stated<sup>15</sup> that the first section deals with historical Babylon - it's founding in rebellion and the might of the flesh. The second section deals with the paganism and idolatry that originated in Babylon and spread into every human culture with a different face. The third and longest section is about Babylon in Biblical history.

We particularly focus on the time that God used Babylon as an instrument of justice against Judah for specific sins that Judah committed - in particular, the sin of idolatry. This is also the subject of the longest book in the Bible - Jeremiah. Therefore, in these prayers, we have focused some attention on this chapter in the history of His people.

God used page after page in Jeremiah to detail the sins that Judah did to cause the brutal hand of Babylon to come upon both the land and the people. In these pages, He has also poured His heart out in great distress and anguish at the suffering when

---

<sup>15</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) The Mystery Babylon. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 140.

this judgment came upon His beloved people and His pain at the destruction of the defiled land.

Man sees very familiar echoes of this suffering in their lives, their families, our nation and the world around us. The same judgment is still active in our world today - one has only to look at the wars in the world - young men cut down in their prime, the numerous tragedies of death and destruction that play out in every family.

God has the same anguish today when He sees our suffering today, as He did those centuries ago when His people suffered the consequences of their iniquity.

Amidst His plaint, God also pleads with His people to return to Him, to repent and be restored. We heed His voice in Jeremiah, confessing our sins and those of our ancestors, pleading with Him to restore us, our families, our nation and our land.

The fourth section deals with the continuation of the Babylonian system in history until the present time and the mixing of Babylon with the church.

### **3.7 Basic Prayer Pertaining To The Previous Information**

#### **Basic Prayer Of Renunciations For Babylon**

Heavenly Father, I ask You to forgive me and all members of my ancestral line for the sin of stubbornness which is as idolatry and the sin of rebellion which is as witchcraft.

Lord, forgive us for trusting in man and for making man-made things, philosophies, inventions and technologies our idols and for trusting them. You are our strength.

Help us to enter into Your rest. Forgive us for the creation of all pagan practices and associations with the Babylonian System.<sup>16</sup>

### **Nimrod and the founding of Babylon.**

Heavenly Father, I ask You to forgive me and all members of my ancestral line for the spirit of rebellion that was in Nimrod who set himself to oppose You and led a revolt against You.

On behalf of my ancestors I repent and renounce the tyranny and despotism that Nimrod practiced and for the evil of the empire that he established. We repent for the lust for power that the empire was founded on. We repent for the hunting of the souls of men that Nimrod did. We repent for the trading of the souls of men in Babylon.

Forgive us for this spirit of rebellion that that the city of Babel or Babylon was founded in and which has contaminated the land of Shinar (Mesopotamia) to this day.<sup>17</sup>

### **Tower of Babel.**

Heavenly Father, I ask You to forgive me and all members of my ancestral line for all the beliefs and attitudes that caused the building of the religious ziggurat which was the Tower of Babel.

---

<sup>16</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 140-141.

<sup>17</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 141.

We repent for the arrogance and presumption that holds that men could by themselves build the gateway into the heavenlies.

We repent for the astral worship and astrology practiced at the tower of Babel. We repent for the fear that the people lived in that they would be scattered abroad living in isolated communities where they would be exposed to danger and be unknown and without honor and standing in their community.

We repent for this fear that led them to build this religious tower so that they could 'make a name for themselves'. We repent for using the power of religion to share the glory of God and to make a name for ourselves and to try to control our lives and our future. We repent for this spirit of Babylon, which uses religious authority to gain earthly power and prestige.

We repent for our self-will, the arrogance that would make us believe that we could accomplish anything that we wanted on our own without You.

Lord, help us not to avoid but to embrace the risks of establishing new frontiers, to be fruitful and replenish the earth, to bring Your dominion to bear in places where there had not been any before, to fulfill the destinies that You have for our lives.

We repent for rebellion, pride, self-will and self-exaltation that lead us to want to 'make a name for ourselves' instead of partnering with You to pursue the magnificent birthright and destiny that You have given to us.<sup>18</sup>

### **Babylon, City of Man.**

---

<sup>18</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 142.

---

Lord we repent for being aligned with Babylon, the City of Man. Please help us to be citizens of and aligned with the City of God - New Jerusalem.

Lord, help us to enter into Your inheritance for us by faith, looking for a City which has foundations, whose Builder and Maker is You.<sup>19</sup>

### **Nimrod or Marduk.**

Lord, we repent for the state religion that Nimrod established, which deified and worshiped the emperor (Nimrod). We repent for the worship of Satan and his demons, star-worship.

We repent for the worship of Nimrod as connected to the planet Jupiter, as Zeus in Greece, as Jupiter in Rome.

Lord, we repent for the worship of Nimrod as Marduk or "Bull Calf of the Sun" - god of magic and incantations, god of the agricultural people.

We repent for the worship of this entity as the god associated with the planet Mars as the patron deity of the city of Babylon, also known as Bel or "lord" , as the "bull of Utu" and the bull called Nandi, steed of the Hindu God Shiva.

We repent for the worship of this entity as the "Bull of Heaven" and for the symbol of the crescent moon as symbolized by the horns of the bull.

We repent for the worship of the bull in Egypt as Apis, embodiment of Ptah and later of Osiris.

---

<sup>19</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) The Mystery Babylon. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 141.

---



We repent for the worship of the bull in Greece as the "Bull of Crete", the Minotaur.

We repent for the worship of Nimrod as Ninus in Babylon, Kronos - "The Bull-Horned One" or Saturn in Rome, Zeus in Greece, Osiris in Egypt, Zoroaster in Chaldea. We repent for his representation as Hercules or Atlas in Greece.<sup>20</sup>

## **Semiramis**

We repent for the worship of Semiramis, wife of Nimrod, queen of Babylon.

We repent for the worship of the Queen of Heaven, Ammas or Mother of the gods, Ge or Gaia the Earth goddess, as the Madonna in Italy, Juno, Cybele or Rhea in Rome, Athena, Minerva or Hera in Greece, Shing Moo or Ma Tsoopo in China, Astarte or Ashtoreth in Phoenicia.

We repent for the worship of Semiramis as Aphrodite of Greece, Venus of Rome, Vesta or Terra of Rome.<sup>21</sup>

## **Mystery Babylon.**

We repent for the worship of the unholy trinity in the Babylonian mysteries - Nimrod, his consort Semiramis and their posthumous son Tammuz (proclaimed as the reincarnation of Nimrod).

We repent for all the paganism and idol worship that had their roots in the legends having to do with Nimrod, Semiramis and Tammuz.

---

<sup>20</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 142.

<sup>21</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 142.

We repent for the worship of Semiramis and Tammuz as Semiramis and Tammuz of Babylon:

- ◆ ***Ashtoreth and Tammuz of Phoenicia,***
- ◆ ***Isis and Horus of Egypt,***
- ◆ ***Aphrodite and Eros of Greece,***
- ◆ ***Venus and Cupid of Rome,***
- ◆ ***Cybele and Deoious of Asia,***
- ◆ ***Parvati and Iswara of India,***
- ◆ ***Madonna and Child in various cultures.***

We repent for the system of Mysteries of Babylon that was set up when this false worship went underground in Babylon at the time when Nimrod was killed. We repent for the intended purpose - that of glorification of the dead Nimrod. We repent for the sacrifices to the dead that this worship involved. We repent for the ritual of the lamenting his early death at the summer solstice [about 21/22 December].

We repent for the use of seals of secrecies, oaths, initiation ceremonies and magic used to continue this idolatry in secret. We repent for the spreading of this secret mystery religion through the earth.

We repent for Freemasonry, which was founded on the Mysteries of the Egyptian Isis, the goddess-mother, wife of Osiris.

We repent for all other mystery and false religions that we or our ancestors have practiced, such as Satanism, Luciferianism, Illuminati, Gnosticism, the Knights Templar, Rosicrucianism, Theosophical Society, New World Order, New Age and Lucid Trust.

Lord, please disconnect us from all these false cults and would You please connect all these links back to You.<sup>22</sup>

### **Tammuz.**

Lord, on behalf of ourselves and our ancestors, we repent for the worship of Tammuz, posthumous son of Semiramis, who was claimed to be Nimrod resurrected. We repent for the false legend that he was the promised 'seed of the woman' who would deliver mankind.

We repent for the association of the worship of Tammuz with the winter solstice (about 21/22 June) when the days are the shortest and for the legend that the winter solstice is the sun dying and being reborn.

We repent for the burning of the yule log on the winter solstice, replacing it with a trimmed tree the next morning to represent his resurrection. We repent for the continuing of this pagan tradition during Christmas celebrations.

We repent for the worship of Tammuz as the Sun God and as the Assyrian fertility deity.

We repent for the worship of Tammuz as Horus in Egypt, Bacchus in Rome, Adonis in Greece, Baal-berith or Lord of the Covenant and as Vishnu in India.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>22</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 143.

<sup>23</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 143-144.

---

## **Astral religions - moon gods.**

Lord, we repent for the worship of all heavenly bodies - the Sun, the Moon, the Planets, and the constellations, and for the association of false gods with planets.

We repent for the development of astrology, which focuses on a study of the zodiac, which originated in Babylon. We repent for trying to find and manipulate our destiny by locating the section of the sky that we were born under. We repent for the association of astrology with demonism or Satanism in that Satan and his hosts are being worshipped in the guise of signs or planets.

Forgive us for the worship of the Moon God of the Chaldees, the god of nomadic people. Forgive us for using the Crescent Moon as the symbol of the Moon God and for establishing the lunar calendar around this ungodly worship.

Forgive us for worshipping the black meteorite stone as the Ka'aba, for calling the moon god the Lord of the Ka'aba and for its worship and the worship of 360 other idols.

Forgive us for the worship of the Moon God as Sin in Syria and as Al-Ilah in Arabia.

Forgive us for the establishment of Islam as a religion built around the worship of the Moon God Al-lah. Forgive us for the establishment of cities such as Jericho or Beth-Yerah (House of the Moon God) around this false worship of the Moon God.

Forgive us for the establishment of centers of worship of the Moon God at Ur and Harran and building temples to this god throughout Babylonia and Assyria.

Lord, please disconnect us from the principalities of the land of Babylon including all astral worship and worship of the moon.

Lord, would You deliver us from all curses of insanity (lunacy) that have come upon us as a result of the worship of the moon (Luna). Forgive us for all rituals and practices associated with the different cycles of the moon, including rituals done at new moon, full moon and all shape-shifting.<sup>24</sup>

### **Astral religions - sun gods.**

We repent for all worship of the sun and sun deities as Helios or Titan and Apollo in Greece, Shamash or Tammuz in Mesopotamia at Sippar and Larsa, the Germanic Sol, the Vedantic Surya and Adityas, the Sncan Inti and Aztec Huitzilopochtli, the Egyptian Ra, Amaterasu in Japan, the Slavic Dazhbog.<sup>25</sup>

### **Serpent.**

We repent for the use of the symbol of the snake, serpent or dragon that is associated with Nimrod/Marduk. We repent for all worship of snakes, use of snakes in rituals, worship of deities associated with snakes.

We repent for the use of the caduceus or Rod of Asclepius (Greek god of medicine and healing) or the winged staff with two snakes wrapped around it, the ancient astrological symbol of commerce associated with the Greek god Hermes as the

---

<sup>24</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 144.

<sup>25</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 145.

symbol of medicine based upon the astrological principles of using the planets and stars to heal the sick.

We repent for all worship of Asclepius, Chiron, Hermes and all association of these false deities with the practice of medicine. We repent for the use of magic and hermetic arts in the practice of medicine.

We repent for the worship of other false deities associated with the snake such as Poseidon, Hydra and Triton, Gorgons and Medusa (Greek), Shiva, Naga (India), Auslavis in Lithuania, the Rainbow Serpent of the Aboriginal People of Australia, the Minoan Snake Goddess, Zombi in West Africa and Haiti, Degei in Fiji.

Lord, please disconnect us from all these snake deities. Lord, please disconnect us from Leviathan, the sea monster. Lord please disconnect us from the ancient serpent, the dragon.<sup>26</sup>

### **Other Mesopotamian false gods.**

We repent for the worship of An, the god of heaven (Pan-Mesopotamian) at the E'anna temple at Uruk.

We repent for the worship of Enlil, the god of the air and storms (Pan-Mesopotamian) associated with the planet Jupiter at the E'kur temple in Nippur.

We repent for the worship of Enki (Pan-Mesopotamian), the god of water and fertile earth associated with the planet Mercury, at the E'abzu temple.

---

<sup>26</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 145.

---

We repent for the worship of Eridu or Ea, the god of magic, wisdom and intelligence.

We repent for the worship of Ki or Nirhursag, the mother-goddess representing the earth (Sumerian), at the E'saggila temple at Kish.

We repent for the worship of Ashur (Assyrian), the sky god, the main god of Assyria at Assur.

We repent for the worship of Ninlil or Nillina, the goddess of the air, the south wind, and wife of Enlil (Sumerian) at the E'kur Temple in Nippur.

We repent for the worship of Nergal, god of death, associated with the planet Mars, son of Enlil and Ninlil.

We repent for the worship of Inanna (Ishtar), the goddess of love and war (Sumerian), associated with the planet Venus, at the E'anna temple at Uruk.

We repent for the worship of Marduk, son of Ea, the god of light, the main god of Babylon (Babylonian) at the E'saggila temple in Babylon.

We repent for the worship of Nanna or Suen (Sumerian) or Sin (Akkadian) god of the moon at the E'hursag temple of Ur and Harran.

We repent for the worship of Utu (Sumerian), Tutu (Akkadian) or Shamash (Akkadian) god of the sun at the E'barbara temple of Sippar and in Babylonia.

We repent for the worship of Ninurta (Sumerian Lord Plough associated with the planet Saturn) at the E'Girsu temple at Lagash.<sup>27</sup>

---

<sup>27</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 145-146.

---

### **Seduction of Babylon.**

Heavenly Father, on behalf of my ancestors and myself, I repent for coveting the things of Babylon or the world system and being seduced by the things of the world into disobeying Your commandments and going against Your ways.

On behalf of myself and my ancestors who are part of the Babylonian system, I repent for the seductive spirit of Babylon and for seducing Your people away from You.<sup>28</sup>

### **Mixing with Babylon.**

We repent for allowing our lands and our possessions to be occupied by the people of Babylon and for the intermingling of God's people with the people of Babylon.

While this judgment against us was just retribution for our idolatry, Father, please forgive us and restore unto us our lands and our identity and heritage as Your people.

On behalf of our Babylonian ancestors, we repent for occupation of the land of Israel and for compromising the identity and values of your people.<sup>29</sup>

---

<sup>28</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 146.

<sup>29</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 146.



## **Legitimacy from Babylon.**

We repent for trying to find our legitimacy by displaying to the world the power, wealth, influence, gifts, talents and treasures that You gave us and for using them in the world when they were meant to be dedicated to You and used in Your service.

We repent that we found our legitimacy in looking for admiration and favor from the world instead of deriving our legitimacy from our relationship with You.

Lord we repent that when You tried us to know what was in our hearts, You found us wanting. We pray that You may align our hearts with Your heart.

On behalf of our ancestors we repent that we brought curses into our generational lines so that generational blessings and treasures were stolen from our families and our generational lines were cut off without male heirs. Lord, please restore to us these generational lines and treasures.

On behalf of the Babylon world system, we repent for coveting the treasures given to Your people and for stealing them.<sup>30</sup>

## **Oppression by Babylon.**

On behalf of our ancestors from Babylon, we repent for the attack against Jerusalem, the City of God, its siege, the subsequent famine, the murder and the carrying away

---

<sup>30</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 146-147.

---

of Your people to Babylon, for the blinding and murder of the royal line among Your people, for the enslavement of Your people.

On behalf of the Babylon system, we repent for the destruction of the temple in Jerusalem, the destruction of the pillars of brass, the brazen sea and the stealing of the brass from which they were made. We repent for the stealing of the vessels of the House of the Lord and for placing them in the temples of Babylon.<sup>31</sup>

### **Judgment against Babylon.**

Lord, we pray for our own deliverance from Babylon and the deliverance of many peoples from this system before Your weapons arise against Babylon to destroy it for the final time.

On behalf of ourselves and our ancestors from Babylon we humble ourselves before You, pray, seek Your Face and repent of our wicked ways, our evil, our iniquity, our pride, arrogance and haughtiness. We pray that You may not destroy our land but that You may heal it and restore it.

Lord deliver us from the curses of being hunted down, being sheep without a shepherd, being pierced, cut down and killed in war, our children dashed to death, our homes sacked, our wives raped, our young men shot down, our babies murdered, our children shown no compassion.

Please remove from our lands, houses and lives all ungodly wild beasts of the desert and islands, doleful, howling creatures, owls, ostriches, satyrs and dragons.

---

<sup>31</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 147.

---

On behalf of our ancestors, and ourselves we repent for the predator spirit - for oppressing other people and riding roughshod over those weaker than ourselves whom we were supposed to encourage, defend and lead. We repent for the victim spirit - for passivity or lack of courage that allow predators to oppress us and for not walking in our destiny to possess our birthright.

Lord, please break the staff of the wicked and the scepter of the unrighteous rulers, those who struck Your people with endless blows of rage and those who held nations in their angry grip with unrelenting tyranny. Lord, would You bring rest into our lands and lives and upon the whole earth. May the earth break forth into singing and the trees rejoice.

We repent for all ungodly self-exaltation, pride and rebellion against You. Lord, please remove the wilderness and destruction from our lives and please open the house of the prisoners.

Lord, please remove from our lands, houses, and lives the bittern, the porcupine or hedgehog, the pools or swamps of water and the demonic broom of destruction. Lord, please remove the serpent's root, the viper or adder and the fruit which is the fiery, flying serpent.

Lord, we repent for not taking care of the poor and needy as You have charged us to. We pray that You may help us to feed the poor and find a place for the needy to lie down. We pray that You may help us to build our foundations on Zion which You have founded.

We repent for the idolatry of Babylon and for the graven images of its heathen gods. Forgive us for showing no mercy and for laying the yoke heavily upon the elderly. We repent for multitudes of sorceries, abundance of enchantments, for allowing wisdom

and knowledge to pervert us, for seeking ungodly counsel from astrologers, stargazers, and monthly prognosticators.

Lord, lead us out of Babylon and lead us by the way that we should go. Help us to heed Your Commandments so that our peace is as a river and our righteousness like waves of the sea.<sup>32</sup>

### **Deliverance from Babylon - the Sabbath Rest.**

On behalf of my ancestors, and myself Lord I repent for not entering into and staying in the Sabbath rest that You have ordained for us. Not following Your Principles of the Sabbath rest have brought judgment upon us in the form of periods of captivity to the Babylonian world system according to the times that we have not entered into Your rest.

Lord, we repent for not entering into Your rest because of unbelief. We repent for hardening our hearts against Your voice. We repent for trusting our own works. Help us not to labor doing our own works but to labor to enter into Your rest. Help us to take advantage of the special, appointed times that You have sanctified for us to draw close to You.

Lord, we come to You for Your Rest. We take Your yoke upon us and would learn of You. You are meek and lowly in heart and we shall find rest unto our souls. Your yoke is easy and Your burden is light.<sup>33</sup>

### **Deliverance from Babylon - forsaking the LORD.**

---

<sup>32</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 147-148.

<sup>33</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 148.

Lord, on behalf of ourselves and our ancestors, we repent for desecrating the land by burning incense in it to other gods - by exalting ideas and philosophies from the imaginations of man. We repent for worshipping the works of our own hands - celebrating humanism by exalting ourselves and turning to ourselves as the solution to our problems.

Lord, we hear the cry of Your heart, the abandonment and rejection in Your voice as You cry out to us, *"I remember you - the kindness of your youth, the love of your betrothal, when you went after Me in the wilderness."*

Lord, we repent for losing our first love for You for drifting from You, walking after falsehood and emptiness so that we have ourselves become barren and fruitless like the things we followed. . We repent for not acknowledging Your provision for us in hardship and danger. We repent for defiling the fruitful land that You gave us - for corrupting the inheritance and heritage that You gave us.

We repent for being priests who do not seek You any more. We repent for being religion experts who do not know You. We repent for being authority figures who defy You and Your ways. We repent for being false prophets who prophesied by the spirit of Baal and chased empty dreams and schemes.

We repent for trading our glory - You - for things which can never satisfy us.

Forgive us Lord for forsaking You - the Fountain of Living Waters. Forgive us for hewing broken cisterns that can hold no water.

Lord, deliver us from slavery and from being plundered. Lord, please restore the fruitfulness of our land and please rebuild the ruined places in our cities. We brought this on ourselves when we forsook You.

Forgive us for seeking allies, partnerships and making covenants with powers that You did not mean for us to ally ourselves with.

Deliver us from the shame, evil and bitterness that have come into our lives because we abandoned You and did not fear You. We repent for forsaking You Lord.<sup>34</sup>

### **Deliverance from Babylon - forsaking the LORD**

Lord, would You please forgive us and our ancestors for idolatry, pagan worship, the use of phallic symbols in public places, and sex-and-fertility rites performed on high places and in groves.

We have become degenerate and defiled; paganism is mixed into our lives today. Forgive us for worshipping Baal, and for allowing that spirit to control our land.

Forgive us for spiritual harlotry - becoming available to any and every drive and force around us. This has happened because our heart drifted from You into degeneracy.

Lord, we have exalted man-made idols - our science and technology, our political and social systems, our media programming, looking to them for our origins, for our parenting. Please forgive us.

---

<sup>34</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 148-149.

---

Forgive us Lord for not responding to Your parental discipline. Forgive us for getting rid of the prophets and voice that You sent us.

Lord, we are stained with the blood of the innocent and the poor. Please forgive us. Forgive us for questioning the judgment that has come upon us without acknowledging the sins that we and our ancestors have done.

Lord, please forgive us our spiritual harlotry which has polluted the land. Lord, would You now send the showers that have been withheld from the land? Would You send us the latter or spring rains? Lord, we repent and turn to You with our whole heart.

Lord, we hear Your passionate cry to us to return to You because we are married to You. We acknowledge our iniquity - that we have transgressed against you and not obeyed Your voice, have participated in ritual religious prostitution in the groves of the pagan gods and have scattered our ways to strangers in spiritual whoredom. Lord, would You give us shepherd-rulers according to Your heart who will feed us with knowledge and understanding. We repent for following the unrighteous desires and images in our hearts.

Lord, we repent for the perversion of our ways. We repent for forgetting You. Lord, we return to You as wayward children. Lord, would You heal our wayward, wandering hearts. We come to You - You are the Lord our God and You alone are our salvation.

Lord, shame and dishonor have been the fruit of the labor of our fathers - their possessions, sons and daughters were squandered on a delusion. Lord, would You remove this shame and waste from our generational line.

Lord, we put away our idols and our sin paraphernalia. We want to live in truth, justice and righteousness and we glory in You.

Lord, we plow up the hard ground of our hearts. We stop sowing good seed among thorns. We circumcise ourselves to You and we take away the foreskins of our heart. Lord, we wash our hearts from wickedness and stop harboring devious and malignant designs within us.

Lord, please would You remove the bitter taste of our punishment which pierces our hearts. Lord, our heart cries out aloud in anguish - we writhe in pain. The enemy comes in battle against us. Waves of destruction roll over us, our houses and our land until we lie in complete desolation. Our shelters are gone. Lord - how long will we have to see battle? Deliver us Lord!

We acknowledge that we do not know You, that we do not yet have understanding, that we are clever enough at doing wrong but have no idea how to do right! Now our fertile fields have become a wilderness and our land is ruined. We cry and groan - the anguish of a woman in labor, the cry of the daughter of Zion reaching out for help - from the murderers! Deliver us Lord - we cry to You.<sup>35</sup>

### **Deliverance from Babylon - corruption.**

Lord, forgive us and our ancestors for not being just and honest, for refusing to be corrected by You and refusing to be corrected, being hard-hearted and refusing to return to You. Forgive our leaders for not knowing Your ways and Your judgment, but throwing off Your yoke and breaking free of all restraint. Forgive us and our ancestors for taking part in prostitution and for committing adultery.

---

<sup>35</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 149-150.

---



Forgive us for betraying You, for ignoring Your Word to us and refusing to heed Your warnings. Now, the destroyer has consumed the food of our harvest, our sons and daughters and all our possessions. The insurance and defenses in which we trusted have not protected us!

Lord, forgive us for having eyes and not seeing, for having ears and not hearing You. Help us to hear You with our hearts.

Lord, we will walk in righteous fear of You - who have created order and boundaries for nature and for man. Forgive us for having a defiant and rebellious heart. Our iniquities have shut up the autumn and the spring rains. We have missed the appointed weeks of the harvest and our sins have withheld good things from us.

Forgive us for setting traps for unsuspecting victims, for stuffing our houses with ill-gotten gain from exploitation, for not looking after the orphans and the needy. Forgive us for being lying prophets and ruler-priests who rule by our own power with an iron hand. Forgive us for tolerating such.<sup>36</sup>

### **Deliverance from Babylon - corporate evil.**

Lord, forgive us and our ancestors - our cities are full of brutality, bursting with violence and are full of grieving and wounded people.

Forgive us for covetousness - for going after the dishonest money systems of this world - prophets and priests and everyone in between - for twisting words and doctoring truth.

---

<sup>36</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 151.

---

Your people are broken and shattered - forgive us for being shepherds who put Band-Aids on them and do not heal the hurt of Your people. Forgive us for not being ashamed of our actions.

Forgive us for not stopping at the crossroads and seeing, for not asking for the ancient paths, for not seeking the good way and for refusing to walk in it - we could have found rest for our souls if we had done so.

When You set watchmen over us, we refused to listen to them when they sounded the alarm. Forgive us Lord.

Lord, we have reaped catastrophe and disaster in our lives - the fruit of our own schemes because we have ignored everything You said and treated Your teaching with contempt. And now, under attack, we are paralyzed with fear and terror - death is on the prowl. Lord, please forgive us.<sup>37</sup>

### **Marriage of the Church and the world - Pontifex Maximus.**

Lord, we repent for the transfer of the system of Babylonian paganism with the High Priest's title of Pontifex Maximus from Babylon to the head of the church at Rome. We repent for the mixing of paganism with the church.

Please remove the destruction, the desolation, the scorn and shame that have come upon us. Please restore to us the voice of mirth, the voice of gladness, the voice of the Bride and the Voice of the Bridegroom.<sup>38</sup>

---

<sup>37</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., pp. 151-152.

<sup>38</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 155.

---

## **We declare a divorce!**

Father, we petition for a DIVORCE from Babylon and Rome ... We repent for making covenant with them, and ask that this covenant be nullified by the Blood of Y'shua [Jesus],

Father, we declare that we want to COVENANT ourselves to You, and to our Bridegroom Y'shua [Jesus], and to Your City, Jerusalem.

Father, we declare that we want to come back to You, to RETURN to You and Your Ways... That we LOVE You and Your Ways!<sup>39</sup>

AMEN!

## **3.8 The Destruction Of Mystery Babylon**

John W Milor debated that:<sup>40</sup> At the same time all of the political things mentioned above are going on, a religious movement will also be brewing, and this will especially be prevalent in Europe, which currently has a large Roman Catholic base (about 42 percent). Many—even Catholic scholars have identified the great whore in scripture—as the Roman Catholic Church.

The Roman Catholic Church will dominate the Antichrist for a short time during his rise to power over the ten kings, until the middle of Daniel's seventieth week. Then, in the middle of the week, all the kings of the revised Roman Empire will hand over their power to the beast (the Antichrist) because God will put it in their hearts to do so for

---

<sup>39</sup> Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church., p. 155.

<sup>40</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 181-187.

the specific purpose of destroying Mystery Babylon. In essence the faith in the Roman Catholic Church will crumble from within from the top down.

If there are any true believers in Christ within that religious system at that time, they will be forced to make a decision about their church because this religious system will be destroyed so that the Antichrist himself will be worshipped (Revelation 17:16-17). This forced decision is God's extreme way of shoving lukewarm Christians off the fence of complacency, one way, or another! This is why I mentioned earlier that most of the inhabitants in the revised Roman Empire would be enamored with the Antichrist. Since the beast worship is during the last three and one-half years of the reign of the Antichrist, Mystery Babylon must be destroyed at that time (Revelation 13:1-18).

Now what could cause the massive body of the Roman Catholic Church to change its faith? The only thing capable of doing this, in my mind, is if the leaders of the Roman Catholic Church make one of their famous authoritative decisions, as they have done so many times in the past (which again, I will later elaborate on). What kind of decision might they make that would undermine the remnant of truth they have left, and what events could cause them to think so highly of the Antichrist?

At this very point in time, the current pope of the Catholic Church may be holding on to a prophecy known as the Fatima prophecy, which was passed on from one pope to another since 1917. This prophecy was supposed to be opened to the public in 1960, but it was deliberately withheld by the pope who read it back then. The Roman Catholic Church reportedly revealed this prophecy after the failed assassination attempt on Pope John Paul II, but many speculate that it was only revealed in part. All the popes since 1960 have been holding out on something regarding this third secret prophecy given at Fatima in 1917. Some say it states that the pope will betray

his flock and turn his sheep over to the slaughter of Lucifer himself. Might this be something any pope would consider withholding?

In any case, when all the kingdoms of the revised Roman Empire unite under the Antichrist, it will be the ultimate demise of the Roman Catholic Church. Something quite incredible is going to convince the people of Europe that the Antichrist is worthy of worship. What on Earth could that be? Perhaps I'm asking the wrong question. What if something not from Earth comes into the picture?

The Antichrist will be a mysterious figure indeed. Scripture states that he will be imbued with supernatural power. Concerning the symbol of the beast in Revelation, there are three things represented in the one symbol. First, there is a spirit that comes from the Abyss (Revelation 13:11). Second, there is a mortal human being who is the conduit of the supernatural power of the spirit from the Abyss (Revelation 13:18). Third, the beast as a whole is a reference to both the eighth kingdom of the human Antichrist and the spirit out of the pit (Revelation 17:8—17). So the Antichrist, who will be the leader of the eighth world power, will be empowered by a supernatural being to such a degree that he will be able to make fire come down from the sky, and even cause great miracles to happen (Revelation 13:13-14).

***And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke as a dragon.***

***Revelation 13:11(MKJV)***

***Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred three-score and six.***

***Revelation 13:18(MKJV)***

***The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit [supernatural spirit], and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.***

***And here is the mind which hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sits.***

***And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.***

***And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth [eighth kingdom of the human Antichrist], and is of the seven, and will go into perdition.***

***And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast.***

***These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast.***

***These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall over-come them: for He is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.***

***And he said unto me, The waters which thou sawest, where the whore sits, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues.***

***And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.***

***For God hath put in their hearts to fulfill his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.***

***Revelation 17:8-17(MKJV)***

***And he exercises all the power of the first beast before him, and causes the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, who's deadly wound was healed.***

***And he doeth great wonders, so that he makes fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men,***

***And deceives them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live.***

***Revelation 13:12-14(MKJV)***

Along with the ability to do miracles, the Antichrist will have a strange belief system that doesn't fit with his culture (Daniel 11:37-39). If he's from Lebanon, there's a chance he could be raised either Islamic or Christian (Lebanon consists of a 60

percent Muslim, 39 percent Christian religious demographic), but he clearly won't accept either religion. Instead, he will honor a "strange god."

***Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all.***

***But in his estate shall he honor the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honor with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things.***

***Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.***

***Daniel 11:37-39(MKJV)***

Whoever this strange god is, it'll be appealing to the Western philosophies of Europe, which is primarily composed of first world countries, all of which have strong scientific ideologies. Just as evolution and Christianity have clashed in the United States, they've clashed in Europe, and the Antichrist will most likely tap into this division with the new religion he will introduce, along with the super-natural authority he will be empowered with to back it up.

The reason I'm spending so much time talking about how the Antichrist will manage to deceive people into believing that he is worthy of worship is that this is where I think the deceptions of alien beings may come into play. This is the encapsulation of this book.

The Antichrist will be empowered by a fallen angel (an otherworldly being who has been trapped in a lower dimension of Earth). Reflecting on everything discussed in this book so far, is this not a key indication that the Antichrist will have otherworldly alliances? Consider the fact that one of the specific miracles mentioned of the Antichrist is that he will be able to make fire come down from the sky (Revelation 13:13-14). Does this not denote alliances that span into the heavens? Perhaps the Antichrist will be aligned with beings from other worlds in open contact that will

amaze the entire world. Maybe that's why nobody will be able to defeat him—he'll have a technological (as well as supernatural) advantage that no one will be able to overcome.

John is not alone concerning his opinion that the wars of the future will include otherworldly alliances. People in the highest echelons of government around the world are keenly aware of how such alliances would dramatically affect the outcomes of future wars. Even back in 1955, General Douglas MacArthur voiced his concern about such alliances, and the fact that the people of Earth should stick together, rather than fight among each other.

*"The nations of the world will have to unite, for the next war will be an inter-planetary war. The nations of the Earth must some day make a common front against attack by people from other planets."*

General Douglas MacArthur was actually prophesying when he stated this, because this statement is exactly what the Antichrist will use for his strategy, to unite the people of Earth against Israel, and against God's invasion to defend Israel (which I will discuss more in depth later). This won't happen until the end of the seven-year reign of the Antichrist, however.

President Ronald Reagan voiced the same concern in an address to the United Nations, given in 1987.

*"In our obsession with antagonisms of the moment, we often forget how much unites all the members of humanity. Perhaps we need some outside, universal threat to make us recognize this common bond. I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world."*



Also, Mikail Gorbachev, president of the former Soviet Union, had a similar opinion. *"The phenomenon of UFOs does exist, and it must be treated seriously."*

Might these national leaders be hinting at something? It appears that they all seem to be fully aware of an external threat, and they're looking at a final confrontation of some sort. The information that is missing, however, is the fact that it's not a simple matter of us (humans) against them (aliens). Alliances will be forged between various organizations (governments, churches, the Jews, and so forth) and beings from other worlds, just as alliances are forged between the nations of Earth nowadays. The result, therefore, will include humans and other-worldly beings on both sides of the confrontation between God and the Antichrist.

Going back to the destruction of the Roman Catholic Church, it's as plain as day to me that an unexpected tangent such as the reality of alien beings from other worlds will be at the heart of the rise of the Antichrist, and the destruction of the Roman Catholic Church. As the greater reality unfolds before the world, the faith of many will crumble, and many will align themselves with the awesome power of what they will see before their very eyes. They will think of the Anti-christ as the gateway to the future, a leader established even in the heavens, the person the whole world has been waiting for.

What will people think of the Christians on Earth in those days that refuse this new belief system? They will be thought of as dissidents refusing to accept the truth. Certainly many Christians might be confused about the happenings of the day (at least until they are enlightened by God's faithful angels, and other sources of truth), but the identity of the Antichrist will be clear to any true believer, aliens or no aliens. True Christians will remain faithful to Christ, even if it means death, but the vast majority of the world will be thoroughly amazed with the Antichrist, and I don't think it's just because he'll be charismatic.

He'll have a massive deception backing him up all the way to the end—the delusion spoken of in (2 Thessalonians 2:11-12), and this is where it begins. Scripture speaks of three unclean spirits who will be feeding the deception of the Antichrist (Revelation 16:13-16). The primary deception these unclean spirits will be using will have something to do with the new religion that the Antichrist will be advocating, and that new religion will have something to do with beings from other worlds.

Take special note that tied directly in with the turning point of where the Antichrist starts claiming a deity-like nature is a strange event that Daniel connects with an otherworldly battle.

***And it [the Antichrist] waxed great, even to the host of heaven [heavenly forces]; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them.***

***Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down. And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practiced, and prospered.***

***Daniel 8:10-12(MKJV)***

Here's a possible scenario, as sensationalistic as it may seem. To the amazement of the entire world, extraterrestrial life will become a reality when beings from other worlds introduce themselves in open contact.

In their arrival, they will give special attention to the Antichrist. They will bring with them words promising peace, and this might be why Israel agrees to the seven-year peace treaty in the first place. These beings claiming peace will be the bad guys, however, because they will give credence to the Antichrist. (The good angels aren't out of the picture, either. Don't forget my past reference to the activities of God's faithful angels in the end times. The good guys—also beings from other worlds,

which people will have to get used to thinking of them as, will be openly communicating with the true believers of the day.)

Shortly after the introduction of these otherworldly beings and after the Anti-christ has already consumed three kingdoms from the original ten of the revised Roman Empire, these otherworldly beings will inform the Antichrist of a pending invasion, which they claim will cause great devastation unless the people of Earth cooperate with them. Just as they warned would happen, an invasion ensues, but amazingly, the Antichrist, along with his new allies, will be successful in fending off this otherworldly invasion.

Whether this invasion is from beings allied with God or not is unknown; most likely they will be other fallen beings, and this attack will be a civil war among Satan's minions. I say this because the Antichrist will successfully defeat this invading force, which would be highly unlikely if he were fighting God's faithful angels.

I know this all seems highly sensational and speculative, but consider the wording of Daniel's prophecy: "He waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them." This passage is clearly speaking of a battle that originates from the heavens—outer space—and the invaders are cast down to the ground. This event will establish a historical record that will come to play later in the reign of the Anti-christ, but initially, the Antichrist will use it to magnify himself. Shortly following this cosmic spectacle, the Antichrist will throw a party in the Jewish temple, putting an end to the daily sacrifices that will be going on there.

He'll boldly waltz into the temple and sit in the throne of God (the Mercy Seat of the Ark of the Covenant), and claim that he is God (2 Thessalonians 2:4). Now if that isn't an ego, I don't know what is.

### **3.9 Mystery Babylon Identified As The Roman Catholic Church**

John W Milor debated that:<sup>41</sup> how one knows that the symbol of Mystery Babylon represents the Roman Catholic Church. John doesn't mean to offend any faithful Catholics, because many true Christians affiliate themselves with Catholicism. But John's not going to hide what he know about the Roman Catholic Church because he's afraid of offending anyone.

For starters, the great whore in Revelation 17 is clearly identified as a religious system. It will have a political influence because it will have power over the Anti-christ during the first three and one-half years of his reign. Taking just these two basic facts into account, what religion located within the revised Roman Empire could actually exercise political power over governments in that area? Isn't it obvious? The name "Rome" should be a clear hint.

The Roman Catholic religion began in Rome, obviously, but long before Christianity was accepted, Rome had integrated into its governmental system elements of ancient Babylonian Cultism, which actually started with King Nimrod (Genesis 11) and mutated as it passed down from one generation to the next, as well as from one nation to the next. The title of pontiff, and supreme pontiff, which were political offices held in Rome, are actually titles of priesthood in the Babylonian religion. Julius Caesar was made the supreme pontiff of the Etruscan Order in 74 BC, and in 63 BC, he was made supreme pontiff of the Babylonian Order, thereby becoming heir to the rights and titles of the Attalus, who had made Rome his heir by will.

---

<sup>41</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 187-189.

---

From this point forward, I'm going to outline a small history lesson I obtained from Finis Dake's God's Plan for Man. Finis Dake states the history of Rome so succinctly I'll simply quote directly from the source.

Thus, the first Roman emperor became the head of the Babylonian priesthood and Rome became the successor of Babylon with Pergamos as the seat of this cult. Henceforth, Rome's religion has been that of Babylon. In the year 218 AD, the Roman army in Syria, having rebelled against Macrinus, elected Elagabalus emperor. This man was a High Priest of the Egyptian branch of Babylonianism.

He was shortly afterward chosen Supreme Pontiff by the Romans, and thus the two western branches of the Babylonian apostasy centered in the Roman Emperors who continued to hold this office until 376 AD. At that time, however, the Emperor Gratian for Christian reasons refused it, because he saw that by nature Babylonianism was idolatrous.

Thus, religious matters became disorganized until it became necessary to elect someone to fill the office.

Damasus, Bishop of the Christian Church at Rome, was then elected to the office of Supreme Pontiff. He had been bishop for twelve years, having been made such in 366 AD through the influence of the monks of Mount Carmel, a college of the Babylonian religion originally founded by the priests of Jezebel and continued to this day in connection with Rome. Therefore, in 378 AD, the Babylonian system of religion became part of Christendom, for the bishop of Rome, who later became the supreme head of the organized Roman Catholic Church, was also already Supreme Pontiff of the Babylonian Order. All of the teachings of pagan Babylon and Rome were gradually interspersed into the Christian religious organization. Soon after Damasus was made Supreme Pontiff, the rites of Babylon began to come to the

front. The worship of the Roman Church became Babylonish, and under him the heathen temples were restored and beautified and the rituals established. Thus, the corrupt religious system under the figure of a woman with a golden cup in her hand, making all the nations drunk with her fornication, is called by God "MYESTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT."

Following these words, Finis Dake then proceeds to elaborate on every apostasy introduced into the Roman Catholic Church from this early point in history to the present. These details are no secret to the officials in the Roman Catholic Church that have knowledge of their church history. At the end of this exhaustive list of church doctrines, which had been introduced throughout the past centuries, Dake concludes with the published words of a Roman Catholic Cardinal:

*"Cardinal Newman, in his book (Page 359) The Development of the Christian Religion admits that "Temples, incense, oil lamps, votive offerings, holy water, holidays and seasons of devotions, processions, blessings of fields, sacerdotal vestments, the tonsure (of priests, monks, and nuns), and images are all of pagan origin." Let any honest heart find Scripture for the above practices and see for himself that Romanism is not scriptural. The above chronological list of human inventions disproves the claim of the priests of the Roman Church that their religion was taught by Christ and that the popes have been the faithful custodians of that religion."*

So, that all being said, the Roman Catholic Church is clearly the symbol of Mystery Babylon in Revelation, which will come to an end at the hand of the Antichrist.

Does this mean that Catholics aren't saved? Does this mean that Catholics are completely lost? Absolutely not! There have been numerous reforms in the Catholic Church (such as having the Bible in English - the language of the laypeople, for a big start). Knowing a number of Catholics myself, one can certainly attest to the fact that

there is wide variation among the beliefs that they profess. Many Catholics are like Mormons, they have no idea what they're affiliating them-selves with when they say they're Catholic.

These days the Bible that many Catholics read from is the same Bible that Protestant Christians use (though there was a time in church history when they would've been killed for owning one). In essence the spiritual condition of any person—Catholic, Protestant, or otherwise can be assessed by the fruit of their lives and the core of their relationship with God. If someone believes in the Bible, and professes and lives out an active, living faith in Christ as mentioned in John 3:16, then that person is saved.

Religion is not what saves people. Christ saves people, and he is able to save anyone provided there is true faith in him, even in spite of peripheral religious dogmatic inaccuracies. It's all a matter of what he finds while he digs around in people's hearts. That's my opinion based on what I see in scripture, anyway.

### **3.10 The Tower Of Babel Revealed The Terrible Spiritual Warfare**

Dr. Ed Murphy argued that:<sup>42</sup> The Tower of Babel, indeed Babylon itself, takes us right into the arena of terrible spiritual warfare. Both the Tower and the city are symbols of religious humanism, idolatry, polytheism, and defiance of God. Babylon had been mentioned in 10:10. The writer now explains the origin of the name confusion (11:9) as he describes the efforts of humanity to defy God and to deify themselves.

---

<sup>42</sup> Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) *The Handbook For Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Published In Nashville, Tennessee, By Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc., p. 230.

---

It helps us to follow the chronological flow of the early chapters of Genesis to know something about the time, which elapsed between the Flood and Babel. Calvin believes it was about 100 years. He arrives at this conclusion by computing the years recorded in (Genesis 10). (Wenham says over 300 years.)

This means that Noah and his three sons were alive during the events described in (Genesis 11:1-9) if there are not large gaps in the genealogies listed in chapter 10. They were probably not part of the rebellious group mentioned in chapter 11, however. This group had journeyed east to Shinar (11:2), that is, to Babylon.

### **Nimrod**

(Genesis 10) gives us the origin of Babylon in one man called Nimrod. His personal character became the character of the nations of that area, even until today Iran and Iraq. (Genesis 10:8-12) talks of him as "Nimrod a mighty one on the earth" (Genesis 10:8). He is one of the most famous but enigmatic men named in the Old Testament. Not only was he called a mighty hunter but also the great city builder who built Babylon and Nineveh (Genesis 10:10-11). He was one remarkable personage!

Because of the seeming impossibility that one man could accomplish all that is listed here, some suggest Nimrod is the expression of a series of god-kings in this area who defied the Lord. His name would support this conjecture. It means, "We shall rebel."

Israel's relationship with Mesopotamia, Assyria, Canaan, and Egypt formed the most important socio-cultural and religious relationships in her entire history in the Old Testament. Mesopotamia in general and Babylonia in particular are synonymous in the Old Testament with human culture separated from the true God, founded upon human pride, world domination, polytheism, henotheism, demon-ism, and animism.



For this reason I believe the scholars who take a more negative view of Nimrod and his exploits are correct. He built Babylonia and Assyria, Israel's most horrendous persecutors in later days. He established the idolatrous culture out of which God found it necessary to call Abraham in order to build His elect people, Israel.

Two more things are important about Nimrod. He is the man of rebellion of (Genesis 10-11). He becomes a new Cain, a murderer and rebel against God. As "a mighty one upon the earth," he became the "mighty hunter." What he hunted were not animals, but men.

The word about his being a mighty hunter by itself might be taken to refer to hunting animals were it not for the phrase "in the sight of Yahweh..." He says, "man's little hunting exploits are hardly sufficient to rouse the wonder and admiration of the Almighty. Besides, in this case the name of Yahweh is used, i.e., the God of mercy and covenant." Since Nimrod's exploits in conquering peoples and building two powerful anti-God and anti-Israel empires is the focal point of his hunting exploits, it is the hunting of men, which is in question. He is an Old Testament antichrist figure.

Calvin says Moses describes him as "a furious man he violently seized his prey he approximated to beasts rather than to men. The expression 'Before the Lord,' seems to me to declare that Nimrod attempted to raise himself above the order of men." He became the prototype of later god-kings. This is important to the lifestyle picture Joshua later gives of the fathers of the nation of Israel.

Nimrod is described as the builder of Babel (Genesis 10:10). This leads to the story of the Tower of Babel. Wenham says that Babel was the manifestation of man's "desire to displace God from heaven, to make a name for one's self rather than allow God to do this."

### **The Sin of Babel**

Again this supports our spiritual warfare interpretation of the sin of Babel leading to God's judgment. Satan, "the god of this world," building on the corrupt flesh of man (his pride) and his worldly ambitions, was the spirit behind the Tower of Babel. Wenham says, "Throughout Scripture Babylon is seen as the embodiment of human pride and godlessness that must attract the judgment of almighty God." It is also the symbol of the rejection of the true God and the creation of god systems, which are created by men to meet their own selfish, wants.

Therefore the story before us in (Genesis 11:1-9) is not encouraging. While those who journeyed east to Shinar did not constitute all of humanity, the judgment against Babel seems also to have been against all humanity. Human languages were confused. They were scattered "abroad over the face of the whole earth" (Genesis 11:9). It was from descendants of this group that God called Abraham and formed the elect nation of Israel.

One thing is certain, however, using this story as representative of the spiritual and moral conditions of humanity in general, things were bad. Forgotten were the lessons humanity should have learned from the judgment of God against man's sinfulness in the Deluge. Unfortunately, though God gave the human race a new beginning with Noah, the human heart was still the same. The warfare with the flesh and the world and the Devil continued. As man became more and more preoccupied with himself and negligent of God, the old sin patterns soon surfaced again.

"The tower of Babel story is the last great judgment that befell mankind in primeval times. Its place and function in (Genesis 1-11) may be compared to the fall of man in Genesis 3 and the sons of God episode in (Genesis 6:1-4), both of which triggered divine judgments of great and enduring consequences." The same type of divine judgment occurs in this story also.

The social system established in Babylon is revealed in (Genesis 6:3-4). It was thoroughly humanistic. They were not interested in God's name, but in their name. As Calvin remarks: "To erect a citadel was not in itself so great a crime; but to raise an eternal monument to themselves, which might endure throughout all ages, was a proof of headstrong pride, joined with contempt of God ... they wage war with God."

"They wage war with God." They devised a social structure—their world—at war with God. This is both the flesh and the world at war with the law of God written on human hearts. As we will soon see, it also had demonic overtones.

Hamilton says the Tower was the predecessor of the Mesopotamian *ziggurat* or *ziggurat*. He says it is a temple tower. Toward the end of the last century, the discovery of Esagila, the great temple of Marduk in Babylon, suggested this particular edifice as the source behind the biblical narrative. The ziggurat of this temple was called *E-temen-an-ki*, "house of the foundations of heaven and earth." Rising 300 feet above ground, with two sanctuaries in it, it was believed to have been built by the gods.

They call the Tower of Babel and the ziggurat "major temple complexes. Others have seen it as the throne of the deity (Isaiah 14:13)."

Thus there is little doubt that the Tower had a religious as well as a human function. Hamilton says the Tower was a temple tower. It was not only an expression of man's pride (the flesh) with the purpose of gaining the esteem of other cultures (the world). It was also dedicated to foreign gods (evil supernaturalism). If so, (Genesis 11) is a passage dealing with spiritual warfare from the perspective of multidimensional sin.

While there is nothing in the account, which speaks of foreign gods, building the Tower was man's attempt to make himself God or equal to God, Hamilton, Wenham,

and Calvin affirm. "The builders of the tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4)... in some way are rebelling against God and trying to be like Him."

Building the Tower was a repetition of humans deceived by Satan's first great lie (Gen. 3:5). While Satan's tactics might change, his goal is always the same: to lead humanity to rebel against the lordship of God and to serve Satan by seeing himself as his own god or by serving false gods.

### **The Call of Abraham**

The next great incident in Genesis is the call of Abraham (Genesis 12:1-3). God called him out of the land of the Chaldeans, i.e., Mesopotamia (Genesis 11:28). Thus from the very heart of the land of idolatry and polytheism, God begins again. He calls one man-probably an idolater Abraham (Joshua 24:2) to Himself (Genesis 11:26; 12:3). It is not our purpose to make a study of the life and family of Abraham. We must look at God's purpose in calling him, however. (Genesis 12:1-3) incorporates at least four major elements into Abraham's divine call:

- ◆ a call to a new land (verse 1);
- ◆ a call to be the father of a great nation (verse 2);
- ◆ a call to great blessings from God Himself (verse 2);
- ◆ a call to be a blessing to "all the families of the earth" (verse 2b-3).

The land was the land of Palestine, or Canaan. The great nation was the nation of Israel. The blessing of God was to be His covenants with Abraham and His nation, Israel. The blessing Abraham was to be to "all the families of the earth" was God

Himself manifested through Israel to all humanity. All, of course, would ultimately focus on the Messiah, the Son of God, our Lord and Savior.

To accomplish this, God must first call Abraham out of the pit of idolatry and polytheism in which he was involved (Genesis 11:26; Joshua 24:2-3).

The possible connection of Terah (Heb. *terah*) with the word *Yareah*, moon and *yerah*, lunar month, if substantiated, would suggest that Abram's family and ancestors were worshipers of the moon. One suggestion is that Terah means *Ter*, i.e., the divine brother or protector (Heb. *'ah*), *ter* being a dialectal variant of *shr*, a South Arabic term for the moon. *Sarai*, Sarah, is the equivalent of *sarratu*, queen, an Akkadian translation of a Sumerian name for Ningal, the female partner of the moon-god Sin. Milcah is the same name as the goddess Malkatu, the daughter of Sin.

Laban (Heb. *laban*) means white, and *lebana*, the white one, is a poetic term for the full moon. In addition, both Ur and Haran were thriving centers of moon worship; thus it is probable that the theological milieu in which Abram lived for a good bit of his life was one in which the cult focused its adoration on moon worship.

Next, God must strengthen Abraham to be able to live in the land of Canaan, a land also totally engaged in idolatry and polytheism. In God's plan was a 400-year exile for Abraham's descendants in the land of Egypt (Gen. 15:13-16). His descendants would then take the land, and through their godly lifestyle all the nations would come to know the one true God.

The rest of the Old Testament is the story of that plan in progress. It is often a sad story of failure upon failure in following Yahweh, the true God. Israel would have only one major battle during the entire Old Testament period. It was the battle with the other gods, i.e., the "no-gods" (Galatians 4:8; Ephesians 2:12).

During their lifetime, the great patriarchs Abraham and Isaac and their families lived in the midst of the polytheism and idolatry of Canaan but remained true to God. To a limited extent, so did troublesome Jacob. During and after the sojourn in Egypt Israel went the opposite direction, however. Even after the Exodus, the nation continued to serve the gods of their fathers the gods of Mesopotamia. They also continued to serve the gods of Egypt. Above all, they went after the gods of Canaan right up to the time of the Babylonian exile. This was Israel's major area of spiritual warfare. It was a war that Israel continually lost (Joshua 24; Judges 2-21; 1, 2 Kings).

### 3.11 Another Tower

Thomas Horn stated<sup>43</sup> that: Isaiah marking the end of time by destruction of Babylon (Iraq) and the return of terrible giants (Nephilim) when God commands a "ruler" to "open the gates," releasing giants to fulfill His wrath. What God did in Egypt when "He cast upon them the fierceness of His anger... by sending *evil angels* among them" [emphasis added] (Psalm 78:49), He will do again. Yet, Isaiah's prophecy is additionally fascinating given that Nimrod, the designer of the Tower of Babel the "gate of god"—was himself a Nephilim [Gibborim] see (1 Chronicles 1:10).

In *Cydonia: The Secret Chronicles of Mars*, David E. Flynn takes this a step further, connecting Nimrod's construction of the Tower of Babel to the rebel planet Mars. Nimrod... a giant of the race of Nephilim... authored the plan for the tower... [and was] associated in myth with Nergal, the Babylonian god of Mars... *The Tower of Babel was a tower to Mars.*

---

<sup>43</sup> Horn, Thomas R. (2007) *Nephilim Stargates, The Year 2012 And The Return Of The Watchers*. USA: Published By Anomalos Publishing House, Crane 65633., pp. 191-192.

---

Thus, not only was Nimrod a Nephilim, not only did he design the Tower of Babel ("gate of god"), not only was he associated with Mars and built the tower of Babel to the rebel prison planet, but he, like other giants, was daimonic (demonic) in origin. The significance of this cannot be overlooked. Babel was a *Nephilim gateway*, and it is prophesied to be the future location from which "gates" open and "giants" return.

### **3.11.1 Ancient Advanced Science And Did God Mean What He Said?**

Thomas Horn stated<sup>44</sup> that: (Genesis 11) tells the story of the tower of Babel. The builders wanted to create a structure "... whose top may reach unto heaven [Hebrew *shaw-mah'-yim*]" (Genesis 11:4). When the Lord came down and saw what was happening, he said, "...nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do" (Genesis 11:6).

This comment seems curious if the meaning here is only that the tower would reach into the "sky." Structures had been built around the world since the dawn of time extending significantly upward. Yet, as far as I know, none of them created a response from God, saying, "...nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do." Josephus points out that the Tower of Babel was being made waterproof and that this was an act of rebellion against God, defying him for sending the Flood and preparing for survival of future acts of punishment should they come. Yet, what if something else is meant here? Something that fits "which they have imagined to do" more perfectly with scripture and history? Something that points to the physicality of Heaven as in the dwelling place of angels and/or the peripheral nearness of the Ahriman<sup>45</sup> Gate?

---

<sup>44</sup> Horn, Thomas R. (2007) *Nephilim Stargates, The Year 2012 And The Return Of The Watchers*. USA: Published By Anomalos Publishing House, Crane 65633., pp. 192-195.

<sup>45</sup> The Evil Spirit In The Doctrine Of Zoroastrianism, The Opponent Of Ahura Mazda.

Keep in mind that, like the Bible often has, one draws finite abstractions for human comprehension with this question: How close to the surface of the earth is the dwelling place of angels? Of demons? Of God? This question can be ask because human nature tends to place the physical (for want of a better term) location of these domains far out into space. Yet, what if the "heavens" are so close as to have been reached upon tall mountains? The Nephilim had intimate knowledge of the original earth before the heavens were closed-up and before God no longer walked with man in the cool of the evening. Did the Nephilim as offspring of fallen angels know something about the periphery of Kosmos and/or the throne room of God that we do not?

Did they know that in some way these locations are just above our heads? Is this why Holy people throughout time have felt driven subconsciously to ascend mountains in search of God? Is this why scriptural and extra-biblical literature universally depict metaphors of heaven attained upon elevated platforms Jacob's ladder, Quetzalcoatl's<sup>46</sup> ladder, the gods upon the Mount of Olympus, the feet of the returning Christ upon the Mount of Olives, Moses receiving the Law from God upon Sinai, and the Watchers descending upon Mount Hermon? Is this why Nimrod, a Nephilim, built the tower of Babel whose top would reach into heaven?

Scientist Stan Deyo has done analysis of a Tower of Babel Stele with speculation about whether the original Tower of Babel was actually designed to facilitate reaching "the heavens" as indicated in the comments above. Was it a building whose top was high enough to allow higher-dimensional beings to descend slowly while discharging voltage directly into the lower energy density universe? The uppermost portion of the stele may show a "bright" or burning circular area, while the edges of the tower layers themselves are smooth like a high voltage insulator, as if for dissipating electricity.

---

<sup>46</sup> See Terms And Definitions



Beings who descended from heaven were typically accompanied by fire or lightning (electrical discharge?), while beings that ASCEND from lower energy densities (regions) tend to cool the atmosphere, such as in the classic "ghost" entering a room.

Ancient artwork that may support this theory is wide-spread throughout ancient times including depictions of gods accompanied by fire.

One also cannot help wonder if freemasons involved in the design of US currency did not know something of the meaning of gods descending on towers when they placed a brilliant all-seeing eye above the pyramid on the back of the dollar bill or when similar initiates of mystery religion designed the Pentagons data mining service, the Information Awareness Office.

And did you ever wonder why the top stone of the Great Pyramid is not in place? Kind of makes you wonder if NASA and DARPA's work on developing a tower into space made from carbon nanotubes, and a space elevator, is reverse engineering of technology recovered from Iraq or something needed for the return of the Sumerian gods!?

On the one hand the idea that "heaven" is just above our heads could bring comfort, to conceptualize God and his angels in such close proximity. On the other hand this notion brings significance to the prophecies of Isaiah regarding earthly Babel-gates opening at the end of time during a period of war in Iraq when, according to the prophet, the earth will be invaded by destructive, emerging Nephilim.

### 3.11.2 Daniel Fought The Gate Keeper

Thomas Horn stated<sup>47</sup> that: In the tenth chapter of Daniel the story unfolds of the prophet praying for twenty-one days before the angel Gabriel appeared to say, **"...from the first day thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, they words were heard, and I am come for thy words"** (Daniel 10:12).

Why did it take Gabriel twenty-one days to arrive? Because a powerful Persian demon had opposed him, and not until Michael, the archangel, came to help was Gabriel free to continue his journey.

In Persian theology this opposing spirit would have been identified as Ahriman. In the Book of Daniel he is simply called "the prince of the kingdom of Persia" (Iraq/Iran). He was the Babel gatekeeper, as fictionalized in our book—*The Ahriman Gate*.

God also revealed to (Daniel 7) other types of earthly "kingdom" influences: the Babylonian, the Medo-Persian, the Greek, and the Roman, each of which was a mere human agency under the control of supernatural powers.

The principality of the Medo-Persian kingdom was depicted as a warmongering spirit seeking to dominate through military aggression, while its predecessor Babylonia was characterized by "forces" pretending to the throne of God.

Throughout the Bible, spiritual Babylon is equivalent to the world system that is at enmity with God. Babylon began at the Tower of Babel, where at the macro level Satan's strategy to incarnate a one-world system was first attempted.

---

<sup>47</sup> Horn, Thomas R. (2007) *Nephilim Stargates, The Year 2012 And The Return Of The Watchers*. USA: Published By Anomalos Publishing House, Crane 65633., pp. 195-196.

---

It now appears that it will end there, as the world hurdles toward a final climactic encounter with giants... and their "ruler."

### 3.11.3 Forerunner Of The Nephilim Giants

Thomas Horn stated<sup>48</sup> that: Preceding Daniel's visit by Gabriel, a dream from Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon, gave Daniel insight concerning these kingdoms and the final "revived" empire that will ultimately provide the grand entry for the mother {or should we say father?} of all Nephilim, the Antichrist of End Times prophecy. Daniel's prediction is amazing in light of the extraordinary references made in (Daniel 2):

***“And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.”*** (Daniel 2:43)

Just what (or who) are "mingling with the seed of men?" Who are these Non-seed? It staggers the mind to contemplate the potential significance of Daniel's passage and its implications for the future global governance.

When Daniel's prophecy is coupled with Genesis 3, an incredible tenet emerges, that *Satan has seed-, and it is at enmity with Christ!*

***“And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel”.*** (Genesis 3:15)

---

<sup>48</sup> Horn, Thomas R. (2007) Nephilim Stargates, The Year 2012 And The Return Of The Watchers. USA: Published By Anomalos Publishing House, Crane 65633., pp. 196-198.

---

The word translated here, as "seed" is the Hebrew word *zera*, which means "offspring, descendants, children."

Is Satan's "posterity" lurking behind gates, waiting for a final opportunity to mingle themselves with human DNA, as in days of old? Is this the method by which the Nephilim will return? Is this, as noted earlier in this book concerning demoniality, the method by which Antichrist himself will be incarnated? If (Genesis 6) is truly an account of rebel angels leaving their assigned habitation and cohabiting with human females, out of which union mutant life forms were born, is it reasonable to assume that Satan, as a fallen angel, already has, or will be allowed ability to copulate with a woman?

According to the Bible, the Antichrist will be "the son of perdition," the male progeny of the Greek *apoleia*, or Apollyon. The implication couldn't be clearer, the Man of Sin will be the physical offspring of the destroyer demon, a transgenic of the highest order.

### **3.11.4 The Father Of Nephilim And The Son Of Perdition**

Thomas Horn stated<sup>49</sup> that: Some believe that in the very near future a man of superior intelligence, wit, charm, and diplomacy will descend from the clouds or otherwise emerge on the world scene as a savior. He will seemingly possess a transcendent wisdom that enables him to solve problems and offer solutions to many of today's most perplexing issues. His popularity will be widespread, and his fans will include young and old, religious and non-religious, male and female.

---

<sup>49</sup> Horn, Thomas R. (2007) *Nephilim Stargates, The Year 2012 And The Return Of The Watchers*. USA: Published By Anomalos Publishing House, Crane 65633., pp. 198-203.

---

Talk show hosts will interview his colleagues, news anchors will cover his movements, scholars will applaud his uncanny ability at resolving what has escaped the rest of us, and the poor will bow down at his table. He will, in every human way, appeal to the best idea of society. But his profound comprehension and irresistible presence will be the result of an invisible network of thousands of years of collective knowledge. He will represent the embodiment of a very old and super intelligent spirit. As Jesus Christ was the "seed" of the woman, he will be the "seed" of the serpent" (Gen 3.15). Although numerous scriptures foretold his arrival in the form of a man, the broad masses of the world will not recognize him as the ultimate transgenic incarnation, the "beast" of (Revelation 13:1).

It has been assumed for centuries that a prerequisite for the coming of the Antichrist would be the "revived" world order of Daniel's prophecy, an umbrella under which national boundaries dissolve, and ethnic groups, ideologies, religions, and economics from around the world, orchestrate a single and dominant sovereignty. Such a system will supposedly be free of religious and political extremes, and membership will tolerate the philosophical and cultural differences of its constituents. Except for minor nonconformity, war, intolerance, and hunger will be a thing of the past. At the head of the Utopian administration, a single personality will surface. He will appear to be a man of distinguished character, but will ultimately become "a king of fierce countenance" (Daniel 8:23).

With imperious decree he will facilitate a one-world government, a universal religion, and global socialism. Those who refuse his New World Order will inevitably be imprisoned or destroyed, until at last he exalts himself "above all that is called God, or that is worshiped, so that he, as God, sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God" (2 Thessalonians. 2:4).

For many years the idea that such an "Orwellian" society would arise, where a one-world government oversees the smallest details of our lives and where human liberties are abandoned, was considered an anathema. The concept that rugged individualism could be sacrificed for an anesthetized universal harmony was repudiated by America's greatest minds. Then, in the 1970s, things began to change. Following a call by Nelson Rockefeller for the creation of a "new world order," presidential candidate Jimmy Carter campaigned, saying, "We must replace balance of power politics with world order politics." Evidently he struck a chord with world leaders.

The blending of politics and spirituality, such as occurs in these movements, harmonizes perfectly with the ideas of an end-time marriage of government policy and religious creed as was prophesied in the Bible.

To that end, the tools necessary for paganism's ultimate incarnation—the god-king of the Great Tribulation (Satan in flesh), are in place. The "gods" have been revived through modern mysticism. The pagan agenda of governing by "divine representation" is being constructed. The governments of the world are uniting beneath a one-world banner, and the earth's masses stand at the brink of a decisive moment in time.

According to some Christians, this is the unfolding of an ancient scheme. At the core of the conspiracy, a leader of indescribable brutality is scheduled to appear. He will make the combined depravities of Antiochus Epiphanes, Hitler, Stalin, and Genghis Khan, all of whom were types of the Antichrist, look like Pee Wee Hermans Playhouse. He will raise his fist, "speaking great things... in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven" (Revelation 13:5-6). As he champions worship of the gods who comes through

portals, he will cause "that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed" (Revelation 13:15).

## **4 CONCLUSION**

Dr. Ana Méndez Ferrell argued<sup>50</sup> **My message is not to get people out of churches but to get the churches out of *Babylon* - the Pastor and the people - and bring them into the Kingdom of God.** People come to Jesus, but they never destroy the *Babylonian* structure from whence they have come throughout their generations. It's easier to attend a worship service on Sunday than to take authority and become the kings and priests He wants his people to be. This system only has space for a few people to grow and change, but the Kingdom of God is not like it, everyone can become what God designed for them to be.

*Babylon* is confusion, which always twists God's message. Its main intent is to separate Heaven from Earth, which will deny and obstruct the Heavenly reality inside the believer. Jesus came to join Heaven and Earth and to give us the fullness of His life so one could truly be His Body on Earth. The religious structures upon which man place divine revelation must be destroyed if one want to have the authority to reign.

*Babylon calls itself Queen, Mistress of the Kingdoms.* She wants to have the kingdom so Jesus doesn't have it. This causes people to not recognize Christ in His Kingdom. They receive Him as their savior, but not as the sovereign Lord over their lives. It enables them to see Christ filled with His glory in Heaven above, yet not the Christ living in their hearts who capable of healing all their sicknesses and solve all

---

<sup>50</sup> Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) *Apocalypse*. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc., pp. 130-131.

their problems. *Babylon* "has to have control" over everything and will never release it to the Holy Spirit.

The Church, deceived by *Babylon*, moans for God to descend His glory upon her. They fast and pray, wait for Him to one-day send the revolving fire of His glory that will usher in the awaited revival.

Beloved of my Father, do people not realize that it's Jesus in all His glory who inhabits us? What different, more powerful glory can come than the one Jesus has already granted us?

***And I have given them the glory which You have given Me, that they may be one, even as We are one,***

***John 17:22(MKJV)***

In the ***Book of Revelation***, Jesus reveals Himself to John in His glory so that by contrast people can identify *Babylon* and come out of it. One's not saying that people need to leave their congregations; but that whole congregations need to come out of *Babylon* and become re-structured to God's model: a Church united by the Holy Spirit, blessing and spiritually governing over the cities.

It's in that glory that Jesus gives the message to the seven churches, our manual on how to enter the most powerful authority to govern with Jesus.

This message is not addressed to the observance of the commandments of the Old Covenant; instead, it denounces the religious *Babylonian* spirit and the manner it operates. It stealthily creeps up in the life of the believers, robbing them of the life and the fire of their first love, until it leaves them without any authority or power.



"The King of Babylon," as he is called in (Isaiah 14), will revive the Babylonian mystery religion, the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird" where merchants of the earth trade in "souls of men" and where "the blood of prophets, and of saints" is found (Revelation 18:2, 13, 24).

The book of Revelation details what follows the rise of Antichrist, culminating in cataclysmic war called Armageddon, a time during which God Almighty judges the "gods" who come through portals, including, we would assume, so-called Zeus, Apollo, Demeter, Isis, and others.

However futile, the *gods will* retaliate, and a war of indescribable intensity will occur. It will be fought on land and sea, in the heavens above, and in the earth below, in the physical and spiritual worlds. It will include "Michael and his angels [fighting] against the dragon; and the dragon [fighting] and his angels" (Revelation 12:7).

Some humans will join the battle against God, calling on "idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood" (Revelation 9:20) to convene their power against the Christian God, even uniting with "unclean spirits like frogs...the spirits of *devils* [the frog goddesses Heka?] Working miracles, which go forth unto the kings of the earth...to gather them to the battle of that great day... To a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon ["Mount Megiddo"]" (Revelation 16:13-14,16).

There, in the valley of Megiddo, the omnipotent Christ will utterly repel the forces of darkness and destroy the New World army. Blood will flow like rivers, and the fowl of the air will "eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth" (Ezekiel 39:18). Besides Armageddon, battles will be fought in the Valley of Jehoshaphat and in the city of Jerusalem. Yet, the battle of Armageddon is the event

that culminates the hostility between God Almighty and the lower gods that traverse portals.

Once before, Satan and his "god" spirits challenged Yahweh at Megiddo. They lost. On Mount Carmel, overlooking the Valley of Armageddon, the prophets of Baal dared the Hebrew God to answer by fire. He did, and it looks like he will again. When he does, here is what the Bible says will happen:

***And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth and their armies, being gathered to make war against Him who sat on the horse, and against His army.***

***And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet doing signs before it, (by which he deceived those who had received the mark of the beast), and those who had worshiped his image. The two were thrown alive into the Lake of Fire burning with brimstone.***

***And the rest were slain by the sword of Him who sat on the horse, it proceeding out of His mouth. And all the birds were filled from their flesh.***  
***Revelation 19:19-21(MKJV)***

***And I saw a great white throne, and Him sitting on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away. And a place was not found for them.***

***And I saw the dead, the small and the great, stand before God. And the books were opened, and another book was opened, which is the Book of Life. And the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.***

***And if anyone was not found having been written in the Book of Life, he was cast into the Lake of Fire.***  
***Revelation 20:11, 12, 15(MKJV)***

A different destiny awaits the righteous following the battle of Armageddon:

***And I saw Heaven opened. And behold, a white horse! And He sitting on him was called Faithful and True. And in righteousness He judges and makes war.***

***And His eyes were like a flame of fire, and on His head many crowns. And He had a name written, one that no one knew except Himself.***

***And He had been clothed in a garment dipped in blood, and His name is called The Word of God.***

***And the armies in Heaven followed Him on white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.***

***And out of His mouth goes a sharp sword, so that with it He should strike the nations. And He will shepherd them with a rod of iron. And He treads the winepress of the wine of the anger and of the wrath of Almighty God.***

***And He has on His garment, and on His thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.***

***Revelation 19:11-16(MKJV)***

***And I saw an angel come down from Heaven, having the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand.***

***And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him a thousand years.***

***And he cast him into the abyss and shut him up and set a seal on him, that he should deceive the nations no more until the thousand years should be fulfilled. And after that he must be loosed a little time.***

***And I saw thrones, and they sat on them, and judgment was given to them. And I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the witness of Jesus and for the Word of God, and who had not worshiped the beast nor his image, nor had received his mark on their foreheads, nor in their hands. And they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.***

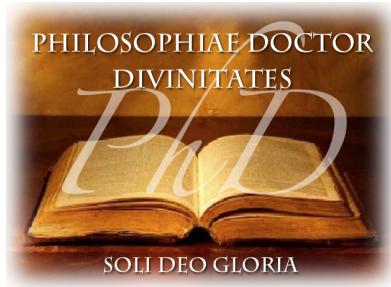
***But the rest of the dead did not live again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.***

***Blessed and holy is he who has part in the first resurrection. The second death has no authority over these, but they will be priests of God and of Christ, and will reign with Him a thousand years.***

***And when the thousand years have expired, Satan will be loosed out of his prison.***

***Revelation 20:1-7(MKJV)***

-----oOo-----



## CHAPTER FIVE

### THE ULTIMATE EVIL AND DESTRUCTION AS REVEALED IN THE MYSTERY OF THE END TIME ANTICHRIST

#### SECTION A: THE ANTICHRIST

*There will be consummated one person, an Antichrist, who will come upon the scene, and again, you know what his message is — New World Order.*

*Rev. Charles Stanley*

#### 1 INTRODUCTION

*And I stood on the sand of the sea, and I saw a beast coming up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns. And on its horns were ten crowns, and on its heads was the name of blasphemy.*

*Revelation 13:7: And it was given to it to war with the saints and to overcome them. And authority was given to it over every tribe and tongues and nation.*

*Revelation 13:1, 7(MKJV)*

Dwight Kinman argued<sup>1</sup> that the world has a rendezvous with a super world dictator. He will be the last great dictator of history; he will be a man of fantastic brilliance and charisma - light years ahead of any man who ever lived. God has given us, in the book of Daniel, a candid snapshot of this coming world ruler who is destined to appear on the world scene just prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Kinman, Dwight L (1995) The World's Last Dictator. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p188.

Through the miracle of Bible prophecy man can know the power block of nations out of which he will arise; what he will do in his infamous career; the exact time-frame that he will be allowed to reign; his fatal mistake; and his final doom.

At this junction point in history, the world's elite – kings, presidents, prime ministers and Nobel Prize winning scientists are calling for a leader.

The president of the World Federalists (a powerful New Age organization), Thomas E Erenzeller, called for a sort of **super being to preside over the earth.**<sup>2</sup>

God's Word, the Bible, revealed in Daniel and in the book of Revelation that a world president, a great chief executive, a total dictator, a truly super being will take the gavel of the UN. He will be the Beast, the Antichrist, the man with the Satanic number 666.

## 2 THE ANTICHRIST OR THE "BEAST"

Tal Brook argued<sup>3</sup> that as people have seen, the Antichrist has been called the "*man of sin*," the "*son of perdition*," and "*the lawless one*." In the Book of Revelation, he is also called "*the beast*." The apocalyptic imagery shows the outrageous reality of one who uses the body of a man, but who is far more than a man. This ageless spiritual power the power from the Abyss is possessing a human body to fulfill a deadly agenda centuries in the making.

Why is "*apocalyptic language*" used? It is needed when mortal minds are grappling with aspects of reality that go far beyond the senses, especially the spiritual

---

<sup>2</sup> Erenzeller, Thomas E.

<sup>3</sup> Brooke, Tal (2000) One Word. USA: End Run Publication., pp. 205-211.

dominions. If they happen to be operating in die distant future, die challenge becomes far greater. Apocalyptic language is the only conceivable medium to communicate these realities.

For instance, God, using the apostle John as his instrument, would not invent some Aramaic or Greek word for *"holographic laser scanning"* that by its own future context would not any meaning for 2000 years. John the apostle could not say, *"Oh yes, it was a laser operating at a billion joules of power,"* or *"After they achieved nuclear fusion..."* or, *"Particle beam weaponry in advanced satellites..."*

He could only describe things with available imagery in the ancient world thus enabling it to be meaningfully transmitted but imagery that the mind could use to make the leap. Even in this century direct terms like *"the central processor was operating at a gigahertz"* would have been meaningless before the past decade. As recently as the early seventies, people would have been baffled by, *"My IBM crashed using Windows 95 and an older Pentium."*

Now imagine suddenly being able to glimpse into the far future from the ancient world, then being told to describe that utterly different world 2000 years ahead. Add to this an ability to discern spiritual realities at work, and the job of communicating this to contemporaries and others across history is titanic. Only God can find a linguistic medium to do this apocalyptic language: visual and symbolic metaphor that describes spiritual and concrete realities intersecting and acting in concert.

There will be lessons in apocalyptic descriptions applicable to any era, such as the ageless struggle between good and evil, but only when outward conditions approximate the time of the prophecy do things really come into focus. God set it up that way, and that is why Luther and Calvin almost gave up on die Book of Revelation!

When Daniel asked God the meaning of his baffling vision of the future, God responded: *"Go thy way, for the meaning of these things will not be shown until the time of the end."* So, too, with the Book of Revelation, which unfurls like a massive blueprint as the calendar of world events progresses.

Undoubtedly, the Book of Revelation had a message to the early believers of its day about the real powers at work behind Rome and the Caesars.

It provided a context for their persecution, spiritual insight regarding the source of this adversity. It encouraged the efforts of the early church to maintain the faith against immense opposition. All this helped the church survive this first wave of persecution (the preterist view).

Revelation also portrays the rising and falling tides across history, the patterns and interplays between good and evil, the kingdom of God versus the principalities and dominions of Satan (the idealist view).

Many suggest that Revelation also shows the shifting stages of church growth versus church decay and apostasy throughout history (the historicist view).

Most believe that the Book of Revelation shows those events immediately before Christ's return (the prophetic futurist view). It is there to make sense of the end of history when times could mirror those of the ancient world. It portrays ultimate hope no matter to what heights evil arises.

It also predicts the end of linear history with its grand conclusion as well as its cyclic movements. Humankind see that history is indeed *"his story"* it is God's Story, and nothing can thwart the unfoldment.

What does it say about "the beast" who is to come in the final days before Christ's return? (Revelation 13), describes this future reality:

***And the beast which I saw was like a leopard, and its feet like those of a bear, and its mouth like the mouth of a lion. And the dragon gave him its power and its seat and great authority.***

***And I saw one of its heads as having been slain to death, and its deadly wound was healed. And all the earth marveled after the beast.***

***And they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast. And they worshiped the beast, saying, Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with it?***

***And a mouth speaking great things was given to it, and blasphemies. And authority was given to it to continue forty-two months.***

***And it opened its mouth in blasphemy toward God, to blaspheme His name and His tabernacle, and those dwelling in Heaven.***

***And it was given to it to war with the saints and to overcome them. And authority was given to it over every tribe and tongues and nation.***

***And all dwelling on the earth will worship it, those whose names have not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb slain, from the foundation of the world.***

***Revelation 13:2-8(MKJV)***

Then another powerful figure emerges two verses later:

***And I saw another beast coming up out of the earth. And it had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke like a dragon.***

***And it exercises all the authority of the first beast before him, and causes the earth and those dwelling in it to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.***

***And it does great wonders, so that it makes fire come down from the heaven onto the earth in the sight of men.***

***And it deceives those dwelling on the earth, because of the miracles which were given to it to do before the beast, saying to those dwelling on the earth that they should make an image to the beast who had the wound by a sword and lived.***

***And there was given to it to give a spirit to the image of the beast, so that the image of the beast might both speak, and might cause as many as would not worship the image of the beast to be killed.***



***And it causes all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark on their right hand, or in their foreheads,***

***even that not any might buy or sell except those having the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of its name.***

***Here is wisdom. Let him having reason count the number of the beast, for it is the number of a man. And its number is six hundred and sixty-six.***

***Revelation 13:11-18(MKJV)***

The beast, or Antichrist, and the second beast, or false prophet as he is sometimes described, form an awesome power. They are directly empowered by Satan himself, who is called "*the dragon*" in the Book of Revelation. Satan gives a human agent his throne and his powers for the first time in history.

John previously revealed in (Revelation 12:9), "***The great dragon was hurled down that ancient serpent called the devil or Satan, who leads the whole world astray. He was hurled to the earth, and his angels with him.***" It is the same dragon that establishes the beast. In (Revelation 13), the chapter about the Antichrist, the dragon initiates the process: "*And the dragon stood on the shore of the sea. And I saw a beast coming out of the sea.*" (The sea being the endless masses of humanity).

He will abolish all human and angelic authority and power when the kingdom of the world becomes the kingdom of the Lord and His Christ, after the seventh trumpet sounds. Thus, the Rapture and final judgments occur at this time.<sup>4</sup>

And the soul of the Antichrist! This is another deep mystery. One now discover that the soul of the Antichrist has another origin. In (Revelation 11) it says:

---

<sup>4</sup> JOHN, M, Stephenson (1994) Watchman Warning, The Endtimes are Unfolding, p77, Living-Faith Outreach Publication 1111 West El Camino Real #109-3967, Sunnyvale, CA 94087

---

***And when they complete their testimony, the beast coming up out of the abyss will make war against them and will overcome them and kill them.***

***Revelation 11:7(MKJV)***

The abyss is that shaft of infinite darkness, which is the holding place and gateway of the demonic powers and principalities. The beast is in a state of total possession. Most likely Satan himself enters the body of the beast. Finally Lucifer briefly walks the earth as *"the god of this world."* What God prevented from happening at Babel when the world spoke one language a unified world system under an earlier prototype of the Antichrist, Nimrod is finally allowed to happen.

In the Book of Revelation man gain an interesting glimpse of the Antichrist. He is inspired and empowered by Satan while the hidden powers and kingships of die earth provide the floor plan for his emergence. The kings surrender to him their dominions. Unlike Rome's dominion, this will truly be worldwide.

One highly placed international banker remarked to an acquaintance that a shadow government of ten or twelve men in international finance would be the true rulers of United Europe, EC. One could almost think of them as die true invisible kings, the banker kings, who would pull strings while almost no one would know who they were. Perhaps the 2000-year-old Book of Revelation continues to unfurl. But only God knows the timeline.

The beast will be in the control seat of an awesome power: the world's military arsenal. This will give him direct powers over life and death the life of every citizen on the earth. He will be feared the way the Roman emperors were feared.

One see this with the words, ***"Who is able to make war with the beast?"*** The rhetorical answer is clearly, ***"No one on earth."***

U. N. leaders since Alger Hiss have talked of a global military force policed by the United Nations. Leaders in high places, such as Brzezinski, who wrote *Between Two Ages*, have spoken of a simultaneous surrender and merger of American and Soviet military powers to enforce world peace. It would be run by a third force, a "neutral" force. This has been a long-term goal of the Trilateral Commission, the Bilderbergers, as well as the Council on Foreign Relations (the CFR), among a number of elitist groups. This shadow government, in place for some time, will be waiting in the wings for the switchover and surrender of powers to take place. These are the real movers and shakers of history. Once the global police force is in place, there will be no turning back, no divvying back the chips to once-sovereign nations.

Picture, therefore, a global umbrella of Star Wars technology satellite-linked supercomputers communicating in gigabytes, total-eye satellites, lasers, particle beam weapons platforms, ICBM's or whatever else is on hand that people don't even know about now once the merger of Soviet, European, and American military arsenals has taken place. Orwell's Big Brother, portrayed in the novel *1984*, did not approach this kind of power.

Think now of this. What better imagery could the apostle John 2000 years ago and a thousand years before the Dark Ages use to describe the reality of some futuristic laser and Star Wars technology than the descriptive phrase that "*he could make fire come down from heaven?*" No better metaphor was available in the ancient world. For good reason they will ask, "*Who can make war on the beast?*"

Tal Brooke speculates more. The beast and his false prophet are empowered directly by Satan. The latter is able to work deceiving miracles. The beast is at the axis of the world's new religious system, which in reality is a revival of what the Book of Revelation terms ***Mystery Babylon***. The beast is to be the messiah of a mystery

religion, receiving worship from the inhabitants of the earth who *"will worship the dragon."*

The third global domain that the beast has total control over is the world's banking and economic system, which is now finally centralized. He is the mystery banker as well as the messiah. The Roman emperors whose images appeared on ancient coins accompanied by words proclaiming their deity have foreshadowed this reality. The imperial cult and commerce were interlinked. This ancient link will be forged once again. A surviving structure of this has existed in recent centuries in the Masonic orders where commerce and an occult brotherhood form a secret link.

But there is yet another detail that alarms us. It is a prophetic detail that comes to us from 2000 years ago. Keep in mind that computer chips did not hit the world scene till the 1970s, and Norbert Wiener at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) did not talk about cybernetics till our era. Yet the apostle John describes a reality that has only recently come into focus: global banking, laser scanning, and the universal computer bar code.

As was recounted earlier, John recorded the following 2000 years ago on the island of Patmos: ***"He also forced everyone, small and great, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on his right hand or on his forehead, so that no one could buy or sell unless he had the mark, which is the name of the beast..."*** (Revelation 13:16,17).

It is a tiny step to go from using a Visa card or a bank card on the Plus System and other ATM machines, in which the electronic strip is attached to the card, to putting that same information on or in the human body so that it can be laser scanned. This has already been done with implanted microchips. It is only since the advent of networked supercomputing that the hardware is now in place to easily track

economic and other profiles of every citizen on earth. Again, what better descriptive term could John have found in the ancient world than "*the mark*," which would enable every citizen to buy or sell who had it? The building blocks for a one-world economic system are already in place colossal power in the hands of a few.

Applied Digital Solutions (NASDAQ:ADSX) announced at the close of the millennium that it had acquired the patent rights to a miniature digital transceiver which it has named "*Digital Angel*."™ With Digital Angel, you can track every living person on earth!

In the ancient Book of Revelation, the beast is the military commander of the world; the messiah and object of worship of the world's unified mystery religion, and the supreme banker. These three headships (or heads military, religious, and economic) give him undisputed military, religious, and economic powers over a one-world system. Finally "*somebody gets it all*," and it is the beast. The unrealized dreams of Alexander the Great, Julius and Augustus Caesar, Napoleon, Stalin and Hitler plus countless others through the centuries are finally achieved. The world hands him the souls of the masses on a platter as all nations surrender their sovereignty like Esau selling his soul, his birthright, for a meal and this taken to cosmic proportions.

### **3 THE EARTH PRIOR TO THE CREATION OF ADAM AND EVE**

John W Milor stated that<sup>5</sup> all the activity of the entire world (and even the entire universe), centers on Israel whether the world governments or the Christian church even realize it. God's plan of salvation for humanity has always centered on the Jewish people. It began with the father of the Jews, Abraham; was fulfilled through a

---

<sup>5</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 76-93, 117-118, 122-125, 163-165, 174-205, 230-238.

Jewish Messiah; was written by Jewish authors in a Jewish book (the Bible); and was spread throughout the entire Earth, initially through twelve Jewish apostles.

Even in the eternal future, God's plan of salvation will be commemorated in Jewish feasts and celebrations forever (feasts of Passover and unleavened bread (Ezekiel 45:21); first fruits (Ezekiel 44:30); Pentecost or Weeks (Ezekiel 46:9); trumpets (Ezekiel 44:5); day of atonement (Ezekiel 45-46); and tabernacles (Ezekiel 45:25); (Zechariah 14:16-21). Christianity is actually a Jewish religion, and is only a Gentile (non-Jewish) religion as well because God adopted the Gentile people of the world into the family of God. This family of God started with his chosen people, the Jews (Romans 11:17-23); (Matthew 22:2-10); (Mark 7:26-29). The people of Earth should be aware of this great truth; this is especially the case for the Christian church. Even a great variety of otherworldly beings coming from light-years away, showing up in vast numbers to the small nation of Israel, know more about the significance of Israel than many people on Earth. Many of these visitors may want to be adopted too!

Earth is important even from the heavenly perspective, but John still haven't answered why Earth was chosen as the spearhead of God's plan of reconciliation (which John believe applies to both Earth and the heavens); this is what John's been building up to all this time. John apologizes for any perceived long-windedness, which is very difficult for him to avoid.

Frequently the material used to answer questions raises numerous additional questions in itself questions John compelled to explain before continuing. Hopefully John's wordiness is not too disjointed to follow.

Continuing on, one have learned that what makes Earth significant in the universe concerns the very pieces of the puzzle to Earth's history that John was missing when he wrote *Aliens in the Bible*. There was not just one catastrophic flood in Earth's

history; there were two. Furthermore, the Bible speaks of a civilization that was destroyed in the first flood, prior to Adam and Eve ever being created. Such a civilization implies that the inhabitants who were destroyed were not human. Even more intriguing is the fact that these beings were ruled under the kingdom of Lucifer; he ruled Earth at that time. This is where his connection to Earth was initially established. It's no wonder he's been so intimately tied to this particular planet.

Earth is significant not solely because God's love for humanity is any greater than his love for any other intelligent species in the universe, but because Earth is the seat of rebellion in the heavens that started with Lucifer even before humanity was created. That's why Christ came to Earth. It is why Earth is a universal mecca of angelic attention among the vastness of the cosmos, and it is the place where Satan will eventually be isolated, and his rebellion will be crushed once and for all (Revelation 20:9).

This hypothesis will briefly describe the law of double reference. There are numerous scriptures that speak of a visible person who is immediately addressed, while at the same time, an invisible person who is using the visible person as a tool to hinder the plan of God is also addressed. For example, when Jesus said to Peter, **"Get thee behind me, Satan: for thou art an offense to me: for thou savor not the things that be of God, but those that be of men"** (Matthew 16:23), He did not mean that Peter was the personal devil, but that Peter was being manipulated by Satan.

From Jesus's perspective, He might have even been able to see Satan standing right there, hence both Peter and Satan were addressed and involved in the statement Jesus made. The only way to interpret such passages is to understand that part of the passage is addressed to a man, while the elements that have no relevance to the visible man in question must clearly be referring to the spiritual manipulations working through the man.

Now that it is understood to some degree how the law of double reference works when spotted in scripture, one will now illuminate some Old Testament scriptures, some of which require the law of double reference to interpret. These scriptures speak of a flood predating the flood of Noah, which a person (Finis Dake) referred to as the flood of Lucifer.

### **3.1 The Flood Of Lucifer Mentioned In The Old Testament**

The flood of Lucifer is first alluded to in Genesis 1:2, which states the following:

***And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.***  
***Genesis 1:2(KJV)***

The wording in Genesis 1:2 is significant because it proves that the original creation of the heavens and Earth was completed in its entirety in (Genesis 1:1), and that the recreation of Earth into a habitable state follows from (Genesis 1:2 to Genesis 2:25), as John will now explain.

*Genesis 1:1-2*

*In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth [the creation is complete]. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep [earth was destroyed]. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters [earth is covered with water].*

Like many people, John used to separate Genesis 1:1 from the rest of the account of creation by thinking of it as a qualifying opener. John thought the author opened with a brief one-line summary to serve as an outline, as a form of literary style, then followed with the details. Supporting this position is the fact that the sun, moon, and stars were made on the fourth day of creation. How could the "*heaven and the earth*"



have been created in Genesis 1:1, when one can see that the sun, moon, and stars, which constitute the heavens, were made on the fourth day of creation?

While this question may seem difficult to answer, translating (Genesis 1:1) as bring nothing more than an outline raises a number of other intriguing questions, which are even more difficult to rectify than the sun, moon, and stars being made on the fourth day of creation. First, if Genesis 1:1 is an outline of creation, it's not a very good one: it doesn't establish the order of creation correctly. If Earth were made before the heavens, then Genesis 1:1 should state that God made Earth, and then the heavens, rather than the heavens and Earth. Wouldn't the order of these details be somewhat significant, considering the fact that this outline documents the origin of all creation?

Then There's Job 38:4-7, which states that the heavens were in existence before the foundations of Earth were laid. How is this possible, if the heavens weren't even made until the fourth day of creation, which didn't occur until after Earth had form, land, and even vegetation?

***Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if thou hast understanding.***

***Who hath laid the measures thereof, if thou knowest? or who hath stretched the line upon it?***

***Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof;***

***When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?***  
***Job 38:4-7(KJV)***

God can do anything He wants, and in any order. But one always thought that it was extremely odd that Genesis seems to indicate that Earth was created before the sun around which it rotates. John argues that he is no astrophysicist, but something about that just doesn't seem right.

What about the days of creation? How could there be days if there was no sun until the final day? One could postulate that the word "day" symbolizes an unknown period or time, a creative age; such is a thousand years taken from (Psalms 90:4) and (2 Peter 3:8), which stipulate that a day to the Lord is as a thousand years to man.

***For a thousand years in thy sight are but as yesterday when it is past, and as a watch in the night.***

***Psalms 90:4(KJV)***

***But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day.***

***II Peter 3:8(KJV)***

The language of the creation account, however, qualifies days with a beginning and an ending. In every other place in the entire Bible, days qualified in this manner refer to a literal twenty-four-hour period. Interpreting the word "day" in a different way in this part of the Bible makes for a nonstandard method of interpretation: it's an extremely weak argument, and subject to opinions and biases rather than interpretational standards. Even harder to rectify with the idea of a creative age is the fact that vegetation was created on the third day. Exactly how long could the vegetation created on the third day have survived without sunlight? Are one to believe that vegetation grew in the complete absence of sunlight for a thousand years?

According to John he wants to know what the Bible actually says not what he want it to say. And when something doesn't make sense, the incongruence is never a contradiction, but rather a passage highlighted by God for more revelation.

John can't count the number of times God has taught him something new in scripture because he was trying to resolve a perceived contradiction. He have discovered that the Bible makes perfect sense, both logically and in consistency, if people would

simply study it, believe what it says, and weigh out all the implications of all of its facets.

Concerning these perceived contradictions, of which Genesis had a list I contemplated for years, it is even harder to squeeze the Bible's mention of angels into the creation account when the Bible speaks of angels, yet never mentions when they were created. This is another mystery that bellows in its conspicuous absence. Hidden within this mystery lies a due to Earth's ancient history. How do those who argue against the interpretation of (Genesis 1:2) through (Genesis 2:25) as being the account of a re-creation of Earth into a habitable state explain questions that arise concerning angels? Certainly they dwell in the heavens, and the heavens had to be created before the angels, so the angels would have a place to exist - so were angels created on day four, five, or six? If it took an entire day to create Adam, then why wouldn't it take a longer period of time to create all of the angels, who, according to scripture, are even greater than man, both in glory and in number (Psalms 8:5; Hebrews 2:6-9)?

***For You have made him a little lower than the angels, and have crowned him with glory and honor.***

***Psalms 8:5(MKJV)***

***But one testified in a certain place, saying, "What is man, that You are mindful of him; or the son of man, that You visit him?"***

***You have made him a little lower than the angels. You crowned him with glory and honor and set him over the works of Your hands.***

***You have subjected all things under his feet." For in order that He put all things under him, He did not leave anything not subjected. But now we do not see all things having been put under him.***

***But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honor, that He by the grace of God should taste death for every son.***

***Hebrews 2:6-9(MKJV)***

The existence of angels is first established with Satan's arrival in the Garden of Eden. For humanity it's early in life, seeing that Adam and Eve were innocent, naive, and didn't have any children yet. It's evident that Satan, however, was prowling about much longer than Adam and Eve. In (Ezekiel 28:11-19) and (Isaiah 14:12-14), we're told that Satan tried to lead an invasion into heaven at one time, yet failed, and his kingdom was destroyed.

***And the word of the LORD came to me, saying,***

***Son of man, lift up a lament over the king of Tyre, and say to him, So says the Lord Jehovah: You seal the measure, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.***

***You have been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was your covering, the ruby, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the turquoise, and the emerald, and gold. The workmanship of your tambourines and of your flutes was prepared in you in the day that you were created.***

***You were the anointed cherub that covers, and I had put you in the holy height of God where you were.; you have walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire.***

***You were perfect in your ways from the day that you were created, until iniquity was found in you.***

***By the multitude of your goods they have filled your midst with violence, and you have sinned. So I cast you profaned from the height of God, and I destroy you, O covering cherub, from among the stones of fire.***

***Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; you have spoiled your wisdom because of your brightness. I will cast you to the ground; I will put you before kings, that they may behold you.***

***By the host of your iniquities, by the iniquity of your trade, you have profaned your holy places; so I brought a fire from your midst; it shall devour you, and I will give you for ashes on the earth, before the eyes of all who see you.***

***All who know you among the peoples shall be astonished at you; you shall be terrors, and you will not be forever.***

***Ezekiel 28:11-19(MKJV)***

As I questioned earlier, did he once rule an entire kingdom, deceive his kingdom as well as many other worlds, then orchestrate a massive, interstellar invasion into the highest heaven in less time than it took Adam and Eve to have their first male child?

This has to be the case, if one believes Genesis 1:1 falls within a six-day construct of the heavens and Earth.

As always, whenever there is a perceived incongruence in scripture, the deficiency is due to a lack of human understanding, rather than an inconsistency in scripture.

In order to rectify the incongruence of the fourth day of creation with (Genesis 1:1), it makes more sense to suggest that the heavens were in fact already created, but not illuminated. The darkness that covered Earth in (Genesis 1:2) was removed on the fourth day, revealing the sun, moon, and stars, instead of the heavens being created on the fourth day of creation. In the English translation of the Bible, this isn't particularly evident, but one clue that stands out is a distinction between the purposeful translation of the words "*create*" and "*made*."

The word "*created*" is from the Hebrew word "*bara*," meaning, "*to create*," in the sense of making something new or bringing something into existence without the use of pre-existing material. This latter idea is certainly true of the materials out of which the heavens and Earth were formed. In (Hebrews 11:3), one reads that the **"things which are seen (the visible things) were not made of things that do appear"** or that were visible. If the heavens and Earth were brought into existence, then it is certain that at one time they were not in existence. "*Bara*" is found forty-nine times in the Hebrew Bible, and it is translated as "*create*", eight times; "*created*," thirty-three times; "*make*," four times; "*Creator*," three times; and "*createth*," one time. The primary idea is to bring into existence something new that never existed before, in any way, shape, or form.

"*Bara*" is used only seven times in (Genesis 1:1 - 2:4), the passage that records all of the creative ages. It is correctly translated "*created*" in each case, in all other verses

in this passage of scripture, the word "*made*" is used. It is from the Hebrew word "*asah*," meaning to make something out of already existing material.

In (Genesis 1:1), the heavens and Earth are created, or brought into existence; in (Genesis 1:21), the sea creatures are created, or brought into existence; and in (Genesis 1:27), man is created, or brought into being. Thus the word "*bara*" is reserved for the introduction of each of the three great spheres of existence: the world of matter, the world of natural life as in all living creatures on the Earth, and the world of spiritual life on Earth as represented by man. The heavens and Earth were brought into existence "*in the beginning*," while the living creatures and man were brought into existence on Earth, on the fifth and sixth days of the restoration of Earth to a habitable state. All other accomplishments in the six days were not of a *creative* nature things were *made* out of already existing material that had been created in the various periods or ages "*in the beginning*." The sun, moon, and stars were made on the fourth day of creation (or recreation, to be more precise), as described in Genesis 1:14-19.

### **3.2 The Duration Of Lucifer Kingdom**

John W Milor argued that<sup>6</sup> Scripture gives no direct reference concerning the period between when Lucifer initially sinned and when God finally destroyed his kingdom, but there are indications that it took a very long time. It's likely that thousands, if not millions or even billions, of years of mercy transpired before God put an end to Lucifer's kingdom. The existence of an entire global civilization with nations (Isaiah 14) and sanctuaries Lucifer defiled his sanctuaries (Ezekiel 28), indicated an extremely prolonged period.

---

<sup>6</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 117-118.

---

***How you are fallen from the heavens, O shining star, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, you who weakened the nations!***

***Isaiah 14:12(MKJV)***

***By the host of your iniquities, by the iniquity of your trade, you have profaned your holy places; so I brought a fire from your midst; it shall devour you, and I will give you for ashes on the earth, before the eyes of all who see you.***

***Ezekiel 28:18(MKJV)***

Lucifer's dominion and level of access to the heavens (Ezekiel 28:14) "*stones of fire*", where he spent a great deal of time spreading his corruptive influence to lead an attack into the highest heaven, further indicate an exceptionally long period of time.

Also, recall that I mentioned earlier that biologists believe the fossil record indicates five mass extinctions in Earth's ancient history. These could have been judgments from God during a time of prolonged mercy, until God finally put a complete end to Lucifer's kingdom.

If the development of the pre-Adamite society followed a course similar to the descendants of Adam and Eve, the fossil remains of Neanderthal and Cro-Magnon (as well as earlier hominids, such as homo erectus, and homo habilis) may look like they are different species of humans. All these humanoid beings are most likely the same species, however (except for Australopithecus Africanus, which looks more like an ape than a human), with the exception of the differences in the aging process. In any case, they're all from a different order of creation than Adam and Eve, but very similar to modern humans in appearance and in genetic structure.

The earliest humanoids, who look the least human, such as homo erectus and homo habilis, were those who lived at the time when the curse of death was initially executed, so they matured very slowly, living to hundreds or perhaps even several thousand years old before they died, hence the dramatic physiological changes.

For all people know, it could have taken them even longer to die than Adam and Eve; perhaps they ate from the tree of life for a long time, which gave them an extensive longevity and resulted in massive mutations by the time they finally died.

Most creationist scientists explain the differences of bone structure in homo erectus, homo habilis, and Neanderthal with a variety of theories, including various diseases such as arthritis, rickets, and so forth, but I find Dr. Cuzzo's research to have the most merit, with only one exception, which I've already stated. Neanderthal really weren't descendants of Adam and Eve. Simply looking at the size of their cranium reveals that it's the same size as Cro-Magnon, rather than modern homo sapiens. Modern homo sapiens came from Adam and Eve, whereas all the earlier hominids were pre-Adamites.

An intriguing mystery that has puzzled evolutionists for many years concerns the sudden disappearance of Neanderthal. As soon as Cro-Magnon appeared on the scene, they somehow replaced Neanderthal in an extremely short period of time. Evolutionists speculate that the Cro-Magnon either killed all of the Neanderthal, or out-classed them in a competition for limited resources. To date, there is really no definitive scientific explanation for their sudden disappearance, because there's no evidence suggesting the Cro-Magnon were a bunch of murdering thugs, or that they were any more skilled than Neanderthal in hunting and gathering food. Neanderthal simply vanished, and no one knows why. This shouldn't be a mystery to anyone reading this research, however. The Neanderthal suddenly disappeared because the life span of the pre-Adamites was dramatically shortened in one generation, just like what happened with Noah's generation.

When God determined the age of humans to be 120 years after the flood of Noah (Genesis 6:3), I believe he was operating under a former precedent set during the reign of Lucifer's kingdom on Earth.



As for the Cro-Magnon, their generations were probably born thousands, or even millions of years after the shortening of the life span. They matured to adulthood at an accelerated rate compared to Neanderthal and earlier hominids, which resulted in their different skeletal structure.

The cranial capacity remained the same, yet the overall skeletal structure was altered considerably. Cro-Magnon died very young, compared to their Neanderthal counterparts. The result of this scenario is exactly what we see in the fossil record; two categories of early homo sapiens that are more similar to each other (in respect to cranial capacity) than that of modern homo sapiens. Their existence overlaps only briefly, then suddenly the one that is older (more mutated) suddenly disappears, as if vanishing in only a few generations.

### **3.3 Lucifer's Dominion beyond The Earth Before And After Adam And Eve**

John W Milor argued that<sup>7</sup> he already covered how Lucifer ruled over an angelic population covering Earth, but he haven't gone into great depth about how his kingdom extended throughout the solar system and even into the far reaches of the cosmos. This was obviously the case, since he will successfully deceive one-third of the inhabitants of all of the stars before he's done (Revelation 12).

***And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and cast them onto the earth. And the dragon stood before the woman being about to bear, so that when she bears he might devour her child.***

***Revelation 12:4(MKJV)***

---

<sup>7</sup> Milor, John W (2006), Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 122-125, 163-165, 174-205, 230-238.

---

Many of these beings united with him a long time ago, when he led an invasion into the highest heaven (Isaiah 14), and they will unite with him again in the near future, when he invades Earth in full force through the Antichrist.

***For you have said in your heart, I will go up to the heavens, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north.***

***Isaiah 14:13(MKJV)***

After Lucifer was defeated in his attempted invasion, he was finally restrained from having unlimited access to glorified realms (Ezekiel 28:16) “stones of fire”. Earth's entire solar system was obliterated at that time.

***By the multitude of your goods they have filled your midst with violence, and you have sinned. So I cast you profaned from the height of God, and I destroy you, O covering cherub, from among the stones of fire.***

***Ezekiel 28:16(MKJV)***

Then, some time later, God eventually reestablished solar regulation for Earth's solar system during the restoration of Earth to a habitable state. At the same time, God also most likely constructed a new multidimensional aspect to the entire universe (or heavens). The primary difference between the heavens that are now from the heavens that were then, as spoken of in (2 Peter 3). The time frame for this activity makes sense for two reasons.

***through which the world that then was, being flooded by water, perished.***

***But the present heavens and the earth being kept in store by the same word, are being kept for fire until the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men.***

***II Peter 3:6-7(MKJV)***

First, the purpose of a dimensional variance is to prevent cursed beings from accessing and corrupting higher realms; in a sense, it's a spiritual quarantine. Because there were no cursed beings before Lucifer's sin, a dimensional variance wasn't needed until after the rebellion.

Second, hell most likely wasn't constructed until after God put an end to Lucifer's initial rebellion. The construction of hell required a dimensional variance within Earth. Even though Lucifer (now Satan) was defeated, his kingdom destroyed, his unlimited access to glorified realms removed, scripture makes it clear that he's definitely not chained up in hell (Tartarus) with many of the other fallen angels who played a part in his rebellion.

He and some of his followers were still allowed access to God's throne on occasion, in order to attend specific counsels (Job 1:6 - 12). It was most likely such a counsel as the one mentioned in the book of Job, where Satan was given access into the Garden of Eden in order to attempt to deceive Adam and Eve. God specifically authorized this event in order that Adam and Eve would be tested, to see if they would use their freedom of choice to obey God, rather than listen to Satan. Satan's access to Eden would have abruptly ended for the last time if either Adam or Eve rebuked him, but man all know how the story went. Once Satan achieved this victory in the Garden of Eden, his level of access on Earth was increased once again, and his kingdom was reestablished in the first heaven, which surrounds the upper atmosphere of Earth. If this were not the case, he wouldn't be called the prince of the power of the air (Ephesians 2), and the god of this world (2 Corinthians 4).

***in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience;***

***Ephesians 2:2(MKJV)***

***in whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving ones, so that the light of the glorious gospel of Christ (who is the image of God) should not dawn on them.***

***II Corinthians 4:4(MKJV)***

In addition, other fallen angels who are aligned with him wouldn't be able to rule over entire regions of Earth with such power that they are able to fight against God's faithful angels conducting operations for God. This was exactly the case with the

archangel Gabriel, when he was detained by the prince of Persia for twenty-one days before the archangel Michael arrived and helped him to penetrate the first heaven in order to deliver a prophetic message to Daniel (Daniel 10).

The archangel Gabriel stated plainly to Daniel that a second fight would take place when he had to leave, noting the fact that he was going back through the upper atmosphere (first heaven) to leave Earth, where the battle would take place (Daniel 10:20).

***Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set your heart to understand and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.***

***But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.***

***Daniel 10:12-13(KJV)***

***Then said he, Do you know wherefore I come unto thee? And now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come.***

***Daniel 10:20(KJV)***

Therefore one know that Satan's dominion was reestablished on Earth, though with certain limitations, and from these facts, it can be deduced that Satan most likely used similar tactics in order to gain footholds elsewhere in the cosmos.

His time is running out, though, and his friends are running out as well. His past is catching up with him, closing in on all sides. He's doing his best to rally his allies, however, because he knows his time is short. The ultimate showdown is about to commence.

### **3.4 Who Hinders The Antichrist?**

John W Milor argued that<sup>8</sup> believe that the rapture of the church will occur before the great tribulation, but believe it or not, John haven't discussed all of the details supporting this conclusion. For example, John referenced (2 Thessalonians 2:6-8); (Revelation 1:19), 4:1 as scriptures that prove the rapture of the church will occur before the great tribulation, but John didn't elaborate on how these scriptures tie together to meet this conclusion. Starting with (2 Thessalonians 2:6-8), note that someone must be taken out of the way before the Antichrist is revealed, and that someone (he) is referred to as a withholder (hinderer) of the Antichrist. Who could this be?

***And now you know what holds him back, for him to might be revealed in his own time.***

***For the mystery of lawlessness is already working, only he is now holding back until it comes out of the midst.***

***And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the breath of His mouth and shall destroy with the brightness of His coming,  
II Thessalonians 2:6-8(MKJV)***

Some Christians say that this hinderer is the Holy Spirit, but this can't be accurate, because the Holy Spirit is never taken out of the way of anything, much less the Antichrist. In fact the Holy Spirit is actually visibly active during the great tribulation, when the Antichrist will be wreaking havoc.

Others have postulated that this hinderer refers to government, but the Anti-christ will be a mastermind at ruling and manipulating governments all through his reign of terror, so this can't be right either.

---

<sup>8</sup> Milor, John W (2006), Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 163-165, 174-205, 230-238.

---

The only likely candidate this "he" can be is the church, who is a "he" in the sense of being the body of Christ. The church makes perfect sense, because the fervent prayers of the righteous have an extremely powerful effect (James 5:16).

***Confess faults to one another, and pray for one another, that you may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous one avails much.***

***James 5:16(MKJV)***

Suddenly removing all of the Christians from Earth will be the removal of every single voice against governmental authorities in all matters of righteousness, justice, and morality—everything with spiritual significance. The implications of such would be staggering; the world will be a spiritual vacuum, creating an oasis for any charismatic dictator to step forward and assume control. Many Christians think they have no power, voice, or effect in the world, but they couldn't be more wrong. For those Christians who are inactive and ineffective consider this a call to action! A further clue pointing to the restrainer of the Antichrist being the church is found by analyzing references to the church in the book of Revelation. The book of Revelation is divided into three parts, and these parts are outlined in (Revelation 1:19).

***Write the things which you have seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be after this,***

***Revelation 1:19(MKJV)***

First, "the things which thou hast seen" are the things in the vision of Christ in Revelation 1. Second, "the things which are" are the things concerning the churches, covered in (Revelation 2-3), which John himself could see were in the world in his day. Third, "the things which shall be hereafter" refer to the time that comes after the churches.

Everything in chapter 1 of Revelation is about the vision of Christ; everything about the churches is listed in chapters 2 and 3; and everything after the churches comes after Revelation 4:1.

***After this I looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said, Come up hither, and I will show thee things which must be hereafter.***

***Revelation 4:1(MKJV)***

The transition that takes place in (Revelation 4:1) is significant because it reveals the rapture of the church in two ways. First, before (Revelation 4:1), the church is mentioned eighteen times, but then after (Revelation 4:1), the church isn't mentioned anymore until the very tail end of the last chapter of Revelation, after the revelation is complete and Jesus is simply telling John that the revelation was given to him to give to the churches.

***I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.***

***Revelation 22:16(MKJV)***

The second way that everything after the churches points to the rapture of the church is indirectly, by the fact that John himself is taken up to heaven at the exact point in time when the rapture of the church will happen after the churches, in (Revelation 4:1). As the revelation unfolds, John is hearing messages for the churches in chapter 3, and then suddenly after these things that is, after the churches John is caught up to heaven to see the rest of the vision unfold.

### **3.5 What Signs Point To The Nearness Of The Rapture Of The Church?**

While there are no signs that must occur before the rapture of the church, it is known that the rapture of the church occurs approximately seven years before the second coming of Christ (Daniel 9:27 each day represents one year in the seventieth week of Daniel's vision, and all weeks but the seventieth week have been fulfilled). The nearness of the rapture of the church can therefore be gauged by looking for signs

that must happen before the second coming of Christ. However close we are to the second coming of Christ, we are seven years closer to the rapture of the church.

Most of the signs that must occur before the second coming of Christ have already occurred, though their relevance is more noticeable these days.

Wars and rumors of wars, for example, constitute a somewhat vague prophecy that could apply to any time in Earth's history. However, there have been more wars fought and more people killed in the past hundred years than all of the wars fought in the rest of all known history combined. Wars and rumors of wars, therefore, is a sign that bears unique relevance in this generation.

What about the increase of knowledge and traveling in the end times that the prophet Daniel prophesied?

***But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.***

***Daniel 12:4(KJV)***

Does not this current generation see more travel than any generation preceding it? Has not this current generation increased in knowledge (especially with the advent of computers, the Internet, and advanced communications systems), more than any generation preceding it? These things are not only increasing; they are also accelerating at an exponential rate unlike ever before in the history of humanity. Again this prophecy in Daniel bears unique relevance in this current generation, more than any generation prior.

As for specific prophecies that must happen, when Israel became a nation again in 1948, the entire world was shocked. Nothing could have been more unlikely prior to the nineteenth century, during the days of the Ottoman Empire. The nation of Israel



was an ancient legend passed down from Jewish elders—an almost mythical past of the Jews. As for the Hebrew language, it was a relic of antiquity; yet within a few scant years, this entire nation rose from the dust of a forsaken land, and the Hebrew language was revived again to become the national language of the Jewish people. That's about as likely as NATO declaring the Cherokee Native American tribe to be the new rulers of America, and everyone in America learning to speak Cherokee—and then it actually happens!

The Jews were the underdogs of the entire world. Right after the Holocaust, which claimed the lives of over six million Jews, the British mandate over the region of Israel-Palestine ended, and the Jews declared Israel to be an independent nation again, in accordance with the established boundaries of the British partition plan." While the rest of the world silently concurred with Israel's declaration, primarily out of sympathy for the anti-Semitism the Jews endured, the nations surrounding Israel didn't share in that same sympathy. No sooner had Israel been declared a nation did all the countries surrounding Israel (Egypt, Syria, Transjordan, Lebanon, Iraq, and Arabia), declare war against the Jews—Holocaust or no Holocaust.

Apparently the sentiment of approval expressed to the Jews at that time from the global community didn't mean much because the Jews didn't receive much help in defending themselves. As if the Holocaust weren't bad enough, now the Jews had to fight for their parcel of territory to call home, a battle against a half-dozen armies, with clear superiority in heavy arms and firepower. (one only referenced a few sources for this information, but these facts can easily be obtained from literally hundreds of Web sites, books, documentaries, and the like.)

Some say the Jews can fight, and certainly there is evidence to support this fact, but I strongly believe God was (and still is) on their side because they whipped the pants off everyone, and they've been fighting ever since. Every time they're invaded, they

fight back with such ferocity that they usually gain more territory, but then later give it back after a great deal of disputing. The Middle East is a hotbed of activity surrounding Israel. As I was saying before, this small country becoming a nation again has prophecy written all over it. The global war on terror being waged right now stems primarily from contention over the Jews occupying their original homeland of Israel.

With the establishment of Israel as a nation again, it's now more likely that the Jewish temple will be restored and the temple sacrifices reestablished, both of which are very specific signs that throughout history were extremely unlikely—yet they are now much closer to being a reality. Anyone reading up on this will see that there is activity brewing." As for the Ark of the Covenant, there are a number of leads as to its location (see <http://www.wyattmuseum.com> and <http://www.christiananswers.net>).

Also, the birth pangs of the Earth increase with each passing year, just as best-selling author Hal Lindsey illustrates in depth in his many Bible prophecy books. The weather is going insane on a global scale, with one devastating natural disaster after another. The December 2004 tsunami that resulted from the Sumatra-Andaman earthquake, took over 280,000 lives, making it one of the deadliest disasters in modern history. This earthquake was so powerful, it literally liquefied the ocean floor where it struck, forming a completely different terrain. Another huge earthquake struck in Pakistan just ten months later, in October 2005, which resulted in 80,000+ deaths. The entire hurricane season for year 2005 shattered all previous hurricane season records, including the most powerful, the most costly, and the greatest number of hurricanes ever to strike in a single year. Might these extreme weather patterns be telling us something?

These recent events make even the secular community wonder if the end of the world is near. For every sign that points to the second coming of Christ, there are a

number of reports on events currently taking place that reveal a progression of the fulfillment of said prophecies. Humanity are very close. If they don't die prematurely, one doubt they will die at all.

#### **4 THE RISE OF THE ANTICHRIST**

John W Milor argued that<sup>9</sup> shortly following the rapture of the church, while people are still confused, frightened, and otherwise freaked out (though many will come to the realization of what just happened), Earth will be ripe for a massive satanic invasion, because the church, which has been holding back the emergence of the Antichrist, will be removed (2 Thessalonians 2:6-8). What will happen next?

Satan has diligently been trying to take over the governments of the world ever since Adam. The pharaoh of Egypt (Exodus), the king of Assyria, Antiochus Epiphanies (Isaiah 10:5), the king of Tyre (Ezekiel 28:11-19), the king of the Grecian Empire, Alexander the Great (Daniel 8:5-26), and Roman rulers such as Herod, his son with the same name, and Nero (Matthew 2; Luke 1:5, 23:6– 15; Acts 25:11; 1 Timothy 2:2), were all heavily influenced by the power of Satan. Other national leaders from more recent times, such as Adolph Hitler, Saddam Hussein, and the like are all prime examples of Satan attempting to take over the world. All of these rulers were satanically empowered; most of them were bent on the destruction of the Jews in particular. Most of them had aspirations for world domination, and in most cases, they demanded worship as deities. They were all *types* of antichrists, but they weren't *the* Antichrist. After the rapture of the church, Satan will finally be able to make his big move, empowering a new national leader with more cunning than ever before.

---

<sup>9</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 169-165, 174-205, 230-238.

---

Even non-Christians sometimes wonder with trepidation about this figure—the future Antichrist. I suppose it's easy for some people to mistake Jesus's mercy for nonthreatening pacifism, despite the fact that the danger he poses to dissidents is far greater than anything the Antichrist will ever dish out. Regardless of this fact, however, the term "Antichrist" strikes fear into the hearts of many. This man will be Satan's masterpiece; but before the Antichrist rises to prominence, a few things must transpire. Aside from the rapture of the church, which I've already covered, a number of major governmental changes must also take place. Some of these events might even occur before the rapture of the church. These changes will be centralized in the region surrounding the Mediterranean Sea, in the area known as the ancient Roman Empire.

#### **4.1 Big Changes Around The Mediterranean Sea**

John W Milor debated that<sup>10</sup> the book of Daniel was written about 530 BC, yet predicted the fall of the Babylonian Empire, as well as the rise and fall of the Medo-Persian Empire, the Grecian Empire, and the Roman Empire, all of which were located around the Mediterranean Sea. Proponents of prophecy have tried to explain this accuracy by suggesting the book was written later in the second century, but this still doesn't preclude all the prophecies it predicts. The rise of the Roman Empire is clearly depicted, and the coming of the "Anointed One, the ruler," 483 years after the issuing of the decree to restore and rebuild Jerusalem (Daniel 9) works out to the time of Jesus's ministry. Both of these prophecies occurred after the second century, so a second-century date still doesn't preclude the prophetic elements of the book of Daniel.

---

<sup>10</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 170-173.

---

***Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.***

***Daniel 9:25(MKJV)***

Until recently, John hasn't seriously undertaken the task of attempting to understand the visions of Daniel or John. They're so symbolic; John figured they could mean practically anything. John soon discovered this was a flawed conception on his part, because after only a few days of conducting research into these prophecies, John realized that most scholars agree on about 90 percent of the interpretations.

For example, both the visions of Daniel and John speak of strange animals with horns. Most everyone agrees that these creatures represent nations and the rulers associated with them.

The fact that the scriptures themselves state this verbatim (Daniel 7:17,7:23-24,8:20-23); (Revelation 13:1-18), which is clarified by (Revelation 17:8-17), and the fact that the historical record is in exact agreement with these prophecies that have already been fulfilled makes this assessment obvious.

The majority of the visions of Daniel, for example, have already been fulfilled, so who can argue against the interpretation? Simply follow the pattern, which is about 75 percent complete, and one can clearly see the events that will transpire in the future.

***These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth.***

***Daniel 7:17(MKJV)***

***Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.***

***And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.***

***Daniel 7:23-24(MKJV)***

***The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia.***

***And the rough goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king.***

***Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power.***

***And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up.***

***Daniel 8:20-23(MKJV)***

The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.

***And here is the mind which hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sits.***

***And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.***

***And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and will go into perdition.***

***And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast.***

***These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast.***

***These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for He is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.***

***And he said unto me, The waters which thou sawest, where the whore sits, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues.***

***And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.***

***For God hath put in their hearts to fulfill his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.***

***Revelation 17:9-17(MKJV)***

Concerning the interpretational aberrations deriving from these prophecies, some people refuse to acknowledge that Daniel is speaking about a specific geo-graphical region controlled under governmental authorities. For example, some people try to tie the United States into the picture by saying that the leopard in one of Daniel's visions represents Germany rather than the ancient Grecian Empire.<sup>2</sup> The national symbol of Germany is a leopard (though it also uses an eagle), and Germany was divided by four countries following WWII (United States, England, France, and Russia)—but Germany wasn't actually split up four ways, as the Grecian Empire was.

The United Nations is frequently read into scripture as well, but the United Nations includes nations that are nowhere near the area surrounding the Mediterranean Sea. Numerous different interpretations of Daniel's prophecies have been proposed, but as far as I can tell from the research I've conducted, they conclude with facts that are not consistent with scripture. For example, saying the Antichrist can come from America doesn't fit with numerous key scriptures (which I will soon divulge).

Furthermore, proponents of the United Nations theories frequently falsely conclude that the Antichrist will be a global dictator, but scripture is very clear about the fact that the Antichrist will never be a worldwide dictator; he will be at war for the majority of his seven-year reign. How can he be at war with his own kingdom?

Also, many people will never receive the mark of the beast, yet they will survive to see the millennium. The Antichrist, therefore, will not have the entire world completely under his control. It won't be until the very end of his seven-year reign

that the entire world will align under his military command to converge on Israel, but being a military commander isn't the same as being a dictator over the entire planet. I suspect the Antichrist will be a military leader in something that resembles the United Nations, but this is very different from being an actual global dictator.

One of the primary reasons people are analyzing Daniel's prophecies and seeing these alternate interpretations is because they want to identify the nation out of which the Antichrist will arise. Harmonizing all of the scriptures that speak about him, as John Milor will clearly demonstrate in successive sections, can only do this. The Antichrist can only come from one specific place, and the Bible points out exactly where that place is; there is no need for a guessing game.

Daniel's visions actually aren't that hard to understand; all it takes is a little common sense to see that they talk about ten kingdoms in a specific geographical region (within the vicinity of the Mediterranean Sea).

Saying the ten kingdoms of Daniel's visions are ten governmental types, or an economic treaty between ten countries, or any other manner of creative interpretation, goes further and further away from what scripture actually says.

#### **4.1.1 The Formation Of The Roman Empire**

John W Milor debated that<sup>11</sup> Concerning the prophecies in the book of Daniel, as well as similar prophecies covering the same events given by the apostle John while exiled on the Isle of Patmos, a new revision of the ancient Roman Empire will be

---

<sup>11</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 173-174.

---



formed in the last days. This empire will be the seventh world-dominating empire mentioned in scripture.

The first world-dominating empire was Egypt, the second Assyria, and then the four kingdoms mentioned above, which are Babylon, Medo-Persia, the Grecian Empire, and the Roman Empire (see the visions of Daniel in Daniel 7:1– 12:13, and visions of John in Revelation, as expounded on in *God's Plan for Man*, by Finis Dake, for more detailed information). For anyone wishing to delve into the fifty-billion-page version of the brief exposition John Milor outline here, John Milor actually recommend reading all one thousand pages of *God's Plan for Man*, by Finis Dake. The Internet is full of this same information as well. Almost all students of the Bible agree about the identity of the kingdoms of the world leading up to the revised Roman Empire.

The new revised Roman Empire will be a conglomeration of ten kingdoms, ruled by ten kings so it isn't a revived Roman Empire, as some teach because there will be ten kings rather than one. (The original Roman Empire had only one king, and to suggest that this Roman Empire will be revived rather than revised would suggest that it will have one king and it never will, not even when the Antichrist rises to power.)

This revised Roman Empire will encompass a very large tract of land that once housed fifty-four provinces. There are now (as of the year 2006) over twenty complete countries within the original territory of the ancient Roman Empire, and about twenty more countries if one counts areas where only portions of countries are included.<sup>4</sup> All of these countries surround the Mediterranean Sea and span three continents, which includes most of Europe, a western portion of Asia, and a northern portion of Africa.

Now what would have to take place that would shuffle national boundaries around to such a degree that nearly forty countries become ten? An easy answer would be war and a very large one at that. Keep in mind that this has to happen before the Antichrist will rise to power.

Not many people foresaw the collapse of communism, which fell without a single shot fired. Because of this unforeseeable event, for all we know, groups of countries could simply unite peacefully (meaning two or more countries erasing their borders and actually merging into a single country), though I know of no time in history where this has ever happened.

War is always the catalyst that defines national boundaries. Most of the nations in this region are now democratic, which at least makes a peaceful transition more plausible than it was in the days of Communist rule, but a peaceful transition still looks unlikely.

Simply look at what's going on over there right now! The trend of the region has always been war, especially in the Syrian quadrant of the future empire in question. I think the most likely scenario will be the backlash of Islam against the coalition that defeated Iraq.

John wouldn't be surprised if Syria and its predominantly Muslim neighbors go to war with each other over the problems with terrorism and the introduction of Western democracy, and then conglomerate into larger countries. They might even decide to unite agreeably against Western democracy, but John doubts it.

Once they're united, however that comes about, they'll push their attacks west into Europe, which will force the European countries to unite in order to fight back.

Whatever the scenario, the revised Roman Empire must exist as a ten-kingdom entity before the Antichrist rises to power.

## **4.2 The First Conquest Of The Antichrist**

John W Milor debated that:<sup>12</sup> Once the ten kingdoms are in place, the Antichrist is identified by both the prophet Daniel and the apostle John as being one of the kings of one of these nations. Daniel in particular was given three visions that speak of which area the Antichrist will rise to power from, and each vision narrows down his location with more precision.

First, the Antichrist is mentioned as being one of the kings of the ten kingdoms of the revised Roman Empire (ten toes of beast in (Daniel 2); ten horns of beast in (Daniel 7:23-24); ten horns of beast in (Revelation 12:3; 13:1-4; 17:8- 17).

In Daniel's second vision, the Antichrist is said to arise out of the area that was once part of the ancient Grecian Empire (Daniel 8:8-9, 8:21-23). This region overlaps the eastern portion of the ancient Roman Empire; it is symbolized by the metals of the image in (Daniel 2), the four beasts of (Daniel 7), and the he-goat of (Daniel 8:5-26). In Daniel's third vision, it was shown that the Grecian Empire would be divided into four parts following the death of Alexander the Great (Daniel 8:8-9, 8:21-23, 11:4), and then Daniel saw which of these four parts the Antichrist would arise from.

The quadrant he will come from will be the Syrian quadrant. This can be determined from the fact that he will be in the nation directly north of Egypt (the Antichrist is mentioned as being the king to the north of Egypt Daniel 11:36-46), which completely rules out a number of countries different theorists have speculated through the years,

---

<sup>12</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 174-179.

---

such as the Vatican, Germany, England, and the United States. This area today is the location of modern Syria, Lebanon, Israel, Jordan, Saudi Arabia, Iraq, and Iran.

***Thus he said the fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.***

***And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.***

***Daniel 7:23-24(MKJV)***

*\*The Antichrist is depicted as arising out of one of the ten kings of the revised Roman Empire.*

***The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia.***

***And the rough goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king [Alexander the Great].***

***Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power.***

***And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences [the Antichrist], shall stand up.***

***Daniel 8:20-23(MKJV)***

*\*Clearly the Antichrist is mentioned as coming from one of the four quadrants of the ancient Grecian Empire.*

***And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvelous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done.***

***Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all.***

***But in his estate shall he honor the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honor with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things.***

**Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.**

**And at the time of the end shall the king of the south [Egypt, shown below] push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships;**

**and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be over-thrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.**

**He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape.**

**But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps.**

**But tidings out of the east [China] and out of the north [the former Soviet Union] shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy and utterly to make away many.**

**And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.**

**Daniel 11:36-45(MKJV)**

*\*A nation north of Egypt yet south of another great world empire (which must be the former Soviet Union) would place the Antichrist in the Syrian quadrant of the ancient Grecian Empire, which will also be one of the eastern ten nations of the revised Roman Empire.*

Aside from the facts listed above, the Antichrist is also called the Assyrian in scripture (Isaiah 10:20-27, 30:18-33, 31:4-32:20; Micah 5:3-15), which further identifies him with the nation of Syria.

**And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the LORD, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.**

**The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.**

***For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.***

***For the Lord GOD of hosts shall make a consumption, even determined, in the midst of all the land.***

***Therefore thus says the Lord GOD of hosts, O my people that dwell in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian: he [the Antichrist] shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.***

***For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.***

***And the LORD of hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Orel): and as his rod was upon the sea, so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.***

***And it shall come to pass in that day, that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.***

***Isaiah 10:20-27(MKJV)***

***Therefore will he give them up, until the time that she which travails hath brought forth: then the remnant of his brethren shall return unto the children of Israel.***

***And he shall stand and feed in the strength of the LORD, in the majesty of the name of the LORD his God; and they shall abide: for now shall he be great unto the ends of the earth.***

***And this man shall be the peace, when the Assyrian [the Antichrist] shall come into our land: and when he shall tread in our palaces, then shall we raise against him seven shepherds, and eight principal men.***

***And they shall waste the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod in the entrances thereof: thus shall he deliver us from the Assyrian, when he cometh into our land, and when he treads within our borders.***

***Micah 5:3-6(MKJV)***

Obviously from the facts mentioned above, the Antichrist will arise from the land known as ancient Assyria; this fact can clearly be determined by the title of the Antichrist (the Assyrian) and his geographical region north of Egypt, south of another major world power, the former Soviet Union, and west of yet another major world power, China. Modern-day Syria encompasses the majority of the Assyrian quadrant, which was established under the ancient Grecian Empire, but Lebanon is also a

candidate for being the nation where the Antichrist will initially rise to power because it too is north of Egypt, and it was once within the borders of ancient Assyria.

Notably it's also a very small nation. Another name for the Antichrist is "*little horn*" (Daniel 7:8, 7:24, 8:9, 8:23), which denotes the possibility that a small nation is being spoken of, in comparison to the other nations around it. Lebanon is among the smallest nations to the north of Egypt. Whichever of the ten nations the Antichrist comes from will be apparent soon enough, however, because the formation of the revised Roman Empire won't be composed of ten nations for very long. The Antichrist will immediately begin his first conquest and go to war with his neighbors. Among these neighbors will certainly be Iraq because the ancient city of Babylon is located within Iraq, and that's the first place where he will establish his capital in his newly conquered territory (Isaiah 14:1-11; Zechariah 5:5-11; Revelation 16:17-21; 18:1-24).

***For the LORD will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land: and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.***

***And the people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the LORD for servants and handmaids: and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were; and they shall rule over their oppressors.***

***And it shall come to pass in the day that the LORD shall give thee rest from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve,***

***that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon [the Antichrist], and say, How bath the oppressor ceased! The golden city ceased!***  
***Isaiah 14:1-4(MKJV)***

***And he said, This is wickedness. And he cast it into the midst of the ephah; and he cast the weight of lead upon the mouth thereof.***

***Then lifted I up mine eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came out two women, and the wind was in their wings; for they had wings like the wings of a stork: and they lifted up the ephah between the earth and the heaven.***

***Then said I to the angel that talked with me, Whither do these bear the ephah?  
And he said unto me, To build a house in the land of Shinar [land of Babylon]:  
and it shall be established, and set there upon her own base.***

***Zechariah 5:8-10(MKJV)***

***And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue  
Armageddon.***

***And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great  
voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done.***

***And there were voices, and thunder, and lightning; and there was a great  
earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an  
earthquake, and so great.***

***And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell:  
and great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup  
of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath.***

***And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. And there fell  
upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent:  
and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague  
thereof was exceeding great.***

***Revelation 16:16-21(MKJV)***

Babylon, the capital city of the Antichrist kingdom, will be moved during the middle of Daniel's seventieth week, after the first three and one-half years of the reign of the Antichrist. It will be moved to Jerusalem (Daniel 9:27, 11:40-45; 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4; Revelation 13).

***And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of  
the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the  
overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the  
consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.***

***Daniel 9:27(MKJV)***

***And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king  
of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with  
horsemen, and with many ships;***

***and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. He shall  
enter also into the glorious land, [Israel] and many countries shall be  
overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and  
the chief of the children of Ammon.***



***He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape.***

***But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps. But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy and utterly to make away many.***

***And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; [Jerusalem in Israel] yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.***

***Daniel 11:40-45(MKJV)***

***Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;***

***Who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sits in the temple of God, [which is in Jerusalem] showing himself that he is God.***

***2 Thessalonians 2:3-4(MKJV)***

The Antichrist will defeat three of the ten nations of the revised Roman Empire, which will reduce the ten nations to seven nations (Daniel 7:23-24, 8:8-9, 8:21-23). The identity of the Antichrist should be glaringly obvious at this time—if there is anyone left who has any knowledge of these prophecies.

### **4.3 The Second Conquest Of The Antichrist**

John W Milor discussed that:<sup>13</sup> After his initial conquest, the Antichrist will make a seven-year covenant with the nation of Israel during the first three and one-half years of his reign over his newly conquered territory. Then, in the middle of that covenant, he will start another war against the nations that are north and east of him (Daniel 9:27, 11:36-45).

---

<sup>13</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 179-181.

---

Taking a lesson from recent history, recall what happened with Germany during WWII. The nations surrounding Germany were forced to make a decision to either stand with Germany or fight against it. Italy sided with Germany, while England stood against it. Peaceful nations must always make this difficult decision when faced with imperialistic powers. Just as WWII had its axis and allies, so the future holds a similar fate for the nations in Europe, Asia, and Africa.

While the Antichrist will be tightening his grip around his newly conquered territory, the nations to the north and east of him will be preparing for battle, with their correct perception of being next on his list. Germany, Russia, and other nations in Europe not within the revised Roman Empire will be part of this building military alliance (Daniel 11:44; Ezekiel 38-39). Meanwhile the other six nations within the revised Roman Empire will be feeling the pressure, both from the kingdom of the Antichrist, and now the kingdoms of the north and far east, who will be preparing to take a stand against the Antichrist.

Seeing the success of the Antichrist, and also being enamored with him, the six remaining kingdoms inside the revised Roman Empire will decide to give their kingdoms to the Antichrist and make him their military leader (Revelation 17:12-17) in battle against these countries to the north and east (Daniel 11:40— 45). Why will they do this? Actually, strangely enough, it will be God who puts it in their hearts to do it (Revelation 17:8,16-17; 2 Thessalonians 2:11-12). God has a way of using his enemies to destroy each other, and the other enemy he wants to destroy, aside from the Antichrist, in this case is a vast religious system that's been corrupt for a very long time.

***The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.***

***Revelation 17:8(MKJV)***

***And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.***

***For God hath put in their hearts to fulfill His will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.***

***Revelation 17:16-17(MKJV)***

***And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming:***

***Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders,***

***And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.***

***And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie:***

***That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.***

***2 Thessalonians 2:8-12(MKJV)***

#### **4.4 Where Will The United States Stand In Relation To The Antichrist?**

John W Milor discussed that:<sup>14</sup> Going back to the discussions of national alliances in relation to the Antichrist, whom will the United States help in these battles? This is hard to determine. On one side of the coin, the United States has always been allied with England and the majority of Western Europe, which will be inside the revised Roman Empire in the future. Furthermore, if China is still a communist nation at that time, and if it's allied with nations in the north, those nations might be communist nations as well. The United States has always stood against communism. These are two solid reasons why the United States might side with the Antichrist.

---

<sup>14</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 189-193.

---

On the other side of the coin, the United States has always supported Israel, which the Antichrist will be dead set against (though this opposition won't be noticeable until the middle of his seven-year reign). Second, the United States has never allied itself with other nations based out of fear. During WWII, some nations sided with Germany because they were afraid to oppose Germany, but the United States was not afraid to take a stand against Hitler's tyranny.

It's true that the United States has taken a stand against communism, but it has also stood against imperialism just as much. Germany and Japan are two prime examples. The United States has always stood for freedom, and aligned itself with whatever side represented that freedom best (which has been difficult to determine at times). Judging the imperialistic nature of the Antichrist kingdom, the United States might very well step back from this mess.

Then there's the fact that the United States might have the largest number of new Christians in the world at that time. If anyone will know about the fulfillment of prophecy in those days, people in the United States will be on the forefront, and they certainly won't want to have anything to do with the Antichrist. It'll be obvious who he is. In fact, he'll be slaughtering Christians simply because they're Christians, and I don't see the United States aligning itself with someone like that.

Then again, there are those three lying spirits I mentioned earlier. What effect might they have on the people of the United States?

Concluding the question above, it's impossible to tell whom the United States or other nations in the world not within the vicinity of the revised Roman Empire will align with during the course of the seven-year reign of the Antichrist. In Revelation 13:7-8, there is an indication that all the nations of the world will be aligned with the

Antichrist, but this isn't the case when one analyzes other scriptures and understands the entire story. First, I'll start with the above-mentioned passage.

***And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.***

***And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.***  
***Revelation 13:7-8(MKJV)***

Initially, this appears to show that all nations will be ruled under the Anti-christ, and in a sense, this will be true, but only as it relates to the heart. The deception the Antichrist will be advocating will be global; this is the power and rule that he will be given, but actual governmental authority on the global scale will not be given to him, for three clearly defined reasons:

- ◆ Certain nations (Edom and Moab) will escape his rule (Daniel 11:40-44).
- ◆ At the same time he would supposedly be ruling over every nation of the world, certain countries will be at war with him (Daniel 11:40-44) up until the climax of the battle of Armageddon.

***And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships;***

***And he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.***

***He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape.***

***But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps.***

***But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy and utterly to make away many.***

***And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.***  
***Daniel 11:40-45(MKJV)***

- ◆ Multitudes of people from many nations will never take the mark of the beast. Among these, some will never be killed by the Antichrist for not taking this mark.

This can be determined by the fact that no one who takes the mark will go into the millennium (Revelation 14:9-11), yet there will be survivors of the tribulation who will see the millennium. These survivors must therefore be those who never took the mark of the beast (Zechariah 14:16-21; Joel 2:29-32; Isaiah 2:1-4; Matthew 25:31—46; and other scriptures).

***And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his fore-head, or in his hand,***

***the same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb:***

***And the smoke of their torment will ascend up for ever and ever: and they will have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever received the mark of his name.***

***Revelation 14:9-11(MKJV)***

***And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles.***

***And it shall be that whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain.***

***And if the family of Egypt go not up, and come not, that have no rain; there shall be the plague, tabernacles.***

***This shall be the punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles.***

***In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD; and the pots in the LORD's house shall be like the bowls before the altar.***

***Yea, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah shall be holiness unto the LORD of hosts: and all they that sacrifice shall come and take of them, and seethe therein: and in that day there shall be no more the Canaanite in the house of the LORD of hosts.***

***Zechariah 14:16-21(MKJV)***

***The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem.***

***And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the LORD's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.***

***And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.***

***And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.***

***Isaiah 2:1-4(MKJV)***

Regardless of whom North America, South America, Australia, or other nations decide to align with, the Antichrist will succeed in defeating the nations to the north and east of him during the last three and one-half years of his reign.

After these victories, he will be known as the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal (Ezekiel 38-39).

All of the newly conquered territory he will acquire will form the eighth world power, as in John's visions, a global force unlike any in the his-tory of the world. However, will it encompass the whole world? No.

## **4.5 The Antichrist's Frustration With Israel**

John W Milor debated that:<sup>15</sup> Israel will be a pain in the side of the Antichrist. He will start out making a seven-year covenant of peace with Israel, which will be devastating for Israel because it will be by this peace that he will destroy many of them (Daniel 8:25,9:27; Matthew 24:15-26). The Antichrist won't wipe them out by a long shot, though, because God will preserve his "remnant," as God lovingly calls them.

Daniel 11:41 states that ancient Edom and Moab (modern-day Jordan and Arabia) will escape the Antichrist (Daniel 11:41).

Delving further, in (Isaiah 16:1-5, Ezekiel 20:33-35, Matthew 24:15-21, and Revelation 12:5-17), it is stated that Israel will flee for protection into the wilderness (Edom and Moab—places that escape the Antichrist), which interestingly are currently Arab nations, obviously - Arabia. Arabs, therefore, will be helping the Jews during this troublesome time. It takes the Antichrist in their face to make this happen, but hey, they'll finally get along! The crux of what will make this possible is that there will be many more Christian Arabs in the future, as well as more Messianic Jews (Christians), and they will find their common ground in Christ (even as they currently do, but on a much smaller scale).

Currently the few Arab Christians there are in this region are commonly anti-Semitic (not all, but many of them), making their flavor of Christianity highly tarnished. (The first time John heard about anti-Semitic Christians, he did a double take; think about it you'd hate the very God you worship, because Jesus is a Jew!) Apparently God will have to do something about this inconsistency in the faith of anti-Semitic Arabic Christians, in order to get them to help the Jews in the future.

---

<sup>15</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 193-196.

---



**He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.**

**Daniel 11:41(MKJV)**

**Send ye the lamb to the ruler of the land from Sela to the wilderness, unto the mount of the daughter of Zion.**

**For it shall be that, as a wandering bird cast out of the nest, so the daughters of Moab shall be at the fords of Arnon.**

**Take counsel, execute judgment; make thy shadow as the night in the midst of the noonday; hide the outcasts; betray not him that wanders.**

**Let mine outcasts dwell with thee, Moab; be thou a covert to them from the face of the spoiler: for the extortioner is at an end, the spoiler ceases, the oppressors are consumed out of the land.**

**And in mercy shall the throne be established: and he shall sit upon it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging, and seeking judgment, and lasting righteousness.**

**Isaiah 16:1-5(MKJV)**

**As I live, says the Lord GOD, surely with a mighty hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with fury poured out, will I rule over you:**

**And I will bring you out from the people, and will gather you out of the countries wherein ye are scattered, with a mighty hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with fury poured out.**

**And I will bring you into the wilderness of the people, and there will I plead with you face to face.**

**Ezekiel 20:33-35(MKJV)**

**And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.**

**And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore days.**

**And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, and prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven.**

**And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceives the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.**

***And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.***

***And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.***

***Therefore rejoice ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to those who inhabit the earth and of the sea! For the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knows that he hath but a short time.***

***And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child.***

***And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent.***

***And the serpent cast out of his mouth water as a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away of the flood.***

***And the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed up the flood which the dragon cast out of his mouth.***

***And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.***

***Revelation 12:5-17(MKJV)***

The Bible even states the exact location of where the Jews will flee. Sela, the ancient capital of Edom, is now called Petra; it's an abandoned desert fortress carved out of solid rock (amazingly surrealistic too, I might add). This ancient city nestled into the rocks of the desert canyons will be the haven of the Jews during the great tribulation (Isaiah 16:1-5, and referred to in Isaiah 26:20-21, 63:1-8).

***Send ye the lamb to the ruler of the land from Sela to the wilderness, unto the mount of the daughter of Zion. For it shall be that, as a wandering bird cast out of the nest, so the daughters of Moab shall be at the fords of Arnon.***

***Isaiah 16:1(MKJV)***

The funny thing is, the Antichrist will probably know about all of these prophecies, being familiar with scripture as I'm sure he'll be, but he won't be able to do anything about them. He'll try to stop the Jews during their escape by sending a military force

after them, but God will cause a massive earthquake to open up the ground and swallow them up (Revelation 12).

***And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child.***

***And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent.***

***And the serpent cast out of his mouth water as a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away of the flood.***

***And the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed up the flood which the dragon cast out of his mouth.***

***And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.***

***Revelation 12:13-17(MKJV)***

Then there are the bolder Jews, who decide to stand their ground in Israel; right where the Antichrist will have his capital established during the second half of his reign. Even they will be protected from the Antichrist, despite the fact that they'll be right there under his nose. They will be protected by both the two witnesses (Enoch and Elijah will return to Earth in those days to preach the Gospel and protect the Jews, Revelation 11:3-13), and the wars in the north and east will deter the Antichrist from focusing his attacks on them until the very tail end of the great tribulation.

***And I will give power unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore days, clothed in sackcloth.***

***These are the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth.***

***And if any man will hurt them, fire will proceed out of their mouth, and devour their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed.***

***These have power to shut heaven that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will.***

***And when they shall have finished their testimony, the beast that will ascend out of the bottomless pit shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them.***

***And their dead bodies shall lie in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified.***

***And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and an half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves.***

***And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth.***

***And after three days and an half the Spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them.***

***And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, Come up hither. And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them.***

***And the same hour was there a great earthquake, and the tenth part of the city fell, and in the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand: and the remnant were affrighted, and gave glory to the God of heaven.***

***Revelation 11:3-13(MKJV)***

Certainly all of this will irk the Antichrist to no end. He'll be successful in waging war and destroying people all over the world, but the Jewish people, whom he will hate more than anyone else, will be right in his own backyard, living in the same city where he will have his capital established, and he still won't be able to destroy them.

## **4.6 The Technology Of The Antichrist Kingdom**

John W Milor stated that:<sup>16</sup> mentioned that the Antichrist might have a technological advantage in his battles because of his alliance with technologically advanced beings from other worlds. One didn't disclose the full depth of everything the Bible says about the technology utilized in the Antichrist kingdom. When the Antichrist assumes

---

<sup>16</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 197-198.

control over his new kingdom, one of the first mandates given by the beast from the Abyss (the supernatural being helping the Antichrist) will be to create an image of the beast (a representation of the Antichrist and his kingdom). This man-made thing will be intelligent, able to speak, and serve the Antichrist by exerting administrative control over his kingdom. He will regulate the economic system of his kingdom by forcing all his subjects to accept a special identification mark (the mark of the beast). Those without the mark (or the number or name of the beast) will not be allowed to buy or sell goods within his kingdom.

***And deceives them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live.***

***And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.***

***And he causes all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.***

***Revelation 13:14-16(MKJV)***

This man-made, intelligent being will be an active participant in the administration of the Antichrist kingdom, but it won't actually be alive because it's never mentioned as being destroyed by God along with the beast (the Antichrist) and the false prophet.

***And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.***

***Revelation 19:20(MKJV)***

John's a fairly savvy computer guy, but man doesn't think it takes a computer person to see that this image of the beast will be a technological wonder. It's a manmade, intelligent being, the exact description of a computer given by someone who had no idea what a computer was. These days just about everyone familiar with prophecy,

even a little bit, thinks the mark of the beast will be some sort of computer chip. I'd put a reference for this statement, but anyone with Internet access can simply search the Internet for "mark of the beast" and see that many of the links will give references to computer chips. The UPC (United Purchase Seal) barcode will also pop up; today's standard for barcode scanners.

The UPC apparently has "666" encoded into it for some technical reason, which is an interesting coincidence, since the UPC has to do with buying and selling. Even in John job in the military, he happen to know that PKI (Public Key Infra-structure) technology is headed in the direction of an embedded computer chip. His personal military ID card, which is now called the "Common Access Card," (CAC) contains a gold-colored computer chip on the front of it.

The CAC is used for logging into military networks, accessing PKI encrypted Web sites, and reading PKI encrypted e-mail. John personally doubt the embedded-chip technology will ever be implemented in the United States, but it looks as if something like this will be exactly what the Antichrist kingdom will utilize for identification and economic administration.

While most people understand the mark of the beast as a form of technology, I'm the only person that I know of who thinks that the image of the beast will be an artificially intelligent android.

Of course the image of the beast being an artificially intelligent android isn't particularly significant in itself, other than the fact that I'm predicting what the image of the beast will be, and this will add to the credibility of the interpretation of the other information I've highlighted in this book if it comes to pass.

#### **4.7 Could The Antichrist Be a Modern-Day Nephilim?**

John W Milor stated that:<sup>17</sup> For many years, there have been numerous speculations about the Antichrist. When will he come to power? Where will he come from? Will he rule from Rome, or some country in Europe, or even the United States? Will he be one of the popes or a president of the United States? Will he be a mortal human being, or something else, such as the reincarnation of Judas Iscariot, or the physical incarnation of Satan, or perhaps even a being from the underworld—from the bottomless pit? Might he be a modern-day Nephilim?

Concerning the first three questions, I've already stated that the Antichrist won't rise to power until after the rapture of the church and the formation of the ten nations of the revised Roman Empire.

As for the location of his initial ascent into world dominance, the Antichrist will make his entrance in the Syrian division of the ancient Grecian Empire, which today is either Syria or Lebanon. Because his location is clearly determined with such precision, it's obvious that he won't be a pope, or a president of the United States, nor will he ever establish his capital in Rome, or in the United States, or anywhere other than where scripture clearly states. The city of Babylon will be rebuilt and established as the capital of the Antichrist kingdom during the first three and one-half years of Daniel's seventieth week (Isaiah 13:6, 13:9-13, 14:1-11; Zechariah 5:5-11; Revelation 16:17-21; 18:1-24). During the second three and one-half years of his reign, the Antichrist will relocate his capital to Jerusalem (Daniel 9:27, 11:40-45; 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4; Revelation 13).

---

<sup>17</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 198-201.

---

As for the humanity of the Antichrist, he will definitely be a mortal human, though he won't be humane. Revelation 13:18 states that his number (666) is the number of a man. He will also be slain by Christ when Christ returns at his second advent (Daniel 7:11; Isaiah 11:4; 2 Thessalonians 2:7-8), which wouldn't be possible to do if he were some completely immortal angelic being. In reference to the idea that the Antichrist will be a reincarnation of Judas Iscariot, Hebrews 9:27 states that it is appointed unto men only once to die, and after that comes the judgment—so Judas Iscariot is out of the picture, and so is anyone else who could be reincarnated, for that matter.

Does the Nephilim theory have any substance to it? Might the Antichrist be a modern-day Nephilim? After weighing everything out, I think this might actually be a possibility, because the Nephilim (mortal, half-breed human-angel hybrids first mentioned in Genesis 6) are actually called "mighty men" and "men of renown" in scripture (Genesis 6:4), so they are considered to be men, even though they're genetically diluted.

Scripture also states that the final conflict between God and Satan will be between the seed of the woman, Jesus, and the seed of Satan, the Antichrist (Genesis 3:15). The seed of the woman was a real, physical, biological seed, so why would the other seed not be a real, physical, biological seed, since all the elements necessary to make that possible are available?

***There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown.***

***Genesis 6:4(MKJV)***

***And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy [Satan's] seed and her [Eve's] seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.***

***Genesis 3:15(MKJV)***



Since the Nephilim were actually the biological offspring of fallen angels, it stands as a possibility that Satan has been saving his personal seed for a long time—waiting for the right time to play this last trump card. He clearly wasn't participating with the rebel angels who committed the sin of fornication with humans documented in Genesis 6 (an especially reprehensible sin, apparently, because those fallen angels who were committing it were apprehended and chained up, while other fallen angels are still allowed to roam free). Certainly he had it within him to commit this sin, but he specifically didn't, and I suspect this is the reason. If Satan committed the special sin that the other angels committed in Genesis 6, he would've been chained up in hell with the rest of them long ago, but he wasn't (Jude 1:6; 2 Peter 2:4).

***And the angels who kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.***

***Jude 1:6(MKJV)***

***For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment...***

***2 Peter 2:4(MKJV)***

So perhaps the Antichrist really will be the biological son of Satan. This can actually explain a lot, because it gives the Antichrist a unique affiliation with the heavenly realm. It explains his strange religion and qualifies his special place as its appointed leader, a sort of messiah for the New Age. It also explains even more about the origin of his supernatural power from Satan (2 Thessalonians 2:7-12; Daniel 11:35-39; Revelation 13:1-4). Statements that otherworldly visitors may make about him could actually be true statements, even though deception will be behind everything they say. He will be special to them because he will actually be from them—a chosen one, so to speak—as they might very well state and even be able to prove.

With all the facts taken into consideration, the Antichrist bears the exact resemblance of a Nephilim. He could literally be the son of perdition (2 Thessalonians 2:1-12),

being just as evil as the Nephilim were (Genesis 6:5), certainly a mighty man of renown, with his fierce countenance (Daniel 8:23) and peculiar command of supernatural power—all the stuff of Greek legends, which were inspired by the original Nephilim. He will even come from the same ancient Gre-cian Empire where all those satanic Nephilim once flourished, and the main thing he'll be trying to do during his entire reign will be exactly the same thing the Nephilim did—fill the world with violence in a mad torrent of conquest, demanding nothing less than worship as a god.

On this particular topic, I disagree with Finis Dake because he was rather adamant in his view that the Antichrist will be a normal, mortal man. I'm not sure why he wasn't willing to see the possibility of the Antichrist being a Nephilim, since he understood what the Nephilim really were. I agree with Dake that the Antichrist will be a mortal man, but I can't deny the fact that he is certainly not normal, and that he bears the earmark of a Nephilim in every way.

Just because the characteristics and identity of the Antichrist can be understood with a purely natural interpretation of scripture, and Satan is fully capable of exercising his power through someone without having a biological son, doesn't mean he won't actually have a biological son. It's possible, and scripture seems to indicate this, in my opinion.

Perhaps this is what lies behind the alien-abduction phenomenon and the genetic experimentation at the core of it all. Perhaps the fallen sons of God, Satan's cronies, are ironing out all the Nephilim bugs of the past (getting the size ratio corrected, ensuring there will be five fingers and toes instead of six-2 Samuel 21:20 and others). As I stated in *Aliens in the Bible*, the alien abduction phenomenon is probably not some bizarre pastime of ultraintelligent beings conducting pranks relative to cow tipping in Wisconsin.

#### **4.8 The Final Conquest Of The Antichrist, And Second Advent Of Christ**

John W Milor stated that:<sup>18</sup> Near the end of the second three and one-half years of the reign of the Antichrist, after the Antichrist absorbs the nations to the north and east of him into his own kingdom, he'll finally focus his attention back on the Jews again. Up until this point, the Jews will be protected either by the two witnesses or by the Arabs in the nations that will thus far escape the Antichrist, but now their good fortune will appear to change.

The two witnesses will be wreaking havoc in Israel for the second three and one-half years, while the Antichrist will be busy fighting to the north and east, but the two witnesses will finally be overcome by the beast that ascends from the bottomless pit. This will occur at the same time the Antichrist claims victory over the north and east (Revelation 11:3-10). The two witnesses will be murdered, and their bodies will lie in a street in Jerusalem for three days while the majority of the world celebrates their deaths.

***And when they shall have finished their testimony, the beast that will ascend out of the bottomless pit shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them.***

***And their dead bodies shall lie in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified.***

***And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and an half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves.***

***And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth.***

***Revelation 11:7-10(MKJV)***

---

<sup>18</sup> Milor, John W (2006), Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 201-205.

---

Soon after the big celebration is over, the Antichrist will prepare to mount a full-scale attack against the Jews, but right at the same time that he starts to mount this attack, he may receive word from his otherworldly allies of another impending invasion from the heavens. This is the second invasion I mentioned earlier, which will be much larger than the first one. This invasion will be directly linked with the attack about to be waged on the Jews (Jesus will be returning with the armies of heaven to rescue them), though the rest of the world might not be aware of this. All they will know, if anything, is that a hostile force will invade Earth.

John always wondered exactly how the Antichrist would convince the entire world—every nation on the planet—to align itself under his military command in the battle of Armageddon against Israel and the armies of heaven. What will this look like? What will have to unfold to make this scenario possible? Certainly the truth of the identity of the approaching otherworldly armada would have to be obscured in some manner in order to convince everyone to unite and fight God and the armies of heaven. As John already stated, he believe the Antichrist will have an accomplished precedent of being victorious in battle even over otherworldly opponents, as described in (Daniel 8:10-12).

In addition, the fact that the Antichrist and much of his army will still be alive at the end of the second three and one-half years gives an indication that they may also be able to fight successfully against the creatures of the Abyss that will be unleashed. The Antichrist will capitalize on these precedents, using them to convince the world that the attack that is coming is a satanic attack bent on the destruction of the world. Many people will actually believe that the Antichrist is the messiah with his incredible charisma, seemingly invincible leadership and strength, and most of all, his unique heavenly origins and allies, along with his supernatural power. Nothing in those days will be as it seems.

The three unclean spirits will have completed their work, successfully deceiving everyone in the world who rejects the truth of who God really is (Revelation 16:13-16). Thankfully God's servants will have done their work as well! They will be empowered with miraculous gifts to do even greater miracles than Jesus did (John 14:12).

With their miraculous powers, they will be spreading the Gospel in an unprecedented revival during the great tribulation that will save more people on Earth than in any revival in the history of the world (Joel 2:29-32; Acts 2:17-18; John 14:12).

***Verily, verily, I say unto you, he that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.***

***John 14:12(MKJV)***

***And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.***

***And I will show wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.***

***The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and the terrible day of the LORD come.***

***And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the LORD shall be delivered: for in Mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the LORD hath said, and in the remnant whom the LORD shall call.***

***Joel 2:29-32(MKJV)***

***And it shall come to pass in the last days, says God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:***

***And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:***

***And I will show wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke:***

***the sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before that great and notable day of the Lord come:***

***and it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.***

***Acts 2:17-21(MKJV)***

Concerning the impending invasion, the Antichrist will successfully deceive many people on Earth into believing that he will be their savior who will save them from an evil attack about to take place (Ezekiel 38-39; Zechariah 14; Joel 3; Revelation 14:9-10,19:11-21).

But of course, when Jesus returns, the Anti-christ and the false prophet, as well as all their followers who accepted the mark of the beast, will be completely destroyed (Zechariah 14:1-5; Jude 14; Revelation 19:11-21).

***And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand,***

***The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb.***

***Revelation 14:9-10(MKJV)***

There won't even be a contest in the battle of Armageddon—when Jesus returns, He will put an end to the madness. This well-famed battle spoken of in heated circles for millennia will result in more bloodshed than any other battle ever waged on Earth. The entire valley floor will be filled with a lake of blood about 200 miles long, and as deep as a horse's bridle—which is about five feet deep (Revelation 14). Following this battle, birds will gorge themselves on the flesh of corpses for a considerable amount of time (Revelation 19).

***And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs.***

***Revelation 14:20(MKJV)***

***That ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great.***

***Revelation 19:18(MKJV)***

One finds it interesting to note that people who aren't Christians will frequently be completely turned off to the name of Jesus, but mystical terminology referring to prophecies about the Antichrist or the battle of Armageddon will perk their ears up with interest. Movies such as *Prophecy*, *End of Days*, *The Seventh Sign*, and so forth are works of fiction, yet they draw considerable interest in the secular community. Isn't the truth interesting enough—with the Nephilim Antichrist, his otherworldly allies, and battles with strange creatures from other dimensions within Earth? Imagine the climax of such a movie, building up to the battle of Armageddon, with all the nations in the entire world united against an otherworldly invasion they are led to believe is an evil army. Then, in the last moment, they suddenly come to the horrific conclusion that it is God, his mighty angels, and his saints of the past that they will be fighting! "Oops, I guess I'm on the wrong side!" Some will realize all too late. It will be like *War of the Worlds*, but the people on Earth in those days will be the bad guys—now that's a twist. Wake up, Hollywood—truth is stranger than fiction!

The real story is far more captivating than any work of fiction, and the ending is perhaps the most difficult to imagine, with its surreal beauty and awe. Jesus, the man of peace, as well as the ultimate warrior with unlimited power, will return to Earth in all his brilliant glory and splendor. He will lead the armies of heaven—riding white horses across the sky, most likely amid a myriad of other-worldly beings and various spacecraft, all fighting each other. Lasers, bolts of electricity, plasma cannons, photon torpedoes, and who knows what else will be blasting away in all directions. The battles in the heavens that have been going on for thousands of years will finally become visible to the people of Earth, and all hell will literally break loose. Does the story end here? No, quite the contrary—only now does the story begin.

#### 4.9 The Momentous Second Coming Of The Antichrist

Clarence Larkin stated<sup>19</sup> that: In ones study of prophecy man lay much stress on the "*Second Coming of Christ*," forgetting that there are two other comings of "*individuals*" that are just as momentous as Christ's coming. The first is that of Antichrist, and the other is that of Satan.

In both the Old and New Testament we are told of a **Mysterious and Terrible Personage** that shall be revealed in the "*Last Times*." He is described under different names and aliases, and it is only by a careful examination and comparison of these names, and the Person they describe that we see that they refer to one and the same individual. These names are:

IN THE OLD TESTAMENT	IN THE NEW TESTAMENT
(Isaiah 14: 4) – "King of Babylon."	Paul (2 Thessalonians 2:3-8) – "The Man of Sin."
(Isaiah 14: 12) – "Lucifer."	Paul (2 Thessalonians 2:3-8) – "Son of Perdition."
(Daniel 7:8; 8:9) – "The Little Horn."	Paul (2 Thessalonians 2:3-8) – "That Wicked."
(Daniel 8:23) – "A King of Fierce Countenance."	John (1John 2:18) – "Antichrist."
(Daniel 9:26) – "The Prince That Shall Come."	John (Revelation 13:1) – "The Beast."
(Daniel 11:36) – "The Willful King."	

---

<sup>19</sup> Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 115-116.

---



Jesus also made a prophetic reference to him. **"I am come in my Father's name, and ye receive me not; if another shall come in his own name, him ye will receive."** (John 5:43).

***I have come in My Father's name, and you do not receive Me. If another shall come in his own name, him you will receive.***

***John 5:43(MKJV)***

The Jews rejected Jesus as their Messiah, when the Antichrist comes they will accept him.

#### **4.9.1 The Personality Of The Antichrist**

The Apostolic Church believed that Antichrist was to be a *"person,"* the embodiment of human blasphemy and wickedness, but toward the close of the Twelfth Century many began to look upon the Pope as Antichrist, and Protestant commentators have largely advocated this view. The arguments in favor of this view are ingenious and plausible, but they are hard to reconcile with the Word of God. This view makes Antichrist a "System" rather than a Person, and would see in the *"Papal System"* the Antichrist. But the Word of God disproves this.

The Apostle John says, (1 John 2).

***Who is a liar but he who denies that Jesus is the Christ? He who denies the Father and the Son is anti-christ.***

***1 John 2:22(MKJV)***

Judaism has denied that **"Jesus is the Christ,"** and Unitarianism that He has **"come in the flesh,"** but the Papacy never. The Church of Rome has always confessed I believe in God the Father Almighty, maker of heaven and earth, and in Jesus Christ, His only Son, our Lord."

All Protestant commentators insist that the "Papal System" is described in (Revelation 17:4, 5), under the figure of a "Woman" arrayed in "purple and scarlet color," and decked with "gold and precious stones and pearls." This is undoubtedly true, but this "Woman," the "Mother of Harlots," is represented as riding upon a "Beast," universally admitted to be the Antichrist. If the "Beast" is the Antichrist, the "Woman" cannot be, and that they are separate and do not signify the same thing is clear.

***And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet. And she was gilded with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication.***

***Revelation 17:4(MKJV)***

***And on her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND OF THE ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.***

***Revelation 17:5(MKJV)***

Again Antichrist, as the "Man of Sin" is to:

"Exalt himself and magnify himself above every god." (Daniel 11: 36, 37). "So that he **AS GOD sitteth in the Temple of God** showing himself that he **IS GOD.**" (2 Thessalonians. 2:4).

***And the king shall do according to his will. And he shall exalt and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvelous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper until the fury is fulfilled. For that which is decreed shall be done.***

***He will not regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god. For he shall magnify himself above all.***

***Daniel 11:36(MKJV)***

***who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God, or that is worshiped, so that he sits as God in the temple of God, setting himself forth, that he is God.***

***II Thessalonians 2:4(MKJV)***

However false and impious the claims of the Papacy, it always recognizes its subordination to God, and the Pope's highest claim is that he is the "*Vicar of Christ*."

*"All the world wondered after the Beast (the Antichrist), and they **worshipped the Dragon** (the Devil), which gave power unto the Beast."* (Revelation 13:3, 4). The "*Papal System*" worships the "*Virgin*" and the "*Saints*," **but** it is not true that it worships the Devil.

*And I saw one of its heads as having been slain to death, and its deadly wound was healed. And all the earth marveled after the beast.*

*And they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast. And they worshiped the beast, saying, Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with it?*

*Revelation 13:3-4(MKJV)*

"If any man **worship the Beast and His Image**, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, the same shall **drink of the wine of the Wrath of God**... and he shall be **tormented with fire and brimstone**;... and the **smoke of their torment ascendeth up forever and ever**; and they have no rest day nor night, **who worship the Beast and His Image**, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name." (Revelation 14: 9-11).

If the "*Papal System*" is the Antichrist, it follows from the above that all its worshippers, instead of being saved, are doomed to eternal torment. Again, the Lord, who destroys Antichrist "*at His Coming*," comes to Jerusalem, not to Rome, the seat of the "*Papal System*." While there are many things in the history of the Church of Rome, and in the conduct of her Popes that "*foreshadow*" the Antichrist, yet it is clear from the preceding scriptures that the "*Papal System*" is not the Antichrist, and that these scriptures can only be fulfilled in the person of some "*Individual*" yet to appear.

Antichrist is not a "*Rival*" or "*Counterfeit*" Christ, **He is** an "*Opposing*" Christ. This is clearly seen when we compare him with Christ in a series of:

**Contrasts.**

Christ came from <b>Above</b> . (John 6:38).	Antichrist ascends from <b>The Pit</b> . (Revelation 11:7).
Christ came in His <b>Father's</b> name. (John 5:43).	Antichrist comes in his <b>Own</b> name. (John 5:43).
Christ <b>Humbled</b> Himself. (Philippians 2: 8).	Antichrist <b>Exalts</b> himself. (2 Thessalonians. 2:4).
Christ <b>Despised</b> : (Isaiah. 53: 3) and (Luke 23:18).	Antichrist <b>Admired</b> . (Revelation 13: 3, 4).
Christ <b>Exalted</b> . (Philippians 2:9).	Antichrist <b>Cast Down to Hell</b> . (Isaiah 14: <b>14</b> , 15); Revelation 19:20).
Christ to do His <b>Father's</b> will. (John 6:38).	Antichrist to do his <b>Own</b> will, (Daniel 11: 36).
Christ came <b>to Save</b> . (Luke 19: 10).	Antichrist comes to <b>Destroy</b> . (Daniel 8:24).
Christ is the <b>Good Shepherd</b> . (John 10:4-15).	Antichrist is the <b>Idol (evil) Shepherd</b> . (Zechariah 11:16, 17).
Christ is the <b>"True Vine."</b> (John 15:1).	Antichrist is the <b>"Vine of the Earth."</b> (Rev. 14:18).
Christ is the <b>"Truth."</b> (John 14:6).	Antichrist is the <b>"Lie."</b> (2 Thessalonians 2: 11).
Christ is the <b>"Holy One."</b> (Mark 1: 24).	Antichrist is the <b>"Lawless One."</b> (2 Thessalonians 2:8, R.V.
Christ is the <b>"Man of Sorrows."</b> (Isaiah 53 : 3).	Antichrist is the <b>"Man of Sin."</b> (2 Thessalonians 2: 3).

Christ is the <b>"Son of God."</b> (Luke 1:35).	Antichrist is the <b>"Son of Perdition."</b> (2 Thessalonians 2:3).
Christ, <b>"The Mystery of Godliness,"</b> is <b>God</b> manifest in the flesh. (1 Timothy 3:16)	Antichrist, <b>"The Mystery of Iniquity,"</b> will be <b>Satan</b> manifest in the flesh. (2 Thessalonians 2: 7).

## 5 CONCLUSION

Tal Brook stated<sup>20</sup> that the Beast's aim would be to usurp God with the full powers of die world under his dominion. To achieve this, he will try to totally abolish any evidence of the true God from the face of the earth, starting with destroying the knowledge of God to finally destroying God's people. The knowledge aspect of die attack is not new (*Time* lavishing the Jesus Seminar, Media specials on Christ to deconstruct Christianity in a kind of endless gnawing process, plus other options like the United Religions, ad infinitum). Truly, if there have been emperors before in the flesh, they can come again. If God came in the flesh as Christ, so can Satan come to eclipse and possess the Antichrist in the form of a man? It would make sense then that there would be a mystery religion based on the divinity of man. If gurus and teachers can be divine, surely this figure will be - only more so!

Dwight Kinman stated<sup>21</sup> that the final victory - The church of Jesus Christ has powerful enemies: It is facing its greatest danger, but it is also facing its greatest challenge and its greatest opportunity.

---

<sup>20</sup> Brooke, Tal (2000) One Word. USA: End Run Publication., p. 212.

<sup>21</sup> Kinman, Dwight L (1995) The World's Last Dictator. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p. 188.

---

But the church will never be defeated. It will emerge a glorious church, without spot or wrinkle, washed in the blood of the Lamb. Our Commander in Chief said, ...upon this rock (the testimony that Jesus Christ is the Son of the Living God) I will build My church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it (Matthew 16).

***And I also say to you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.***

***Matthew 16:18(MKJV)***

Our victory was pre-written by our God in Rev. 12:11: And they overcame him (Satan) by the blood of the Lamb, and by the **word of their testimony**; and they loved not their lives unto the death.<sup>188</sup>

Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? ... **Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through Him that loved us.** For I am persuaded that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come ... shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus, our Lord (Rom. 8:35-39).

Prof. Dr. M J Brand argued that<sup>22</sup> Christians are members of the body of Christ, who is our Head (1 Corinthians 12:27); (Ephesians 1:22-23; 4:11-15). A body's members operate by listening to and obedient to their Head. So it is with believers in relation to Christ, our Head. Jesus Christ leads and guides us through His Spirit. Only as we walk with the Spirit do we carry out the desires of the Head. Using a biblical analogy, we are like soldiers stationed in a foreign country who must not get so "*entangled in everyday affairs*" that we stop being attentive to the moment by moment commands of our "*enlistening officer*," Jesus Christ (2 Timothy 2:4).

---

<sup>22</sup> Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie MJ, (2005) *An Exposition Of Biblical Warfare Central To Christian Involvement In a Theodicy Considered From Philosophic-Theological Perspective*. Print And Bookbinding Solutions Pretoria. RSA., p. 898.

Jesus Christ died, and in this painful sea of ambiguity we participate in His sufferings and death (Romans 6:3-5; 8:16-18; 1 Corinthians 4:9-12; Colossians 1:24). But Jesus also rose from the dead. And just as His atoning death provides the key to understanding who we are before God, His Resurrection provides the key to understanding what we will be before God. Though we are afflicted now, we know that because he conquered sin, death and the devil, we too will ultimately overcome them. We too will be raised from the dead and will eternally live and reign in His unsurpassable love and joy.

Tal Brook comments<sup>23</sup> that in the absence of redemption, cynicism is simply despair. In the light of redemption, however, cynicism is truly the ground of hope, as the universal failings of our fallen race are met and overcome in the universal Savior.

The Gospel asserts both sides of that redemptive paradox. Christ converts the works of evil to the purposes of God, yet He still affirms the wickedness of sin. Christ does not excuse the wrongness of the evil He confronts, but neither is He content to merely punish it in retaliatory judgment. Instead, through His crucifixion, He achieves a much deeper and more far-reaching victory. In His sacrifice, Christ turns evil inside out by reversing its meaning: from bad to good, from wrong to right, from defeat to victory—and above all, from death to life. He purges wrong of its wrongness by making it serve His love: “You meant evil... but God meant it for good” (Genesis 50:20).

God's *modus operandi* reverses evil from within, as the works of evil are turned (in the end) to the service of God. God's ability to weave the artifacts of evil into the pattern of His goodness is the heart of the Good News and the meaning of the Incarnation. It is also the delightful irony of the Gospel: Christ (the innocent one)

---

<sup>23</sup> Brooke, Tal (1997) *Virtual Gods*. Oregon, USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 187-188.

submits to His death, and to the "triumph of injustice" that it represents, and His submission gives rise to the Resurrection, which overthrows injustice as well as death. As the Russian Orthodox liturgy puts it, "Christ has risen from the dead, trampling down death by death."

That ironic paradox of the Gospel means that "sanctified cynicism" is more than an oxymoron. It means that Christians can have a realistic, clear-eyed view of the fallen world without succumbing to the bleak despair that normally accompanies such knowledge.

John W Milor indicated that:<sup>24</sup> I started this book with a list of questions, all of which highlight the primary theme of this book—that extraterrestrial life is a reality spoken of in the Bible, and it will play a key role in the end times. By now, the answer to every question addressed should be understood.

*Aliens—who or what are they?*

Aliens are exactly what most people have been saying they are: intelligent life-forms not native to Earth. They dwell in the outer atmosphere of Earth (the first heaven), and among the stars; these regions are the multilayered dimensions of the universe (multiverse), which the Bible calls the heavens. In biblical terminology, some of them are angels (both faithful and fallen), and some have not become angels yet, or perhaps may never be angels. They can all be referred to as the host of heaven. The Bible also refers to intelligent life in the heavens with terms such as "stars" (a term referring to both the heavenly beings and their dwellings—Job 38:4-7; Revelation 12:4), "creatures" (Ezekiel 1:5-7; Revelation 5:13-14), and powers, principalities, and rulers in heavenly places (Ephesians 6:12).

---

<sup>24</sup> Milor, John W (2006), *Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., pp. 201-205.

---



*What do aliens want?*

This depends on whether they are angels or not, and whether they have been deceived or not. If they are angels faithful to God, they serve God, help humanity, learn about salvation, and spread the knowledge of salvation to all who may benefit from it. If they are fallen angels, they serve Satan either directly or indirectly by serving their own selfish motives. The primary aspect of all their actions concerns deception, for this is their greatest power. They can cause far more destruction in their war against God and his elect through deception than through any other means. The only way Satan can truly destroy a soul is through deception rather than physical destruction.

In relation to this deception, there is a very well defined satanic agenda, of which I may have outlined a few key aspects in this book. Concerning alien abductions, it's likely that genetic experimentation is related to the development of a new breed of Nephilim, of which the Antichrist will be the capstone achievement. Genetic experimentation may serve numerous other purposes as well, such as building up their antibodies to our diseases, so their visitations will be less hazardous for them. They could even be building biological weapons. I find the prospect of good angels using genetics to help us to be less likely, in any scenario, simply because God's faithful angels are noted in scripture as having superior healing powers derived from a simple touch.

Concerning alien life in general, I suspect the reality of alien life will be related to a new religion espoused by the Antichrist. The heart of all the deceptions derived from this new belief system will be to achieve one objective: to point people away from the identity of Christ as the savior, and the only begotten Son of God the Father, Creator of all things.

As for beings who are not angels, yet who have not sinned, they are most likely assisting angels. Beings in this category are as humans would have been, had Adam and Eve never sinned.

An easy way to identify them is that they are pseudo-immortal, and they reproduce, so they're good and glorified to a certain extent, but they aren't angels. They are also more likely to need technology to assist them because they aren't as powerful as those who are glorified into angelic form.

Finally, those who are not angels, but have sinned as the humans of Earth have, will fall on both sides of the fence concerning what they want. Some will seek out God and hunger for the knowledge of salvation, while others could care less about God, in which case they will assist Satan, either directly or indirectly through serving their own selfish motives. The things that beings in this category could want vary greatly. Some might be scientists using people like cattle, as some people speculate. Then again they might penetrate society and use their advantages to reap the easily obtainable pleasures of this world.

*Why do all these beings come to Earth?*

As I already stated, for many of them, the reason behind their visits has to do with salvation. Those aligned with God are seeking salvation or learning more about and spreading the knowledge of salvation and all the aspects of redemption, and those not aligned with God are attempting to block the efforts of spreading the knowledge of salvation, either directly or indirectly. Cursed beings exploiting humanity to obtain the pleasures of this world, for example, would indirectly block the efforts of spreading the knowledge of salvation, because their motives would be sinful, and it would be easy for Satan to manipulate them to do his bidding.

The genetic experimentation being conducted by some of them may very well be related to the construction of a new breed of Nephilim, which again will be another attempt at blocking the efforts of salvation through a new and unique deception for the modern scientific age.

*Have aliens been on Earth in the past?*

For many distraught beings, Earth was their original home, and it was destroyed, which is one of the sources of their extreme consternation. They were here before Adam and Eve, they were here before and after the days of Noah (Genesis 6:4), and they will be here in open contact in the future, as in the days of Noah (Matthew 24:37; Luke 17:26).

*Are aliens among us right now?*

Entire civilizations of faithful and fallen angels live right above our heads in the sky, dimensionally shifted from our perception, in a realm the Bible refers to as the first heaven.

Also, knowing that a biblical equivalent of the term "alien" can be "angel," scripture clearly teaches that these beings are visibly among us even now—often right before our very eyes, as undercover agents in disguise (Hebrews 13:2).

As for alien abductions (the unpleasant ones), these are another example of aliens among us. Alien abductions are rare because they're generally conducted by beings who are taking a big risk. Earth is protected by the prayers of the saints (James 5:16; and specifically the great restrainer of the Antichrist-2 Thessalonians 2:6-8). The prayers of saints actually serve as orders given to angelic forces operating in the heavens, and wars are fought whenever boundary restrictions are violated and fallen angels penetrate into Earth. That's why abductees have been known to report that

their abductors immediately return them when abductees start praying to Jesus for help. (I've personally had a number of abductees tell me about this.)

Battles in the first heaven go the other way too; they are also fought by fallen angels in an attempt to prevent the good angels from getting through to us (Daniel 10:13). This is why prayers appear to be hindered at times—because they are!

*What role will extraterrestrial life play in the future of humanity?*

In the future, following the rapture of the church, the force field of prayer (restraining power) currently protecting Earth will be removed (2 Thessalonians 2:6-8), and open contact with alien life will most likely immediately follow. First those in the heavens who are aligned with Satan will come (Daniel 8:10-12; Matthew 24:15,24:29-31; Luke 21:24-28; and Revelation 12:3-5), and then God's faithful angels will penetrate the world in open contact as well—preaching the Gospel (Revelation 14:6-10).

In addition to angels preaching the Gospel, the two Old Testament prophets, Enoch and Elijah, will also return from heaven and preach the Gospel. A massive conversion of 144,000 Jewish Christians (Messianic Jews), and many new Gentile (non-Jewish) Christians will be supernaturally empowered by God more than any generation before them (Joel 2:29-32; Acts 2:17-18; John 14:12).

As always, people will have true revelation given side by side with deception, and the condition of their hearts will motivate them to choose one way or the other. An unprecedented revival will encompass the globe. At the same time, deception and sin will be greater on Earth than ever in the past. In essence, Earth will be prepared for a harvest, to separate the wheat from the tares; in other words, the majority of the people on Earth will be clearly polarized in their alignment with either God or Satan.

During the reign of the Antichrist, otherworldly battles will ensue, and the Antichrist will prevail against these otherworldly beings (Daniel 8:10-12, Matthew 24:15, 24:29-31; Luke 21:24-28; Revelation 12:3-5). The otherworldly combatants in these battles will most likely be warring factions within Satan's kingdom. I say this because Satan will not prevail against the armies of God when they finally arrive with Jesus at the second advent of Christ. It won't matter to the Antichrist that his kingdom is divided, however, because he'll use his victory in these battles to elevate his position on Earth, and eliminate the opposition within his own kingdom.

One reason for the victories of the Antichrist in the future—even over extra-terrestrial attacks—will be his alliance with other extraterrestrials who will help him (Daniel 11:39). With such an alliance, the technology made available to him will be extremely advanced, even to the degree that the creation of true artificial intelligence will become a reality (Revelation 13:14-16).

The otherworldly allies of the Antichrist, headed by a fallen angel by the name of the Destroyer (Revelation 9:11, Hebrew "Abaddon," Greek "Apollyon"), will perpetuate the deceptions of the Antichrist by giving credence to his grandiose claims. The Antichrist will claim to be of heavenly origin, and a destined leader of the world; his otherworldly allies will then step forward and say it's true (Revelation 13:11-14).

On the one hand, the Antichrist's claim of heavenly descent will be partially true (making his deception particularly powerful). The Antichrist might be a Nephilim (fathered by a fallen angel), linking him with the heavenly realm. The part that the Antichrist (and those aligned with his plan) will leave out, however, is the fact that the Nephilim are cursed of God, and their very existence reeks of the highest order of abominations (angels who sired them were imprisoned—1 Peter 3:19; 2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6-7; and the entire world was destroyed because of the Nephilim—Genesis 6).

Therefore the respect, admiration, and worship he will claim to deserve as a divine right will be the biggest, fattest lie ever told.

*What can the people of Earth do during this tumultuous time in the future?* The whole reason I have written this book is primarily for the people left behind after the rapture of the church—those who will face a chaotic world of warring nations, otherworldly beings, and supernatural displays beyond imagination.

What will you do when the prophecies spoken of in this book begin to take place?

Perhaps nearly a billion people have recently disappeared off the planet, and you are looking for answers in this book called *Aliens and the Antichrist* because reality has become something you weren't expecting.

Start by seeking out the truth, and turn to the Appendix in the back of this book. It is definitely possible to be saved after the rapture of the church!

Those who taste the freedom Jesus spoke of will never accept anything less (John 8:32, 10:10). For those who are truly saved and know it in their hearts, the sky may roll up like a scroll, oceans and seas may spill across the continents, and the mountains can melt like wax, but nothing will take away that peace from God that transcends all understanding (Philippians 4:7).

#### **John 8:32**

And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

#### **John 10:10**

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

### **Philippians 4:7**

And the peace of God, which passes all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.

Accept Christ—he is the only way! In his own words, he is the way, the truth, and the life—there is no way to the Father except by him (John 14:6).

### **John 14:6**

Jesus said unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

I also have a few practical suggestions for the rough, yet tremendously exciting road ahead (for those reading this after the rapture of the church).

Identify deceptions when they arrive. Being aware of the warnings in the Bible, many of which are documented in this book, and especially cultivating a right relationship with God achieve this. Concerning specific warnings in the Bible, take note of a few cut-and-dried scriptures warning about end time deceptions, deceivers, and false prophets.

### **Deuteronomy 13:1-4**

If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and gives thee a sign or a wonder, And the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spoke unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams: for the LORD your God proves you, to know whether ye love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul. Ye shall walk after the LORD your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and ye shall serve him, and cleave unto him.

**Deuteronomy 18:20-22**

But the prophet, who shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die. And if thou say in your heart, how shall we know the word which the LORD hath not spoken? When a prophet speaks in the name of the LORD, if the thing follows not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the LORD hath not spoken, but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him.

**1 John 4:1-4**

Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world.

Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world.

According to these scriptures, there are essentially two tests for prophets. First, if they don't have any divine ability to back up what they're saying—they predict things that *don't* happen as they say—then they are clearly not from God. Second, even if they do exercise a certain degree of accuracy in foretelling future events, but their doctrine they preach is false, then again, they are clearly false prophets. Two examples of false doctrine are given in scripture. First, that Jesus Christ is not the messiah he said he was, and second, any word spoken in the name of other gods.

The second test will be the one in which the Antichrist will publicly break with his religion advocating a strange god. For more examples of various deceptions, conduct research on other religions, such as Islam (which claims that Jesus was not the Son



of God and that he did not rise from the dead). Also, simply pick up practically any book from the New Age section of any local bookstore and browse the gambit of philosophical belief systems that describe the number of ways people can go about perfecting themselves, essentially becoming gods. Deception is everywhere, but truth is everywhere too; pray to God out of a hope that he is love, and he will guide into all truth. Psychics frequently fail the first test, then attribute their misses to fluctuations in Earth's magnetic field, or make other excuses. Prophets, on the other hand, need no excuses for being wrong because they should never be wrong about what they are prophesying. The distinction between a true prophet and one who claims to have the gift of prophecy but actually doesn't was a fatal distinction in Daniel's time because King Nebuchadnezzar didn't accept any excuses for being wrong. If they were wrong about their prophetic abilities, then they were lying to him—the king—and were thus ordered to be executed.

Knowing whose side to be on is just the beginning. The next step is to never accept the mark of the beast, or the name or the number of the beast, when this becomes a requirement in the nations the Antichrist will rule (Revelation 13:17). Not everyone in the world in those days will be forced to make this decision, but for those who are, if they don't want to go to hell, they had better not take the mark, the name, or the number of the beast. Only those who will not take this mark will be resurrected and escape the second death (Revelation 20:14-15).

Have courage and be strong in the faith—especially when it becomes a life-and-death situation (Revelation 12:11; 14:12). Don't ever give up hope, even if it looks as if torture may come; God either rescues his saints or empowers them to endure the unimaginable. Many books have been written which document the amazing feats of thousands of martyrs throughout the millennia. The Jesus Freaks book I mentioned earlier, along with its second volume companion, is full of miraculous stories of bravery, sacrifice, and God's direct intervention. In any case, God will never leave us

or forsake us (Deuteronomy 31:6). Even if it comes to loved ones being tortured, one should never give in. Always remember that evil lies in the hands of the one committing the acts, not in the hands of one being manipulated through such evil coercion.

The days following the rapture of the church will be days in which Christians will display remarkable supernatural power unlike ever before (Joel 2:29-32; Acts 2:17-18; John 14:12). Christians should be ready, willing, and eager to accept this power because they're going to need it, and they should never limit what God can do through those who believe in him.

As I've already stated, the primary beneficiaries of the material presented in this book are those who remain on Earth after the rapture of the church, but this book serves a purpose to people before the rapture of the church as well. I have written it not as an intellectual quandary, but to give people a taste of the reality of the kingdom of heaven. It's a real, physical, tangible place!

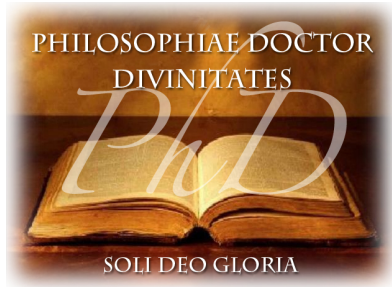
The spiritual dimension of reality doesn't just need to be understood; it needs to be known in the heart so that it affects the way we think, the way we live, and the direction of all of our relationships. As Christians, our lives should be a witness of the glory within us—a perfection we pursue with our commitment to God. The fact that we know what's going on around us—that we're in a war that constantly puts us to the test, and that our every action is being evaluated—should place a deeper meaning on our lives. The sky above our heads and the stars that sparkle in the vast cosmos at night are the realms we can look at and see with our own eyes, and they are realms we will one day explore. The religious people of Jesus's day (scribes and Pharisees) would have intellectual debates with Jesus about the scriptures, which they knew a great deal about. But then, in the same breath, they would accuse him of violating the Sabbath when he healed someone (Matthew 12:10; Mark 3:2-6; Luke

6:6-11; 13:10-14, and many others). Didn't they realize what just happened? If that weren't enough, they plotted to kill Christ when they couldn't win their little intellectual squabbles. Apparently all their intellectual knowledge amounted to squat because their hearts were so far away from God, they couldn't see God's kingdom displayed right before their eyes in glaring physical manifestations. Those scribes and Pharisees back then aren't any different from many people of today.

This same differentiation can be made between the mind and the heart concerning this book. The format and style of this book is generally intellectual in nature, with the application of scriptures, logic, and deductive reasoning, but the goal is not to pass on the accumulation of knowledge. The goal of this book is to wake people up and inflame their imaginations with images of the kingdom of Heaven and the days that lie ahead; images of the vast worlds that lay beyond, of the immensity of the war in which we are entrenched, and the eternal spiritual reality that surrounds us all.

The embers of our complacent hearts must be kindled, and we should all live in a perpetual state of anticipation, never being satisfied with the distractions of this fading world. Just as the apostle Paul said, without love (that portion of our hearts connected to God), all the knowledge and mysteries of all creation amount to nothing (1 Corinthians 13). Only love remains in this world as the truest representation of God that will survive forever. So let's take this truth and live by it, dream our dreams of the frontier awaiting us, and walk with a vision of the future that will carry us through this small, transitory tunnel of mortality.

-----oOo-----



## CHAPTER SIX

### THE EXTRAORDINARILY AND POWERFUL QUESTION AS TO WHOM THE REAL JESUS CHRIST IS

*Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed himself to him that judgeth righteously:*

*1 Pet. 2:23(KJV)*

## SECTION A: RESEARCH PERTAINING TO THE IDENTITY OF JESUS CHRIST

### 1 INTRODUCTION

This thesis will reveal clearly enough who Jesus is not. He is not the cosmic guide and guru of the New Age. He is not the illegitimate black magician of the Talmud; He is not the failed (and uncrucified) prophet of the Koran; He is not the rustic Palestinian preacher of the Jesus Seminar.

But after man rejects all the false teachings about him, one still faces the question that the false teachers tried to answer in the first place namely, *"Who is this man?"* The answer to that question is both simpler and deeper than most people care to imagine. It is easy to state but hard to grasp, because Christ's sacrifice embodies the ultimate paradox of the Christian faith, i.e., that in Christ, God conquers evil by allowing it to triumph on its own terms. In Christ, God makes evil serve His purposes in its very rejection of Him. In Christ, God lets evil do its worst against Him, and then makes the worst itself a part of His salvation. By letting evil express its nature without restraint, He turns it into its opposite good. It is God's alchemy. It is His ultimate trump. If that

paradoxical “mystery of the faith” is not understood (or at least acknowledged) there is no way that Jesus Himself can be understood a fact that goes far to explain the many misunderstandings about Him.

## **2 THE SHORT ANSWER**

The question of “*who is Jesus?*” has both a short answer and a long one. The short answer is that Jesus represents the presence of God Himself, injected into fallen human history. In Jesus, God deliberately intrudes into a world that has already rejected Him knowing full well that His coming will create turmoil and conflict. In Jesus, God personally faces the hostility and hatred of fallen man armed with enough love to neutralize our murderous rejection of Him by accepting it without resistance. And finally, Jesus reverses the meaning of His death by rising from the dead. In that way, the sacrifice of Christ nullifies the barrier between God and man that our fallenness created. His resurrection is proof of His conquest of evil, and demonstrates the completeness and finality of His victory.

The resurrection, in fact, is the climactic message of the gospel. The word “*gospel*” means “*good news*.” The death and resurrection of Christ are “*news*” because they happened in history just like other reportable events. The news is “*good*” because those particular events overthrew evil fundamentally and forever. Jesus brought Eternity into history and made death release its grip on Him. When Christ rose from the dead to share His victory with us, the rule of death was ended. The power of Christ’s resurrection sets us free in this world and makes us whole in the world to come. “Christ is risen!” is the core of the Christian proclamation to the world.

In abbreviated terms, the real Jesus is the one who “*stood up*” to death and evil, and who “*stood up*” again in triumph after they had laid Him low. But the ultimate short

answer to the question of “*Who is Jesus?*” is given by the apostle Paul. In his first letter to the Corinthians, chapter 15, he distills the essence of Christianity’s good news into a four-step definition that is a model of clarity and brevity:

***For I delivered to you first of all that which I also received, that Christ died for our sins, according to the Scriptures,***

***and that He was buried, and that He rose again the third day according to the Scriptures;***

***and that He was seen by Cephas, then by the Twelve.***

***I Corinthians 15:3-5(MKJV)***

Those few lines are full of information and rich with implication. But the message is too deep for shallow minds, which turn its insights into clichés of disdain: “*Christ died for your sins,*” “*Jesus is the Light of the World,*” “*You must be born again.*” For many, those are words without content, empty phrases, relics of an antiquated way of thought. Few are aware that they describe the mystery of God’s presence in our fallen world the Eternal enters history, the Infinite becomes particular, the Boundless takes on form, Judgment becomes Mercy and Evil is turned to Good. It is a paradox deep enough to change the universe and powerful enough to transform human affairs.<sup>1</sup>

### **3 THE LONG ANSWER**

There is also a longer answer to the question of “*Who is Jesus?*” and it properly starts with a look at the human condition. The gospel (good news) of Jesus is really God’s precise response to the human predicament though that fact is only clear when we understand what the human predicament is. The human race has always and everywhere understood that it is in a predicament. In every age and every

---

<sup>1</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 230-231.

culture, man has not only known he is in cosmically deep trouble, he has enshrined that knowledge in his religions. Religion is as universal as any human behavior can be, and religions universally claim to solve some fundamental human problem. In fact, as William James points out, religion's defining feature is that it claims to cure or overcome some basic lack or flaw in human nature by appealing to something beyond the human.

At the end of his monumental inquiry into *The Varieties of Religious Experience*, James summed up his insight into the root of man's religious impulse, and demonstrated that the real unity of human religion lies in its insistence on humanity's spiritual need: The warring gods and formulas of the various religions do indeed cancel each other, but there is a certain uniform deliverance in which religions all appear to meet. It consists of two parts:

- ◆ An uneasiness: and

The uneasiness, reduced to its simplest terms, is a sense that there is something wrong about us one naturally stands.

- ◆ Its solutions

The solution is a sense that people are saved from the wrongness by making proper connections with the higher powers.

William James showed<sup>2</sup> that the basic function of religion is to "put the wrongness of human nature right," and to do so by contacting something "*beyond*" the human. Obviously, how you call on the "*higher powers*," and how you expect them to help

---

<sup>2</sup> James, William (1902) *The Varieties Of Religious Experience*. New York: Longmans, Green And Co., Emphasis In The Original., p. 389.

---

with the human condition depends very much on how you understand the original problem. But as James observed, all religions are agreed that we do have a problem.

As man can observe, the different religions define the problem in different ways, and offer their answers accordingly. In the midst of this transcendental traffic-jam, inquiring minds want to know: *“Is there any real reason to embrace one solution, one answer, one religion over another aside from accidents of birth and circumstance, or whims of personal preference? Are all religions equally effective in dealing with our problem? Or are all of them are equally ineffective?”*

Such inquiries lead directly to the one question William James refused to answer, namely: *“What really is our problem?”* James bypassed the issue because his psychological approach wouldn’t let him assess the validity of religious beliefs or deal with existential truth-claims.

However, as people who live in the real world, we don’t have that luxury. We’re not theorizing about the abstract patterns of human behavior, we’re struggling with the concrete patterns of our own behavior.

In that context, we need to know, before anything else, what the *“problem”* of human nature really is because whatever it is, it is our problem too. In fact the way we understand the human predicament will determine how we think thereafter about the purposes of life and the priorities we pursue.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 231-233.

---



## **4 WHAT IS THE PROBLEM**

Tal Brooke stated<sup>4</sup> that: So, what is the problem? The Bible offers a clear and concrete answer to that question, but even without appealing to scripture, one can find some important clues in the patterns of human religion.

One of the first patterns that people notice is that religion's most universal things are also its most ancient things. The themes of religion that occur most widely are also its oldest themes. There are beliefs running through our religions that seem to be a reverberation of some primal knowledge, hints of a spiritual consensus once shared by the whole human race but now consigned to obscure myths and distant recollections.

A case in point is the concept of "*the absent Creator-God.*" In the oldest forms of religion and folklore worldwide, we find the story of a universe torn apart by the departure of the One High God from our presence, taking sky and heaven with Him. The prevalence of that belief across barriers of space and time precludes any possibility of "*cultural transmission.*" This isn't a belief that has "*spread*" or "*developed,*" it's a knowledge that has been passed down from the past in all parts of the world.

In fact, the clearest examples of belief in the Supreme God Who Becomes Remote can be found among the most isolated and primitive people. Some, like the pygmies of central Africa, experienced virtually no contact with the outside world until recently. Amazingly, the pygmies have neither animism nor ancestor-worship in their culture (though both are staples of primitive religion world-wide), but they do believe in a Supreme Being to whom all things are subjected. The pygmies plainly didn't import

---

<sup>4</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 233-235.

that belief from other cultures. They got it from their tradition, which like traditions are supposed to do passed it on as a package from their ancestors.

G. K. Chesterton tells<sup>5</sup> of a missionary who stumbled on a tribal version of that tradition without even realizing he had done so. The missionary was preaching to a very wild tribe of polytheists, who had told him all of their polytheistic tales, and telling them in return of the existence of the one good God who is a spirit and who judges men by spiritual standards. And there was a sudden buzz of excitement among these stolid barbarians, as at somebody who was letting out a secret, and they cried to each other, “*Atahocan! He is speaking of Atahocan!*”

Probably it was a point of politeness and even decency among those polytheists not to speak of Atahocan ... social forces are always covering up and confusing such simple ideas. Possibly the old god stood for an old morality found irksome in more expansive moments; possibly intercourse with demons was more fashionable among the best people, as in the modern fashion of Spiritualism.

Chesterton comments in conclusion that such beliefs all “testify to the unmistakable psychology of a thing taken for granted, as opposed to a thing talked about ... something assumed and forgotten and remembered by accident.”

Wilhelm Schmidt, a Jesuit professor at the University of Vienna, spent over forty years (1912-1955) documenting and compiling evidence for what he called “*primitive monotheism*.” In 1931, Schmidt published his findings as *The Origin and Growth of Religion*, a book that revolutionized the study of religious anthropology.

Schmidt thought that such beliefs were the residue of a primal revelation of God to man, the surviving forms of a once common knowledge of the One God, which

---

<sup>5</sup> Chesterton, G K (1925) *The Everlasting Man*. New York: Dodd, Mead And Co., pp 87-88.

through human fallenness and error has been overlaid by magic, animism, ancestor-worship, spiritism, polytheism and other forms of spiritual delusion. Schmidt continued to validate his thesis with relentless research over the years. By 1955 he had published over 4,000 pages of evidence in 12 large volumes.

Chesterton summed up the import of Schmidt's ground-breaking studies:

There is very good ground for guessing that religion did not originally come from some detail that was forgotten because it was too small to be traced. Much more probably it was an idea that was abandoned because it was too large to be managed. There is very good reason to suppose that many people did begin with the simple but overwhelming idea of one God who governs all; and afterwards fell away into such things as demon-worship almost as a sort of secret dissipation.

## **5 GOD'S GOODBYE**

Tal Brooke comments<sup>6</sup> that: Primitive theologies of the One God always include some explanation of why He is no longer present. His departure is routinely regarded as a cosmic disaster a rupture in the natural fabric of things brought on by some fault or failure on the part of human beings. In some myths, the fault seems almost trivial, involving a technical error in the performance of some (now) obscure ritual, thus causing the universe to unravel and leave man spiritually marooned. In other forms of primitive monotheism, the failure is more morally serious, involving man's betrayal of his duty to his creator, thus causing God to depart in sorrow and judgment.

---

<sup>6</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 235-237.

The details differ, but all of the myths tell a common story, and the story is clearly a part of our common heritage. Ironically, the evidence of anthropology indicates that ancient man was more in agreement concerning the nature of our spiritual problem than we have agreed about anything since that time. The reason is doubtless that their consensus was one of memory and not of opinion.

Schmidt's work uncovered one momentous fact for all to see namely, that humanity's most ancient and universal assessment of its own condition is simply this: "*God is not with us.*" For whatever reason, God's personal presence has been withdrawn from us. God's absence is our problem.

The curious thing is that many modern theologies of unbelief also affirm the absence of God, usually as a rationale for urging man to fill the gap. "*Man's coming of age*" always seems to involve filling the void of God's absence with our own expansive spiritual pride. The "*death of God*" theologians took God's "*departure*" literally (in the mortician's sense) and wrote His obituary, declaring His absence to be an irreversible condition. Those who deny the gospel, it seems, just sentence themselves to struggling anew with the problem the gospel so pointedly solves—the problem of the absence of God.

The Bible, of course, provides a rich and detailed account of how and why God went missing to begin with. It also tells us what God did to heal the separation. In fact the Bible as a whole is a history of the acts God performed among us to arrange our restoration a history that culminates in the coming of Jesus Christ.

The beginnings of that history are familiar enough. The episode in the Garden of Eden the serpent, the forbidden fruit, the temptation, the fall and the exile from paradise all of that is still part of the cultural baggage of many people. Unfortunately, few have more than a cartoonish view of the story, or sense the real depth of its message to us.

For our purposes (that is, understanding who Jesus is), one need to emphasize two aspects of the fall:

- ◆ The change in our nature that the fall produced, and
- ◆ Why that change made God distance Himself from us an estrangement ordained both in judgment and in mercy.

Without going into the causes of the fall, the immediate and enduring effect of the fall is that *“the center does not hold, and things fall apart.”* God our Creator is the lynch-pin of reality. When we reject Him, we reject our integrating core, and our reality begins to disintegrate in every way. The visible symptom of that breakdown is a relentless, unstoppable process of division, on every level— spiritually, mentally, socially, physically and otherwise. Adam and Eve find themselves divided from God, divided from nature, divided from their own selves and divided from one another—and so do we, their children.

Both scripture and personal experience are giving us the same message. Genesis chapter three tells us that the whole human race is caught in an out-of-control cycle of inner division, outer conflict, cosmic alienation, physical decay and final death. The history of humanity tells us the same thing— and so does our own daily struggle with life.

Adam and Eve chose their way into a new, inferior state of being, and we, their descendents, are powerless to choose our way back out again (the children of exiles are born into exile by definition). Worst of all, our fallen condition has had an abrupt and disastrous impact on our relationship with God.

By any measure, we are now severely out of harmony with Him. His very nature stands against what we have tragically become. God and man now find themselves in opposition a condition far removed from the harmony in which we were created.

And that new state raises a critical problem. The full-bore presence of God simply blows away anything not in harmony with Him. In the face of God's infinite power and force of will, only those things in complete accord with His purposes can even hope to exist. The intensity of His Identity disintegrates dissonance instantly.

## **6                    MERCIFUL JUDGEMENT AND THE PARADOX OF LOVE**

Tal Brooke stated that:<sup>7</sup> Therefore once the fall has taken place, Adam and Eve must be hustled out of God's presence at once if they and their descendants (i.e., us) are to have any hope of living beyond the next fragment of time. In fact, God's separation from us is His first act of mercy to us. Adam and Eve's exile from Eden is commonly taken as a sign of God's judgment and so it is, but it is also a sign of His mercy given and a promise of His grace to come.

By evicting us from paradise and pushing us into a fallen world apart from Him, God insulated us from the purifying power of His presence, thus "saving" us from the immediate threat to our own existence that our fallenness created. He also thereby took the first step in His plan to redeem His fallen creatures, and indeed to reverse the meaning of the fall itself.

God created "history" as man know it for three necessary and sufficient reasons:

---

<sup>7</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 237-239.

---

- As an asylum of exile from His presence (i.e., for our own protection);
- As a dimensional ghetto to contain and restrict the results of the fall; and
- As a stage on which He could act out His redemptive love for us in a way that could not be changed but could be recorded, and that the whole world could thereby hear about and understand it.

The dilemma for God is how to enter “*history*” and bring His presence back to us without destroying us in the process. When God enters our alienated world to face His fallen creatures, He confronts exactly the same problem that forced our exile from Eden to begin with—namely our fundamental dissonance with Him. That is the spiritual conflict that logically ends with eradicating fallen man from the fabric of the universe.

And that is the grim reality we have to face before we can understand who Jesus really is. That is the “*bad news*” that makes the “*good news*” good. Here is the fatal equation:

- We are in conflict with God.
- God is omnipotent.
- We are not.

End of story, end of conflict, end of us. The facts are indisputable and their meaning is inescapable: man are out of synch with God and things out of synch with God don't survive—period. That transparently is the human predicament—according to scripture, according to tradition and according to personal experience.

Fortunately, God doesn't let sheer power determine the outcome of our conflict with Him. Because He loves us and for no other reason our Creator approaches the problem creatively, and arranges a truly astonishing solution. God finds an option for "saving" man in the fact that there are two possible outcomes to our conflict with Him, not just one.

The first possible outcome is the obvious one, i.e., that we, the fallen human race, will absorb the results of the conflict in our own being in which case, we will be instantly obliterated, extinguished, "consumed," blown out like a candle. Mankind will simply cease to exist, and that will be the end of that.

## **7           AMAZING GRACE**

Tal Brooke indicated that:<sup>8</sup> The second possible outcome is the unexpected one. It is the so-called (and well-called) "amazing grace"—in the form of reverse judgment. God elects to absorb the results of our conflict with Him in His own being.

If God opts for that outcome, it means that whenever and however He chooses to show up among us in history, He will be the focus of all the accumulated antagonism from our side of the discord. If God doesn't obliterate us with the sheer force of His presence when He arrives, then we will reflexively try to obliterate Him with whatever force we can muster. And when that happens, we will get God's sacrificial death in history by definition, because our ultimate form of force is killing, and we will not fail to bring it against Him. In other words, we will get a crucifixion in one form or another—because God's decision to "save" us rather than destroy us involves submitting to our murderous rejection of Him as part of the bargain.

---

<sup>8</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 239-241.

---



The crux of the matter is this: if Christ isn't crucified, then mankind goes the way of the Dodo Bird period no options, no exceptions. If you are alive and reading this, then you already owe Jesus Christ a debt of gratitude. If God had not come to us in history as a willing sacrifice, none of us would even be here today to discuss whether we "believe" that He did so or not.

The logic of that conclusion is inescapable. Between God and fallen man is dissonance and conflict. That conflict must be discharged somehow. For God to come and be present to us in love and not in judgment, He must come prepared to let the full force of that discharge fall upon Himself rather than on us. He must come, in other words, prepared to endure our rejection of Him without resisting, even to the point of His (inevitable) death.

In Christ, God does exactly that. In Christ, God accepts the discharge of that conflict on Himself, instead of letting it discharge on us. In Christ, God comes to us as the Almighty, able to extinguish us in an instant, but prepared—because of His love—to let Himself be extinguished as a sacrifice instead, slowly and by painful degrees.

Christ acted as the lightening rod for the cosmic tension between God and the whole fallen human race. Christ put his body and his being forward to receive the discharge of that conflict so that we wouldn't have to. He didn't deserve it... we did. But He took it anyway, so that God could come to us in our alienated state without blowing us away. His act of sacrifice neutralized the barrier to God that our fallenness imposed. With that barrier gone, God could establish His presence among us in an entirely new way— which in fact He proceeded to do, as described in the Acts of the Apostles.

And He did it all in history. He was willing, out of love, to endure the constraints of our fallen world in order to free us from it. His conception and birth occurred in history, His conflict with our fallenness occurred in history, and the discharge of that conflict on

His own innocent shoulders occurred in history as well. The unjust execution of Jesus by torture occurred at a time and a place that are specified in great detail. “Christ died for your sins” is not a “*metaphor*,” it is a brutal and bloody event that took place on a hill outside Jerusalem.

Christ’s crucifixion opened wide the door for God to bring His personal presence back to fallen man. And His resurrection demonstrates that God did indeed come through that open door. Because Christ died, God was able to come among us. Because Christ rose from the dead, we know that He did come among us. And because He gave us the Holy Spirit, one know that He is still among us “*even to the end of the age.*” (Matthew 28:18-20)

***And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, All authority is given to Me in Heaven and in earth.  
Therefore go and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,  
teaching them to observe all things, whatever I commanded you. And, behold, I am with you all the days until the end of the world.***

***Matthew 28:18-20(MKJV)***

## **8 THE DIFFERENCE IT MAKES**

Tal Brooke stated that:<sup>9</sup> It’s important to realize that the gospel is not just another spiritual ideology—another abstract way of talking about the human condition. The gospel isn’t a bright idea that came to someone as a spiritual insight. It’s a brute fact that came to all of us as a shocking historical event. It happened in real life. And because it happened in real life, it makes real things happen in our lives when we believe it.

---

<sup>9</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 241-242.

---

One of the first things that happens when we believe the good news is that we come into a new relationship with the fallen world system. That happens automatically, because the gospel exposes the system's bluff and bluster as an empty threat. The gospel shows us clearly what is important and what is not. For that reason, it exposes the masquerade when trivial things are dressed up to look important. When it comes to the world-system, with all of its lies and empty delusions, the gospel lets us understand that "the emperor isn't wearing any clothes."

Let me explain. As Christians, we believe in a definite future. We have it on the best authority that the kingdoms of this world will pass away. Therefore we know that the current world system has a limited lifespan (whether long or short by our clock is beside the point) because the Kingdom of God is coming to replace it. In fact, God's Kingdom has not only been promised, it has already been planted, in full view of everyone. The cornerstone of God's Kingdom is the conquest of death. Christ already did that. The coming Kingdom of God is already rooted in history, and its final arrival won't be delayed or deflected.

As part of that coming Kingdom, Christians believe in the resurrection. That belief, as a practical hope, revolutionizes our relation to the fallen world system. The resurrection negates the finality of death, and nullifies the final sanction behind all forms of earthly rule—namely, "Do what I say or I'll kill you." This then is the formula of our liberation—the syllogism of our freedom from the fear of earthly powers:

- If there is a resurrection, then death isn't final;
- If death isn't final, then it isn't a final threat;
- If it isn't a final threat, then the fear of death can't coerce your conscience in final things;

- if your conscience can't be coerced by the fear of death, then the grip of the world-system is broken; and the Truth has set you free.

In light of the resurrection, the world system's "big stick" turns out to be a limp baton. Jesus made the same point to His disciples when He said that they should not "fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul; but rather fear Him who can destroy both soul and body in hell." (Matt. 10:28) To be properly in fear of God is automatically to be fearless in the face of His enemies. That is one of the great gifts we have because of the fact that the gospel is real and historically true. Because He really rose from the dead, we can rely on Him to really raise us from the dead as well.

## **9                    BEYOND MERIT: HEALING OUR DIVISIONS**

Tal Brooke argued that:<sup>10</sup> The gospel not only frees us in our conflicts with earthly powers, it frees us in our conflicts with one another. Authentic Christian faith will transform human relations in a way that nothing else can.

People today are searching for solutions to human conflicts at every level. But because we are in denial about the fall, the only "answers" we are willing to try are those that ignore our fallen condition. "*Political Correctness*" (PC) is just the most recent example of a "humanistic" effort to wrestle with the outward symptoms of the fall without acknowledging their real source or accepting their real solution. PC tries to enforce right attitudes with legal sanctions and encourage right attitudes with peer pressure and media manipulation. "Diversity" is turned into a federal mandate, "multiculturalism" is made the mission of public education at all levels and "tolerance" becomes the standard for acceptance into polite society.

---

<sup>10</sup> Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God*. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 242-245.

---

None of it will work, of course. If man doesn't understand (or won't admit) where our conflicts really come from, one doesn't have a prayer of resolving them. But man try anyway attempting, by force, to do the essentially undoable.

The outcome of that futile enterprise is never in doubt. The dedicated pursuit of impossibilities always produces abominations. In the case of PC, the result (so far) has just been to turn the smug tut-tutting of ivory-chambered academics into a new social orthodoxy, enforced by journalistic thought police patrolling public discourse. But as is common in such cases, there is also the dark hint of more serious sanctions to come, if "half measures" don't work—as of course they don't and won't. Unfortunately, "full measures" won't work either, but that doesn't mean they won't be tried. They will be tried and they still won't work, but all of us will suffer from the failed effort anyway.

The bogus "tolerance" and "diversity" of the PC movement can never deliver on its advertised purposes because PC refuses to come to grips with the real source of human conflict. Only Christianity reaches to the root of the problem and turns it into a solution. To understand how that happens, we need to understand how and why our fallenness makes us fight with one another to begin with.

One of the most insidious effects of the fall is to divide human beings and turn them against one another. Adam and Eve's first response when confronted with their own sin was to pass the fault and point the finger at someone else. (Genesis 3:11-13). That reflex of separation and blaming has only intensified among their children. Cain set the pace for us by dividing himself first from God, then from his brother and finally from the whole human race by his act of murder (Genesis 4:4-12). Those who came after him have not only followed his example but improved on it. Fallen human beings can be counted on to divide themselves from (and against) one another over any

point of “otherness” they can find, from obvious differences such as race and gender, all the way to trivial distinctions of dialect and personal appearance.

Not surprisingly, our most obvious differences have produced our most vicious and enduring conflicts. Race, sex, religion and nation to name just a few of the largest and plainest examples; seem to have been our battlegrounds forever. Whites against blacks and blacks against whites; men against women and women against men; rich against poor and poor against rich; nation against nation and vice versa—all are dreadfully familiar struggles that never seem to go away.

Only the Christian faith holds the key to resolving those tensions and hostilities not one of them, or some of them, but all of them from the ground up and the inside out. Over thousands of years, the self-divisions of fallen man have grown into an insoluble knot of social problems a tangle of interconnected conflicts that is impossible to unravel. But Christ brings a sword that cuts that Gordian knot to its core.

And the cutting edge of that sword is His universal relevance and accessibility. Christ’s universality is both radical and revolutionary, which is to say that it goes to the root of our problem and turns it upside down. Fallen human nature seeks any kind of difference to fight over, and builds bigotries on all of them. The gospel, in contrast, stands for the complete demolition of all merely human distinctions. The gospel explodes every prejudice and levels every claim to superiority. It utterly negates our most basic fallen tendency, which is to distinguish ourselves from others by pointing the finger and pretending that we’re “better” than they are.

The gospel declares that God has come to make Himself available to everyone not on the basis of spiritual merit, but completely and pointedly apart from spiritual merit. On the basis of merit, no one qualifies and everyone has already fallen short. Because of the fall, it is already too late for any of us to measure up.

And because everyone is in that condition, everyone is equal in spiritual need. Whatever our status in life may otherwise be, all of us are equally candidates for redemption—king and beggar, slave and master, cop and criminal alike. All of us stand before God without rank, degree or distinction. The scholar and the dunce stand on equal footing in His presence. The publican and the Pharisee are reduced to a common predicament—to which Christ is the common solution.

In the light of Christ, all the levels and distinctions that people depend on to set themselves apart from one another disappear. Differences of race, religion, culture, gender, intelligence, ethnicity, class, status, wealth, power all the standard excuses for snobbery and discrimination are rendered irrelevant. None of those petty distinctions count for anything before the enormity of our universal need. Those who believe the gospel are united invisibly in Christ far more than they are divided by their visible differences.

That is the genius, the universality and the spiritual leveling power of the Christian faith. The single savior Jesus can speak redemptively to every one of us because He is one of us.

He shares the basic human experiences that unite us all namely, birth in travail, life in a fallen world and death under judgment. Having identified with us in our mortality, He attained a stunning victory over death on our behalf.

Christ identified with us by sharing our experience of life and death. If we identify with Him, we can share His experience of resurrection to glory.

The real Jesus is the one who already stood up and left the empty grave behind Him. The Orthodox liturgy puts the mystery in its simplest form: “Christ has risen from the dead, trampling down death by death.”

The real Jesus offers that victory to us personally as well. The reconciliation with God that He achieved is available to every one of us, basically for free. He already paid the price of our return to God.

The only price we have to pay is the cost that repentance requires of our egos. That's not just the deal of the century, its the deal of eternity, and all at the cost of a simple decision. No wonder they call it amazing grace.

## **10 BIBLICAL WARFARE SEEING THE CROSS AS THE EPITOMÉ**

Prof. Dr. M J Brand argued that<sup>11</sup> Seeing the Cross as the epitomé, yes the very crescendo of the most violent and horrific evil of all known war scenes as Jesus thus identifies with every victim of torture, sin and the full fury of warfare, as He enters the darkness freely, voluntarily – He identifies with us, with the whole world. All known and unknown suffering, every possible venture of violence, that was, that is, that is to be – becomes His.

Thus the untamed, vast and void darkness became the darkness of God.

The mystery of evil isn't about God's character or purpose but about the incomprehensible complexity of a cosmos engulfed in spiritual war. The reason the events of life, including God's response to prayer, seem so arbitrary is that we know next to nothing about the vast network of influences shaping every event.

The suggestion that God is secretly behind evil contradicts the revelation of God in Christ. In Jesus' life, death and resurrection, we see God confronting and overcoming

---

<sup>11</sup> Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie MJ, (2005) An exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-theological perspective. Print and Bookbinding Solutions Pretoria. RSA., pp. 899-928.



the devil, Light confronting and overcoming Darkness, love confronting hate, holiness confronting and overcoming sin, and life confronting and overcoming death.

In short, for the early church the problem of justifying the existence of evil in a world created by God can scarcely be said to have existed. The first Christians never – astonishingly! – blamed God for their unmerited sufferings. “*Count it all joy,*” writes James, “*when you meet various trials*” (James 1:2). “***Blessed are you when people hate you, and when they exclude you, revile you, and defame you on account of the Son of Man. Rejoice in that day and leap for joy, for surely your reward is great in heaven***” (Luke 6:22-23).

The revelation of God in Christ is consistent with and fulfills the anticipatory revelation of God throughout Scripture. Not surprisingly, then, the view that God is ‘secretly behind evil’ contradicts a major motif of Scripture.

The Bible teaches that God is perfect love (1 John 4:18) and “*does not willingly afflict, or grieve anyone*” (Lamentations 3:3). It tells us that “*all [God’s] ways are just*” and there is no deceit in Him (Deuteronomy 32:4).

It reveals that “*God is light and in Him there is no darkness*” (1 John 1:5), and His “*eyes are too pure to behold evil*” (Habakkuk 1:13). There’s one thing we can be assured God does not in any sense do: evil. God can in no sense be associated with evil not even the creation of evil! (Ezekiel 28) clearly explains that evil / sin was found in the heart of Lucifer. (1 John) gives Jesus’ own words where He declares that Satan is the Father of all lies and there is no truth in him.

The perfect love, holiness and justice revealed on the Cross and attested throughout Scripture must not be compromised or qualified. There is no non-Christ like streak in God. The fullness of God is revealed in Christ. God is decisively revealed nowhere else but in Christ.

The Holy Spirit is more than conscious of the work that Jesus did on the Cross, and He knows that Jesus as well as Himself is standing between us and the Father interceding for us. The Holy Spirit desires that we receive the very best before the Father. He does not want the devil to have any opportunity to get at us. He makes sure that we are right with one another as well as being right with God, before we can enter into His Holy Presence. It is not His will that we push our way into His presence by insisting on our right to do so. Allow the Holy Spirit to take us with Jesus right up to the throne of the Father. The Holy Spirit will always be working for good in our lives, for we are sealed with Him in Christ Jesus.

He desires that we know when we are not right with one another, or not right with the Father. There is need in discerning this barrier to help us understand the real joy of going into the Father's Presence.

We will always feel the release of this barrier as we repent of our wrongdoing, and get right with the Lord. The barrier being removed brings peace to us, and confidence that God the Father chooses to respond to us.

**The mystery of why a particular evil afflicts a particular person is in principle no different than the mystery that surrounds every contingent event.**

To fully understand anything – for example, why a hurricane formed when and where it did, why a child died prematurely, why poverty struck – we'd have to ultimately know every variable in world history.

As Jesus did, the early church did not seek to formulate a theory of illness; instead, it healed the sick. It did not attempt to explain how the demonic could exist in a good world made by a good God; instead, they cast out demons. They had no hypotheses about how prayer works; they simply prayed. They were not, for all that, unreflective. They refuted, where necessary, theories of illness that prevented healing. They

suggested that the source of at least some diseases was Satan (Luke 13:16). Their attitude was not anti-rational or anti-theological, but merely concrete.

They looked, not for adequate ways to conceptualize the Kingdom, but for ways to actualize it. The fact that the New Testament ignores the problem of theodicy does not mean that the issue is trivial. It is a question that has vexed some of the best minds throughout history, though most of their discussions have ignored the role of the Powers of Darkness in evil.

We should respect the New Testament's refusal to become preoccupied with evil as a theological problem. It's concern is instead practical, 'handle' it as Jesus did. We have to overcome evil, not explain it.

Christian soldiers should expect the Darkness (Satan and his entourage) to do evil. On a practical level then, the problem of evil is dealt with through prayer and action, in the everyday attempt to bent evil back toward the purposes of God. The Christian is completely enarmoured to overcome by the Authority of our Lord Jesus Christ in His Name and His example.

God gave us, His children, the authority over all the power of the evil one, to deal with such influences over our lives, homes, towns and countries. When he said "*Go into the land and possess it*" that is what He meant. Take it for yourselves, cleanse it and live in it, with "*My*" blessing. Nothing is automatic. He said "*You do it*" He will do nothing for us if we can do it ourselves. For He desires that we rule and reign as He would, as if He were here on the earth.

The authority we have as believers over the powers of darkness, which is given to us by the Lord, is subject to our understanding of that authority. Some believers do not seem to have been given the spiritual insight into the realm of darkness, and so it is needful that others, who have this understanding, expose the truth to them, to give

them that insight. One cannot depart from evil without having and understanding of what evil is.

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, and departing from evil is understanding, (Job 28:28).

As each spiritually aware Christian moves about his area, he will sometimes be aware of certain places that provoke his spirit, often just to a feeling of not wanting to be around the place. In some cases a sense of fear, oppression and a real heaviness can come over him.

A deep knowing that something is wrong will trigger his spirit into some kind of reaction, showing them that the Spirit of God is making him sensitive to some other spiritual power. A word of knowledge may flow through the Holy Spirit into his thoughts or feelings giving revelation about the spirit concerned. This practicing to discern what is good and evil is essential to spiritual awareness.

The Christian needs to understand the different forms of spiritual barriers that could be encountered in the walk with Christ. The first barrier is created by sin. Being unable to go straight into His Presence, and the inability to commune with Him. As matter of fact, sin could flaw our relationship with the Lord. As mentioned before the remedy would be to submit the problem to the Holy Spirit, knowing that Jesus' blood is upon us that we are cleansed.

The second barrier often appears in times of worship. It is a barrier of the soul that has to be risen over, to break through into spirit filled worship. It will happen by choosing to worship Jesus despite the heaviness around, despite the soulish problems of the day. In short it will be remedied by choice. Discernment will be needed to override this barrier.

The third barrier is a demonic one, created by evil spirits to attempt to block us from going into God's presence. Spiritual forces are always at work to try to block the people of God from communicating with their Master. By sudden injected floods of thoughts, this barrier would attempt a diversion from prayer or from hearing the Lord.

A spirit of fear can also be another barrier, stopping the Christian from receiving from the Lord. A fear of failure, rejection or guilt can sometimes create a barrier. These barriers needs to be discerned in order to be dealt with – either by repentance or speaking to the source of the fears.

Recognition of the role of the Darkness in blocking prayer can revolutionize the way we pray. We will be more energized and aggressive. We will honour God by venting the full range of our feelings, from frustration to outrage to joy, and everything in between.

Prayer that ignores the enemy ends up blaming God for evils committed by the Darkness. Prayer in the face of the Darkness is a spiritual war of attrition.

In a field of such titanic forces, it makes no sense to cling to small hopes. We are emboldened to ask for something bigger – a faith that affirms God's miracle-working power. Trust in miracles is in fact the only rational stance in a world that is infinitely responsive to God's incessant power.

We are commissioned to pray for miracles because nothing less is sufficient.

We pray to God, not because we understand these mysteries, because we have learned from experience that God, indeed, is sufficient for us whatever Satan and his entourage might do.

The single most frequent, and important, thing the canonical Epistles say about the devil and his kingdom of powers and demons is that they have been defeated by the death and resurrection of Christ.

The confident proclamation of Christ's victory resounds throughout the whole of the New Testament.

This is not the only thing these writings have to say about the demonic realm. Since we live in the dynamic tension between the *"already / not yet"* of Christ's victory, these defeated forces yet have to be reckoned with. Between the D-day of the Cross and the V-day of the eschaton, there are battles yet to be fought.

Though Satan is in principle defeated, we still need to be rescued *"from the present evil age"* (Galatians 1:4) and to ***"struggle ... against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers of this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places"*** (Ephesians 6:12). The New Testament has a good deal to say about what this struggle looks like, how it is to be fought, and how it shall be won. Paul and other New Testament writers refer to Satan and demonic powers, followed by an overview of how they understand the ongoing activity of this realm in the world and against the church.

The most fundamental unifying theme throughout Jesus' ministry is that He was setting up the Kingdom of God over against the kingdom of Satan. Jesus' exorcistic and healing ministry constitutes preliminary victories over this enemy, while his death and resurrection spell Satan's ultimate demise. Yet even Jesus' victory over death was eschatological. It pointed beyond itself into the future, a future in which His accomplishment would be manifested.

As the New Testament authors realize, this means there is still work to be done, and the church is the means by which it is to be done. In the time between the *"already"*

of Christ's work and the "not yet" of the eschaton, the church is to be about what Jesus was about. It is, in a real sense, His "body" here on earth.

As such, the church is to be an extension of the Ministry He Himself carried out in His incarnate body while here on earth (2 Corinthians 5:18-19). The church is to manifest the truth that God's Kingdom has come (in Jesus Christ) and that Satan's kingdom is defeated. Thus in its own way, under the victorious authority of Christ, the church is to engage and overthrow evil powers, just as Jesus Himself has done. Indeed, when the church does this through the Spirit, it is Jesus Himself who is still doing it. This is why, despite His disciples' exuberant confidence in the accomplished work of the Cross, we do not find the warfare world view of Jesus lessened one iota among them.

A logical priority and emphasis, not a chronological one could be seen in dethroning Satan as ruler of this world, Jesus – The Faithful, fully human Son of God – was, at the very same time, saving humanity and reinstating it to its original position as ruler-steward over the earth.

The "*Christus Victor*" motif encapsulates what was the ruling paradigm for understanding the atoning work of Jesus throughout the first millennium of church history. It has been recovered in our century primarily through the impetus of the landmark work of several scholars and has been recently traced by R.A Grier.

This understanding of the atonement has been gaining in acceptance in recent times and has been emphasized even by those who understand the Cross-, primarily in substitutionary terms. The *Christus Victor* motif amounts to a rediscovery of the Lordship of Christ, of His reign over the powers, over the whole creation and **over history**.

**Prayer is the ultimate act of partnership** with God. Therefore God allows no grovelling. Daniel throws himself on his face before the divine messenger, but the angel touches him and rouses him to his hands and knees.

What if, in evangelistic meetings and worship services all over the country, of South Africa, the **spirit of apartheid** were to be solemnly rebuked and people were invited to testify to their deliverance from its spell by the Holy Spirit?

Today our Western society consists of possessed Christians as much as anyone else! We are possessed by violence, possessed by sex, possessed by money, possessed by drugs. We need to recover forms of collective exorcism as effective as was in early Christian baptisms renunciation of the devil and all his works.

It is noticeable that there is a virtual absence of any attempt to explain evil (theodicy) in the New Testament. The early Christians devoted a great deal of energy to discovering the meaning of Jesus' death, but nowhere do they offer a justification of God in the face of an evil world. They do not seem to be puzzled or even perturbed by evil as a theoretical problem. When they encountered persecution or illness, they never asked, *"How could God have let this happen?"*

Paul does not rejoice that God's providence delivers us from affliction; clearly it did not deliver him (2 Corinthians 11:23-33)! Rather he celebrates God's comforting us in our afflictions (2 Corinthians 1:3-7). When he was almost killed in Asia, he did not rail at God for mistreating him, since he knew that it was the Powers of Darkness, not God, that wanted him destroyed. He even found a lesson in the ordeal: It was "so that we would rely not on ourselves but on God who raises the dead" (2 Corinthians 1:9). So free was he from the fear of the Powers of Darkness and their final sanction, death, that he could avow: ***"If we live, we live to the Lord, and if we die, we die to the Lord; so then, whether we live or whether we die, we are the Lord's"*** (Romans 14:8).



From this he concludes that “*prayer*” involves not just God and people, but God and people and the Powers of Darkness. What God is able to do in the world is hindered, to a considerable extent, by the rebelliousness, resistance, and self-interest of the Powers of Darkness exercising their freedom under God.

**In this Spiritual Warfare scene we see the lie exposed in the counterfeit kingdom – especially as portrayed in the world**

In spite of his diligence to oppose God’s Kingdom, Satan isn’t sufficient in himself. The adversary is limited in time and space and he isn’t omnipotent, so he must use a number of fallen spirits to do his bidding. He’s playing for big stakes and may not send a particular demon on a mission to seduce a human. Therefore, he relies on the evil influence of his extended world system to pervert human behaviour.

The true battle with evil is described clearly in the Bible. Ephesians, chapter 6, tells us that “*principalities,*” “*powers,*” and the “*rulers of the darkness of this age*” are in charge of our world. This Scripture refers to Satan’s system of supernatural activity, which is organized spiritually and geographically. Certain principalities control particular countries and cities. Daniel ten refers to the spirits “*prince of Persia*” and “*prince of Greece.*”

Other powers direct their attention to designated sectors of society, such as the political and academic realms. Rulers of Darkness focus on certain industries like entertainment and pornography. Demons with specialized abilities work their evil where they are most effective.

The devil often sits back and lets the flesh do his dirty deeds. Unrestrained human sexuality can turn the beauty of intimacy into something ugly through pornography. In this case, the fallen nature of man’s evil desire turns humanity toward evil without any active intervention from Satan.

As (James 1:14) points out, “*Each one is tempted when he is drawn by his own desires.*” Blaming everything on the devil is a precarious cop-out. The flesh-man’s own lust – can accomplish much evil without active demonic intervention. On death row, serial killer Ted Bundy confessed that the influence of pornography had driven him to murder. When the homes of child molesters are raided, the police seldom find stacks of the Wall Street Journal.

It must be stated though that hundreds of people being bound in captivity through spirits of lusts and evil sexuality were tormented by evil spirits as well. Apparently when given enough “*ground*” demonic forces form a stronghold of a particular kind in a person’s life. Homosexuality was found as a demonic manifestation by demonic powers in the body, “*flesh*” and in the soul after prolonged participation in deviant sexual encounters. Enslavement occurred in many cases.

What they discover is hard-core porn, the obvious link to their perverted behaviour. The temptation Christ in (Matthew 4:1-11) clearly shows that the devil also directly appeals to our human weaknesses.

Jesus had fasted forty days and forty nights when Satan tempted Him by suggesting that He turn stones into bread. This was a straightforward appeal to His hungering body.

Today, men and women with human weaknesses are tempted by the images of erotic sexuality that flood our newsstands and saunter across the screens of our television sets.

“*Sex sells*” isn’t an advertising slogan born on Wall Street; it’s an epigram conceived in the depths of hell based on temptations of the flesh. In order to ward off the seductive appeal of the flesh, we need to lean on the promises of God to overcome our internal propensity to sin. The murder of Andrew Merritt’s mother might have

been prevented if young Andrew had truly understood the significance of (1 Corinthians 10:13): *“No temptation has overtaken you except such as that common to man; but God is faithful, who will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you are able, but with temptation will also make the way of escape, that you may be able to bear it,”*

But then again, he may have committed his mind to Satan beyond the normal ability to resist temptation. Some will sin as a result of the world’s wretched standards of ethics and morals. Others will yield to temptation because their own flesh draws them inexorably toward depravity. But some may not fall into Satan’s plans, even though the world and the flesh tempt them. These are the ones who need an extra inducement from the devil and his demons.

The role of the devil and his demons in spiritual warfare shows much of the degeneracy of our age is the direct result of satanic interference, whom are dedicated to the goal of arousing desire for the forbidden. So what are these demons like?

The very mention of the word demon conjures images of gargoyleish creatures of the night – complete with fangs, claws and backs hunched by the weight of depravity.

The most important thing to note about the nature of **demons** is their **consistent devotion to Satan’s purposes and their unilateral opposition to God**. Because of this, they expressed complete certitude about spiritual matters. **They never deny that the Bible is God’s inerrant Word**. Their **character is consistent**. **Utter contempt for their victims, bitter hatred for the person ministering deliverance, and absolute loathing for Jesus and the Holy Spirit**.

Demons act on behalf and command of their leader, called Satan (Lucifer, Beelzebub), being controlled by him and in obedience to him. When disobedient to Satan and his “*top rulers*” excruciate punishment awaits them.

**Demons incite sin in the hearts of the morally weak:** lust, homosexuality, pedophilia, adultery, murder, rape, etc. That’s not to say that every such vice is necessarily demonic but it may be more times than we are willing to admit.

The origin of evil spirits: They are angels who fell from their estate as did Lucifer (Ezekiel 28:11-19; Isaiah 14:12-15). Approximately one-third of all created angels succumbed to the devil’s pleas of insurrection against God (Revelation 12:4), and they are now his emissaries of evil (Matthew 25:41 – “*the devil and his angels*”).

There is some evidence that the angels who fell with Lucifer are relegated to one of two states. Some appear to be free to roam the earth in search of human prey, while others are confined to Tartarus, or hell (2 Peter 2:4). The sin that confined these demons isn’t clear from Scripture. Perhaps Jude, verse 6, refers to these demons (“*angels who did not keep their proper domain... He has reserved in everlasting chains*”). This may indicate that they are the ones who sexually cohabited with humans in Genesis 6.

Wherever demons are spoken of in Scripture, they are depraved – “*unclean*” (Matthew 10:1); “*wickedness*” (Ephesians 6:12); “*evil*” (Luke 7:21). Not one demon has ever expressed any desire to be different from what he is. No demon has ever asked to be a recipient of God’s grace. The condition of demons is obviously one of unique degeneracy, a predicament that consigns them to a permanently unclean condition. In short **no demon can ever be saved from sin**. Demons have no equivalent payment for sin on their behalf, furthermore **not one has ever expressed any regret for his actions**.

The moral nature of demons compels them to ceaselessly oppose God's kingdom and fight against His redeemed servants. They do so as invisible creatures, even though they may manifest visibly on occasion, just as the angels of the Lord appeared to man (Genesis 19:15; Luke 1:26). Though they may assume a mask of righteousness and beauty, the Bible illustrates that their true image is ghastly and abhorrent (Revelation 9:7-10).

Jesus' role as the image of God is connected to his role in creation. Paul's thinking on this point is in line with what we have already found in John and Hebrews. Paul says that Christ is *"the firstborn over all creation"* (Colossians 1:15). Scholars almost unanimously concede that the point here is not chronological – as though Christ were literally born first. Instead, Paul is referring to Christ as *"primogenitor"*: the firstborn heir to all creation. Paul explains that *"all things were created by Him and for Him"* and he *"is before all things, and in him all things hold together."*

**Christ is the source, sustainer and goal of all creation. Jesus embodies and sums up the purpose of creation.** Through the One in whom the invisible God is seen, the purposes of God are clearly seen. Hence, in Christ we see the ultimate truth of who God is, who we are and what the world is to be. More specifically, in Christ we see that God defines Himself as One who is for us, to the point of dying for us on the Cross. We see that we are both judged in our sin and reconciled to God by His mercy. The purpose of creation is for God to be God for us, and for us to be a people for God. The One in whom all things takes place and thus the One who reveals all this is Jesus Christ.

The Cross is the central way Christ images God. Christ was not an innocent third party who was punished against His will to appease the Father's wrath. Christ is Himself God, and he voluntarily took our sin and punishment upon Himself. Hence His sacrifice does not appease God's wrath; it reveals God's love. Even in –

especially in – his agonizing death on the Cross, Jesus is the exact imprint and perfect reflection of God.

In the crucified Christ the truth about God, about us and about the world is most perfectly revealed. For the Cross is where reconciliation between God and the world is accomplished.

The brutal suppression through this Spiritual War ought to cut the nerve of Christian resistance. Instead, the Christian movement grows under repression. In point of fact, Jesus' followers seem to expect nothing less from the Darkness that crucified their leader. The tide has turned toward the final victory so that they can already sing their victory song.

Over and over this victory song:

***And I saw what appeared to be a sea of glass mixed with fire, and those who had conquered the beast and its image and the number of its name, standing beside the sea of glass with harps of God in their hands. And they sing....***  
***Revelation 15:2(KJV)***

***Do not weep. See, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered!***  
***Revelation 5:5(KJV)***

The Beast that so effortlessly conquers the truth-tellers (“*martyrs*”) has itself already been conquered (Revelation 12:11). Jesus, though slain, has been exalted to heaven and controls the destiny of the world (Revelation 5). What ought to be, for those with eyes of faith, already is.

Whatever the dauntlessness of the Kingdom of Darkness, Christ has already been enthroned above all Principalities and Powers (Ephesians 1:20-23). This victory is what sustains faith; this faith is what creates victory.

In the midst of the repeated defeats, Christians can affirm victory, because they are already people who are beginning to see and act free of the System of Darkness.

The Authority of Christ is already establishing itself and the heavenly chorus are singing:

***The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Messiah, and he shall reign for ever and ever.***

***Revelation 11:15(KJV)***

For singing about is a way of bringing about.

The Book of Revelation express joy at being freed from paralysis induced by the pseudo-trinity of the Dragon and its two Beasts. Freedom means release to expose their seductions to others.

In the final analysis the gospel is not a message of escape, to another world after death, but of rescue from the enticements of “*this world*,” Satan, demons and evil and the horror of sin.

In a pluralistic world in which we are privileged to learn from all religious and philosophical traditions, Christians still have a story to tell to the nations.

In concept the victory in this Spiritual Warfare is already establish as seen in the above-mentioned passage, but in this present world there is a strong occult consciousness siding with the Dark side of the war.

The **war** being fought by many can be called a **warfare** for immortality.

Immortality is a mainstay of humanistic futuristic thought. Unlike the scientific rationalists who have dominated the American mind-set (and other parts of Western

culture) since the 1950's today's mystics are convinced there is life after death in one form or another. That's why cremation, cryonics, and even mummification attract an increasing number of customers who believe disposition of the body profoundly affects its immortal destination (like ancient civilizations).

There are differing ideas determining which form of burial one should choose. Historically, cremation has been selected by those who believe the spirit should be released from the body for its next incarnation. Cryonics may be embraced by those who want their bodies reanimated at some later date.

Mummification is picked as a way to prepare the body for its journey to the world of the afterlife where it progresses through various spiritual planes.

Cryonics is an increasingly popular, though expensive, means of ensuring an orderly transition to the next life – or a possible return to this one. One's dead body can be frozen with the hope it will be revived after science has learned to reverse death or repair damaged cells.

Cryonics involves putting the dead patient on a heart and lung machine to maintain a heartbeat and keep blood circulating. Ice is gradually applied around the body to lower the body temperature, while various chemicals are injected. Then the patient is taken to a laboratory where the blood is replaced with a balanced salt solution, which in turn is displaced later with a glycerol solution to minimize tissue damage. Finally, it's off to the warehouse, where the body is tucked into a cooling chest that resembles a coffin. The corpse is covered with dry ice until it reaches a temperature of – 320 degrees Fahrenheit, after which it is covered with a foil material and put into a bag.



For those incapable of affording mummification or cryonics, the philosophy of reincarnation suffices. Reincarnation insists there are countless opportunities for reformation.

Christianity emphasizes the finished work of redemption achieved by Christ on the Cross. Furthermore, reincarnation inhibits any choice of the will to determine a life of obedience to God's plan.

Hidden in the implied merits of reincarnation is a selfishness that concedes no virtue in sacrificing for the welfare of others, since their lot in life is retribution for past sins. Reincarnation may seem reasonable until compared to a forgiving God who offers undeserved grace and mercy.

Though reincarnation was a popular theory among some sects of mystical, Jews at the time of Christ, not a single Scripture exists to endorse this proposition. Some reincarnationists cite John 8:58 (*"Before Abraham was, I AM"*) as evidence. But if Christ had suggested He was Abraham reincarnated, He would have been dismissed as a lunatic by His legalistic Jewish audiences. In fact, the Jewish leaders sought to kill Christ for blasphemy because they knew His statement was an assertion of His eternal deity (John 8:59; 10:30-33).

Again the warfare rages on as we see these accumulating lies, trying to overpower the real truth.

Reincarnationists have claimed that (Matthew 11:14) says John the Baptist was Elijah come again. But (Luke 1:17) clearly explains that John came in *"the spirit and power,"* the style, of Elijah's ministry. Contrary to the exotic etales of past lives, the reality of why so many reincarnation accounts seems so convincing may be more mundane. Those with low self-esteem readily stories of marvellous past existences when they were persons of power, beauty and nobility.

These accounts are often conjured from the subconscious mind, which contains an incalculable record of sights and sounds, along with thousands of bits of long-forgotten information. Unrecalled movies, TV programs, photographs, songs and literature may congeal into the “recollection” of an esteemed past life. Also, the influence of demons could concoct a past life scenario and hallucinogenically implant its fiction.

Unlike reincarnation, Christianity is not based on relativistic impressions of reality. It is founded on the teachings of Jesus and the doctrines of the apostles. It is what Jesus actually said and what His disciples really wrote that objectively guides the true follower of Christ. And no intermediaries are acceptable – not Buddha or Krishna, not angels, ascended masters, or channelled entities. Only Christ is the ultimate Authority because “all things were created through Him and for Him.” And the only enlightenment needed is to know Him and “the hope of His calling what are the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints.

Science, behaviourism, metaphysics, psychology, and religion have been combined to navigate realms of human potential.

The key to mysticism is discovering that reality depends upon the viewer’s perspective. Since mankind is on an evolutionary course toward developing greater “*potentiality*,” even the self can be re-created by an altered viewpoint.

Enlightenment in assorted occult models has become big business.

The word is out that enlightenment is for everyone, quickly and reasonably priced (and nobody has died for that on a cross). Some use hypnotic regression. Others offer out-of-body experiences by listening to taped astral sounds. Still other techniques embrace flotation tanks, hyperventilation, and frenetic dancing.

The end product has several names. In Zen, it is satori. In Yoga, Samadhi. In Hinduism, nirvana. In Sufism, fana. Some call it the “*supreme consciousness*.” Others speak of “*liberation*” or “*self-realization*.” To some it is the “*mystic rose*” or the “*central flame*.” But whatever the intimation, it is a holy grail, the end of their spiritual search in this life. Becoming one with the pantheistic cosmos is their goal.

Today’s explorers of truth are fond of contorting through postured positions and meditating to achieve deepened transcendental thought. As one spiritualist seeker said, “Enlightenment is the core truth of all religions. It is the essence of life. It is the discovery of the ultimate answer.”

The search for ultimate reality instigated Jewish leaders to confront Christ in John 5. They demanded to know the authority by which He healed and forgave sins.

Christ could have lured them down the road of spiritual introspection, but He did not. He might have told them to contemplate the cosmos, but He deferred. Instead, He offered Himself and His teachings, declaring, “He who hears My word and believes in Him who sent Me has everlasting life, and shall not come into judgment.”

In contrast, Jesus never told His followers to play mind games. He said, “*I am the light of the world. He who follows Me shall not walk in darkness.*” For the Christian, spiritual perspicacity is centered in a person, Christ, not an experience.

Enlightenment of occult mysticism is actually the darkness of the devil, who has transformed himself into “*an angel of light*.”

And thus the spiritual warfare rages on – Light against Darkness.

## **10.1            Some Keys To Understanding Occult Spirituality Regarding The Sin War Will Throw Light Into The Darkness**

Regarding the sin war an important key to unlocking the essence of the understanding of occult spirituality is knowing a definition of terms like subconscious, intuition and higher self. Occultists confuse their reference to the subconscious with biblical indications that man's conscious helps guide moral decisions.

The metaphysical concept of the subconscious and the Christian concept of the conscience are incompatible. When the Christian speaks of conscience, he refers to one of two inner voices, God's moral law and the indwelling Holy Spirit (Romans 2:15).

Many who flirt with occult spirituality come from a Christian background and cannot totally jettison their belief in Christ.

Thus, they seek systems that ignore such cardinal doctrines as hell, guilt over sin, and the blood atonement of Christ while maintaining reverence for Jesus the Man.

Normal Christians with a liturgical background may gravitate toward groups like The Church Universal or Nichiren Soshu, which practice chanting and repetitive decreeing. They may end up uttering affirmations that are blasphemous, such as the "*I am that I am*" decree whereby one claims for himself the title of God.

Those who frequently indulge in decreeing enter trance states in which they involuntarily permit entities to enter them and display spirit possession. Devotees often practice affirmations for extended periods of time, during which they experience the yogic state of disengagement from reality, making them prey for cult indoctrination.

Decreeing also increases the disciple's vulnerability to thought transformation, brainwashing, and demonic control.

Gullible acceptance of failed religious systems illustrates a poor sense of history. For millennia, metaphysical ideas have been age-old ideologies in the East. The result? Immeasurable poverty, indifference to human misery, and fatalistic outlook that awaits the justice of Karma rather than inviting immediate human compassion.

Occult worldview thrives in the atmosphere of Satan's lie, *"You will surely not die."* It has taken form in films, the hostile healing techniques of mystical medicine, and the belief in energy dualities that has invaded the halls of academia.

Occult spirituality is but a stage-stop in the Aquarian quest for man's evolutionary transformation to levels of consciousness beyond evil. What the initiate fails to see is that the holding pen is a pigsty, the devil's destination.

Spiritual Warfare raging on the political front shows prominent occult theoretician Dr. Robert Muller, former secretary of the United Nations Economic and Social Council, has said, *"Humanity is evolving toward a coherent global form, best described by a metaphor of the human brain; each person, young or old, able-bodied or handicapped, is an important neuron in the emerging planetary brain that is constituted by the meridian networking among people."*

Traditional concepts of God have no place on the agenda of New World Order proponents. The Humanist Manifesto II states, *"As non-theists, we begin with humans, not God, nature, not deity ... no deity will save us: We must save ourselves."* This fits well into the framework of occult ideology, since man is perceived as a god who is capable of saving himself. Old orders of religions would be

abolished and replaced with a globalistic set of beliefs acceptable to both humanists and those with an occult perception of internationalism.

Globalists have also advanced the idea of a universal interdependence in which God and nature are fused into one. God is seen as being at one with and pervasive in all matter.

Thus, moral objectives are measured by their contribution to cosmological oneness, not personal moral accountability to a transcendent Creator.

How does the Spiritual War affect nature we can ask? Globalism's social agenda is guided by several presuppositions that are highly amenable to occultism, including its oceans and biosphere, is seen as the common property of mankind. Because the purity of earth's water and air affect all living creatures, globalists insist that all of nature be placed under international jurisdiction. Pagans readily accept this proposition because of their pantheistic principles, not only interdependent but also cosmologically interrelated because of its one source.

To the humanistic globalist, there is no God. All that matters is, well, matter. If "*all is one*," as the mystic declares, that proposition can be easily ratified by legislative powers that are internationally binding. The philosophy of holism also underpins this social agenda. If man, nature, Mother Earth, and the entire cosmos are interconnected, national sovereignty would be antithetical. The shared experience of oneness achieved in altered states of consciousness, plus the message of trance channeled entities and so-called guardian angels confirm unitary awareness and global interdependence.

History shows that interdependence destroys the healthy economic competition upon which the advances of mankind have been based. Our current quality of health care, common conveniences and food surpluses result from global rivalry that has spurred international inventiveness and productiveness.

Removing that incentive would destroy the desire to generate wealth, which fuels productivity. Failed communist economics are excellent examples of what happens when a non-competitive marketplace exists. The scene of social engineering is the best place to observe the mutuality of globalism and humanism.

Fertility cults were common in ancient agrarian societies. Ancient goddess worship cults were incredibly licentious. Temple prostitutes served as an access to the matriarchal mysteries. Sexual fertility was emphasized, and ritual intercourse was an initiatory procedure. In Aphrodite worship, virgins were inducted into the cult by being deflowered with a male statuette bearing an oversized phallus.

Goddess worship demonstrates this same preoccupation with sexuality. In addition, goddess worship is based on appreciation of feminine psychic inclinations. Advocates of goddess worship often align themselves with witchcraft and have been known to declare blasphemously, *"In the beginning was the goddess."*

Even in South Africa, goddess worship and witchcraft (wicca) is emerging in all major cities.

Globalism is altruism in action, noble but ignoring man's ignobility. It's also old hat. Marx, Lenin, and Stalin tried it. Like contemporary one worlders, they, too, longed for worldwide social and political dominion.

What cost to personal freedoms would be required to establish communal consciousness? Complete loss of privacy and the ability to live and travel unrestricted.

***"I am the Alpha and the Omega, the Beginning and the End,"*** Jesus declared.

Christ declared mankind's Omega Point is not a convergence with cosmic consciousness.

It is Judgment Day when, according to (Revelation 21:8), sorcerers "*shall have their part in the lake which burns with fire and brimstone.*" Global government and unitary spiritual consciousness, with its proclivity for the occult, is sorcery of the first order, punishable by eternal condemnation.

***And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white a horse; and He that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in Righteousness he doth judge and make war:***

***Revelation 19:11(KJV)***

And to Spiritual Warfare there will come an end because it is written.

***And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.***

***Revelation 21:4(KJV)***

## **11 SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND THE MINISTRY OF JESUS CHRIST**

Prof. Dr. M J Brand argued that<sup>12</sup> Thus far we have attempted to demonstrate the general truth that a warfare worldview is at the center of Jesus' understanding and his mission, and therefore of his understanding of the kingdom of God.

What remains is for us to more closely examine Jesus' exorcistic, miracle working and teaching ministries in order to fully ascertain what Jesus and the early church believed about this cosmic conflict.

---

<sup>12</sup> Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie MJ, (2005) An exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-theological perspective. Print and Bookbinding Solutions Pretoria. RSA., pp. 844-845.



This is the focus on this chapter and the next. A number of vital principles may be gleaned from a closer inspection of Jesus' exorcisms, nature miracles and teachings that have a direct bearing on our understanding of Satan and the problem of evil.

## **11.1 Exorcisms In Jesus' Ministry**

The first of two exorcism accounts, Boyd looks at is Jesus' exorcism of a multitude of demons out of a man at Gerasa (Mark 5:1-27; Matthew 8:28-34; Luke 8:27-39).<sup>13</sup>

This account is the most developed, dramatic and detailed exorcism narrative in the Gospels.

---

<sup>13</sup> Boyd, Gregory A (1997) *God at War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove, Illinois, InterVarsity Press, p. 193.

Matthew, quite typically, notes that there was another demonized person besides the one all three Synoptic narratives center on (Mt 8:28-29). Also, there is in the manuscript tradition disagreement about whether this event took place in Gadara, Gerasa or Gergesa. According to the strongest readings, Mark and Luke have Jesus going to Gerasa, while Matthew has him going to Gadara. Gerasa lies 30 miles off the coast of the sea of Galilee, and Gadara 5 miles, making both difficult to square with the narratives. The most likely solution to the problem seems to be see the actual town in which the exorcism took place as being Khersa, which is located squarely on the eastern shore. This could be easily spelled Gerasa in Greek (as in Mark and Luke) and could also be included under the territory of Gadara. We can then suppose that Matthew (again, typically) tried to avoid the ambiguity and thus referred only to the larger and much better known region of Gadara. Later scribes, unfamiliar with the territory, then tried to "correct" Matthew's "solution" and change this to Gerasa, hence the geographical problems as well as the ambiguity in the manuscript traditions. For discussions, see W.H. Mare, "Gadara," *The New International Dictionary of Biblical Archaeology*, ed. E.M. Blaiklock et al. (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Zondervan, 1983), p.201; C. Blomberg, *The Historical Reliability of the Gospels* (Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1987), pp. 149-50; E.J. Vardaman, "Gadara," *Wycliffe Bible Encyclopedia*, 2 vols., ed. C.F. Pfeiffer et al. (Chicago: Moody Press, 1975), 1:643; S. Holm-Nielsen et al., "Gadarenes," *ABD*, 2:866-68. For two helpful discussions of this episode, see G.H. Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist: A Contribution to the Study of the Historical Jesus*, WUNT2/54 (Tübingen: Mohr, 1993), pp. 72-87; H. van der Loos, *The Miracles of Jesus*, NovTSup 8 (Leiden: Brill, 1965), pp. 382-97.

### 11.1.1 Casting Out Legion

Here we find Jesus confronted by a demonized man who lived amid the tombs of this town (Mark 5:3; Mt 8:28; Luke 8:27). 106 Mark's account depicts the man as possessing a terrorizing supernatural strength, to the point where no one could restrain him any more, even with a chain; for he had wrenched apart, and the shackles he broke in pieces; and no one had the strength to subdue him.

Night and day among the tombs and on the mountains he was always howling and bruising himself with stones. (Mark 5:3-5; cf Luke 8:29).

Now, however, someone *"strong enough"* – stronger than the *"strong man"* (Mark 3:27; Matthew 12:29; Luke 11:21-22) – had arrived to subdue him.

As in many other accounts, the demons knew who Jesus was and what he had come to do, for they caused the man to run up to Jesus and to shout ***"at the top of his voice, 'What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I adjure you by God, do not torment me'"*** (Mark 5:7).

Interestingly enough, Mark and Luke both note that this was said after Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man (Mark 5:8; Luke 8:29), making this only account in which it seems that Jesus' word did not immediately effect an exorcism.<sup>14</sup>

---

<sup>14</sup> So too, as mentioned earlier, Mark suggests that Jesus' prayer for healing did not always immediately effect a complete healing (Mk 8:22-26). Indeed, he states explicitly that in at least one instance people's unbelief prevented Jesus from doing many miracles (Mk 6:5). As Godbecome-man, Jesus was sinless, he exercised faith, and he was perfectly open to the omnipotent Father working through him.

Some demons, Jesus elsewhere teaches, are harder to cast out than others (Mark 9:14-29), and it may be that the sheer numerical force of the demons that challenged Jesus prolonged this exorcism.

His first command having apparently failed, Jesus investigates further (perhaps to find out more precisely what he is up against).<sup>15</sup>

So he asks the demon what his name was, to which the demon replied, "My name is Legion; for we are many" (Mark 5:9; Luke 8:30).<sup>16</sup>

Knowing they cannot ultimately withstand the Son of God, the demons then beg Jesus not to be sent "*out of the country*" (Mark 5:10; Luke has "*into the abyss*," 8:31). Instead, they ask to be sent into a local herd of swine. Surprisingly, Jesus acquiesces to their request.

The plan seems to backfire on the demons, however, for instead of finding a permanent abode that would allow them to stay in the region, the pigs immediately rush headlong over a cliff and drown (Mark 5:11-13; Matthew 8:32-33; Luke 8:33-34).

---

<sup>15</sup> This observation stands over against R.Guelich ("Spiritual Warfare: Jesus, Paul and Perriti," *Pneuma* 13, no.1 [1991]:40-41), who minimizes the warfare dimension of the Gospels largely on the basis of the supposed absence of conflict between Jesus and Satan and demons. "We find no hint of a struggle in these encounters" (p.40). Not only the failure of Jesus' command here but the acquisition of a name (see note 6 below) and the common rebukes of Jesus during exorcism, as well as the temptation narratives (to say nothing of his explicit teachings; see chapter eight), suggest that Jesus was in fact engaged in a genuine struggle. The temptation narratives in the Gospels alone should be enough to tell us this much (cf Heb 4:15-16; 5:7-10).

<sup>16</sup> In the ancient Near Eastern world, names were generally viewed as inherently reflecting the realities to which they were attached. Thus to know someone's name was to know the person, and invoking this name could either capture the power of that person's presence, as when Jesus' name is used in exorcism (Lk 10:17; Mk 9:38; Acts 19:13), or give one power over that person, as when the name of demons is used in exorcism. Interestingly, Jesus, in contrast to other exorcists of his day, did not rely upon the power of names in his deliverance ministry. See Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist*, p. 164. For the invocation of names in exorcisms and magic in the first century, see D.E. Aune, "Magic in Early Christianity," in *ANRW* (1980), 2/23.:1545; J.G. Gager, ed., *Curse Tablets and Binding Spells from the Ancient World* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1992), pp.3-14.

Where they went after that – whether to another area or to the “abyss” – is not clear. But it is clear that they did not get what they wanted, which seems to have been Jesus’ plan all along.

The result is that the man is returned to his “right mind” (Mark 5:15; Luke 8:36), but the townspeople are filled with fear, apparently at the realization that one even stronger than the demons who afflicted this man is in their midst.

Some would assume, as many others had done, that Jesus was driving out demons by the power of the strong man himself (Matthew 12:24), they beg Jesus and his disciples to leave, which they do (Mark 5:16-17; Luke 8:36-37). This account has a number of noteworthy features.

First, the shift from the singular to the plural on the part of the demons is interesting and quite puzzling to most Western readers, though it is not at all unfamiliar to either ancient or modern exorcists.

It may mean that one dominant demon initially spoke, or that the collective identity of demons is such that they can speak in either the singular or the plural.

In any case, what is far more significant is their collective name, “*Legion*.” This is military term denoting a large army unit. Jesus used the term (in the plural) to refer to a vast army of heavenly warriors (Matthew 26:53), and in the Roman army (which, significantly, occupied the whole area) it customarily referred to a unit of six thousand soldiers.

This term as a name for the demons afflicting this man, then, reveals how thoroughly demonized he was.<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> Van der Loos, *Miracles Of Jesus*, p. 388.

Indeed, given their name “*Legion*,” we should not be too surprised when Mark tells us that the number of pigs the demons entered when they left the man was two thousand (Mark 5:13).

The Gospels include several other references to multiple demonization (e.g., Mark 1:22-23; Luke 4:24; 11:26; Matthew 12:45), but the next highest number we read of is seven, the number of demons cast out of Mary Magdalene (Luke 8:2; Mk 16:9).<sup>18</sup>

In any event, the passage reveals that Jesus and the Gospel authors assumed that the world was virtually infested with demons, that the number of these demons was indefinitely large, and that people and animals were capable of being demonized by any number of these unclean invaders.<sup>19</sup>

The military term “*Legion*” is also significant in that it designates this multitude of demons as being a subgroup of a much larger army. Like the Romans in the eyes of Jews, Jesus saw the kingdom as an army which had invaded territory (the earth) that did not rightfully belong to it. And in this particular passage, a “*Legion*” of soldiers within this Satanic army had illegitimately captured a person. Jesus comes, however, to reclaim territory that belongs to his Father and bring it under his rightful rule. Hence when Jesus shows up, the legion of demons must leave.<sup>20</sup> 113

---

<sup>18</sup> As in Matthew 12:45, however, the number seven here may be symbolic of “fullness.” In other words, Mary had a plethora of demons within her. So argues Langton, E (1949) *Essentials of Demonology: A Study of the Jewish and Christian Doctrine, Its Origin and Development*. London; Epworth, p.50, who sees it as a synonym for a large group. Gokey, F.X (1961) *The Terminology for the Devil and Evil Spirits in the Apostolic Fathers*, *Patristic Studies* 93. Washington, D.C.; Catholic University of America Press, p. 49.

<sup>19</sup> Langton, *Essentials*, p. 147.

<sup>20</sup> Crossan, J.D (1994) *A Revolutionary Biography*. San Francisco; HarperSanFrancisco, pp.90-91 who mostly denies the historicity of the Gospel exorcism accounts (though he admits the historical Jesus was something of an exorcist). He argues that Roman imperialism is here symbolized as demonic possession. While his a historical, overly symbolic reading of this (and other) passages is unwarranted, he seems correct in making the point that the Jesus of Mark’s Gospel was here seeing the demonic “*Legion*” as being at least analogous to the legions of Roman guards who occupied and oppressed the territory. As Roman imperialism illegitimately rules over and oppresses Israel, so Satanic imperialism

The demons' desperate plea to remain in the area by entering a local herd of swine is also significant. Ancient people generally associated particular demons with particular regions (especially around tombs and desert regions, (Luke 8:27,29; 11:21), and this seems to be reflected in this passage.<sup>21</sup>

The desperation of their cry makes it appear that these degenerate spirits somehow needed to remain in this region, as though (perhaps) this were some sort of geographical assignment they had received from their chief and had to obey.<sup>22</sup>

Ancient people often believed that certain kinds of demons needed to reside in something and this belief is also consistent with this account.<sup>23</sup> 116 Why the need to go into swine as opposed to just existing on their own? The demons' existence appears to be parasitic.

They seem to be like spiritual viruses that cannot survive long on their own; they need to infect someone or something.<sup>24</sup>

This belief may be reflected in Jesus' teaching in (Luke 11:24-26) (Matthew 12:24-25):

---

illegitimately rules over and oppresses this man, and ultimately the entire world. For a critique of Crossan's exegetical methods, see Boyd, Gregory A Cynic, Sage or Son of God? Recovering the Real Jesus in an Age of Revisionist Replies (Wheaton, Ill.: Bridgepoint, 1995), pp. 77-87.

<sup>21</sup> So, e.g., 4 Maccabees 18:8 speaks of a "seducer of the desert." 1 Enoch 10:4-5. On this see Ferguson, E (1980) Demonology of the Early Christian World. New York; Mellen, p. 2.

<sup>22</sup> This again raises the issue of "territorial spirits" discussed in the introduction. See references in introduction, note 3.

<sup>23</sup> Alongside humans and animals, demons were believed sometimes to inhabit such haunts as the desert, water (seas and wells), the wind, fire, trees, caves, graves and garbage heaps. See van der Loos, Miracles of Jesus.

<sup>24</sup> Like "the disease germs of modern medicine," H.A. Kelly argues, demons in the New Testament are "definitely parasitic in nature" Kelly, H.A (1985) The Devil at Baptism: Ritual, Theology and Drama. Ithaca; Cornell University Press, p 18.

---

***When the unclean spirit has gone out of a person, it wanders through waterless regions looking for a resting place, but not finding any, it says, "I will return to my house from which I came."***

***When it comes, it finds it swept and put in order.***

***Then it goes and brings seven other spirits more evil than itself, and they enter and live there; and the last state of that person is worse than the first***

***Luke 11:24-26***

This passage presents the reverse principle of the teaching just before it, namely, that Jesus was stronger than the “*strong man*” who guards his house, and this ministry was about overpowering this tyrant and “*dividing his plunder*” (Luke 11:21-22). In other words, what applies to the kingdom of God also applies to the kingdom of Satan.

The teaching states that when a demon has been cast out of a “*house*,” one can expect it to return with stronger reinforcements to attempt to reclaim what it regards to be its territory. It needs “*rest*,” and it will do whatever it needs to do to find it.

“In the context in which these are spoken, it is clear that this principle applies not only to individuals but to whole generations. Hence, after giving this teaching, Jesus adds, “So will it be also with this evil generation” (Matthew 12:45), implying that is possible for an entire generation to be demonized by multitudes of demons.”<sup>25</sup>

An apocalyptic conception of demonic national gods is perhaps implied here.<sup>26</sup>

---

<sup>25</sup> Michaels, J Ramsey (1976) Jesus and the Unclean Spirits, in Demon Possession, ed. J.W. Montgomery. Minneapolis: Bethany, pp. 53-54.

<sup>26</sup> See Revelation 16:13, which speaks of “three evil spirits” that deceive nations and lead them into war. So too Revelation 20:3, 8, 10 portray Satan (and the legions of demons under him) as one who “deceives the nations.” Something similar may be implied by Paul’s use of “principalities” and “powers,” as we shall see (chapter ten). The Old Testament conception of “the gods of the nations,” discussed in chapter two, lies behind all this. These gods, we saw, sometimes carry out their national duties well, sometimes they do not. When they do not, they become demonic (e.g., Ps 82; Dan 10). T.Ling takes Matthew 12:45 to mean that Jesus saw his own generation as being possessed by Satan. Hence Jesus is here saying that “although an individual member of this generation be exorcised of an evil spirit by some contemporary exorcist, the power of evil in the common life is such that he will

As much as such a notion may clash with our modern Western individualistic assumptions, in the light of our modern experience of Nazi Germany, we should perhaps not reject it too quickly.<sup>27</sup>

As Boyd notes; “it is dangerous to have Jesus simply cast out a demon; one needs to follow him, to have the kingdom of God present in one’s “house” as well. Hence he prefaces his teaching by saying, “Whoever is not with me is against me, and whoever does not gather with me scatters” (Luke 11:23).

He concludes by saying, “Blessed... are those who hear the word of God and obey it” (Luke 11:28). The only protection against the kingdom of darkness is to belong to the kingdom of God.

When an individual, or an entire generation, resists the kingdom, they open themselves up to significant demonic demonic activity.”<sup>28</sup>

Finally, the whole teaching is based on the premise that demons are “restless,” like one travelling in a desert without water, until they locate a “house,” whether this be a person, a region, a nation or a generation. Having “abandoned their own home” by rebelling against their Creator (Jude 6), these spiritual parasites perpetually seek to make another being their host. Reading in this light, we can perhaps better

---

almost certainly become repossessed, and now more desperately than before” ( The Significance of Satan: New Testament Demonology and Its Contemporary Significance [London: SPCK, 1961], p. 21).

<sup>27</sup> For a contemporary discussion surrounding purported cases of “collective possession,” see F.D. Pennoyer, “In Dark Dungeons of Collective Captivity,” in *Wrestling with Dark Angels: Toward a Deeper Understanding of the Supernatural Forces in Spiritual Warfare*, ed. C.P. Wagner and F.D. Pennoyer (Ventura, Calif.: Regal, 1990), pp. 249-70.

<sup>28</sup> Boyd, Gregory A (1997) *God At War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove Illinois; InterVarsity Press, p. 196.

---



understanding why “Legion” begged Jesus to let them remain in the “house” of their “country,” by entering the “house” of the swine.

### **11.1.2 Delivering A Demonized Child**

Prof. Dr. M J Brand stated that<sup>29</sup> the second concerns Jesus’ exorcism of a young boy (Mark 9:14-30; Matthew 17:14-21; Luke 9:37-45).<sup>30</sup> Coming down from the mountain upon which Jesus had been transfigured before Peter, James and John (Mark 9:2-12), Jesus finds his other disciples arguing with certain “scribes” or “teachers of the law” in the midst of a great crowd of people (Mark 9:14-16).

The issue, it turns out, concerns a man’s demonized son and why Jesus’ disciples could not exorcise the demon from him. In some detail, Mark recounts the distraught father’s predicament as well as his plea to Jesus.

***Teacher, I brought you my son; he has a spirit that makes him unable to speak;  
and whenever it seizes him, it dashes him down; and he foams and grinds his  
teeth and becomes rigid; and I asked your disciples to cast it out, but they could  
not do so.***

***Mark 9:17-18(KJV)***<sup>31</sup>

Jesus expresses his frustration with this “faithless generation,” implying that it was in part a lack of faith that prohibited the exorcism, and then quickly moves to help the young boy (Mark 9:19; Matthew 17:17; Luke 9:41). As soon as the demon in the boy sees Jesus, he throws the boy down on the ground in a fit or convulsion (Mark 9:20). Jesus is apparently impressed by the severity of this case of possession, for he then

---

<sup>29</sup> Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie MJ, (2007) *Spiritual Warfare The Kingdom Principles Of The Bible As Root To Spiritual Warfare*. Print and Book binding Solutions Pretoria. RSA., pp. 34-36.

<sup>30</sup> For discussions see Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist*, pp. 91-97; van der Loos, *Miracles of Jesus*, pp. 397-405.

<sup>31</sup> Confirmation to the above-mentioned Scripture can be found in the following references. Matthew 17:15-16; Luke 9:38-41.

asks the father, “How long has this been happening to him?” (Mark 9:21), to which the father replies, “From childhood. It has often cast him into the fire and into the water, to destroy him; but if you are able to do anything, have pity on us, and help us” (Mark 9:21-22; Matthew 17:15).

In Mark’s narrative the need for faith is then reiterated as Jesus tells the man, “All things can be done for he one who believes.” The Father responds with a tentative but honest confession of faith: “I believe; help my unbelief!” (Mark 9:23-24).

This is apparently enough for Jesus, for he proceeds to “rebuke the unclean spirit” saying, “You spirit that keeps this boy from speaking and hearing, I command you, come out of him, and never enter him again!” (Mark 9:25; Matthew 17:18; Luke 9:42).

The exorcism is successful, but (according to Mark) only after the demon “shrieked” and “convulsed him violently,” leaving the boy so lifeless that the crowd thought he was dead (Mark 9:26).

Following this scene, Mark and Matthew include a conversation Jesus has with his disciples concerning why they had been unsuccessful in driving the demon out of the boy. In Mark, Jesus’ response is that “this kind can come out only through prayer” (Mark 9:29), while in Matthew Jesus attributes their inability to lack of faith (Matthew 17:20).<sup>32</sup> Three things about this account are especially noteworthy. First, the terrorizing characteristics by this child and by the Gerasene demonic are typical of demonization’s and exorcisms, as they were understood throughout the ancient world. For that matter, they are typical of cases of demonization’s and exorcisms reported throughout the world today.

---

<sup>32</sup> Some manuscripts add “and fasting” to Mark 9:29, and some add “But this kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting” to Matthew 17:20.

---

Experiences of radically demonized people having sporadic supernatural strength, becoming mouthpieces for demons, convulsing on the ground, foaming at the mouth, becoming stiff and rigid, and so on, were frequent in ancient times and are common on the mission field yet today.

Indeed, the relative absence of such phenomena in our culture over the last several hundred years has been something of a historical anomaly.

Our culture seems to be experiencing more of these phenomena in recent years.<sup>33</sup>

Operating from within this naturalistic cultural anomaly, many liberal New Testament scholars have attempted to explain cases of demonization and exorcism such as the one recorded in (Mark 9) as merely primitive ways of describing and dealing with epilepsy or similar disorders.

---

<sup>33</sup> Langton, for example, argues, "It cannot be too strongly emphasized that the instances [of demonization] mentioned in the Gospels do not stand alone. They have their exact parallels among many peoples in different parts of the world" (Essentials, p. 153). Also idem, *Good and Evil Spirits: A Study of the Jewish Christian Doctrine, Its Origin and Development* (New York: Macmillan, 1942), pp. 54ff. For similar accounts from a cross-cultural and historical perspective, see F.D Goodman, *How About Demons? Possession and Exorcism in the Modern World* (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1988); I.M Lewis, *Ecstatic Religion: An Anthropological Study of Spirit Possession and Shamanism* (Baltimore, Penguin, 1971); M. Ebon, *Exorcism Past and Present* (London: Cassell, 1974); B.P. Levack *Witchcraft, Magic and Demonology*, vol. 9, *Possession and Exorcism* (Hamden, Conn.: Garland, 1992); T.K. Oesterreich, *Possession, Demoniacal and Other, Among Primitive Races, in Antiquity, the Middle Ages and Modern Times* (New Hyde Park, N.Y.: University Books, 1966); G. Twelftree, *Christ Triumphant: Exorcism Then and Now* (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1985). It should be noted, however, that similar accounts are increasingly reported today within contemporary Western culture. Perhaps the most credible recent discussions are M.S. Peck's *People of the Lie* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1983), pp. 182-253; K.E. Koch, *Demonology, Past and Present* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Kregel, 1973); V. Stacey, "Christ Cleanses Buildings and Delivers People: Four Case Studies," *ERT* 16, no. 4 (1992): 342-52. Other accounts (from widely varying perspectives) can be found in M. Martin's fascinating report *Hostage to the Devil* (New York: Bantam, 1977); C.F. Dickason, *Demon Possession and the Christian* (Westchester, Ill.: Crossway Books, 1987), pp. 169-213; R. Mayer, *Satan's Children: Case Studies in MPD* (New York: Putnam's 1991); E. Fiore, *The Unquiet Dead: A Psychologist Treats Spirit Possession-Detecting and Removing Earthbound Spirits* (Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday, 1987); J. Richards, *But Deliver Us from Evil* (New York: Seabury, 1974); D.R. Petitpierre, *Exorcism Devils* (London: Robert Hale, 1976). My own observation of phenomena similar to this has led me, along with many others, to conclude that it is impossible to explain the sometimes supernatural features of such phenomena on a strictly naturalistic basis.

Experience has shown in many cases that “demonic epilepsy” is a reality and that it could be healed by exorcism.

Some argue; hence the boy that Jesus treated, they would hold, was probably an epileptic.<sup>34</sup>

However, if one grants that this account in the Gospels is at least minimally rooted in actual history- and few today deny it – this explanation must be judged as inadequate, for it does not fully explain what transpired.<sup>35</sup>

This exclusively naturalistic explanation fails to account either for why the boy fell into convulsions when he saw Jesus or for why the seizures involved suicidal behavior.

Nor does it account for why Jesus’ exorcism worked, why the demon “shrieked” when it left (though the boy had been mute), or how Jesus, the Son of God, could have misdiagnosed the boy’s condition (while still getting the cure right). Finally, it does not account for why some today still exhibit these characteristics when a demon is being exorcised, though they are not epileptic.

In any case, in the context in which the Gospels were written, the physically violent and grotesque behaviors sometimes exhibited by demonized people appear to be simply the physical by products of an evil, parasitic force living its life through that person.

---

<sup>34</sup> See, e.g., J.B. Cortes and F.M. Gatti, (1975) “The Demon-Possessed Epileptic,” in their *The Case Against Possession and Exorcism: A Historical, Biblical and Psychological Analysis of Demons, Devils and Demoniacs*. New York; Vantage, pp. 173-86. Wilkinson, J (1968) “The Case of the Epileptic Boy,” *ExpTim* 79 : 39-42; Van der Loos, *Miracles of Jesus*, pp. 401-6. See esp. p.401, note 5 for a list of others who adopt a position similar to this.

<sup>35</sup> On the reliability of this account, see G.E. Sterling, “Jesus as Exorcist: An Analysis of Matthew 17:14-20; Mark 9:14-29; Luke 9:37-43a,” *CBQ* 55 (1993): 467-93. On the reliability of the exorcist accounts in general, see L Sabourin, “The Miracles of Jesus (II): Jesus and the Evil Powers,” *BTB* 4, no.2 (1974): 115-75; and esp. Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist*, pp. 53-113.

When these behaviors occur during exorcism, they are perhaps the physical manifestations of a spirit who is fighting for its life to stay in its “house.” Why this occurs sometimes and not others we are not told, though one guess, based on this passage, is that it has something to do with how long the demon has been there, and thus how thoroughly entrenched the demon is in the “house.”

Hence Jesus responds to the boy’s convulsing behavior by asking, “How long has this been happening to him? (Mark 9:21). However, it may also have something to do with the kind of demon that was occupying the “house” (viz., how strong it is) as evidenced by Jesus’ statement: “This kind can come out only through prayer” (Mark 9:29).<sup>36</sup> A second significant feature of this story concerns the simple fact that we here find a young boy being demonized. Indeed, not only does the exorcism involve a young boy being demonized.

Indeed, not only does the exorcism involve a young person, but we learn from his father that he had been in this condition since “childhood” (*paidiskē*), an expression that suggests he was like from infancy.

This point is highly significant, for it tells us that demonization, as it is understood by Jesus and the Gospel authors, was not something for which the demonized person was responsible.

Nowhere does Jesus imply that the demonization of a person is his or her fault, even in the case of Mary Magdalene, out of whom Jesus cast seven demons (Luke 8:2).<sup>37</sup> As Raymond Brown notes, for Jesus and the Gospels authors, “demoniacal possession is not so much the result of a league with Satan as an expression of

---

<sup>36</sup> In keeping with general apocalyptic thought, “Christ acknowledges that there are different classes of demons, some of whom had more powers than others” (Gokey, Terminology, p. 49). But he never speculates beyond this point, as the apocalyptic thinkers frequently did.

<sup>37</sup> So argues Kallas, J (1961) *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich; Seabury p. 63. Langton, Essentials, pp. 152-53.

bondage under Satan's dominion."<sup>38</sup> Deliverance was a sign of the coming kingdom of God, not as sign of various individuals' moral improvement. The kingdom of God advances as victims of the kingdom of Satan are freed.

Jesus expressed intense anger toward those who were immoral, such as the self-righteous Pharisees, but he never suggested that they were demonized. Toward the demonized, however, he never expressed anger; rather, he exhibited only compassion.

As Langton notes, "Pity rather than anger characterizes the attitude of Jesus toward the possessed... He treats them as if they were the victims of an involuntary possession."<sup>39</sup>

Indeed, he treats them as though they are casualties of war. For, in his view, this is precisely what they are.

This observation strongly contradicts an assumption that many Western Christians hold: that matters in the spiritual realm are supposed to be fair.

The assumption is that God would not allow a person to be demonized unless they deserved it. If a person is demonized (and we actually recognize this as a possibility, which is rare), it is held that the person must have willed the evil spirit to occupy them, or must have done something (e.g., dabbled in the occult) that opened them up to becoming demonized.

Demonized people, the assumption therefore goes, must be (or at least must have been) fundamentally bad people.<sup>40</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> Brown, R (1967) "Gospel Miracles," New Testament Essays. Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday, p.223.

<sup>39</sup> Langton, Essentials, pp. 171-72.

This assumption is another version of the simplistic theology that Job's three friends endorsed in their cruel attack on Job. The only two variables in any spiritual equation, it assumes, are God and the human individual. Since God is all-good, if a bad spirit has invaded someone, it must be the person's fault. But both the Gospels and the book of Job resist this simplistic way of thinking.

These works assume that there is very real "world in between" in which reside conscious, free beings who, like human beings, possess power to influence others, for better or for worse. They are, in short, morally responsible. They can therefore fight with each other and victimize human beings, quite apart from (indeed, quite against) the will of God.

In other words, just as evil adults can and do sometimes victimize children against their will and God's will, just as rapists victimize women against their will and against God's will, and just as despotic political powers victimize their subjects against their will and against God's will, so demonic spirits can apparently sometimes victimize people against their will – and against God's will.

---

<sup>40</sup> This assumption is formalized into something of a theological principle in all modernist and postmodernist accounts that understand evil beings to be projections of our own inner evil impulses. If the ontological "otherness" of the demonic is not affirmed, then obviously there can be no genuine victims of the demonic. See, e.g., W. Woods, *A History of the Devil* (London: W.H. Allen, 1973), who argues that "both gods and devils, are of course [sic] simply different facets of man, made as large as our imaginations can make them" (p.12). So with Nels F.S. Ferré, *Evil and the Christian Faith* (New York: Harper & Brothers, 1947), p. 33; H. Pendley, "Views of the Demonic in Recent Religious Thought" (Ph.D. diss., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, 1976), who (despite holding open the possibility of the demonic realm as an objective reality) argues that "human demonization occurs when egocentricity becomes the norm for one's existence" (p. 220). This unbiblical assumption gets formalized in otherwise biblically centered theologies as well, however. For example, despite Emil Brunner's many insights concerning the demonic realm, he insists that demonization cannot occur without human complicity. See *The Christian Doctrine of Creation and Redemption*, trans. O. Wyon (Philadelphia: Westminster, 1952), 140-41. While the New Testament generally rejects anything like the excuse that "the devil made me do it" – it assumes people are morally responsible for their actions – it nevertheless depicts radically demonized people in just this fashion. They are casualties of war. See C. Moeller, "Introduction," in *Satan*, ed. B. de Jésus-Marie (New York: Sheed & Ward, 1952), p. xix. I shall address the thorny issue of the relationship between demonic influence and human responsibility in *Satan and the Problem of Evil*.

As we have already seen, the biblical assumption is that the spiritual realm is not all that different from the physical realm.

Indeed, the one is simply a continuation of the other. This means that life on all levels can be and often is profoundly unfair. This should not surprise us, for we experience life on earth as profoundly unfair. This is the price we pay, or at least the price we risk paying, for a cosmos composed of a vast multiplicity of free, morally responsible agents.

People can and do misuse their freedom and power and thereby victimize others. For this reason, life on earth is often full of conflict, deep pain and gross injustice. But why should we think things would be different in the “world in between”? If history flows forward in a quasi-democratic fashion here below, for better or for worse, why think that the “world in between” is run as a strict dictatorship?

Scripture, we have seen, certainly does not support such a notion.

If one have difficulty accepting that things are sometimes grotesquely unfair on a spiritual level, it is likely because we have trouble really believing in the “world in between” (i.e., physical rapists are “more real” to us than demons) and really believing that this world could be in a genuine state of spiritual war. It is likely because we have a great deal of trouble believing that these spiritual beings are free. People are, to some extent, influenced by a pagan, unbiblical and narrow definition of God’s power as control.

Following Augustine, and after him the central tendency of the classical philosophical theistic tradition, we are often inclined to postulate a secret “divine blueprint” behind everything, making everything, good or evil, somehow an extension of God’s good (but very mysterious) will. Thus we have trouble accepting the relevance of the “world in between” for the good and evil of the world we experience.



For if the “world in between” is not constituted by free beings such as ours is, it is not relevant to the problem of evil at all.

It is clear from Jesus’ warfare ministry, however, the common modern assumption that life in the spiritual realm is fair is simply wrong. God’s will is not the only will, on earth or in the “world in between,” and thus there is no guarantee that either of these spheres will exhibit more justice than injustice. In Jesus’ view, as in apocalyptic thought (and, to some extent, as in the Old Testament), the “world in between” is characterized by warfare, and the earth is part of its battleground.

Hence people, even innocent children (as in the passage under discussion), can sometimes become casualties of this war.

There is no suggestion in the Gospels that Jesus believed that demons or evil angels were carrying out a secret providential plan of God, despite themselves. Rather, Jesus treated each case of demonization as an instance of spiritual rape: an alien force had illegitimately and cruelly invaded a person’s being. In the passage we are considering, the invading force had “robbed” this child of his speech and hearing and had attempted to rob him of his life as well.

The enemy, Jesus elsewhere tells us, always comes to steal, kill and destroy (John 10:10). Judging from Jesus’ ministry, one would have to say that nothing could be farther from the will of his loving Father than this.

For this reason, Jesus devoted his ministry to getting these “spiritual rapists” off their victims, by exorcism, by healing or by both. He didn’t waste time searching for a hidden divine will behind evil, asking, “How could God do this?” Why would God allow this?” Nor did he ever try to get people to piously resign themselves to God’s supposed “secret plan for their lives” in the face of evil. Jesus’ ministry was a ministry

not of resignation but of revolt. He was about revolting against the cruel tyranny of a world ruler that was oppressing God's people.

He was about seeking to give back to people, and to win back for his Father, what the enemy had stolen and destroyed.

He was about restoring humanity to its rightful place of dominion over the earth, and thus about empowering humans to rise up against the cosmic thief who had stolen this from them.

Indeed, we are not going too far if we claim that Jesus' very existence as the God-man on earth was an act of revolt.

The ultimate reason why Jesus became a man, carried out his ministry, died a God-forsaken death on the cross, and rose again from the dead was to destroy the devil and place under his foot all his cosmic enemies (e.g., 1 John 3:8; Hebrew 2:14). The incarnation, then, was an ultimate act of war, as the early church saw consistently.

Far from teaching any sort of pious resignation, Jesus' whole being, his very God-man identity, was God's ultimate revolt against the devil's tyranny. Rather than teaching us to see the hand of God in all circumstances, Jesus' very being, and certainly his deeds and his teachings, were about teaching us to revolt against the enemy in all circumstances in order to make our circumstance a place where we can discern the hand of God.

From this perspective, one ought never to pray to accept "as from a father's loving hand" an evil event that torture people and let them suffer, for instance a beloved child being killed in an accident of any kind. We ought rather to pray that we and others will be empowered to rise up against the human and angelic evil forces that bring such nightmares about.

This whole scenario, however, obviously raises significant questions concerning traditional assumptions Christians have made about the exercise of God's omnipotence, as we see daily.

For example, what does it mean to affirm that "God is in control of the world" in the light of the fact that throughout the Gospels Jesus assumes that Satan and his army are significantly in control of certain people's lives and, indeed, of the entire world?<sup>41</sup>

How is it possible to live in peace, content with one's situation, if one's situation is also called to live a life of revolt against evil? Such questions should be addressed. Presently a more fundamental task occupies us, the task of simply letting Scripture speak to us and perhaps confront some of our traditional Western assumptions. For Christians who affirm the authority of the Word over their own presuppositions, this is always the first and most important task in any theological endeavor.

The third and final interesting feature of this narrative concerns the fact that the disciples were unable to cast this demon out of the boy. As Mark and Matthew tell the story, the point of the narrative is to drive home the need for faith in God if the kingdom of God is going to expand against the kingdom of Satan.

We are told that the disciples lacked faith and had not prayed enough in treating the boy (Mark 9:29); all the people involved lacked faith (Mark 9:19); even the boy's father had only a wavering faith (Mark 9:24).

Hence the attempted exorcism had been unsuccessful.

---

<sup>41</sup> John Richards drives home the issue poignantly as it concerns demonic possession when he notes: "If there has been one, just one real case of demonic possession in history, then the theologian must have an understanding of God's world in which such a thing is possible" (*But Deliver Us from Evil*, p. 51). The point is, if the world is exhaustively controlled by God, such a phenomenon would not be possible. For an excellent exposition of a biblical model of God's providence which makes the cross its hermeneutical center, see Tupper, E.F (1995) *A Scandalous Providence: The Jesus Story of the Compassion of God*. Macon, Ga.; Mercer University Press.

In contrast to this, Jesus says, all things are possible to one who believes and is willing to pray, including exorcising tenacious demons like the one possessing this young child (Mark 9:23; John 11:40). This reliance on the power of God alone and this emphasis on simple faith and prayer as the means by which God's power is manifested and the kingdom of God is established set Jesus' exorcism and healing ministry apart from the exorcistic and healing activities of his contemporaries.

It was customary for various exorcists and healers of this time to employ a wide variety of magical devices, lengthy incantations and power names (e.g.,) in the attempt to exorcise demons, protect people from evil spirits and heal various diseases.<sup>42</sup>

Jesus' teachings about non-violent direct action and love of enemies are also the acid tests of true Christianity. Just as in the lore of exorcism the Devil cannot bear to utter the name of God, so our false prophets today cannot tolerate mention of the love of enemies.

The God-man warrior and bearer of the kingdom demonstrated kingdom power in overturning this enemy and anticipated his own consummate victory over Satan in raising Jairus's daughter (Mark 5:41-43; Matthew 9:18-26; Luke 8:40-56), the widow's son at Nain (Luke 7:11-17) and Lazarus (John 11:1-44).<sup>43</sup> All such

---

<sup>42</sup> See J Geller, *Forerunners to UDUG-HUL: Sumerian Exorcistic Incantations*, FAS 12 (Stuttgart: Franz Steiner, 1985); H.D. Betz, ed., *The Greek Magical Papyri in Translation Including the Demonic Spells* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1986); E. Yamauchi, "Magic in the Biblical World," *TynBul* 34 (1983): 169-200.

<sup>43</sup> We should perhaps include here Matthew's record that a number of "saints" were resurrected when Jesus died on the cross (Mt 27:52-53). Van der Loos captures the motif well: "the resurrections are signs in which the conquering power of the Messianic Kingdom is manifest and by which it is proclaimed to the world that God is a living God, in whose name the son testifies and acts." See "Miracles of Jesus," p. 566. J.P. Meier (*Mentor, Message and Miracle*, pp. 773-873) argues for the basic historicity of the accounts on a historical-critical basis and concludes that they centrally manifest what Jesus was about (see esp. p. 837).

resuscitations must be viewed as acts of war against a cosmic foe who had been mastering morality for far too long.

Viewed in this light, the various accounts of Jesus' raising people from the dead come to mean a lot more than simply nice miracles that Jesus did for people.

Like his exorcisms, healings and other miracles over nature, they reveal yet another dimension of his war on Satan. As when he saw the sick and hungry, Jesus was moved by compassion toward those who had died and those who mourned, for he knew that these things were never intended to be part of God's creation (John 11:33-35). They were, rather, the work of the devil, and it grieved and angered him to see it.

Jesus' miracles over nature, as well as his healings, exorcisms and especially his resurrection, were definite acts of war that accomplished and demonstrated his victory over Satan. These acts routed demonic forces and thereby established the kingdom of God in people's lives and in nature.

However, their primary significance was eschatological. People are still obviously being demonized; all people still get sick and die; storms still rage and destroy lives; famines are yet prevalent and starve thousands daily. But Jesus' ministry, and especially his death and resurrection, in principle tied up "the strong man" and established the kingdom of God and the restoration of a new humanity in the midst of this war zone.

Jesus set in motion forces that will eventually overthrow the whole of this already fatally damaged Satanic assault upon God's earth and upon humanity.<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>44</sup> Several scholars have noted that Jesus was unique in bringing together the phenomenon of exorcism as both a present deliverance and an eschatological event. See, e.g., G.Theissen, *The Miracle Stories of the Early Christian Tradition*, ed. J.Riches, trans. F. McDonagh (Philadelphia: Fortress, 1983), p. 278; Twelftree, *Jesus the Exorcist*, pp. 217-24.

Gustaf Wingren expresses this “already/not yet” dynamic well when he argues that with Christ’s resurrection. The war of the Lord is finished and the great blow is struck. Never again can Satan tempt Christ, as in the desert.

Jesus is now Lord, Conqueror. But a war is not finished, a conflict does not cease with the striking of the decisive blow. The enemy remains with the scattered remnants of his army, and in pockets here and there a strong resistance may continue.

That is the position of the church today.<sup>45</sup> Jesus’ miraculous ministry, therefore, was not simply symbolic of the (*eschaton*) – in principle it achieved the *eschaton*.

## **SECTION B: JESUS CHRIST OUR VICTOR**

### **12 CHRISTUS VICTOR**

In keeping with the Old Testament and especially the apocalyptic worldview of the time, man have seen that Jesus and his earliest disciples operated within a warfare worldview. In direct contrast to the “enlightened” worldview that has characterized Western culture for the last several hundred years, but in essential agreement with the worldview of almost all other cultures throughout history (and increasingly that of Western culture as well, as it heads into the “post-modern” age).

---

<sup>45</sup> Wingren, *Living Word*, p. 62. It is perhaps worth noting here that Scripture does not generally envisage the eschatological kingdom as “above” the earth so much as it envisages it as “on” the earth. All who overcome will “reign on earth” (Rev 5:10). Just as our bodies will be transformed but will still be our bodies (1 Corinthians 15:35-54), so too the earth will be transformed, but it will nevertheless be our earth (2 Peter 3:13; Revelation 20:8; 21:1, 24).

Jesus and his disciples believed that the universe was inhabited by a myriad of spiritual beings, some good and some evil, which were at war with one another. And they believed that Jesus was the decisive player in this warfare.

Though Jesus' death in principle "drove out" the cosmic murderer (John 12:31; 8:44), this victory has not yet been manifested in the world, for people continue to die. Though Satan's fortress has in principle been toppled and the strong man himself "tied up," his fortress has not yet toppled to the ground. Though the power to set people free from the scourges of this enemy has in principle been established and distributed to all who follow Christ, the world continues to be held hostage by this (now mortally wounded and bound) strong man (1 John 5:19).

For our purposes, we need to investigate five themes related to warfare in the New Testament writings outside the Gospels.

Boyd examine in more detail the New Testament's understanding of Christ's death and resurrection as accomplishing a cosmic victory over God's enemies. This understanding is present in various New Testament authors' view of salvation as deliverance from bondage to the devil.

Various ways Acts and the Epistles portray the demonic realm, about the ongoing activity of the Kingdom of God versus the kingdom of darkness always leads to the victory of the Cross.

## **12.1 The Victory Of The Cross**

The New Testament speaks about the significance of the Cross in a variety of ways: it was an atoning sacrifice for our sins (Hebrew 10:10-14); it satisfied God's justice (Romans 3:25); it provided an example for believers (Philippians 2:5-11; 1 Peter

2:21); and it conquered Satan (John 12:31; Colossians 2:14-15; 1 John 3:8). The Cross-accomplished all of this. The “wisdom” of God in its rich variety” (Ephesians 3:10) is displayed in God’s ability to use this one central event of history to accomplish a number of different things at the same time. But this “variety” raises the question of how these various aspects of the Cross-are related to one another.

### **12.1.1 The Cosmic Significance Of The Cross**

Since at least the time of Anselm in the eleventh century A.D., and especially since the Reformation in the sixteenth century, the tendency of the Western church has been to focus almost all of its attention on the anthropological dimension of the atonement, usually to the neglect of the cosmic dimension that is central to the New Testament. In the standard Protestant view, the chief thing God was accomplishing when He had Jesus die on the cross was satisfying His perfect Justice and thereby atoning for our sins. The work of the cross is centered on us. Other aspects of the Cross, to the extent that they are acknowledged, are seen as subsidiary to this anthropocentric dimension of Christ’s work.

Christ’s work is a profound source of freedom and joy for the believer, and is certainly deeply rooted in Scripture.<sup>46</sup> From the perspective of the New Testament, Boyd maintain the anthropological significance of Christ’s death and resurrection is rooted in something more fundamental and broad that God was aiming at: to defeat once

---

<sup>46</sup> For the classic representative statement of the substitutionary view of the atonement-viz., Anselm’s “satisfaction” theory – see *Cur Deus Homo* 22.1 Reformed Protestant thought eventually developed the “penal substitutionary” version of this general approach. For more recent statements in this vein, see: Morris, L (1956) *The Apostolic Preaching of the Cross*. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Eerdmans Morris, L (1983) *The Atonement: Its Meaning and Significance*. Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press Erickson, M.J (1983-1985) “The Central Theme of Atonement,” in his *Christian Theology*, 3 vols. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Baker, 2:802-23 Patterson, P (1989) “Reflections on the Atonement,” *Criswell Theological Review* 3, 307-20; Scott, J.R.W (1986) *The Cross of Christ*. Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press. Conner, Kevin J (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*. (The Doctrine of the Atonement) Portland, Oregon; Bible Temple Publishing, pp. 191-292.



and for all his cosmic archenemy, Satan, along with the other evil powers under his dominion.

God by establishing Christ as the legitimate ruler of the cosmos, and human beings as his legitimate viceroys upon the earth, He took dominion over Satan's rule.

To state it otherwise, whereas since Anselm the dominant way of thinking about the atonement focused on what it accomplished for humanity (reconciliation to God), and thus viewed what it accomplished against Satan and the evil powers as a by product, the view Boyd espoused is that the New Testament construes the relation between these two aspects of the Cross in the converse order.<sup>47</sup>

Christ's achievement on the Cross is first and foremost a cosmic event – it defeats Satan. In the words of G.H.C. MacGregor: "for Paul, just as... [the] demonic spirits are essentially cosmic powers, so is the redemption which Christ wins a cosmic redemption. Not only is the individual saved from bondage to sin and death... the entire creation is affected by the redemptive event."<sup>48</sup>

Thus as Scripture portrays the matter, the foundational reason Christ appeared was "to destroy the works of the devil" (1 John 3:8), to disarm "the rulers and authorities" (Colossians 2:15) and to "destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil" (Hebrew 2:14).

The consequence of this victory is that he is seated on his rightful throne, the whole cosmos is liberated from a tyrannical and destructive ruler, humanity is delivered

---

<sup>47</sup> Boyd, Gregory A (1997) *God at War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove, Illinois, InterVarsity Press, p. 240.

<sup>48</sup> MacGregor, (1954) "Principalities and Powers: The Cosmic Background of Paul's Thought," *NTS* 1 : 23. Similarly J.Y. Lee demonstrates that in Paul's cosmology, "Jesus was depicted as the Redeemer who came from heaven and died on the cross to rescue not only men but the whole cosmos from demonic powers" ("Interpreting the Demonic Powers in Pauline Thought," *NovT* 12, no.1 [1970]: 67).

“from the power of darkness and transferred...into the kingdom of his beloved Son” (Colossians 1:13), and all who accept it are thereby reinstated to the original position and responsibility of stewards of the creation that God had always intended for us.<sup>49</sup>

While Christ’s substitutionary death for sinful humans is central for understanding what Christ did for us, therefore, this dimension of Christ’s work is possible only because of the broader cosmic victory Christ won on the Cross.

Among other things, regaining this New Testament cosmic warfare emphasis on the Cross is important if we are to arrive at a biblical understanding of the problem of evil. One of the features of Western thought that has most handicapped our efforts to reconcile the existence of evil with a belief in an omnipotent and omnibenevolent God is that we have tended to understand evil, and therefore Christ’s solution to evil, anthropocentrically and individualistically.

---

<sup>49</sup> Aulen, G (1969) *Christus Victor: A Historical Study of the Three Main Types of the Idea of Atonement*, trans. A.G.Hebert New York: Macmillan.

Other scholars who have emphasized this approach to the atonement:

Cave, S (1937) *The Doctrine of the Work of Christ*. Nashville: Cokesbury.

Heim, Karl (1959) *Jesus the Lord*. London: Oliver & Boyd idem, *Jesus the World’s Perfecter: The Atonement and the Renewal of the World*, trans. D.H. van Daalen (Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd, 1959);

Micklem, N (1943) *The Doctrine of Our Redemption*. London: Eyre and Spottiswoode

Leivestad, R (1954) *Christ The Conqueror: Ideas of Conflict and Victory in the New Testament* New York: Macmillan.

Whale, J.S (1960) *Victor and Victim*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Flinger, T (1985) *Christian Theology: An Eschatological Approach*, 2 vols. Nashville: Nelson, 1:303-48.

Macquarrie, J (1956) *Demonology and the Classical Idea of the Atonement*. p. 3-6, 60-63.

Reid, D.G (1982) *The Christus Victor Motif in Paul’s Theology* Ph.D. diss., Fuller Theological Seminary. The original centrality and later decline of the “Christ the victor” theme in the early church has been recently traced by R.A. Greer,

Greer, R.A (1995) *Christ the Victor and the Victim*, *Concordia Theological Quarterly* 59, nos. 1-2 1-30.

McGrath, A (1987) *Understanding Jesus: Who Jesus Christ Is and Why He Matters*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Zondervan, pp. 151-60; Stott, *Cross of Christ*, pp. 227-81.

For example, many theologians have traditionally attempted to explain cosmic evil by appealing to human wills alone, and have attempted to understand the central significance of the cross by appealing to human salvation alone.

From a New Testament perspective, however, as well as from the perspective of our own experience of evil, the existence of evil far outruns what any appeal to human willing is capable of explaining. Further, the significance of Christ's work on the cross far outruns what it accomplishes for human beings. Regaining a biblical emphasis on the cosmic dimension of the cross will broaden our perspective and appreciation of the cure for evil, and thereby broaden our perspective on the nature of evil. Within a full-fledged warfare worldview, neither evil nor its cure is first and foremost about human beings at all.

Rather, it is, we shall see, primarily about free willing agents ("the powers") whose cosmic power and influence dwarf the free agency of human beings. Only when this is understood can we arrive at a worldview – a biblical worldview – in which evil is not unexpected, is not about God's planning and activity, and hence is not in any given instance an unsolvable intellectual problem.

### **12.1.2 Subjugating The Enemy**

Something of the centrality of the warfare theme in Scripture and especially of the warfare dimension of Christ's death, is signified by the fact that the first messianic prophecy given to us in the Bible proclaims that Christ will crush the head of Satan.

Symbolically building on the natural antagonism between people and snakes, the Lord says to the serpent that had just deceived Eve: "I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; he will strike your head, and you will strike his heel" (Genesis 3:15).

As traditionally interpreted, this verse proclaims that the Messiah will ultimately end the large-long struggle between God and the serpent by crushing its head. According to Ralph Martin, this understanding dates back at least to the translation of the Septuagint and is found in many rabbinic writings as well.<sup>50</sup> A similar understanding of this passage also seems to lie behind a number of New Testament texts (Romans 16:19-20); (Hebrews 2:14); (Revelation 12) and, according to some scholars, is even behind the designation of Jesus as “the Son of Man” and of Mary as “woman.”<sup>51</sup>

However much the understanding is or is not tied to Genesis 3:15, it is clear that in the understanding of the New Testament, Christ came to earth primarily to accomplish what this interpretation of Genesis 3:15 proclaims: “to destroy the works of the devil” (1 John 3:8). The misery and bondage that the serpent first brought about in Eden in principle came to an end when the prophecy given in Eden was fulfilled.

On the cross the serpent struck the “heel” of Christ (more on this below), but it was Christ who ultimately crushed the head of the serpent.<sup>52</sup>

---

<sup>50</sup> On the LXX, see R.A. Martin, “The Earliest Messianic Interpretation of Genesis 3:15,” *JBL* (Journal of Biblical Literature) 84 (1965): 425-27. On rabbinic use of the passage, see M. McNamara, *The New Testament and the Palestinian Targum to the Pentateuch*, AnBib 27 (Rome: Pontifical Biblical Institute, 1966), pp. 217-22; G.J. Wenham, *Genesis 1-15*, WBC 1 (Waco, Tex.: Word, 1987), p. 80.

<sup>51</sup> See Wenham, *Genesis 1-15*, pp. 80-81; T.Gallus, *Die “Frau” in Gen 3:15* (Klagenfurt: Carinthia, 1979). For recent defenses of the messianic interpretation of Genesis 3:15, against the traditional historical-critical view that we are dealing here merely with an etiological tale, see G. Van Groningen, *Messianic Revelation in the Old Testament* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker, 1990), pp. 106-15; W. Kaiser, *The Messiah in the Old Testament* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Zondervan, 1996), pp. 36-42.

<sup>52</sup> Writing from within the “already/not yet” tension of the New Testament, Paul could apply this verse to the victory believers will ultimately have in our battle with Satan as well. Hence he tells the Roman Christians: “The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet” (Romans 16:20). What has in principle already occurred on Calvary will in fact occur in our experience: God will crush Satan, and as we stand “in Christ” this crushing will be underneath our feet (Ephesians 1:19-22).

A related warfare passage that has been traditionally interpreted as messianic is Psalm 110:1. Here David says: "The Lord says to my lord, 'Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies your footstool.'" In David's day it was common for a king to symbolize his conquest of another kingdom by using the defeated ruler's neck as a footstool (Joshua 10:24). This prophecy is proclaiming that the Messiah would rule at the "right hand" (viz, the power) of God until he did just that to his enemies. The rulership of the Messiah, clearly, is about subjugating enemies. The importance of this passage for the New Testament is reflected by the fact that no other Old Testament passage is quoted so often.<sup>53</sup>

In a saying found in all three Synoptic Gospels, Jesus indirectly applies this verse to himself (Mt 12:44; Mk 12:36; Lk 20:43), and it is explicitly applied to Christ a number of other times throughout the rest of the New Testament.

In almost every instance, it is associated with Christ's death and resurrection. Hence in the first sermon preached by the newly birthed church, Peter proclaims,

***This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.***

***Acts 2:33: Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.***

***Acts 2:34: For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The LORD said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,***

***Acts 2:35: Until I make thy foes thy footstool.***

***Acts 2:32-35(KJV)***

Peter concludes by saying,

---

<sup>53</sup> See Matthew 22:45; Mark 12:35-37; Luke 20:41-44; Acts 2:34-36; Hebrews 1:13; 5:6, 10; 6:20; 7:11, 15, 17, 21. Other passages that show varying degrees of influence from Psalm 110 include Matthew 26:64; Mark 14:62; [16:19]; Luke 22:69; Acts 5:31; 7:55-56; Romans 8:34; 1 Corinthians 15:25; Ephesians 1:20; Colossians 3:1; Hebrews 1:3; 8:1; 10:12-13; 1 Peter 3:22; Revelation 3:21. It is also prevalent among early extracanonical writings as well, as such as 1 Clement 36:5 and Barnabas 12:10.

***Therefore let the entire house of Israel know with certainty that God has made him both Lord and Messiah, this Jesus whom you crucified.***  
***Acts 2:36(KJV)***

Peter is clearly depicting the significance of Christ's death and resurrection as centering on the way it fulfills (Psalm 110).

***The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.***  
***Psalms 110:1(KJV)***

By raising Christ from the dead, the Father has made his Son "both Lord and Messiah," and has now set him at "his right hand" so he can reign over his enemies, until they all are made his footstool.<sup>54</sup>

In this sense the death and resurrection of Jesus was, for Peter, first and foremost an act of war. Paul expresses the same conviction. In a passage that is talking about the resurrection, Paul writes,

***For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.***

---

<sup>54</sup> Whereas the "enemies" originally referred to in Psalm 110:1 were undoubtedly human political opponents, there is evidence of a very early (pre-Pauline) tradition that applied Psalm 110 to Christ's victory over his foes, among whom are counted Satan and the demons, "angelic" powers, as well as wicked humans. For an unsurpassed, comprehensive and insightful exposition on the use of this verse the New Testament, see D.M. Hay, *Glory at the Right Hand: Psalm 110 in Early Christianity* (Nashville: Abington, 1973), esp. pp. 122-29. Other helpful works include W.R.G. Loader, "Christ at the Right Hand – Psalm 110:1 in the New Testament," *NTS* 24 (1978): 208-13; O. Cullmann, *The Christology of the New Testament*, trans. S.C. Guthrie and C.A.M. Hall, rev.ed. (Philadelphia: Fortress, 1963), pp. 222-24. B.A. Stevens argues, with some force, that the Old Testament's divine warrior motif holds the key to understanding Jesus' messianic self-consciousness ("Jesus as the Divine Warrior," *EspTim* 94 [1982-1983]: 326-29). On the broader messianic use of Psalm 110:1 in early Christianity, see D.E. Aune, "Christian Prophecy and the Messianic Status of Jesus," in *The Messiah: Developments in Earliest Judaism and Christianity*, ed. J.H. Charlesworth et al. (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1992), pp. 404-22; D.Juel, "Christ at the Right Hand: The Use of Psalm 110 in the New Testament," in his *Messianic Exegesis: Christological Interpretation of the Old Testament in Early Christianity* (Philadelphia: Fortress, 1988), pp. 135-50; Van Groningen, *Messianic Revelation*, pp. 390-97.

***But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.***

***Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.***

***For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet.***

***I Corinthians 15:22-25(KJV)***

As David Hay notes, “the kingdom of Christ is here represented exclusively in terms of a subjugation of powers to him.” He adds, “The powers chiefly in view seem to be supernatural ones.”<sup>55</sup> The resurrection enthroned Christ over every “ruler, authority, and power,” and when they are finally (*katargeō*) “destroyed”, the goal of the incarnation, death and resurrection of the Son of God will be achieved.<sup>56</sup>

As with Peter, the death and resurrection of Christ was, for Paul, most fundamentally a decisive act of war initiated by God against everything that opposes Him.

It put Christ in a position above all demonic powers, and he shall continue to battle from this exalted position until every one of these powers has been destroyed – until what he accomplished in principle through his death and resurrection is realized as a completed act.

In a similar fashion, the author of Hebrews notes that Jesus is superior to all angelic powers because it was to him, not them, that the Father offered to “sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet” (Hebrew 1:13).

---

<sup>55</sup> Hay, *Glory at the Right Hand*, p. 124.

<sup>56</sup> Note that Paul says the hostile powers will be “destroyed” *katargeō* (*katargeō*). Partly owing to his pacifistic convictions, partly to his denial that “the powers” have an autonomous existence and can autonomously will over and against human beings and social groups. Wink holds that all the powers will ultimately be redeemed. See his *Engaging the Powers: Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination* (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1992). This position, I shall later argue, is not supported in Scripture.

Later, fusing the theme of the cross as the means by which atonement is made for sinners and the theme of the cross as the means by which Jesus comes to reign over his enemies, this author notes that this enthronement occurred only because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross (Hebrew 10:12-13; Hebrew 1:3).

We again see that Jesus' death and resurrection were the means by which He gained the decisive upper hand over the enemies of God.

In the light of the foregoing, the assessment of the central significance of Psalm 110 for the New Testament given by Oscar Cullmann must surely be judged as warranted:

Nothing shows more clearly how the concept of the present Lordship of Christ and also of his consequent victory over the angel powers stands at the very center of early Christian thought than the frequent citation of (Psalm 110:1), not only in isolated books, but in the entire New Testament.<sup>57</sup>

### **12.1.3 Seating At The Right Hand Of God**

The theme of the resurrected Messiah reigning victorious over his enemies, based on (Psalm 110:1), also lies behind many of the references throughout the New Testament to Christ being seated "at the right hand of God." Each of them refers to Christ's being enthroned in a position of strength ("right hand") and hence in a position over his enemies. For example, "Peter and the other apostles" proclaim that because Jesus was raised from the dead, "God exalted him at his right hand as Leader and Saviour that he might give repentance to Israel and forgiveness of sins" (Acts 5:31).

---

<sup>57</sup> Cullmann, O (1962) *Christ and Time*, rev.ed., trans. F.V. Wilson (London: SCM, 1962), p. 193.



Through Jesus' death and resurrection, the former "ruler of the world" has been "driven out" (John 12:31) and a new "Leader," a legitimate ruler, has been enthroned in his place.<sup>58</sup> Whereas the former ruler held humanity in misery, sin and bondage, this Leader offers "repentance and forgiveness of sins" at no cost.

Christ becomes our "Savior", because He has become our "Leader" by conquering the old "ruler of the world" through his death and resurrection. Paul has something similar in mind when he writes that no one can condemn the believer because Jesus, who now justifies us, died and was raised to life and is now seated "at the right hand of God" (Rom 8:34), the very place from whence Satan used to accuse us (Zechariah 3:1). Because he now rules from this exalted position, Paul says, nothing can separate us from the love of Christ: "neither angels nor demons ... nor any powers, neither height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation" (Romans 8:38-39).

As has been generally recognized in the secondary literature, the point of this last passage is to say in effect that every possible form of demonic power has been subjugated to Christ.<sup>59</sup>

Thus while these demonic spirits can perhaps still bring persecution, famine, danger and death (Rom 8:35-36) – they have not yet been utterly "destroyed" (1 Corinthians 15:24) – they cannot separate the believer from the love of God.

---

<sup>58</sup> Hence, speaking eschatologically, Susan Garrett writes: "When Jesus ascends to take his seat at the right hand of God-the place traditionally occupied by Satan [see Zechariah 3:1] – Satan will fall to earth... Jesus will receive the worship that Satan had wrongly requested [Luke 4:7; 24:52]. It will only be a matter of time until God will put all things in subjection under Jesus' feet" ("Exodus from Bondage: Luke 9:31 and Acts 12:1-24," CBQ (Catholic Biblical Quarterly) 52 [1990]: 669).

<sup>59</sup> Paul's closing reference to "any other creature" clearly entails that he was referring to some sort of demonic beings even with his reference to "height and depth." A solid case can be made that he was referring to well-known astrological deities whom Paul saw as demonic. On this see J.D.G. Dunn, Romans 1-8, WBC (World Biblical Commentary) 38A (Waco, Tex.: Word, 1988), p. 513.

Christ's reigning in the power of God secures the believers' standing in him (Luke 10:18-20). In just the same way, Peter notes that baptism now saves believers "through the resurrection of Jesus Christ, who has gone into heaven and is at the right hand of God, with angels, authorities, and powers made subject to him" (1 Peter 3:21-22).

The ordinance of baptism has meaning, Peter says, not because it is a literal washing (1 Peter 3:21), but because it connects the believer with the death and resurrection of Christ. The foremost thing that the death and resurrection of Christ accomplished, we again see, was the subjugation of all other cosmic powers under him. In baptism, therefore, believers express and participate in Christ's cosmic victory.<sup>60</sup> Hence too, Peter notes in this same context how Jesus, after his crucifixion, preached to "spirits" who had been imprisoned since the days of (Noah 3:18-19).

The old rulers held people in bondage; the new ruler sets them free – apparently even those who were imprisoned before he arrived.<sup>61</sup>

Along similar lines, Paul prays that the Christians at Ephesus will come to an understanding of "the immeasurable greatness of his power for us who believe," to which he adds: "according to the working of his great power. God put this power to work in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places" (Ephesians 1:19-20).

---

<sup>60</sup> Indeed, Jesus is throughout the New Testament called "Lord" for just this reason. He is Lord over all things, including his enemies, "the powers." All who freely accept his lordship are therefore themselves freed from the tyranny of these powers. Though he does not explicitly refer to Psalm 110, Wingren forcefully expresses the same conviction: "The New Testament, *kerugma* (*kerygma*) is news of victory in the conflict that is the theme of the Bible as a whole. To say that Christ is Lord of all the Biblical writings are just another way of saying that he is victor in the war that the different writings describe in various ways" (*The Living Word: A Theological Study of Preaching and the Church*, trans. V. Prague [Philadelphia: Muhlenberg, 1960 (1949)], pp. 50-51).

<sup>61</sup> The issues surrounding this controversial passage shall be discussed below.

It was, again, through Christ's death and resurrection that Jesus came to be seated in the power position ("right hand") of the Father.

As Karl Heim puts it, the cross was "God's final settlement of the satanic opposing power which has arisen against God.<sup>154</sup> Hence Christ is now exalted "in the heavenly places." Where are these "heavenly places"? They are, Paul continues, "far above all rule and authority and power and dominion and above every name that is named ... And he has put all things under his feet and has made him the head over all things for the church" (Ephesians 1:21-22).

The point is unmistakably clear. Through the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, God stripped Satan and all levels of demons of all their power (Colossians 2:15). Therefore Christ now reigns in the power of God far above all such demonic powers.

Expressing the tension of the "already / not yet" that characterizes the entire New Testament, Paul can here say that "all things" are already "under his feet," though the actual manifestation of this truth is yet in the future. But the central point remains: the work of the cross was about dethroning a cruel, illegitimate ruler and reinstating a loving, legitimate one: Jesus Christ. When Jesus Christ is reinstated, all who are aligned with his rule, all who are "in Christ," all who are his "bride" and part of his "body," are reinstated to their appropriate position of authority as well. In a word, we are saved because he is victorious.

#### **12.1.4 From Glory To Glory**

Several key passages in the New Testament express this warfare understanding of the cross and resurrection by tying in Christ's post resurrection glory with his pre-existent glory as the Son of God. Perhaps the clearest example of this is found in Philippians 2. Here, as a means of encouraging humility among the Christians at

Philippi, Paul tells his congregation to follow the example of Christ, who, though he was “in very nature God,” did not grasp after “equality with God.”

Rather, he emptied himself and took on “the very nature of a servant.” Indeed, in contrast to Adam, Christ became obedient to the Father to the point of death, “even death on a cross” (Philippians 2:6-9). For this reason, Paul concludes,

***Philippians 2:9: Therefore God has highly exalted Him, and has given Him a name which is above every name,***

***Philippians 2:10: that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of heavenly ones, and of earthly ones, and of ones under the earth;***

***Philippians 2:11: and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.***

***Philippians 2:9-11(MKJV)***

According to this passage, the primary thing that Jesus’ death and resurrection accomplished was to enthrone Christ in the place where he rightfully belongs. Jesus has always been “by very nature god,” according to Paul. As the divine Son and Creator of the cosmos (John 1:1-3, 1 Corinthians 8:6; Colossians 1:15-17), He is deserving of the highest honor that can be given.

But not everything “in heaven,” “on earth” and “under the earth” acknowledges this. Indeed, as man has seen, much in these realms has been explicitly fighting against Christ’s lordship.

This rebellion, however, is coming to an end, writes Paul, because of Christ’s incarnation, death and resurrection. Through these means Christ has now won back his lordship, and it is simply a matter of time before every creature in heaven, on earth and even in hell acknowledges this fact. Every knee shall bow.<sup>62</sup>

---

<sup>62</sup> Since J.D.G. Dunn’s work *Christology in the Making: A New Testament Inquiry into the Origins of the Doctrine of the Incarnation* (Philadelphia: Westminster, 1980), some scholars have questioned the traditional understanding of Philippians 2:5-11 as reflecting a pre-Pauline belief in Jesus’ preexistence.

The same theme is expressed in Colossians 1:15-20.

Here Paul expresses Christ's rightful rule over all of creation by saying that Christ is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation; for in him all things in heaven and on earth created, things visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or powers.

All things have been created through him and for him. He himself is before all things, and in him all things hold together. (Colossians 1:15-17).

As the Creator of all, the Son of God is the rightful ruler of all, but some of the "thrones," "dominion," "rulers" and "powers." Christ created have apparently chosen to fight against this lordship rather than to carry out their functions in harmony with it. For now, Paul continues, these powers need to be "reconciled." Paul immediately follows up his hymn of creation with a hymn of redemption.

***And He is the Head of the body, the church, who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead, that He may be pre-eminent in all things.***

***Colossians 1:19: For it pleased the Father that in Him all fullness should dwell.***

***Colossians 1:20: And through Him having made peace through the blood of His cross, it pleased the Father to reconcile all things to Himself through Him, whether the things on earth or the things in Heaven.***

***Colossians 1:18-20(MKJV)***

---

N.T. Wright has effectively demonstrated, however, that even for one who grants an Adam Christology, this passage nonetheless entails a concept of Christ's preexistence and a strong claim in regard to this divinity. See his "Adam in Pauline Christology," SBLSP (SBL Seminar Papers), 1983, ed. K.H. Richards (Chico, Calif.: Scholars Press, 1983), pp. 359-89; idem, "Jesus Christ is Lord: Philippians 2:5-11," in his *Climax of the Covenant: Christ and the Law in Pauline Theology* (Edinburgh: T & T Clark, 1991), pp. 56-98. But a number of scholars dispute the claim of an Adam Christology in this passage. See, e.g., I.H. Marshall's review of Dunn's book in *TJ2* (Trinity Journal) no.2 (1981): 241-45; T.F. Glasson, "Two Notes on the Philippians Hymn (2:6-11)," *NTS* 21, no.1 (1974): 137-39; M Erickson, *The Word Became Flesh: A Contemporary Incarnational Christology* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker, 1991), pp.475- 79; on a popular level, my *Oneness Pentecostals and the Trinity* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker, 1992), pp. 106-8.

---

The logic of the passage is clear enough. The One who created all things is seeking again to have supremacy over all things by being “the head of the body, the church.” He is the head of this body by virtue of the fact that he became incarnate, shed his blood and rose from the dead. Through his death, and by means of this body, He is ultimately going to “reconcile to himself all things,” including, apparently, the demonic powers that have thus far opposed him.

Several things are noteworthy about this passage. First, it once again stresses that the focal point of Jesus’ death and resurrection was ending the cosmic war between himself and his enemies. As throughout the New Testament, this is the primary purpose of Christ’s death and resurrection.

Second, this passage stresses the role of the church, his “body,” in bringing about this eschatological reality. The church is called to carry on Jesus’ ministry and to manifest the victory of the cross to a world that is still under bondage to hostile forces. Third, Paul here portrays the end of Christ’s exaltation as reconciliation. Through his death on the cross Christ “makes peace” where once there was war.

How we are to square this cosmic reconciliation with Paul’s teaching elsewhere that the hostile cosmic enemies of God shall be “destroyed” (1Corinthians 15:24), and with the general New Testament teaching that Christ’s enemies shall be made into his footstool, is a difficult question.

Some use this passage to support a form of universalism, and simply decide that other passages which appear to teach something else are either provisional (viz, speaking about a time prior to the ultimate end) or are simply less inspired. Such a position attributes to Paul a rather serious inconsistency and undermines a strong view of biblical inspiration. Here we cannot and need not embark on the difficult subject of the New Testament’s eschatological perspective. Simply note that it is not

self-evident that “reconciliation,” as Paul uses it here, and “redemption,” as it is used by Paul and other New Testament authors, are equivalent concepts.<sup>63</sup>

Rather, it may be that in saying all things shall be ultimately reconciled to the lordship of Christ, Paul is simply saying that nothing will ultimately be able to effectively oppose this lordship. There is “peace” throughout Christ’s cosmos because everything is put in its proper place. In the case of the unredeemable hostile powers of darkness, this place under Christ’s feet.

In any event, it is again clear that the central means by which the Creator has regained supremacy in his creation was by dying on the cross and rising from the dead. As the post-apostolic church almost universally conceded, this is the primary significance of Christ’s sacrifice. The cross was a cosmic event that defeated the enemies of God, enthroned the Son of God, and thereby in principle liberated the whole cosmos from its bondage to an illegitimate evil ruler.

As expressed by Robert Roth: “Atonement between the creator God and his rebellious creatures includes first of all a victory over the adversary and then liberating, adopting, cleansing, renewing, justifying, sanctifying and finally raising from the dead.”<sup>64</sup>

---

<sup>63</sup> The case against a universalistic reading of the New Testament is quite solid, to the point where the majority of New Testament scholars regard the issue as closed. See W.V. Crockett, “Universalism and the Theology of Paul” (Ph.D. diss., University of Glasgow, 1986); idem, “Will God Save Everyone in the End?” in *Though No Fault of Their Own: The Fate of Those Who Have Never Heard*, ed. W.V. Crockett and J.G. Sigountos (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker, 1991), pp. 159-66; J. Sanders, *No Other Name: An Investigation into the Destiny of the Unevangelized* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), pp. 81-128; N.T. Wright, “Towards a Biblical View of Universalism,” *Themelios* 4 (1979): 54-58.

<sup>64</sup> Roth, R. P. (1986) “Christ And The Powers Of Darkness: Lessons From Colossians,” *Word And World* 6, no.3: p. 341.

---

Contrary to the dominant way in which it has been interpreted since Anselm, then, Jesus' death and resurrection was not simply, or even primarily, about God reconciling humanity to himself, though it certainly accomplished this too.

Rather, it was, as Heim puts it, primarily about "the overcoming of the diabolical power, the mortal enmity to God."<sup>65</sup> It is about everything else that pertains to salvation because it is first and foremost about this.

## **12.2 Deliverance From The Devil**

While the understanding that the central significance of the cross was to "destroy the works of the devil" (1 John 3:8) may be unconventional, at least since Anselm, it should surprise us if this were not the case, given the centrality of the warfare theme that we have already observed running throughout Jesus' ministry. The one motif that unifies all the other aspects of Jesus' ministry is his mission to spread the kingdom of God by pushing back the kingdom of darkness.

It should strike us as peculiar if Jesus' death and resurrection were not most fundamentally understood in this light as well. Indeed, as we have seen, Jesus himself anticipated this warfare interpretation when he spoke of his death as a "ransom" (Matthew 20:28; Mark 10:45) and portrayed it as the "goal" of his exorcising and healing ministry (Luke 13:32).

When the rest of the New Testament outside the Gospels depicts Christ's death as disarming and destroying the devil and as thereby restoring to Christ his rightful throne as Creator and Savior of the world, above all powers and authorities that oppose him, it is simply speaking in a manner that is consistent with what we have learned about Jesus' ministry in the Gospels.

---

<sup>65</sup> Heim, *Jesus The World's Perfecter*, p. 72.



Also consistent with the Gospels, we must now add, is the New Testament's portrayal of our salvation as being primarily the result of Christ having successfully carried out this cosmic warfare feat.

Christ drove out demons and healed the sick in order to establish God's kingdom against the kingdom of darkness and people who received it were the benefactors of this mission. So it is throughout the New Testament: Salvation is most fundamentally construed as being the direct result of Jesus having overcome the powers of darkness through his work on the cross. In other words, Christ's cosmic victory results in our personal salvation.

### **12.2.1 Christ's Victory Applied To Us**

The basic pattern found throughout the New Testament when it speaks of our salvation in Christ is first to state what Christ accomplished on a cosmic level, then to present what this means to us. This pattern reemphasizes the point that the central significance of the cross is found in the fact that through it Christ won a cosmic battle against Satan. Its anthropological significance is a consequence of this.

To give a few examples, we saw above how Paul, in writing to the Colossians, portrayed Christ's death and resurrection as the means by which the one who by nature should reign supreme comes to actually reign supreme – over and against forces that might resist him.

The whole of the creation comes from Christ and exists for Christ, and now, because of his death and resurrection, it is just a matter of time before he ultimately reconciles his creation – including his opponents – to himself (Colossians 1:15-20). Only after this cosmic dimension of the cross is stressed does Paul then turn to talk about what

this means for believers. Immediately after stating that Christ has accomplished cosmic peace “through the blood of his cross” (Colossians 1:20), Paul adds:

***And you who were once estranged and hostile in mind, doing evil deeds, he has now reconciled***

***in his fleshly body through death, so as to present you holy and blameless and irreproachable before him***

***Colossians 1:21-22(KJV)***

This passage clearly presents our reconciliation to God as one aspect of the cosmic reconciliation to God accomplished through the cross. The cosmic conquest, one might say, logically precedes the anthropological application.

The implication of the cosmic conquest for us is that we are rendered “irreproachable” or “free accusation.” Since our sins are atoned for, “the accuser” has no more claim on us, and hence we are set free (Romans 8:1, 31, 33; Colossians 2:13-15). But it is crucial to note that this freedom is a function of a victorious enthronement, the significance of which far outruns what it does for us.

The cross and resurrection are anthropologically significant only because they are first of all cosmologically significant.

We simply cannot grasp the depth of the significance of the cross and resurrection so long as we restrict our perspective to what they accomplish for us, any more than we can make sense of the evil the cross and resurrection in principle overcame so long as we restrict our perspective to human evil.

An impoverished understanding of evil and a deficient understanding of the work of Christ go hand in hand. Both are fully intelligible only as cosmological realities, and only as related to spiritual war.

The same pattern is found in (Ephesians 1:22- 2:8). Paul first praises God for his display of the “immeasurable greatness of his power” (Ephesians 1:19) in raising Jesus from the dead (Ephesians 1:19-20).

This act is what seated Christ at his “right hand” and enthroned him “in the heavenly places, far above all rule and authority and power and dominion” (Ephesians 1:21). Hence this act brought about God’s ultimate victory, for through it God “has put all things under his feet” (Ephesians 1:22).

Having spoken of the cosmic dimension of Christ’s resurrection, Paul then turns to apply it to the status of believers: “You were dead through the trespasses and sins in which you once lived, following the course of this world, following the ruler of the power of the air, the spirit that is now at work among those who are disobedient” (Ephesians 2:1-2).

Whether we knew it or not, we believers used to be “dead” in our sin and enslaved by “the ruler of the power of the air,” as are all non-believers even now, according to Paul. We therefore indulged “the desires of flesh and senses, and we were by nature children of wrath, like everyone else” (Ephesians 2:3). We were part of a damned kingdom, under a diabolical ruler, and were ourselves headed for destruction.

However, through the resurrection, Paul is saying, Christ has overthrown this kingdom with its diabolical ruler, and hence we are slaves no longer. Indeed, we are not only no longer under Satan’s authority, but in Christ we are far above it. For God has “raised us up [Christ] and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus” (Ephesians 2:4-6).<sup>66</sup> Because of God’s “great love” and “grace,” every

---

<sup>66</sup> On Paul’s concept of “the heavenlies,” see A.T. Lincoln, “A Re-examination of ‘the Heavenlies’ in Ephesians,” *NTS* 19 (1973): 468-83. For a helpful study that highlights the cosmic / heavenly dimension of Paul’s understanding of salvation, see A.T. Lincoln, *Paradise Now and Not Yet: Studies*

believer has been “saved” from “the ruler of the power of the air” and has been given all the inheritance that belongs to Christ (Ephesians 2:7-9; Ephesians 1:7, 14). Our fundamental status has changed. We are each “a new creation; everything old has passed away; see, everything has become new” (2 Corinthians 5:17).<sup>67</sup> For our purposes, most important to note here is that everything said about the believer on an anthropological level is said on the basis of what has already been said about Christ on a cosmic level.

Our salvation is a function of Christ’s exalted lordship, and his lordship is a function of his victory over, and now enthronement above, all “rule and authority and power and dominion, and above every name that is named” (Ephesians 1:21).

We are allowed by God’s grace to share in the cosmic victory Christ has accomplished through the cross. There is quite literally a new King on the throne. And all who will simply acknowledge this kingship have a share in his gracious kingdom and even in his powerful authority over opposing forces. We shall reign with Christ over all the earth (Revelation 5:10; Matthew 19:28; Luke 22:28-30; 2 Timothy 2:12; Revelation 3:21; 20:4-6; 22:5).

Our creation-covenant commission to rule the earth (Genesis 1:26-31) shall at last be fulfilled. We may go further still.

Elsewhere in Ephesians Paul tells us that our sharing in Christ’s victory is itself of the cosmic purpose God was aiming at through the cross?

---

in the Role of the Heavenly Dimension in Paul’s Thought with Special Reference to His Eschatology, SNTSMS 43 (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1981).

<sup>67</sup> Donald Guthrie explains the warfare significance of this verse well when he notes that the “old” and the “new” here refer to “the death of the old creation dominated by adverse spiritual forces, and the emergence of the new creation in which everything is Christ-centered” (New Testament Theology [Downers Grove, Ill.: Inter Varsity Press, 1981], p. 648).

---

Concerning the preaching of the Gospel, Paul writes that God's intent was "that through the church the wisdom of God in its rich variety might now be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places... in accordance with the eternal purpose that he has carried out in Christ Jesus our Lord" (Ephesians 3:10-11).

The point seems to be that the Lord is using us earthly benefactors of his cosmic victory (the church) to display to the angelic society of the heavenly realms, including the now defeated powers, the greatness of the Creator's wisdom in defeating his foes.<sup>68</sup>

We who used to be captives of the Satanic kingdom are now the very one who proclaim its demise. The church is, as it were, God's eternal "trophy case" of grace – we eternally exist "to the praise of his glorious grace" (Ephesians 1:6; Ephesians 1:12) – and we are this because we evidence God's brilliance and power in bringing about the destruction of his foes, and thus the liberation of his people.<sup>69</sup>

On a strictly natural level this plan, appears absurd. For it is painfully obvious that the church is, and has always been, full of a great deal that does not in any way glorify God.

---

<sup>68</sup> Commenting on this verse from a contemporary African context (a context of which talk of demonic powers is part and parcel), B. Abijole writes, "For Paul, Christ's ministry of reconciliation is not confined in its scope humanity, it is cosmic. By the death of Christ the powers lost all the control they ever had on man" ("St. Paul's Concept of Principalities and Powers in African Context," *Africa Theological Journal* 17, no.2 [1988]: 125-26).

<sup>69</sup> Wink takes Ephesians 3:10 to be a mandate to preach to the powers, which he takes to be the "interiority" of human institutions. For example, on the basis of this text he says: "It is part of the church's task to remind corporations and business that profit is not the bottom line, that as 'creatures' of God they have their divine vocation the achievement of human benefaction" (Ephesians 3:10) (*Engaging the Powers: Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination* [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1992], p. 68). In response, there is no precedent in the New Testament or, with the exception of Origen, in the early church for the notion that the church is to preach to the powers. Nor is it easy to understand how making known the manifold wisdom of God can be interpreted as trying to get the powers (business!) to change.

## 13 CONCLUSION

Tal Brook stated<sup>70</sup> that the Beast's aim would be to usurp God with the full powers of die world under his dominion. To achieve this, he will try to totally abolish any evidence of the true God from the face of the earth, starting with destroying the knowledge of God to finally destroying God's people. The knowledge aspect of die attack is not new (*Time* lavishing the Jesus Seminar, Media specials on Christ to deconstruct Christianity in a kind of endless gnawing process, plus other options like the United Religions, ad infinitum). Truly, if there have been emperors before in the flesh, they can come again. If God came in the flesh as Christ, so can Satan come to eclipse and possess the Antichrist in the form of a man? It would make sense then that there would be a mystery religion based on the divinity of man. If gurus and teachers can be divine, surely this figure will be - only more so!

Dwight Kinman stated<sup>71</sup> that the final victory - The church of Jesus Christ has powerful enemies: It is facing its greatest danger, but it is also facing its greatest challenge and its greatest opportunity.

But the church will never be defeated. It will emerge a glorious church, without spot or wrinkle, washed in the blood of the Lamb. Our Commander in Chief said, ...upon this rock (the testimony that Jesus Christ is the Son of the Living God) I will build My church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it (Matthew 16).

***And I also say to you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.***

***Matthew 16:18(MKJV)***

---

<sup>70</sup> Brooke, Tal (2000) One Word. USA: End Run Publication., p. 212.

<sup>71</sup> Kinman, Dwight L (1995) The World's Last Dictator. USA: Printed In The United States Of America., p188.

Our victory was pre-written by our God in Rev. 12:11: And they overcame him (Satan) by the blood of the Lamb, and by the **word of their testimony**; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? ... **Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through Him that loved us.** For I am persuaded that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come ... shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus, our Lord (Rom. 8:35-39).

Prof. Dr. M J Brand argued that<sup>72</sup> Christians are members of the body of Christ, who is our Head (1 Corinthians 12:27); (Ephesians 1:22-23; 4:11-15). A body's members operate by listening to and obedient to their Head. So it is with believers in relation to Christ, our Head. Jesus Christ leads and guides us through His Spirit. Only as we walk with the Spirit do we carry out the desires of the Head. Using a biblical analogy, we are like soldiers stationed in a foreign country that must not get so "*entangled in everyday affairs*" that we stop being attentive to the moment-by-moment, commands of our "*enlisting officer*," Jesus Christ (2 Timothy 2:4).

Jesus Christ died, and in this painful sea of ambiguity we participate in His sufferings and death (Romans 6:3-5; 8:16-18; 1 Corinthians 4:9-12; Colossians 1:24). But Jesus also rose from the dead. And just as His atoning death provides the key to understanding that man are before God, His Resurrection provides the key to understanding what we will be before God. Though we are afflicted now, we know that because he conquered sin, death and the devil, we too will ultimately overcome

---

<sup>72</sup> Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie MJ, (2005) An exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-theological perspective. Print and Book binding Solutions Pretoria. RSA., p. 898.

---

them. We too will be raised from the dead and will eternally live and reign in His unsurpassable love and joy.

Tal Brook comments<sup>73</sup> that in the absence of redemption, cynicism is simply despair. In the light of redemption, however, cynicism is truly the ground of hope, as the universal failings of our fallen race are met and overcome in the universal Savior.

The Gospel asserts both sides of that redemptive paradox. Christ converts the works of evil to the purposes of God, yet He still affirms the wickedness of sin. Christ does not excuse the wrongness of the evil He confronts, but neither is He content to merely punish it in retaliatory judgment. Instead, through His crucifixion, He achieves a much deeper and more far-reaching victory. In His sacrifice, Christ turns evil inside out by reversing its meaning: from bad to good, from wrong to right, from defeat to victory—and above all, from death to life. He purges wrong of its wrongness by making it serve His love: “You meant evil... but God meant it for good” (Genesis 50:20).

God's *modus operandi* reverses evil from within, as the works of evil are turned (in the end) to the service of God. God's ability to weave the artifacts of evil into the pattern of His goodness is the heart of the Good News and the meaning of the Incarnation. It is also the delightful irony of the Gospel: Christ (the innocent one) submits to His death, and to the “triumph of injustice” that it represents, and His submission gives rise to the Resurrection, which overthrows injustice as well as death. As the Russian Orthodox liturgy puts it, “Christ has risen from the dead, trampling down death by death.”

That ironic paradox of the Gospel means that “sanctified cynicism” is more than an oxymoron. It means that Christians can have a realistic, clear-eyed view of the fallen

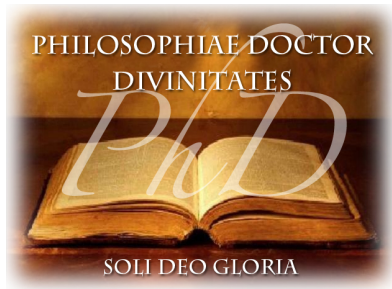
---

<sup>73</sup> Brooke, Tal (1997) *Virtual Gods*. Oregon, USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers., pp. 187-188.



world without succumbing to the bleak despair that normally accompanies such knowledge.

-----oOo-----



## CONCLUSION

Satan and the demons are no match for Jesus Christ, the God-man. In face of satanic opposition, the Cross-accomplished God's self glorification, released the devil's prisoners, publicly routed evil spirits, and sealed their judgment. Though judged, Satan and his angels are actively promoting apostasy and occultism. Their increasing activity will reach a high point during the Tribulation, when God's restraining is removed so that the human Antichrist may become a world ruler, and demons will, under Satan, persecute and kill men and battle with God's angels. Righteousness will characterize the kingdom when Satan and demons are bound, but upon their release they find rebels ready to join them in one final rebellion against God. Some demons are bound now in the abyss, some in the River Euphrates, and some in tartarus, but will be bound forever in the lake of fire.

This thesis with the Written Word of God revealed that God couldn't lie; He cannot and will not deceive His people. Therefore, the promises of God, every single one of them, shall be fulfilled. But note: the promise of the seed, that is, of the Savior, applies only to those who believe.

***Jesus said to him, If you can believe, all things are possible to him who believes.***

***Mark 9:23(MKJV)***

This thesis through God's Word reveals that believers are only strangers and pilgrims on earth. They are only passing through this earth and this life, which is ever so brief and corrupt. They are heirs and citizens of heaven.

This thesis affirm that the nature of God reveals there is only one living and true God who is infinite in being and perfection, a most pure spirit, invisible, and absolutely distinct from His creation.

This thesis affirms that God is both transcendent over and immanent in His creation. One affirms that from time to time God supernaturally intervenes in the course of natural or human events to accomplish His redemptive purposes. God is a personal, infinite, eternal, self-existent, unchangeable, indivisible, omnipotent, omniscient, omnipresent, Spiritual being Who is the creator and sustainer of the universe.

This thesis also affirm that God is absolutely Holy, just, good, true, loving, and merciful in His being and all His activities. One affirms that this one God exists eternally in all the divine attributes.

This thesis affirm that the nature of the universe reveals and affirms that the entire universe, including all finite beings, was created by God out of nothing (*ex nihilo*). That the nature of the space/time universe is finite, temporal, and real. One affirms that the entire universe is absolutely distinct from and utterly dependent upon its Creator-God.

This thesis reveals that the nature of man (male and female) was specially created by God. That man was created in the image and likeness of God, and consequently is endowed by God with immeasurable dignity and worth. That man as a rational and moral being is ultimately responsible and accountable to God. That because of man's rebellion against God, both he and his environment exist in a corrupted state and stand under the condemnation of God.

This thesis reveals that the nature of truth affirms that God is the ultimate author of all truth. That truth is objective, absolute and ultimately non-contradictory. Truth to be, that which corresponds to and accurately, describes and explains reality.

This thesis reveals that the nature of Authority affirms that God in His general revelation, through the works of creation and the consciousness of men, has revealed His eternal power and deity with His moral law in the hearts of all men, even though they in their corrupted state suppress this truth in unrighteousness.

That God's normative, special revelation is expressed in and limited to His authoritative, inerrant, written Word, the Bible, which is the final bar of appeal in all matters of faith and life and stands in judgment over all reason, revelation, and experience.

This thesis reveals that the nature of salvation affirms that God alone is the source of man's salvation. That Jesus Christ, the God-Man, by virtue of His perfect life, His substitutionary, atoning death, and His bodily resurrection, is the only Mediator between a Holy God and sinful man.

That Jesus Christ in His Incarnation is wholly God and wholly man, two natures in one person, without confusion, without change, without division, without separation.

That God's gift of salvation is supernaturally applied to those who believe by the gracious working of God the Holy Spirit.

That salvation is from the presence, power, and penalty of sin and to joyful obedience and service to God in His present and future kingdom.

This thesis reveals that the nature of human government affirms that the institution of human government has been ordained by God.

That God has established a multiplicity of human governments such as individual, familial, ecclesiastical, and civil.

That it is always the obligation of believers to participate in promoting good government.

This thesis reveals that the nature (and purpose) of history affirms that the Sovereign God is providentially directing the course of human history and that the saving purposes of God in Christ are accomplished within the same history.

That the purpose and meaning of history is to bring praise and glory to God and abundant life to His children.

That although man may be the primary focus and subject of history, God is its ultimate author and finisher.

That the consummation of history is the final triumph of God over all death and evil and their consequences, and its ultimate goal is the manifestation of the glory of God.

This thesis positively confirms that all reborn Christians can arise in victory no matter what their personal circumstances and the influences of this present world portrays.

***But thanks be to God who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.***

***So that, my beloved brothers, be steadfast, immovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, knowing that your labor is not without fruit in the Lord.***

***1 Corinthians 15:57-58***

This thesis confirms that reborn Christians will proclaim God's Kingdom on Earth. The supreme statement of God's purpose in the earth at this time is found in the Lord's Prayer.

***Your kingdom come, Your will be done, on earth as it is in Heaven.***

***Matthew 6:10(MKJV)***

This thesis revealed that the guideline number one for God and His people is for God's Kingdom to come to earth and His will to be done here on earth. Man are here as His servant and His people to assist in that process. It has to be the priority in everyone's life.

With the crucifixion, the cup of wrath was filled to the brim. Jerusalem had been the city that killed all the prophets of God and finally ended the life of the Messiah.

Jesus' death unleashed a time period referred to as the wrath of God on the heavenly clock. By His grace the Father granted a time of patience so the Gospel could be preached and a large amount of the people from that generation could be saved. In the Scripture one just read Isaiah that called that time period the acceptable year of the Lord.

***The Lord is not slow concerning His promise, as some count slowness, but is long-suffering toward us, not willing that any of us should perish, but that all of us should come to repentance.***

***II Peter 3:9(MKJV)***

This proposed thesis reveal that the Biblical view of God is that man should not try to determine good from evil by taking in knowledge (Gnosticism) because that is eating of the Tree of Good and Evil. For man to determine for himself right from wrong.

This thesis provide an overview of the deeper meaning and knowledge through a systematic review of the literature (past and present), thereby facilitating a better understanding of the scope and the implication of the Old and New Testament.

This thesis revealed that to educate Christians and non-Christians as to the dangers and ramifications of participation in the Deception of Exegetical Deeper Meaning and Knowledge of Scripture. This thesis shedding **LIGHT** on the **dark** and **sinister** identity of the Beast of this World and as revealed through the **Light** of the Gospel of Jesus Christ.

He is the One Who was, Who is, and Who comes or is continually coming (erchomai). He is the great "I Am," the eternal present Who manifests Himself within the temporality of man. For this reason, a heavenly book such as the Book Of Revelation cannot be interpreted with times on earth.

The mystery of God is consummated when Jesus takes the Throne sitting at the Right hand of the Majesty on High. From here onward, His Kingdom has no end at all.

The **Right Hand of God** (*dextera Domini* "right hand of the Lord" in Latin) or **God's right hand** may refer to the hand of God often referred to in the Bible and common speech as a metaphor for the omnipotence of God and as a motif in art. The Archangel Michael is also often referred to as "*the Right Hand of God*."

The concept of hermeneutics has acquired at least two different but related meanings, which are in use today. Firstly, in the older sense, Biblical hermeneutics may be understood as the theological principles of exegesis which is often virtually synonymous with "principles of biblical interpretation" or methodology of Biblical exegesis.

Secondly, the more recent development is to understand the term "Biblical hermeneutics" as the broader philosophy and linguistic underpinnings of interpretation. The question is posed: "How is understanding possible?" The rationale of this approach is that, while Scripture is "more than just an ordinary text," it is in the first analysis "text" which human beings try to understand; in this sense, the principles of understanding any text apply to the Bible as well (regardless of whatever other additional, specifically theological principles are considered).

Man is at war! A momentous struggle of great cosmic significance is occurring. Just about every page of the New Testament gives testimony to this fact. As Christians,

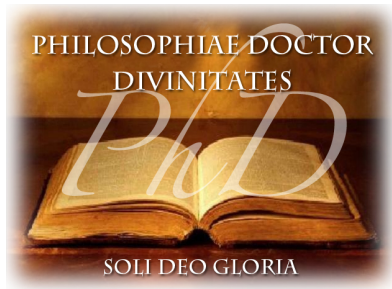
one are participants in this war between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan, for the souls and destiny of mankind. Christianity may well be facing the greatest challenge in its history - a series of powerful and growing **seductions** that are subtly changing biblical interpretations and undermining the faith of millions of people.

All too often man fall into the trap of thinking that people know everything about this world. This thesis has gathered together information, which reminds of covert and unexpected circumstances that is unknown to the majority of humankind.

-----oOo-----







## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### BOOKS

Adams, Jay Edward (1970) *Competent To Counsel*. Michigan: Zondervan Publishing House.

Aulen, G (1969) *Christus Victor: A Historical Study of the Three Main Types of the Idea of Atonement*, trans. A.G. Hebert New York: Macmillan. Other scholars who have emphasized this approach to the atonement.

Baigent, Michael (1999) *Ancient Traces Mysteries In Ancient And Early History*. Australia: Published In Penquin Books.

Baxter, Mary K (2005) *The Power Of The Blood*. Claremont, FL, USA: Whitaker House.

Boyd, Gregory A (1997) *God at War, The Bible & Spiritual Conflict*. Downers Grove, Illinois, InterVarsity Press.

Brand, Connie MJ (2005) *Spiritual Warfare 1, Biblical outline Pertaining to Spiritual Authority*, Pretoria, RSA, Self Published.

Brand, Prof Dr. Connie (2012) *Mini Conference February 2012*, Pretoria, RSA: Self-Published.

Brand, Prof. Dr. Connie MJ, (2005) An exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-theological perspective. Print and Bookbinding Solutions Pretoria. RSA.

Brooke, Tal (1997) Virtual Gods. Oregon, USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers.

Brooke, Tal (1998) The Conspiracy To Silence The Son Of God. USA: Published By Harvest House Publishers.

Brooke, Tal (2000) One Word. USA: End Run Publication.

Brown, R (1967) "Gospel Miracles," New Testament Essays. Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday.

Bruce, Babara J [Article: Sabbath] Holmans Bible Dictionary.

Bruce, F. F. (1997) Israel And The Nations. UK: Published By Paternoster Press.

Bush, Frederic William; Hubbard, David Allan And Lasor, William Sanford (1996) Old Testament Survey, USA: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co.

Caird, G B (1980) The Language And Imagery Of The Bible. London: Published By Duckworth.

Carnell, J. Edward (2005) The Case For Orthodox Theology. USA: Published By Wipf & Stock Publishers.

Carson, Donald A. (1984) Biblical Interpretation And The Church. Nashville: Thomas Nelson.

Cave, S (1937) *The Doctrine of the Work of Christ*. Nashville: Cokesbury.

Charles, R. H. (1912) *The Book Of Enoch*, CA: Published By The Book Tree.

Chesterton, G K (1925) *The Everlasting Man*. New York: Dodd, Mead And Co.

Conner, Kevin J (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine.(The Doctrine of the Atonement)* Portland, Oregon; Bible Temple Publishing.

Cortes J B and Gatti, F M (1975) "The Demon-Possessed Epileptic," in their *The Case Against Possession and Exorcism: A Historical, Biblical and Psychological Analysis of Demons, Devils and Demoniacs*. New York; Vantage.

Cullmann, O (1962) *Christ and Time*, rev.ed., trans. F.V. Wilson London: SCM.

Dake, F. Jennings (1991) *Dake's Annotated Reference Bible*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

De Vaux, Roland (1961) *Ancient Israel: Its Life And Institutions*. London: Published By Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co.

De Wolf, L. Harold (1959) *The Case For Theology In Liberal Perspective*. Philadelphia:

Delitzsch D.D., (1978) *Commentary on the Epistle the Hebrews vol.2*. Minneapolis: Klock & clock Christian Publishers.

Dickason, Fred C. (1995) *Angels, Elect & Evil*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar And Christ*. New York: Printed By Kingsport Press.

Durant, Will (1950) *The Age Of Faith*. New York: Printed By Mahony & Roese Inc.

Durant, Will (1957) *The Reformation*. New York: Printed By Haddon Craftsmen, Inc.

Durant, Will And Ariel (1961) *The Age Of Reason Begins*. New York: Printed By Haddon Craftsmen, Inc.

Edersheim, Alfred (1997) *The Temple: Its Ministry And Services As They Were At The Time Of Jesus*. Michigan: Published By Kregel Publications, A Division of Kregel, Inc.

Eerdmans, B William (....) *Commentary On The Old Testament, Volume X Minor Prophets*. Michigan: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.

Eerdmans, B William (....) *Commentary On The Old Testament, Volume IV Job*. Michigan: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.

Erenzeller, Thomas E.

Erickson, M.J (1983-1985) "The Central Theme of Atonement," in his *Christian Theology*, 3 vols. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Baker, 2:802-23.

Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries.

Ferrell, Dr. Ana Mendez (2012) *Apocalypse*. USA: Published By: Ana Méndez Ferrell, Inc.

Ferrell, Emerson L (2009) Immersed In Him. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries.

Flinger, T (1985) Christian Theology: An Eschatological Approach, 2 vols. Nashville: Nelson, 1:303-48.

Global Watch Weekly Report (2013) Ye Shall Be As Gods. London: Published By Rema Marketing.

Greer, R.A (1995) Christ the Victor and the Victim, Concordia Theological Quarterly 59, nos. 1-2 1-30.

Grein, Janny (1996) Called, Appointed and Anointed. Oklahoma: Published By Harrison House, Inc.

Hammond Frank And Ida Mae (1973) Pigs In The Parlor, A Practical Guide To Deliverance. USA: Printed In The United States of America.

Hammond, Frank D (1991) Demons And Deliverance In The Ministry Of Jesus. Impact Christian Books.

Harrington, Daniel J (2008) "Jesus Goes Public". America: pp.38ff.

Harrison, R K (1980) Leviticus: An Introduction And Commentary. Downers Grove: Inter-Varsity Press.

Hawkins, George Pember, Earth's Earliest Ages.

Hayles, Kathrine N. (1999) *How We Became Post Human: Virtual Bodies In Cybernetics, Literature, And Informatics*, Chicago, IL: The University Of Chicago Press.

Haywood, John (2006) *The Atlas Of Past Times*. UK: Published By Sandcastle Books Ltd.

Heim, Jesus *The World's Perfecter*.

Heim, Karl (1959) *Jesus the Lord*. London: Oliver & Boyd idem, *Jesus the World's Perfecter: The Atonement and the Renewal of the World*, trans. D.H. van Daalen (Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd, 1959).

Heschel, Abraham Joshua (2005) *The Sabbath*. USA: Published By Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Hesselgrave, David J And Rommen, Edward (1989) *Contextualization Meanings, Methods, And Models*. USA: Printed By Baker Book House.

Hession, Roy (1950) *The Calvary Road*. Christian Literature Crusade Publisher, England.

Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium's Engine: How The End Of The Church Age, The Rise Of Trans Humanism, And The Coming Of The Übermensch (Overman) Herald Satan's Imminent And Final Assault On The Creation Of God*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Horn, Thomas R. (2007) *Nephilim Stargates, The Year 2012 And The Return Of The Watchers*.

James, William (1902) *The Varieties Of Religious Experience*. New York: Longmans, Green And Co., Emphasis In The Original.

JOHN, M, Stephenson (1994) *Watchman Warning, The Endtimes are Unfolding*, Living-Faith Outreach Publication 1111 West El Camino Real #109-3967, Sunnyvale, CA 94087

Kallas, J (1961) *The Significance of the Synoptic Miracles*. Greenwich; Seabury.

Kanaan Ministries, (2012) *The Mystery Babylon*. Vanderbijl Park RSA: Printed By The River Of Live Family Church.

Kasdan, Barney (1996) *God's Appointed Customs*, USA: Jewish New Testament Publications.

Kasdan, Barney (2007) *God's Appointed Times*. USA: Messianic Jewish Publishers.

Kelly, H.A (1985) *The Devil at Baptism: Ritual, Theology and Drama*. Itchaca; Cornell University Press.

Kinman, Dwight L (1995) *The World's Last Dictator*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost In Translation: Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*, (Volume 1). USA: Publishing Services By Selah Publishing Group, LLC.

Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2009) *Lost In Translation: The Book Of Revelation Through Hebrew Eyes*, (Volume 2) Oregon: Published By Covenant Research Institute, Inc.



Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2012) *Lost In Translation: The Book Of Revelation: Two Brides, Two Destinies*, (Volume 3). Oregon: Publishing By Covenant Research Institute, Inc.

Kraemer, H (1938) *The Christian Message In A Non-Christian World*. London: Published For The International Missionary Council By The Edinburgh House Press.

Kraft, Charles H, *I Give You Authority* (1997) Grand Rapids, MI, USA: Chosen Books Publishers.

Kregel, (1999) *The New Complete Works of Josephus*. USA: Published By Kregel Publications.

Kroeger, C. Catherine and Beck R. James (1996) *Women, Abuse And The Bible*. Michigan: Published By Baker Books.

Kylstra, Chester And Betsy (2003) *Restoring The Foundations*. USA: Published By Proclaiming His Word Publications.

Langton, Essentials.

Larkin, Clarence, (1918) *Dispensational Truth Or God's Plan and Purpose In The Ages*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est.

Larkin, Clarence, (1921) *The Spirit World*. USA: Published by Rev. Clarence Larkin Est.

Leivestad, R (1954) *Christ The Conqueror: Ideas of Conflict and Victory in the New Testament* New York: Macmillan.

MacGregor, (1954) "Principalities and Powers: The Cosmic Background of Paul's Thought," NTS 1: 23. Similarly J.Y. Lee demonstrates that in Paul's cosmology,

“Jesus was depicted as the Redeemer who came from heaven and died on the cross to rescue not only men but the whole cosmos from demonic powers” (“Interpreting the Demonic Powers in Pauline Thought,” *NovT* 12, no.1 [1970]: 67).

Macquarrie, J (1956) *Demonology and the Classical Idea of the Atonement*. P. 3-6, 60-63.

Marrs Texe (1996) *Circle of Intrigue: The Hidden Inner Circle of the Global Illuminati Conspiracy*. Living Truth Publishers.

Marrs, Texe (2008) *Mysterious Monuments, Encyclopedia Of Secret Illuminati Designs, Masonic Architecture, And Occult Places*. USA: Published By River Crest Publishing, 1708 Patterson Road, Austin, Texas 78733.

Marshall, Alfred foreword by Phillips, Cannon JB (1979) *The R.S.V Interlinear Greek-English New Testament, The Nestle Greek Test with a Literal English Translation*, London; Samuel Bagster.

McGrath, A (1987) *Understanding Jesus: Who Jesus Christ Is and Why He Matters*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Zondervan; Stott, Cross of Christ.

Mettinger, N. D. Tryggve (2007) *The Eden Narrative: A Literary And Religie-Historical Study Of Genesis 2-3*. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Michaels, J Ramsey (1976) *Jesus and the Unclean Spirits, in Demon Possession*, ed. J.W. Montgomery. Minneapolis: Bethany.

Micklem, N (1943) *The Doctrine of Our Redemption*. London: Eyre and Spottiswoode

Milor, John W (2006), Aliens And The Antichrist, Unveiling The End Times Deception. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Missler, Chuck And Eastman, Mark (1997) Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind The UFO Phenomenon, USA: Coeur d'Alene, ID: Koinonia House.

Morris, L (1956) The Apostolic Preaching of the Cross. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Eerdmans

Morris, L (1983) The Atonement: Its Meaning and Significance. Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press.

Murphy, Ed Dr. (2003) The Handbook For Spiritual Warfare. USA: Published In Nashville, Tennessee, By Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.

Murray Andrew (1993) The Power of the Blood of Christ, New Kensington, PA, USA: Whitaker House.

Neuser, Jacob (1988) The Mishnah: A New Translation. New Haven CT: Yale University Press.

Newell, James [Article: Hand] Holmans Bible Dictionary.

Patterson, P (1989) "Reflections on the Atonement," Criswell Theological Review 3, 307-20;

Pauwells, Louis and Bergier, Jacques (1976) Le Matin Des Magicien [The Dawn Of Magic], Paris: Editions Gallimard, Published In London Panther Books Ltd.

Pfeiffer, Charles F, Vos Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers.

Price, Paula A (1999) The Prophet's Dictionary. USA: Paula Price Ministries.

Prince, Derek (2003) War In Heaven. New Zealand: Published By Derek Prince Ministries.

Prince, Derek (2008) Prophetic Guide To The End Times. USA: Published By Derek Prince Ministries.

Putnum, & Horn (2013) Xco – Vaticana. USA: Printed in The United States Of America.

Reed, Annette Yoshiko (2005) Fallen Angels And The History Of Judaism And Christianity: The Reception Of Enochic Literature, New York: Cambridge University Press.

Reid, D.G (1982) The Christus Victor Motif in Paul's Theology Ph.D. diss., Fuller Theological Seminary. The original centrality and later decline of the "Christ the victor" theme in the early church has been recently traced by R.A. Greer.

Roach R 1996) War In Heaven. USA: Lighthouse Library, International.

Roth, R. P. (1986) "Christ And The Powers Of Darkness: Lessons From Colossians," Word And World 6, no.3.

Ryrie, C. Charles (1986) Basic Theology, USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Ryrie, C. Charles (1999) Basic Theology: A Popular Systematic Guide To Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago: Moody Publishers.

Saucy, Robert (1960), Scripture, Its Power, Authority, and Relevance, Word Publishing, Tennessee 37214.

Scott, J.R.W (1986) The Cross of Christ. Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press.

Seekins, T Frank Hebrew Word Pictures: How Does The Hebrew Alphabet Reveal Prophetic Truths.

Sherman, Dean (1990) Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land, Seattle, WA: Ywam Publishing.

Sherman, Dean (1990) Spiritual Warfare For Every Christian. Seattle: Published By Youth With A Mission Publishing.

Skiba, Rob (2011) Babylon Rising And The First Shall Be Last. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Smith, Lukie (2012) An Exegetical Exposé Pertaining To The Role Of Blood Revealing The Phenomenological Impact Thereof. SA: Published By Râdâh Academy.

Stephenson, M John (1994) Watchman Warning. Sunnyvale, CA: Living-Faith Outreach.

Stott, John (2002) Basic Christian Leadership. USA: Published By Intervarsity Press.

The Readers Digest, (1974) Great People Of The Bible And How They Lived. USA: Printed In The United States Of America.

Thiselton, Anthony C. (1980) The Two Horizons: New Testament Hermeneutics And Philosophical Description. USA: Grand Rapids: Eerdmans.

Van der Loos, Miracles of Jesus. See esp. p. 401, note 5 for a list of others who adopt a position similar to this.

Whale, J.S (1960) Victor and Victim. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Wilkinson, J (1968) "The Case of the Epileptic Boy," ExpTim 79.

Young, Terry J - Holman Bible Dictionary – [Article: Bible Hermeneutics].

## **INTERNET RESOURCES**

Bland, Eric "Part Human, Part Machine Transistor DeVised," Discovery News, (<http://news.discovery.com/tech/transistor-cell-membrane-machine.html>.), Date Accessed June 2010.

Bostrom, Nick "Trans Humanist Values," Nick Bostrom's Web Site, (<http://www.nickbostrom.com/tra/values.html>.), Date Accessed 18 April 2001.

Christian Angelic Hierarchy. ([www.wikipedia](http://www.wikipedia)), Date Accessed September 2013.

"Giants In The Earth: Part I: Giants Of The Ancient Near East," Mysterious World Spring (2003), (<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants/>.), Date Accessed, 26 April 2011.

Gondwe, Eric. Spiritual Warfare book 1: A Major Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance Alert. (<http://spiritualwarfare.jesuswork.org/html\christian-spiritual-warfare-1.html>), Date Accessed, 15 September 2013.

Grossman, Lev "2045: The Year Man Becomes Immortal," TIME Magazine, February 2011, (<http://www.time.com/time/health/article/0,8599,2048138,00>), Date Accessed 17 September 2013.

Infranco, Joseph "President Barack Obama Warped And Twisted Science With Embryonic Stem Cell Order," The Manhattan Declaration, (<http://prolifecoalition.blogspot.com/2009/04/president-barack-obama-warped-and.html>), Date Accessed 13 April 2009.

Jewish Religion, Shahak, Prof, Dr. Israel  
(<http://www.biblebelievers.org.au/jewhis.htm>), Date Accessed October 2013.

Jordan, Gregory "Apologia For Trans Humanist Religion," Journal Of Evolution And Technology, Published By The Institute For Ethics And Emerging Technologies, <http://jetpress.org/volume15/jordan2.html>), Date Accessed, June 2005.

Power Or Authorities. ([www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org)), Date Accessed, March 2013.

Right Hand Of God. ([www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org)), Date Accessed, March 2013.

The Believers Authority (<http://kanaanministries.org>), Date Accessed, June 2013.

To View The Program Schedule Of This Convention Event, See:  
(<http://www.Transhumanism.org/tv/2004/program.shtml>), Date Accessed, June 2013

Vance, Ashlee “Merely Human? That’s So Yesterday,” New York Times, (<http://www.nytimes.com/2010/06/13/business/13sing.html>), Date Accessed, 12 June 2010.

Warick, Kevin “Cyborg 1.0,” Wired Magazine, (<http://www.wired.com/wired/archive/8.02/warwick.html>), Date Accessed 1 February 2013.

Waters, Brent “The Future Of The Human Species (Part 1),” (<http://cbhd.org/content/future-human-species>), Date Accessed, 15 September 2013

## **ARTICLES**

Brand, Chris (2013) Article/Lecture. RSA: Râdâh Academy.

## **BIBLES**

The King James Version of the Bible is used.

The Good News Bible Version is used.

The 1965 Bible in Basic English Version is used.

The American Standard Bible Version is used.

The Modern King James Version is used.

1833 Webster Bible is used.

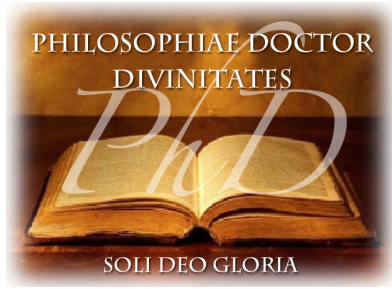
Amplified Bible is used.



## **BIBLE COMMENTARIES**

e-Sword – The Sword Of The Lord With An Electronic Edge. John Gill's Exposition Of The Entire Bible.

-----oOo-----

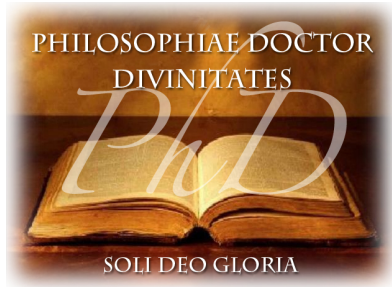


## ABBREVIATIONS

(BC)	Before Christ.
(Dr)	Doctor
(GNB)	Good News Bible. National Book Printers, Cape. 1994.
(MKJV)	Modern King James Version. Jay P Green Lafayette in USA. 1993.
(NY)	New York.
(NAM)	New Age Movement.
(NOW)	New World Order.
(UFO)	Unidentified Flying Object.
(USA)	United States of America.

-----o0o-----





## TERMS AND DIFINITIONS

Words defined as per the online Merriam Webster Dictionary and Thesaurus.

<b>Analysis:</b>	Separation of a whole into its component parts.
<b>Anti-Christ:</b>	The term or title antichrist, in Christian theology, refers to a leader who fulfills Biblical prophecies concerning an adversary of Christ, while resembling him in a deceptive manner. The antichrist will seemingly provide for the needs of the people but deny them ultimate salvation.
<b>Anthropology:</b>	The science of human beings; especially the study of human beings and their ancestors through time and space and in relation to physical character, environmental and social relations and culture.
<b>Archaeology:</b>	The study of human history and prehistory through the excavation of sites and the analysis of artifacts and other physical remains.
<b>Biblical Theology:</b>	Definition of Biblical Theology deals systematically with the historically conditioned progress of the self-revelation of God in the Bible.
<b>Born Again:</b>	Converted to a personal faith in Christ (with reference to John 3:3): a born-again Christian.
<b>Channeling</b>	Channeling (as a medium), a term used in reference to the esoteric process of receiving messages or inspiration from extra-dimensional beings or spirits, whereby one is a

	medium or channel for such an entity.
<b>Christian:</b>	A Christian here refers to a re-born person, who has received Christian baptism or is a believer in Jesus Christ and his teachings.
<b>Christianity:</b>	The religion based on the person and teachings of Jesus of Nazareth, or its beliefs and practices.
<b>Conspiracy:</b>	A secret plan by a group to do something unlawful or harmful: a conspiracy to destroy the government.
<b>Demons:</b>	(In ancient Greek belief) A divinity or supernatural being of a nature between gods and humans. An inner or attendant spirit or inspiring force.
<b>Esoteric:</b>	Intended for or likely to be understood by only a small number of people with a specialized knowledge or interest: esoteric philosophical.
<b>Ethnography:</b>	The study and systematic recording of human cultures; <i>also</i> : a descriptive work produced from such research.
<b>god:</b>	god in certain other religions a superhuman being or spirit worshiped as having power over nature or human fortunes; a deity: <i>a moon god an incarnation of the god Vishnu.</i>
<b>god of light:</b>	Traditionally, <b>Lucifer</b> ('lu:sɪfər/ or /lju:sɪfər/) is a name that in English generally refers to the Devil or Satan before being cast from Heaven, although this is not the original meaning of the term. In Latin, from which the English word is derived, Lucifer (as a noun) means " <i>light-bearer</i> " (from the words <i>lucem ferre</i> ). It was the name given to the dawn appearance of the planet Venus, which heralds daylight. For this meaning, English generally uses the names " <i>Morning Star</i> " or " <i>Day Star</i> ", and rarely " <b>Lucifer</b> ".

<b>god of nature:</b>	In nature worship, a <b>nature deity</b> is a deity in charge of forces of nature such as water deity, vegetation deity, sky deity, solar deity, fire deity or any other naturally occurring phenomena such as death deity or fertility deity. Accepted in panentheism, pantheism, deism, polytheism, animism, totemism, shamanism and paganism the deity embodies natural forces and can have characteristics of the mother goddess, Mother Nature or lord of the animals.
<b>Gnosticism:</b>	A prominent heretical movement of the 2nd-century Christian Church, partly of pre-Christian origin. Gnostic doctrine taught that the world was created and ruled by a lesser divinity, the demiurge, and that Christ was an emissary of the remote supreme divine being, esoteric knowledge (gnosis) of whom enabled the redemption of the human spirit.
<b>Hermeneutics:</b>	The study of the methodology principles of interpretation especially of the Bible.
<b>Hermes:</b>	The son of Zeus and Maia, the messenger of the gods, and god of merchants, thieves, and oratory. He was portrayed as a herald equipped for traveling, with broad-brimmed hat, winged shoes, and a winged rod.
<b>Herodotus</b>	(5th century B.C.), Greek historian. Known as “the Father of History,” he was the first historian to collect his materials systematically, test their accuracy to a certain extent, and arrange them in a well-constructed and vivid narrative.
<b>Historical analysis:</b>	1a: of, relating to, or having the character of history historical data b: based on history historical novels c: used in the passed and reproduced in historical presentations.
<b>Ithamar</b>	In the Torah, Ithamar (Hebrew: <span>אִיתָמָר</span> , Modern Itamar <span>אִיתָמָר</span> )

Tiberian 'Ītāmār ; "palm tree isle/coast"; an ancient Hebrew expression for "the father of Tamar") is mentioned as the youngest son of Aaron the High Priest. After the death of his two eldest brothers Nadab and Abihu when they had been punished by the Lord for performing an unauthorized sacrificial offering, Ithamar served as a priest along with his elder brother, Eleazar. During the travels of the Israelites in the desert, Ithamar stood at the head of the children of Gershon and Merari, the carriers of the Tabernacle. He was also in charge of the work of the Levites in general. Ithamar and Eleazar are regarded as the direct male ancestors of all Kohanim.

**Nephilim:** The **Nephilim** (plural) are the offspring of the "*sons of God*" and the "*daughters of men*" in Genesis 6:4, or giants who inhabit Canaan in Numbers 13:33. A similar word with different vowel-sounds is used in Ezekiel 32:27 to refer to dead Philistine warriors.

**New World Order** New World Order (conspiracy theory), a conspiracy theory in which a secret elite is conspiring to rule the world via world government and globalization.

**Numerology:** The branch of knowledge that deals with the occult significance of numbers.

**Orient** The **Orient** means "the East." It is a traditional designation for anything that belongs to the Eastern world or the Far East, in relation to Europe.

**Phenomenology:** 1 the study of the development of human consciousness and self-awareness as a preface to or a part of philosophy. 2(1): a philosophical movement that describes the formal structure of the objects of awareness and of awareness

itself in abstraction from any claims concerning existence  
(2): the typological classification of a class of phenomena  
<the *phenomenology* of religion>

**Satan:** The Devil/Lucifer, Satan (Hebrew: שָׂטָן *ha-Satan*), "the opposer", is the title of various entities, both human and divine, who challenge the faith of humans in the Hebrew Bible.

**Quetzalcoatl's** Traditionally the god of the morning and evening star, he later became known as the patron of priests, inventor of books and of the calendar, and as the symbol of death and resurrection. His worship involved human sacrifice. Legend said that he would return in another age, and when Montezuma, last king of the Aztecs, received news of the landing of Cortés and his men in 1519, he thought that Quetzalcóatl had returned.

**Sociology:** The study of the development, structure, and functioning of human society.

**Symbology:** The study or use of symbols.

**Systematic Theology:** Definition: Systematic theology, the correlation of the data of Biblical revelation as a whole in order to exhibit systematically the total picture of God's self-revelation (1)

**Ten Commandments:** In the Bible the divine rules of conduct given by God to Moses on Mount Sinai, according to Exod. 20:1–17.

**Theology:** The study of the nature of God and religious belief, the study of God and of God's relation to the world.

**Theosophy:** Any of a number of philosophies maintaining that a knowledge of God may be achieved through spiritual ecstasy, direct intuition, or special individual relations, esp. the movement founded in 1875 as the Theosophical



Society by Helena Blavatsky and Henry Steel Olcott (1832–1907).

**Third Eye:**

The third eye (also known as the inner eye) is a mystical and esoteric concept referring in part to the ajna (brow) chakra in certain eastern spiritual traditions. It is also spoken of as the gate that leads within to inner realms and spaces of higher consciousness.

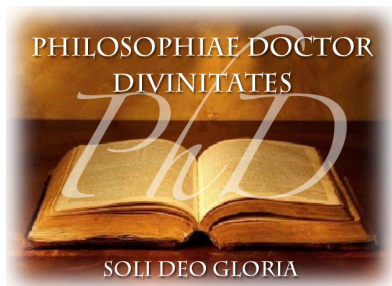
**Trans Humanism**

The belief or theory that the human race can evolve beyond its current physical and mental limitations, esp. by means of science and technology.

**Witchcraft:**

The practice of magic, especially black magic; the use of spells and the invocation of spirits.

-----oOo-----

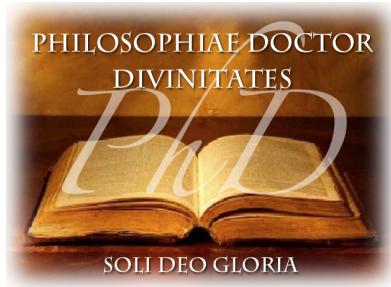


## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1	The Assumption of the Virgin by Francesco Botticini at the National Gallery London, shows three hierarchies and nine orders of angels, each with Different characteristics.....	52
Figure 2	A cherub, as described by Ezekiel and according to traditional Christian iconography.....	53
Figure 3	A cherub, as described by Ezekiel and according to traditional Christian iconography.....	54
Figure 4	Guido Reni's archangel Michael (in the Capuchin church of Santa Maria della Concezione, Rome, 1636) tramples Satan.....	58
Figure 5	An angel comforting Jesus, by Carl Heinrich Bloch, 1865-1879.....	59
Figure 6	The Essene Community At Qumran.....	104
Figure 7	The Aceramic Neolithic period 3t Jericho the dead were commonly buriedbeneath the floors of the houses with their skulls removed. The removal of the cranium was probably carried out after the flesh and sinews had decayed, as the lower jaw was normally left with the rest of the skeleton. Some of the skulls found under the floors had had their features modeled in plaster and the eye sockets filled with shells, sometimes bivalves, and in one case cowrie shells.....	105
Figure 8 & 9	One of the more remarkable features of Proto-Neolithic Jericho is the stone tower attached to the inside of the city wall. The tower is 10 m in diameter and still survives to a height of more than 8 m. A doorway 1.7 m high on its eastern side leads inside to a staircase of 22 steps, each made out of a single block of	

	stone. The city wall was repaired and rebuilt several times and a ditch 8 m wide and more than 2 m deep was cut into the rock outside the wall. The purpose that the tower served is still a matter of debate.....	106
Figure 10	The Hand As An Isolated Motif.Frescofrom Sant Climent De Taüll In Catalonia.....	110
Figure 11	Francesco Albani's 17th century Baptism of Christ is a typical depiction with the sky opening and the Holy Spirit descending as a dove.....	249

-----oOo-----



## ADDENDUM

***BLOOD has great significance in the Bible. Its meanings involve profound aspects of human life and God's desire to transform human existence. Blood is intimately associated with physical life. Blood and life or living being are closely associated. The Hebrews of Old Testament times were prohibited from eating blood. Only be sure that thou eat not the blood: for the blood is the life.***

### 1 THE BLOOD CONQUERED THE DEVIL

#### 1.1.1 Prophetic Vision Of The Power Of The Blood Of Jesus

Ana Mendes Ferrell stated<sup>1</sup> that it was during the first time I was caught up into the heavens that I understood the glorious power of the blood of Jesus. I was desperately in love with Jesus. I wanted to see Him, touch Him, love Him with my entire being. My heart was dying to be with Him in a different, deeper way than I had so far.

Once I was worshipping in the church of which I used to be the pastor in Mexico City, when a kind of cloud of the Holy Spirit surrounded me. Suddenly I was taken to another dimension and I was no longer in the earthly realm. I was surrounded by light

---

<sup>1</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 76-81.

everywhere. The light was alive, and it moved as if doing a dance in which the reflections and flashes made all sorts of light effects before my eyes.

Unexpectedly, from within the glimmering lights, a glorious figure appeared that looked like the Son of God. I was before Jesus. Without a word, He extended His hand and an enormous drop of blood the size of a melon appeared floating above my head. Then He said, "Drink!" I opened my mouth and drank it in one big gulp. Then a second and a third drop of the same size showed up, and He commanded me to drink them. Upon drinking the last one, I fell onto my back, and I noticed that my body had turned red. It was full of the Lambs blood.

The Lord remained before me, surround by those shinning lights. Then, He made a signal with His hand, and a demonic creature appeared that immediately tried to climb on top of me. When the demon touched my body, from the blood within me, a consuming fire went forth and instantly destroyed it. I was dumbfounded.

Then, He made me get up. I was still full of that blood everywhere, inside and out. Next, He made some type of tissue appear before me that looked like a tumor. He said, "This is a mortal illness. I want to show you the power of My blood upon it." Don't be afraid. Open your mouth, and eat it. When I had done it, the tumor was burned up instantly as it came into contact with the blood. I was amazed. Then He said, "Eat My Flesh and drink My Blood because I will give you great victories against evil and against sickness."

Then I looked and saw that from His body shone a fire that did not burn Him. It was like looking at pure energy, churning within His being. He stopped in front of me. I had my hands raised. He put His hands over my hands and then His face in front of mine. His heart was pressed against mine. Then He said, "The time is coming when I will come upon My people, hands upon hands, eyes upon eyes, mouth upon mouth,

heart upon heart.” In that instant, a powerful energy went forth from His body, His face and His hands and saturated me. I thought that I would die. The force that penetrated me was so powerful that I thought I'd burst right there. In that moment, my spiritual heart was pierced by that power, and an intense pain invaded my heart of flesh. It was then that I returned to the earthly dimension.

Six hours had passed, but the people of the church had not left my side. They were waiting for me to return from the ecstasy in which I was found. Only God could have made them stay there because nothing like this had ever happened to anyone there before to help them understand what was happening to me. I was on the floor without being able to move; the weight of His glory was so heavily upon me.

A demon-possessed woman was there that day in the congregation and she approached me. I remember that just by touching her, the demon screamed and left her. I could not get up, but I could talk. So I began to call the members of my church on by one in order to impart into their hearts the power that shone within mine. We will never forget that day.

What occurred in that ecstasy became a pillar of faith and trust in the blood of Jesus? From then on, talking about the blood and pleading it as a weapon against the enemy would have a much greater meaning for me. A few years later, I had an experience that if it had not been for the concept I had of the blood I would not have gotten through it. I was returning from a trip of intercession in Poland where we prayed in the concentration camps of Auschwitz and Treblinka. We waged spiritual warfare in order to liberate that nation from the spirits of death that had remained there after the Holocaust of the Jews.

One night after my return to Mexico, I suddenly awoke with the feeling that an evil presence had entered my room. My heart beat wildly, and as I opened my eyes, I

saw Satan before me. His body and his wings filled most of the room. His face was red and full of protruding black veins. His teeth were ferocious, like those of a wolf about to attack. His body was black and slender. His wings were like those of a dragon and appeared to be made of fire. His eyes were yellow with intense black pupils. He looked at me with hatred and with the determination to kill me.

I stared at him and, to my own surprise, my whole being entered into absolute peace. With total tranquility I asked the Holy Spirit what I should do. He responded, "Manifest the Blood of Jesus that is within you."

At that moment, I saw my body turn red again, totally saturated with that wonderful blood that conquered the devil on the cross. I then put my total focus on the power that is within that blood. Suddenly, it began to shine. A powerful blast of power left the blood, like a lightening bolt of fire that literally electrocuted the devil, making him flee from my presence.

The room was filled with the presence of God. My body was without any strength, due to the vast quantity of virtue that had left me. At the same time, my entire being rejoiced at the marvelous victory that the Lord had given me.

Again I thought about that verse that says:

***And they overcame him because of the blood of the Lamb, and because of the word of their testimony. And they did not love their soul to the death.***

***Revelation 12:11(MKJV)***

God's army of the last days will be a people who truly understand the blood, warriors full this power in their spirits, and totally undefeatable. The devil greatly fears those who understands this mystery.

## 1.2 The Blood Speaks

Ana Mendes Ferrell stated<sup>2</sup> The Word of God says that the blood speaks. The blood of Abel spoke of revenge, as we saw before, and the Blood of Jesus speaks of mercy.

***And He said, What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries to Me from the ground.***

***Genesis 4:10(MKJV)***

Blood has a very special sound in the spiritual world. The innocent blood of martyrs cries day and night for God to bring them justice. Their blood is before the Father's throne as a memorial that will unleash judgment upon the empire of evil.

The Word says that the Son of God was manifest to destroy the works of the devil. The blood of Jesus is the greatest element of intercession with which Jesus prays for us before the Father.

When the blood of Jesus is manifested in the kingdom of darkness, it produces a sound of judgment so strong that it terrorizes the devil's armies. That sound opens the densest darkness in order for God's presence to be manifested.

I remember a powerful experience that occurred at the end of the 1990's. A guerilla movement had risen in the state of Chiapas in the southeast of Mexico. The terrorist group murdered thousands of Christians. The blood of our brothers cried out throughout the country. The pain over what was happening kept me awake at night, while I spent whole nights in intercession.

---

<sup>2</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 81-84.

---



The government had denied all foreign ministers access to that state due to the bloodshed. The pastors wanted to take advantage of the crisis in order to advance the work of the Gospel to the people who were suffering there. They wanted to bring in the evangelist Alberto Mottesi for a large evangelistic crusade, but they could not obtain the required permits.

The Lord spoke to me and said, "They have conquered him with the blood of the Lamb, with the word of their testimony, and not loving their lives in the face of death. (Revelation 12:11) Go and manifest the Sound of My blood in the heart of the conflict in Chiapas."

Obeing His word, we rented the bullring of San Cristobal de las Casas and called forth the people of God. That night was extraordinary. I saw how the sky became red as if a veil of His blood covered the city. What I was seeing was physical, but in the spiritual world I knew that His blood was descending in order to accomplish something wonderful. We began to worship, exalting the Blood of the Lamb. When the Anointing was at its peak, the Lord told me, "Now prophesy that the sound of the blood of the martyrs that is over the city will manifest." I did it and then we were silent.

A sound began to arise from the earth. It was like an echo in the bullring coming from thousands of Indians. I could see it with my spiritual eyes. It was rising up as it was trying to touch the mantel of Jesus' blood that covered us. There was great expectation. Suddenly, the sound and cloak of His blood became one in the sky. An explosion of power was felt, and God filled the place with His presence. Thousands of people fell on the ground; they were full of the anointing of God. The heavens had opened in an extraordinary way. To God be the glory!

From that day on, the terrorist movement began to dissolve. The doors were opened,

and the government gave permission for Brother Mottesi's crusade. There was a great harvest due to the manifested **Blood of Jesus**.

Sometimes we have to do things we don't understand in our natural minds, but the kingdom of God is not of this world. The Blood of Jesus speaks about mercy to the Father, speaks judgment to the devil, and about righteousness and holiness to us. When we drink His blood, His righteousness and His holiness become part of us. We are filled with light in order to see our hidden sinful areas and our erroneous motives, and we are filled with the fear of God.

*And they were continuing steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine, and in fellowship and in the breaking of the loaves, and in prayers.*

*And fear came on every soul. And many wonders and miracles took place through the apostles.*

*Acts 2:42-43(MKJV)*

### 1.3            **The Blood Conquered Iniquity, Rebellion And Sin**

Ana Mendes Ferrell stated<sup>3</sup> that these three things are the power structure that the devil establishes within man through the seed with which he contaminated our nature after the fall.

Iniquity is the root of evil implanted in man that produces in him the desire to sin. Sin is the fruit that is produced when iniquity is active. Rebellion is the power that feeds iniquity so that it is continually inducing man to sin. The finishing work of the cross puts an end to this whole structure of demonic power. See (Isaiah 53:11b).

---

<sup>3</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 84-87.

We have to understand that the work of the cross is absolute. What Jesus did, He did once and for all, but it is our responsibility to APPROPRIATE FOR OURSELVES what Jesus conquered for us on the cross.

For example, Jesus died for all sinners. However, not all men are saved. Each person has to come to the Lord in repentance, and receive for himself Jesus' atoning sacrifice. If this does not occur, the absolution of the cross will not operate in that person.

This is true for each part of the cross. That is why the Lord provides us with a wonderful key in order for us to own everything that He did for us. This key is eating His flesh and drinking His blood. When a person comes to the light and walks in light, the blood of Jesus cleanses him from all sin, see (1 John 1:7).

***This one came as a witness, to bear witness concerning the Light, so that all might believe through him.***

***John 1:7(MKJV)***

When the Apostle Paul in his letter to the Corinthians institutes the Lord's Supper, he tells us to examine ourselves before taking the elements. He tells us to get things right with God, to come to the light in order to be cleansed by His blood.

When a believer has to struggle to separate himself from sin, it is due to a strong presence of iniquity in his life. Many times this iniquity is strengthened by unclean spirits, that make the battle more difficult. The solution is to take the step of repentance, desiring with your whole heart that the power of God will free and transform you. This determination of the heart, together with the blood and flesh of Jesus, will give the believer total victory. The authority of the resurrection is established in every true believer so they can cast out every tormenting demon.

But for now, I want you to understand how the blood operates in this context. The blood has a cleansing, purifying power that penetrates the deepest roots of iniquity in our lives. But in order to experience such complete victory, we really need to actively apply the blood.

The same way that natural blood has a purifying power to eliminate toxic elements and waste, the blood of Jesus also cleanses us from all that is unclean. In the natural, blood cleanses the body and provides it with nutritive substances such as oxygen. Blood purifies, feeds and regenerates our whole body. In the spiritual, the blood of Jesus pulls out every root of iniquity, destroys strongholds in our inner man and provides us with the elements of life and power that will carry us from glory to glory.

When a Christian struggles for holiness, the blood he drinks day after day through Communion will regenerate him. Sin will not only be destroyed, but the Lord through His blood is going to feed us His will. Our sinful desires change into good, holy desires. The irresistible urge to do evil, to lie, to pursue fleshly desires is exchanged for the urge to do good and to draw nearer to God.

## **1.4 The Blood Of Jesus Pulls Sinners From The Power Of Hell**

### **1.4.1 Vision Of The Blood And The Fire**

Ana Mendes Ferrell stated<sup>4</sup> that the prophet Joel prophesied about the outpouring of the Spirit of God, which was partially fulfilled on the day of Pentecost.

---

<sup>4</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) *Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood*. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 87-91.

---

***And in those days I will pour out My Spirit upon My slaves and My slave women, and they shall prophesy.***

***And I will give wonders in the heaven above, and miracles on the earth below, blood and fire and vapor of smoke.***

***Acts 2:18-19(MKJV)***

Here the Scripture is not talking about nuclear catastrophes, as some think. It is talking about the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. The blood, fire and smoke were three elements present in the tabernacle when the Lord manifested.

On the day of Pentecost, the Spirit came through fire, in the form of burning tongues above the believers' heads. But the smoke and the blood were not seen. Those are reserved for the complete fulfillment of the end times.

I was meditating on what this might be like while I was on a ship in the Mediterranean, and the Lord allowed me to see a wonderful vision. I (Ana Méndez Ferrell) was returning from my first visit to Jerusalem. My heart broke as I saw the abominations and idolatry-taking place in the holy city. I went upstairs to the highest deck of the ship. It was night and the sky was full of stars. It was the same firmament that Abraham saw thousands of years ago, when God gave him the promise about innumerable his generations would be.

I cried for the thousands of souls still held captive by the devil who need to know Jesus. As I was praying, the Spirit of God took my spirit and caught it away between heaven and earth.

Suddenly, I saw myself suspended in the stratosphere, and I could clearly see the earth, gigantic below my feet. I saw the continents, Europe, part of Asia and part of Africa. They were black as coal, and they breathed like a weak person fighting for his life with his last breaths.

Suddenly, I saw an enormous whirlwind of fire that appeared below the continents and thousands of souls were sucked up by it. They were pulled towards hell. Then, I could see fat women with Bibles in their hands that were swirling down to the pit. They screamed full of torment.

I asked Jesus who these fat women were. He told me, They are entire churches, full of mental knowledge, but immersed in sin. They talk about Me, but they don't know Me. I spoke about them when I was on the earth: See (Matthew 7).

***Not everyone who says to Me, Lord! Lord! shall enter the kingdom of Heaven, but he who does the will of My Father in Heaven.***

***Many will say to Me in that day, Lord! Lord! Did we not prophesy in Your name, and through Your name throw out demons, and through Your name do many wonderful works?***

***And then I will say to them I never knew you! Depart from Me, those working lawlessness!***

***Matthew 7:21-23(MKJV)***

When I saw this, my heart fainted inside of me. I wanted to do whatever was necessary to stop them from going to hell. Then a gigantic Cross-appeared in the sky above the continents at the mouth of the whirlwind. It was so big that it was larger than the earth, and stood all the way up to where I was. The Cross-was made of fire and blood. These two elements revolved and emanated from it.

Then a powerful force came out of the Cross trying to absorb everything towards it. Even the continents seemed to be swallowed up by the Cross. Thousands of people were attracted to it, and the strength that went out from it was much greater than that of the whirlwind of fire.

Then I saw the earth covered by the Blood of Jesus, while the Cross continued to exercise its power. I saw billions of people who inhabit the planet. All without exception had a potion of that blood upon their heads that cried for salvation.

I saw the Holy Spirit slowly descending upon the whole earth, and there was a blast of thunder in Heaven that said, **“I will pour out My Spirit upon all flesh!”** In that moment, the Spirit made contact with the Blood that covered the planet. The effect of an atomic bomb was made, that filled all the continents with power. Millions of people arose and were absorbed by the enormous Cross. More thunder was heard in Heaven, and out of it came a voice that said, “I am grafting into My Cross my true servants. They will manifest My Power from the Cross, and the Power of My Blood and the Fire of the Spirit will be seen in them. I am calling My sons and My servants to enter the Cross of My Power.”

When the vision ended, my spirit returned to the ship. From then on, this experience has motivated my life to live and preach the power of the Cross.<sup>5</sup> See (Colossians 2).

***He did this by erasing the charges that were brought against us by the written laws God had established. He took the charges away by nailing them to the cross.***

***He stripped the rulers and authorities of their power and made a public spectacle of them as he celebrated his victory in Christ.***

***Colossians 2:14-15(GW)***

-----oOo-----

---

<sup>5</sup> Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2006) Eat My Flesh, And Drink My Blood. USA: Publisher: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp. 37-91.

---